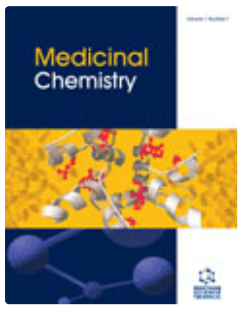
BENTHAM SCIENCE

Search here... Login Register Cart 0



Medicinal Chemistry

Editor-in-Chief

ISSN (Print): 1573-4064
ISSN (Online): 1875-6638

Research Article

Computational Study and Synthesis of a New Class of Anticonvulsants with 6 Hz Psychomotor Seizure Test Activity: 2-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yloxy)- N'-[substituted]-acetohydrazides

Author(s): Praveen Kumar* and Laxmi Tripathi

Volume 17, Issue 10, 2021

Published on: 06 November, 2020

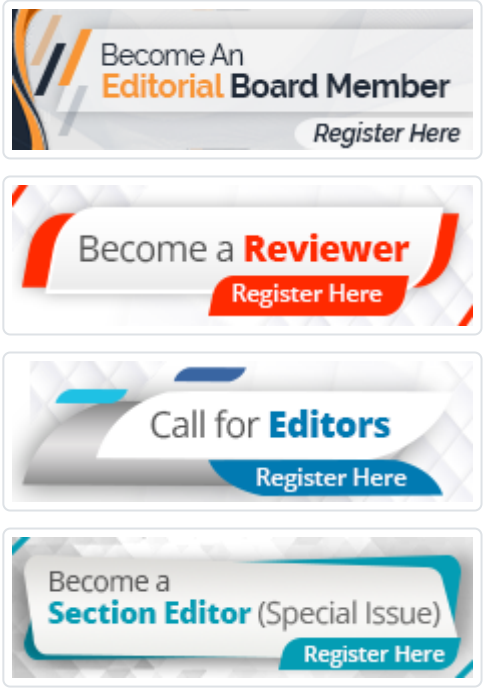
Page: [1175 - 1193]

Pages: 19

DOI: 10.2174/1573406416666201106111110

Price: $65

Purchase PDF



Abstract

Background: About 50 million epileptic cases worldwide and 12 million in India are reported. Currently, available drugs yield adequate control of seizure in 60-70% of patients and show many toxic effects. These actualities provoked the search for novel, more efficacious and safer anticonvulsants.

Objective: The concatenation of 2-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yloxy)-N'-[substituted]-acetohydrazides SA 1- 10 was designed by molecular hybridization, optimized by computational study and synthesized with the objective of obtaining a prototype of potent anticonvulsant molecules especially active against partial seizures.

Methods: Computational study was performed to calculate the pharmacophoric design, projection of the pharmacokinetic parameters and docking scores of the titled compounds with molecular targets of epilepsy. The anticonvulsant activity was ascertained by 6 Hz psychomotor seizure test. Minimal motor impairment showing neurotoxicity was assessed using the Rotarod test.

Results: Titled compounds possessed the indispensable elements of pharmacophore and displayed good binding affinity with molecular targets of epilepsy, such as GABA (A) alpha-1 & delta receptor, glutamate receptor, Na+/H+ exchanger and GABA- aminotransferase in docking studies. The most potent compound of the concatenation was 2-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yloxy)-N'-[4-(4- chlorophenoxy)benzylidene]-acetohydrazide SA 4, showing 100% protection at four different time points with ED_{50} value 146.8 mg/kg at a TPE of 1 h in mice.

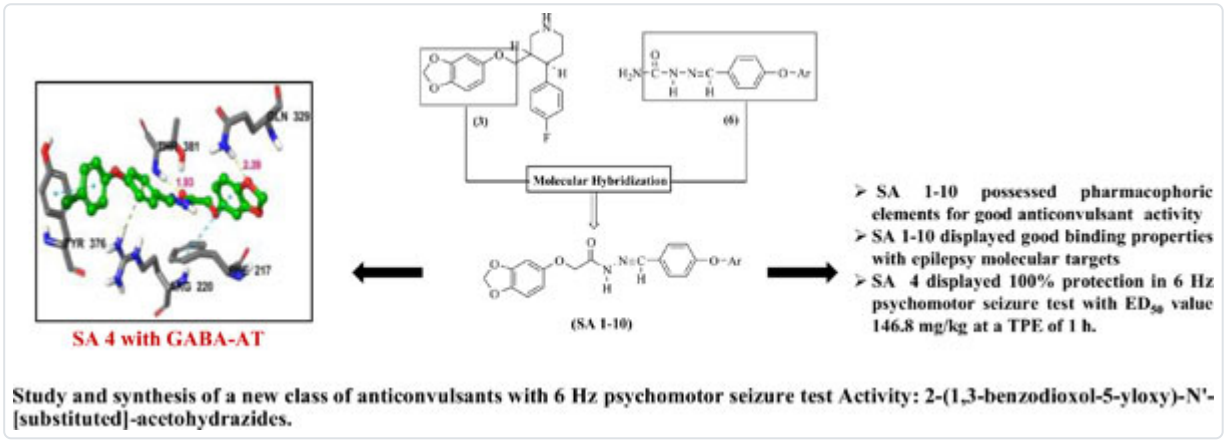
Conclusion: The protection shown in 6 Hz test is implicated as the compound's ability to control partial seizures. Thus, the titled compounds can be considered as potential prototype candidates for antiepileptic therapy against partial seizures.

Keywords: 2-(1, 3-benzodioxol-5-yloxy)-N'-[substituted]-acetohydrazides, computational study, docking, synthesis, 6 Hz psychomotor seizure test, neurotoxicity.

« Previous

Next »

Graphical Abstract



Study and synthesis of a new class of anticonvulsants with 6 Hz psychomotor seizure test Activity: 2-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yloxy)-N'-[substituted]-acetohydrazides.

Mark Item | Purchase PDF | Rights & Permissions | Print | Cite

Article Metrics

PDF

26

FIND YOUR INSTITUTION

Journal Information

About Journal

Editorial Board

Current Issue

Volumes /Issues

For Authors

For Editors

For Reviewers

Explore Articles

Open Access

For Visitors

Related Articles

A Comparative Study of the CYP450 Inhibition Potential of Marketed Drugs Using Two Fluorescence Based Assay Platforms Routinely Used in the Pharmaceutical Industry
Drug Metabolism Letters

O-Arylation of Iodophenols with 2-Fluorobenzaldehyde Under Microwave Conditions
Letters in Drug Design & Discovery

Patent Selections
Recent Patents on DNA & Gene Sequences

Comparision of Clinical Findings with CTPA Findings in Pulmonary Embolism
Current Medical Imaging

Regulation of Self-Reactive T Cells by Human Immunoglobulins- Implications for Multiple Sclerosis Therapy
Current Pharmaceutical Design

A Review on Possible Therapeutic Effect of Nigella sativa and Thymoquinone in Neurodegenerative Diseases
CNS & Neurological Disorders - Drug Targets

Editorial [Hot Topic: New Ligands at 5-HT and DA Receptors for the Treatment of Neuropsychiatric Disorders (Guest Editor: Giuseppe Di Giovanni)]
Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry

Arterial Ischemic Stroke in Neonates and Children: Review and Current Issues
Current Pediatric Reviews

Adult Neurogenic and Antidepressant Effects of Adiponectin: A Potential Replacement for Exercise
CNS & Neurological Disorders - Drug Targets

Sulfonamides and Sulfonylated Derivatives as Anticancer Agents
Current Cancer Drug Targets

Structurally Unprecedented Metabolites from Marine Sponges
Current Organic Chemistry

Translocator Protein Ligands as Promising Therapeutic Tools for Anxiety Disorders
Current Medicinal Chemistry

Role of Protein Tyrosine Phosphatases in Plants
Current Genomics

Cross-Cultural Comparison of Mild Cognitive Impairment between China and USA
Current Alzheimer Research

Concurrent Use of Antiretrovirals and Anticonvulsants in Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) Seropositive Patients
Current Pharmaceutical Design

Synthesis, Neurotoxicity and Anticonvulsant Study of Some Benzothiazole Analogs
Letters in Drug Design & Discovery

Recent Developments in Anxiety Disorders

Recent Patents on CNS Drug Discovery (Discontinued)

Voltage Gated ion Channels: Targets for Anticonvulsant Drugs

Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry

Drug Repositioning: A Unique Approach to Refurbish Drug Discovery

Current Drug Discovery Technologies

Decreased Valproate Level Caused by VPA-glucuronidase Inhibition by Carbapenem Antibiotics

Drug Metabolism Letters

© 2024 Bentham Science Publishers | Privacy Policy

ScienceDirect

Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology

Volume 32, March 2021, 101924

Molecular dynamics analysis of phytochemicals from *Ageratina adenophora* against COVID-19 main protease (M^{pro}) and human angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2)

Netra Prasad Neupane [a 1], Abhishek Kumar Karn [a 1], Imdad Husen Mukeri [a], Prateek Pathak [b], Praveen Kumar [c], Samayaditya Singh [d], Insaf Ahmed Qureshi [d], Tarun Jha [e], Amita Verma [a]

Show more

https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcab.2021.101924

Get rights and content

Highlights

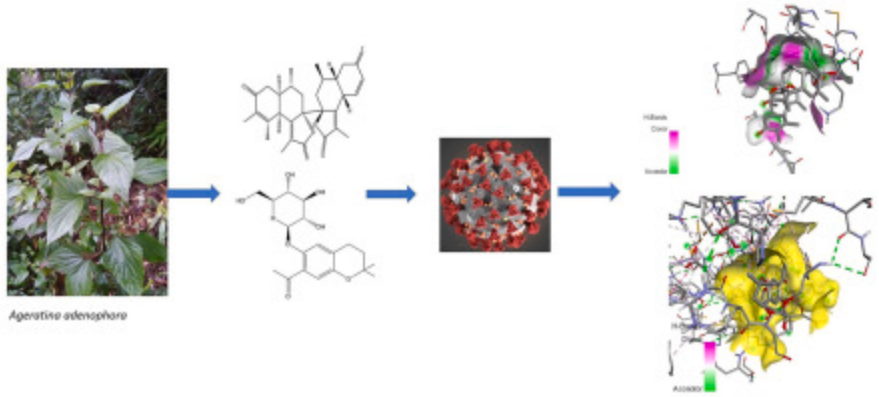
- The present study is designed to explore the 34 phytocompounds from *Ageratina adenophora* against SARS-CoV through *in-silico* studies.

- Molecular docking study with M^{pro} and ACE2 showed that phytocompounds from *Ageratina adenophora* have potential efficiency against COVID-19.
- MD simulations showed that GDE and BODO were found to be potential blockers with excellent binding affinity than their native inhibitors.
- The drug likeness study and pharmacokinetics of the phytocompounds provide an excellent support for the lead drug discovery against COVID-19.

Abstract

The outbreak of COVID-19 created unprecedented strain in the healthcare system. Various research revealed that COVID-19 main protease (M^{pro}) and human angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) are responsible for viral replication and entry into the human body, respectively. Blocking the activity of these enzymes gives a potential therapeutic target for the COVID-19. The objective of the study was to explore phytochemicals from *Ageratina adenophora* against SARS-CoV-2 through *in-silico* studies. In this study, 34 phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* were docked with M^{pro} and ACE2 through AutoDock Tools-1.5.6 and their binding affinity was studied. Phytochemicals with higher affinity have been chosen for further molecular dynamics simulations to determine the stability with target protein. Molecular dynamics simulations were studied on GROMACS 5.1.4 version. Furthermore, 5-β-glucosyl-7-demethoxy-encecalin (5GDE) and 2-oxocadinan-3,6(11)-dien-12,7-olide (BODO) were found to be potential blockers with excellent binding affinity with Mpro and ACE2 than their native inhibitors remdesivir and hydroxychloroquine respectively. The drug likeness study and pharmacokinetics of the phytoconstituents present in A. adenophora provide an excellent support for the lead drug discovery against COVID-19.

Graphical abstract



Download : Download high-res image (360KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Previous Next

Keywords

Ageratina adenophora; Angiotensin-converting enzyme; Main protease; Molecular docking; COVID-19

Abbreviations

5GDE
: 5-β-glucosyl-7-demethoxy-encecalin

DAOA
: 2-deoxo-2-(acetyloxy)-9-oxoageraphorone

OA

9-oxoagerophorone

ODO
: (+)-(5R,7S,9R,10S)-2-oxocandinan-3,6(11)-dien-12,7-olide

BODO
: (+)-7,7′-bis[(5R,7R,9R,10S)-2-oxocadinan-3,6(11)-dien-12,7-olide

HEDO
: (+)-(5R,7S,9R,10S)-7-hydroxy-7,12-epidioxycadinan-3,6(11)-dien-2-one

CED
: (−)-(5R,6R,7S,9R,10S)-cadinan-3-ene-6,7-diol

5-CQA
: 5-O-caffeoylquinic acid

3-CQA
: 3-O-caffeoylquinic acid

4-CQA
: 4-O-caffeoylquinic acid

M^{Pro}
: COVID-19 main protease

ACE2
: Human Angiotensin Converting Enzyme-2

MDPC
: methyl 3,4-bis[[(E)-3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)prop-2-enoyl]oxy]-1,5-dihydroxycyclohexane-1-carboxylate

MDCQ

Methyl 3,5-di-O-caffeoyl quinate

1. Introduction

Coronavirus disease (COVID-19) caused by the novel coronavirus SARS-CoV-2 and declared as a global pandemic by WHO on March 11, 2020 (Ludwig and Zarbock, 2020; O'Horo, 2020). The first case of COVID-19 was reported in Wuhan, China in december (Tian et al., 2020). The virus is transmitted through direct or indirect contact of the respiratory droplet of an infected person and there is the possibility of air transmission (Brockmeier and Lager 2002; World Health Organization 2020). COVID-19 mainly affects the lungs and requires ventilator support in severe condition (NCT04382391, 2020). Signs and symptoms of infection include fever, dry cough, tiredness, ache and pain, sore throat, conjunctivitis, headache, loss of taste or smell, rash on the skin, or discoloration of fingers or toes (Sahai et al., 2020). SARS, MERS and SARS-CoV-2 belong to the same family, Coronaviridea (Chen et al., 2020). The outbreak SARS has infected 8096 and cause the death of 774 people (Bostancikliogl u 2020) and the MERS infect 2494 people and cause the death of 858 people. The recent outbreak of n-CoV-2 in November 2019, infect 62,686,326 and cause the death of 1,460,387 people globally till November 27, 2020. (Worldometers). The SARS-CoV-2 has a high mortality rate in the elder population, diabetes patients, people having cardiovascular diseases, and lungs diseases (Tskhay et al., 2020). Despite being so dangerous currently, there is no approved vaccine or drug for these viruses. Although hydroxychloroquine, lopinavir-ritonavir, favipiravir, remdesivir, tocilizumab are found effective in treating COVID-19 (Neupane et al., 2020)(Lu et al., 2020; Wu et al., 2020). Currently, several types of research and the clinical trial are going on worldwide to find the vaccine, but the success is still far away.

Structurally, SARS-CoV-2 consists of Spike glycoprotein (S), Envelope protein (E), Membrane protein (M), and Nucleocapsid protein (N). Coronaviruses bear positive-sense, single-stranded RNA (+ssRNA) genetic material with approximately 30,000 nucleotides, the longest identified genome in RNA viruses till date (Malik 2020). Viral genome of SARS-CoV-2 consists of 14 open reading frames (ORFs) (Bhosale et al., 2012). Among which the main reading frame ORF1ab encodes for two overlapping polyproteins 1a (pp1a) and replicase polyprotein 1ab (pp1ab) (Cowley et al., 2000). These polyproteins play a major role in the replication and transcription of the viral genome (Robb et al., 2009). The virus has a protease class of hydrolytic enzyme known as Main protease (M^{pro}) also called as chymotrypsin-like protease (3CLpro). The entry of virus in the host has mediated binding Spike protein with human angiotensin-converting enzyme receptor-2 (ACE2) (Wan et al.,

2020). Inside the host cell, proteolytic cleavage of pp1a and pp1ab by SARS-CoV-2 M^{pro} give rise to numerous non-structural proteins like RNA dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp), helicase and non-structural protein 3, 4, and 6 (nsp3, nsp4, and nsp6). These non-structural proteins are thought to be responsible for coronavirus replication. Thus, M^{pro} has emerged as important drug targets (Kirchdoerfer and Ward 2019) and as there is a very low similarity with human proteases and SARS-CoV-2 protease, inhibitors of M^{pro} will be very less toxic to humans. Human angiotensin-converting enzyme-2 (ACE2) is another potential target as it is directly involved in the entry of the virus into the host cell. ACE2 belongs to the angiotensin-converting enzyme family of dipeptidyl carboxydipeptidase. ACE2 protein catalyses the angiotensin I into angiotensin 1-9 and angiotensin II into the angiotensin 1-7. The ACE2 protein is a functional receptor for the spike glycoprotein of coronavirus diseases-2019 (COVID-19). (Magrone et al., 2020; Wan et al., 2020).

A. adenophora (commonly known as Crofton weed) is a perennial, semi-shrubby herbaceous plant which belongs to the Asteraceae family (Zhu et al., 2007). The plant is introduced as an ornamental plant, but leaf extract of the plant is found to have antimicrobial, antiseptic, analgesic, antipyretic, anti-inflammatory, larvicidal, insecticidal, wound healing, antitumor, and also antiviral activity (Poudel et al., 2020). Different research showed leaf extracts of *A. adenophora* have potential anti-viral activity against tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) and Human Immune virus (HIV). Jin et al. investigated antiviral activities of Eupatorium adenophorum leaf extract and it inactivated TMV particles and also effective in slight curative as well as preventive purpose (Jin et al., 2014). Ma et al. also suggested that *A. adenophora* has anti-HIV activity(MA et al., 2015). This excited us to do the in-silico screening of *A. adenophora* phytochemical in search of cheaper and less toxic phytochemicals against COVID-19 (André et al., 2019; Jin et al., 2014). Phytochemical screening reported that *A. adenophora* consist various class of secondary metabolites *such as* terpenoids, phenylpropanoids, flavonoids, coumarins, essential oils, sterols, phenolic acids, and alkaloids (Poudel et al., 2020; He et al., 2020). Among all the phytochemicals of *A. adenophora*, 34 phytochemicals were screened and docked with main protease (M^{pro}) of SARS-CoV-2 and angiotensin-converting enzyme receptor-2 (ACE2) of humans and results were compared with standard drugs which are found effective against SARS-CoV-2.

2. Methodology

2.1. Receptor preparation

The crystal structure of a COVID-19 main protease (M^{pro}) and human angiotensin-converting enzyme-2 (ACE2) related carboxypeptidase has been downloaded from protein data bank (PDB) website (http://www.rcsb.org/pdb↗)(Berman et al., 2000) (PDB ID: 6LU7↗ and 1R42↗) and were prepared by using Autodock tools-1.5.6. Kollman charges were added to each atom, non-polar hydrogens were merged, atom types were determined, and the structure of the prepared receptor were saved as pdbqt file.

2.2. Ligand preparation

The list of the major phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* were retrieved from the earlier reported literature (Poudel et al., 2020). The structures of known major chemical components of the plant were prepared using Chemdraw 3D pro12.0. software (Cousins 2005)and built - and - edit module in Open Babel 2.2.3 tool(O'Boyle et al., 2011). MMF F94s force field parameters were assigned to ligands atoms and then the energy has been minimized. Kollman charges were added to each ligand atoms. However, nonpolar hydrogen atoms were merged, and rotatable bonds defined. The structure of the ligands was saved in pdbqt format and used as in put ligand file for Autodock in docking.

2.3. Active site selection

The active site of the COVID-19 M^{pro} protein (PDB ID: 6LU7↗) and Human ACE2 protein (PDB ID: 1R42↗) has been predicted from different receptor cavities available. The different active site was identified from Discovery Studio 2020 (BIOVIA) client among these, site 1 of COVID-19 Mpro with coordinates (X=−10.711837, Y=12.411388 and Z=68.831286) and ACE2 receptor with coordinates (X=44.98, Y=20.98 and Z=16.80) have been chosen as the active site.

2.4. Virtual molecular docking

The receptor and ligand interaction through virtual molecular docking have been performed through AutoDock Tools-1.5.6. All the molecules have been docked to active site 1 of COVID-19 M^{pro} and active site 1 of ACE2 receptor. Ligand-receptor interaction was viewed through Discovery Studio 2020 Client (BIOVIA) and re-docking of all the compounds was done to assure reproducibility (Pathak et al., 2020).

2.5. Molecular dynamic simulation

The effects of the ligands on the structural dynamics of proteins were studied on GROMACS 5.1.4 version (Abraham et al., 2015). Each complex and apo forms of the M^{pro} and ACE2 proteins were considered for the study. Additionally, the protein and water topology were defined by GROMOS43A2 force field (van Gunsteren et al., 1996) and SPC/E water model (Berendsen et al., 1987), respectively. Each ligand topology was generated through the same force field using the PRODRG server (http://prodrg2.dyndns.org/submit.html). The charge of each simulating system was neutralized by an appropriate number of sodium ions (Na^+). Subsequently, the energy of the simulating systems was minimized by the steepest descent algorithm in 50,000 steps. The two-phase equilibration of 100ps was carried out by NVT (at constant 300K) and NPT (at constant 1 bar) ensemble equilibrations for each system. Consequently, MD simulation of 50ns was carried out for each system and the data was used for the enumeration of RMSD, RMSF and Rg. Furthermore, the binding energy was enumerated by the gMMPBSA package (Kumari et al., 2014) of GROMACS for every 0.1 ns frame of the last 20ns simulation of each protein-compound complex.

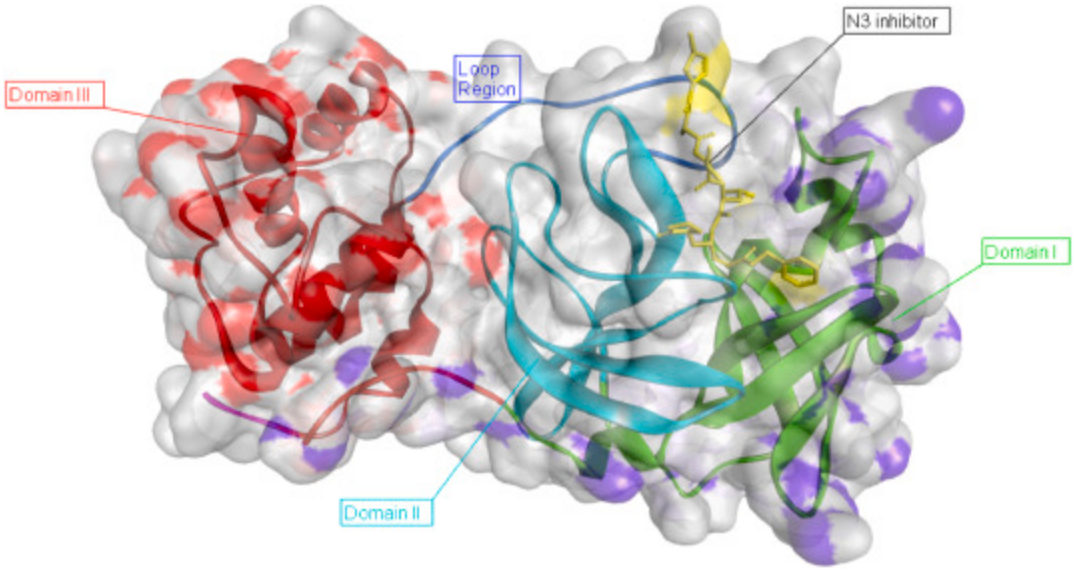
2.6. Drug likeness property

Physicochemical and pharmacokinetic properties to different phytochemical present in *A. adenophora* were studied using Swiss ADME a free online web tool (Zoete et al., 2016) (http://swissadme.ch/) by submitting their respective structures.

3. Result and discussion

3.1. Virtual screening through molecular docking

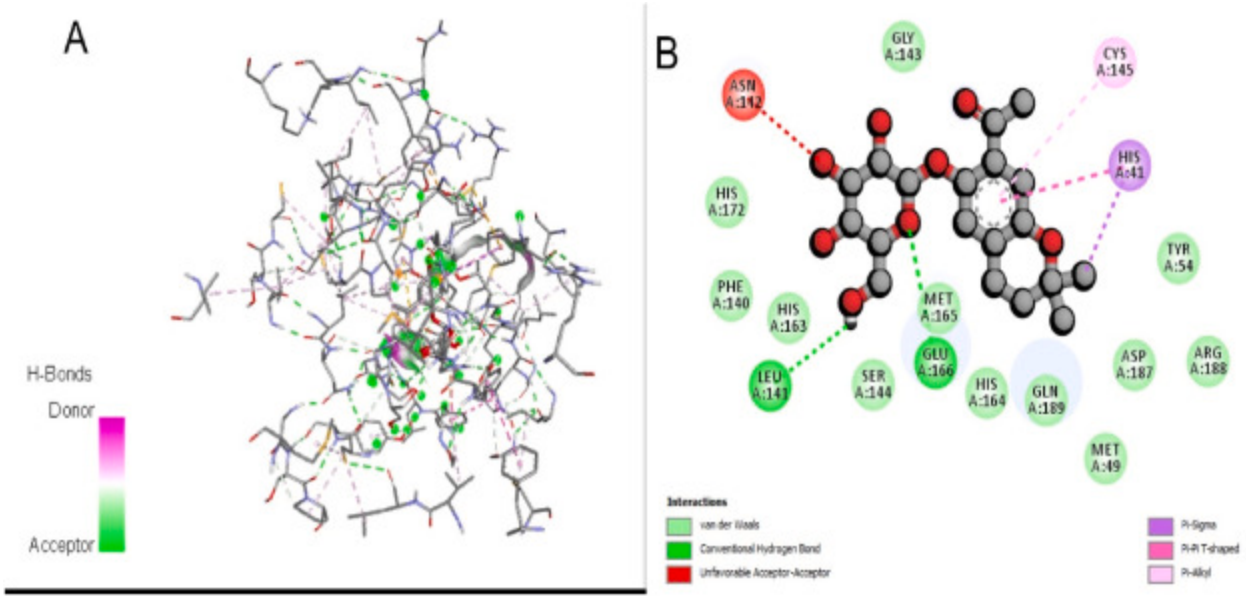
The SARS-CoV-2 M^{pro} with N3 inhibitor is divided into three domains. Domain I (from Phe 8 to Try 101), domain II (from Lys 102 to Pro 184) and domain III (from Thr 201 to Val 303). Domain I and II have an anti-parallel β-barrel structure. Domain III contains five α-helices arranged into the large anti-parallel globular cluster and is connected with domain II through loop region, which consist residue from Phe 185 to Ile 200. The substrate-binding site of M^{pro} of SARS-CoV-2 has Cys-His catalytic dyad, where N3 inhibitors bind. This is located in the cleft between domain I and domain II. Fig. 1 represents the crystal structure of COVID-19 main protease (M^{pro}) in complex with an inhibitor N3 and three domains of M^{pro}.



Download : Download high-res image (628KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 1. Crystal structure of COVID-19 main protease (M^{pro}) in complex with an inhibitor N3. Domain I shown in green, Domain II shown in cyan, Domain III is shown in red, and loop region shown in blue. (For interpretation of the references to color in this figure legend, the reader is referred to the Web version of this article.)



Download : Download high-res image (549KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 2. (A) The phytocompound 5GDE M^{pro} complex. (B) Detail amino acid interaction of 5GDE complex with M^{pro} in 2D.

The validation of the docking calculation was evaluated by redocking M^{pro} inhibitor remdesivir on the main protease protein of SARS-CoV-2 (PDB ID: 6LU7↗). It displayed that remdesivir is able to bind in the almost same pose in the same binding pocket with a binding affinity of −7.8 kcal/mol. The study showed that remdesivir interacts with M^{pro} through various types of interaction with different amino acid residues by making hydrogen bond and Van der Waals bonds. However, it was noticed that the tested ligands interact with Glu A:166, Leu A:141, Gly A:143, Ser A:144, and Cys A:145 amino acids through hydrogen bonds.

The interaction between phyto compound 5GDE and M^{pro} receptor is displayed in Fig. 2.

These interactions are compared with native inhibitor N3 and it was found that 90.90% amino acid showed similarity with that of a co-crystal ligand, which was found acceptable. Thus, the protein was further utilized for docking 34 different compounds reported in *A. adenophora* and docking score is displayed in Table 1 (Poudel et al., 2020).

Table 1. Docking score of 34 phytochemicals present in *A. Adenophora* with Main protease protein (M^{pro}) and human ACE2.

S.N	Phytochemicals	Docking score of M^{pro} (affinity Kcal/mol)	Docking score of human ACE2 (affinity Kcal/mol)
1	7-hydroxy-dehydrotremetone	-6.3	-5.7
2	7,10,11-trihydroxy dehydrotremetone	-6.6	-6.2
3	10-oxo-7-hydroxy-nordehydrotremetone	-6.2	-5.7
4	2αmethoxyl-3β-methyl-6-(acetyl-O-methyl)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran	-5.7	-5.3
5	5-b-glucosyl-7-demethoxy-encecalin (5GDE)	-8.1	-6.5
6	8-hydroxy-8-b-glucosyl-2-carene	-6.6	-5.7
7	(4S,4aR,6R)-1-acetyl-6-(acetyloxy)-4,4a,5,6-tetrahydro-4,7-dimethylnaphthalen-2(3H)-one	-6.6	-5.7
8	2-deoxo-2-(acetyloxy)-9-oxoageraphorone(DAOA)	-6.2	-6.0
9	9-oxoagerophorone(OA)	-5.9	-5.3
10	9-oxo-10,11-dehydro-agerophorone(ODA)	-6.0	-5.9
11	9β-hydroxy-ageraphorone	-5.8	-5.4
12	Muurol-4-en-7-ol	-5.7	-5.5
13	8-beta-hydroxy-9,12-dehydroverbocciolenten	-5.5	-5.2
14	2 β-acetoxy-(7α, 9β H)-3.6(11)-cadinadien-12(7)-olide	-6.9	-6.4
15	3-hydroxymuurola-4,7 (11)- dien-8-one	-6.1	-5.5
16	(+)-(5R,7S,9R,10S)-2-oxocandinan-3,6(11)-dien-12,7-olide (ODO)	-6.8	-6.5

S.N	Phytochemicals	Docking score of M^{pro} (affinity Kcal/mol)	Docking score of human ACE2 (affinity Kcal/mol)
17	(+)-7,7′-bis[(5R,7R,9R,10S)-2-oxocadinan-3,6(11)-dien-12,7-olide (BODO) (He et al., 2008)	-6.3	-8.8
18	(+)-(5R,7S,9R,10S)-7-hydroxy-7,12-epidioxycadinan-3,6(11)-dien-2-one (HEDO)	-6.7	-6.3
19	(−)-(5R,6R,7S,9R,10S)-cadinan-3-ene-6,7-diol (CED)	-5.8	-5.5
20	(+)-(5S*,6R*,9R*,10S*)-5,6-dihydroxycandinan-3-ene-2,7-dionel	-6.0	-5.7
21	7-hydroxycandinan-3-ene-2-one	-5.6	-5.4
22	5,6-dihydroxy candinan-3-ene-2,7-dione	-6.5	-5.9
23	2-acetyl-candinan-3,6-diene-7-one	-6.1	-6.1
24	Candinan-3-ene-2,7-dione	-5.8	-5.3
25	Candinan-3,6-diene-2,7-dione	-6.2	-5.6
26	1,6-dihydroxy-1-isopropyl-4,7-dimethyl-3,4dihydronaphthalen-2(1H)-one	-6.4	-5.8
27	(4R,5S)-4-Hydroxy-5-isopropyl-2-methyl-2-cyclohexehone	-4.9	-4.6
28	5-O-caffeoylquinic acid (5-CQA)	-7.2	-6.3
29	3-O-caffeoylquinic acid (3-CQA)	-8.0	-6.4
30	4-O-caffeoylquinic acid (4-CQA)	-7.6	-6.4
31	5-O-trans-o-coumaroylquinic acid methyl ester	-7.0	-6.3
32	methyl (1*R*,3*S*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-[(*E*)-3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)prop-2-enoyl]oxy-	-7.3	-6.2

S.N	Phytochemicals	Docking score of M^{pro} (affinity Kcal/mol)	Docking score of human ACE2 (affinity Kcal/mol)
	1,4,5-trihydroxycyclohexane-1-carboxylate		
33	methyl 3,4-bis[[(*E*)-3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)prop-2-enoyl]oxy]-1,5-dihydroxycyclohexane-1-carboxylate (MDPC)	-7.4	-7.3
34	Methyl 3,5-di-O-caffeoyl quinate (MDCQ)	-8.0	-6.8

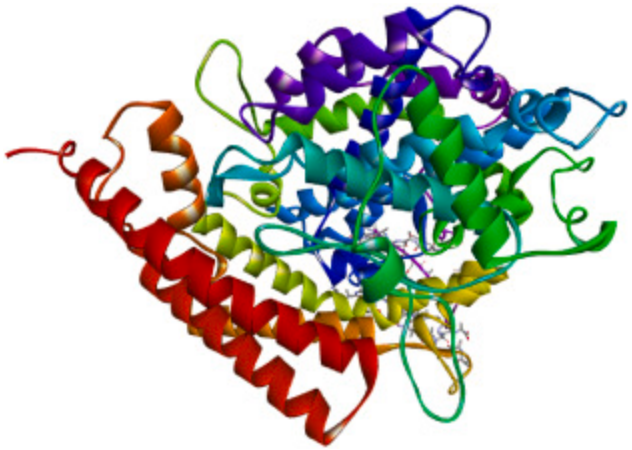
It was found that among these only three compounds (5GDE, 3-CQA and MDCQ) have better binding affinities than remdesivir. Moreover, 5GDE showed the highest docking affinity (−8.1 kcal/mol) in the entire set of molecules. The comparison between remdesivir and phytocompound 5GDE complex displayed 100% similarity in interaction pattern, illustrated in Table 2. Among all the interacting amino acids of 3-CQA and MDCQ it was found that 94.11% and 94.73% amino acid interactions are similar with remdesivir, respectively. The docking score along with hydrogen bond and Van der Waals interactions of these three compounds with M^{Pro} is shown in Table 2.

Table 2. Molecular interaction of top 3 high scoring compounds with Main protease protein (M^{pro}) of SARS-CoV-2.

S.N.	Compounds	H-bond interactions	Van der waals interactions
1.	5GDE	LEU A:141, GLU A: 166	MET A:49, TRY A:54, ARG A:188, ASP A:187, GLN A:189, SER A:144, MET A:165, SER A:144, HIS A:163, PHE A:140, HIS A:172, GLY A:143
2.	3-CQA	GLU A: 166, CYS A: 145, THR A: 190	HIS A:172, PHE A:140, LEU A:141, ASN A:142, SER A:144, GLN A:189, ARG A:188, GLN A:192, ALA A:191, PRO A:168, HIS A:164
3	MDCQ	LEU A:141, HIS A:163, SER A:144, SER A:144, GLN A:192	PHE A:140, ASN A:142, GLY A:143 TRY A:54, ASP A:187, ARG A:188, GLN A:189, THR A: 190, LEU A:167, GLN A: 166

The human ACE2 enzyme is composed of two domains; the first is zinc metallopeptidase domain depicted in Fig. 3(residues 19–611) and the second C terminus domain (residues 612–740). The first domain is 42% identical to the corresponding

domains of humans ACE. The first zinc metallopeptidase domain is located near the bottom and on one side of the large active site cleft. The zinc is coordinated by His374, His 378, Glu402 and single water molecules (in the native structure). The second domain is identical to human collectrin by 48%. The ACE2 metallopeptidase domain was divided into two subdomains (I and II), that formed the two sides of a long deep cleft with dimensions of40 A˘ long by 15A˘ wide by 25A˘ deep. The catalytic subdomains are only connected at the floor of the active site cleft.



Download : Download high-res image (452KB)

Download : Download full-size image

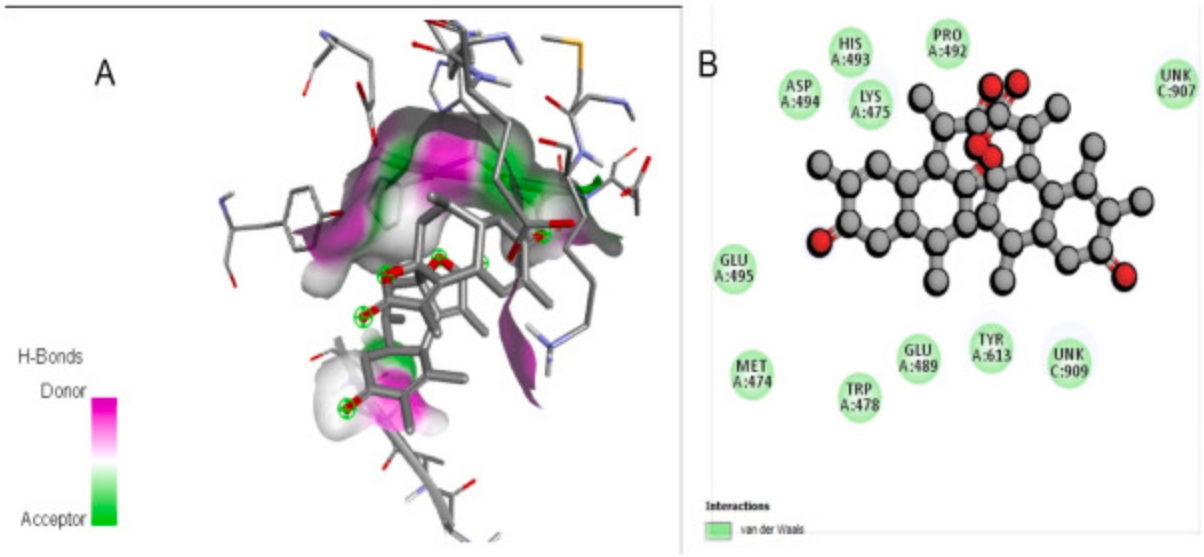
Fig. 3. The crystal structure of COVID-19 zinc metallopeptidase domain of ACE2 (PDB ID: 1R42↗). Surface is created around the co-crystal ligand present in the binding pocket in which docking is performed for the study.

Initially, re-docking of the endogenous or native co-crystal ligand has been performed for the validation of the whole docking procedure ensuring its reproducibility. A total of 34 phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* have been docked with human ACE2. The receptor-ligand interactions have indicated that all the compounds used for docking procedure have a substantial binding affinity among them top 5 high scoring compounds are listed in Table 3.

Table 3. Enlisting of molecular interactions of top 5 high scoring *A. adenophora* phytochemical with human ACE2 protein.

S.N.	Compound Name	Hydrogen bond	Van der Waals interaction
1	BODO	-	UNK C:909, PRO A: 492, TYR A:613, GLU A:495, GLU A:489, TRP A: 478, HIS A: 493, ASP A:494, LYS A:475, UNK C:907, MET A:474
2	MDPC	TYR A:613, ARG A:482, ASP A:471, GLU A:489	UNK C:910, UNK C:909, ASP A:615, SER A:611, ASP A:609, ASP A:494, HIS A:493, GLN A:472, TRP A:478
3	5GDE	HIS A:493	-
4	ODO	ARG A:482	TRP A:478, PRO A:492, GLU A:489, THR A:608
5	MDCQ	HIS A:493, GLU A:479	SER A:611, ALA A:614, TYR A:613, UNK C:909, ARG A:482, TRP A:478, UNK C:908, UNK C:907, MET A:474, ASP A:494

Top 5 high scoring compounds has been taken into consideration for further detailed analysis as reflected in Table 3. BODO has shown the best binding affinity towards the human ACE2 receptor with a binding energy of −8.7 kcal/mol. This binding energy is higher than best fit inhibitor (Hydroxychloroquine) binding affinity, which is −6.3 kcal/mol. The best fit inhibitor was selected by comparing binding affinity of several drugs that have shown activity against COVID-19. The interaction of the compound with the human ACE2 receptor is depicted in Fig. 4. Docking study has exhibited that BODO interacts with 11 amino acid residue among which 7 residues (GLU A:495, ASP A:494, PRO A:492, HIS A:493, TRP A:478, TYR A:613, GLUA:489) matches with that to the inhibitor hydroxychloroquine. Thus, can be predicted compound binds to the receptor properly to inhibit human ACE2 protein.



Download : Download high-res image (394KB)

Download : Download full-size image

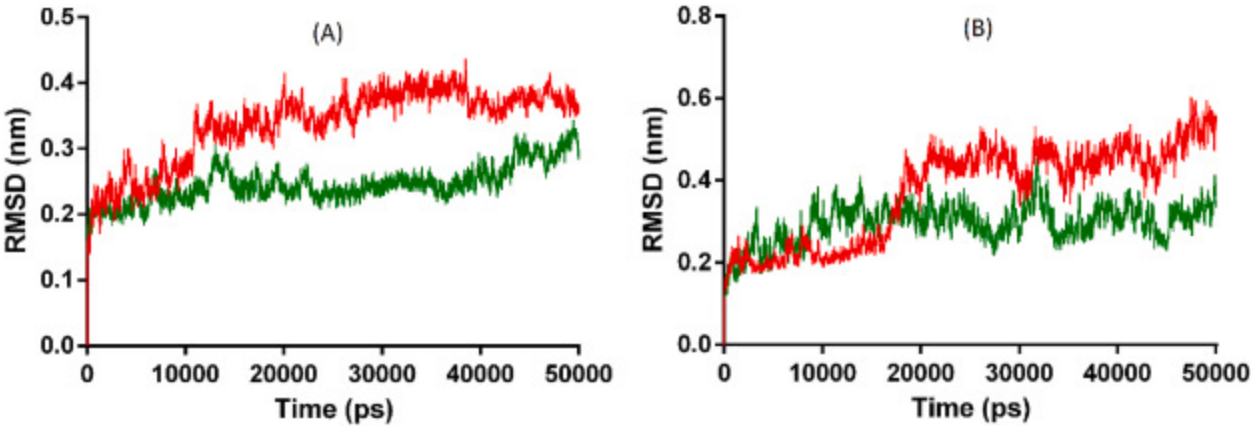
Fig. 4. (A) The phytocompound BODO ACE2 complex. (B) Detail amino acid interaction of BODO with ACE2 receptor in 2D.

MDPC, a phytochemical of *A. adenophora,* has shown a binding energy score of −7.5 kcal/mol, which is higher than the native inhibitor. The study stated that MDPC interacted with 10 amino acid residues (TYR A:613, ARG A:482, GLU A:489, ASP A:494, ASP A:471, HIS A:493, TRP A:478, GLN A:472, GLU A:495 and GLU A:479), which matches with the hydroxychloroquine. Further, it was also noticed that 5GDE have higher binding affinity (−6.7 kcal/mol) with human ACE2 than native inhibitor hydroxychloroquine. Additionally, the careful study of interaction emphasized that the compound 5GDE interacts with two amino acids through hydrogen and pi-alkyl bonds, where one amino acid residue HIS A: 493 found common to the native hydroxychloroquine.

A. adenophora phytochemical have already proven anti-TMV and anti-HIV activity. In our in-silico study molecular dynamics of phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* done with M^{pro} and ACE2 virtually and found that phytochemicals BODO and 5GDE, were potential blockers of M^{pro} and ACE2. These plant materials are extremely abundant, convenient to harvest and easy to collect. This will lead to cost effective drug can be develop.

3.2. Molecular dynamic simulation

To elucidate the effects of the selected compounds (BODO and 5GDE) on the structural attributes of the respective protein (ACE2 and M^{pro}), the comparative MD analysis was carried out between each protein complex and its apo form. The average RMSD of M^{pro} complex and apo form was enumerated as 0.37, and 0.29 nm, wherein M^{pro} exhibited low deviations in backbone atoms with 5GDE in comparison to the apo structure. The RMSD graph is displayed in Fig. 5.



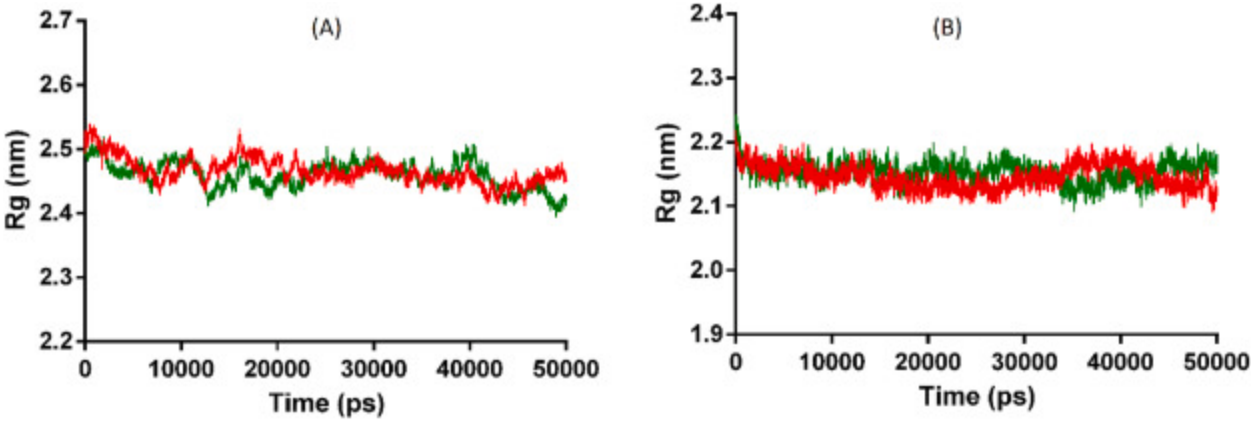
Download : Download high-res image (479KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 5. A and B displayed RMSD of ACE2 and M^{pro}.

Further, the effect of interaction between compound and M^{pro} protein on its compactness was analyzed by Rg analysis. The respective average Rg values were computed as 2.14 and 2.15 nm for apo and complex form, suggesting that both forms exhibited a similar level of compactness during simulation. The backbone atom fluctuation of the M^{pro} residues in both forms was analyzed by the RMSF data, which showed that apo and complex form have an average RMSF of 0.21 and 0.15 nm, respectively. It indicates that backbone atoms of M^{pro} residues showed low fluctuation in complex form in comparison to the apo form. The MD analysis showed that the M^{pro} complex structure retains similar compactness like its apo structure, but with increased structural stability and low residue fluctuation in comparison to the apo form during the simulation. Analysis also depicts the stability of interactions between 5-β-glucosyl-7-demethoxy-encecalinand protein during the dynamics.

Simultaneously, the average RMSD of the respectiveACE2 complex and apo form was enumerated as 0.34, and 0.25 nm that delineate lesser deviations in the backbone atoms of the ACE2-compound complex in comparison to its apo structure. The effect on compactness of the ACE2 after accommodating the BODO was analyzed through Rg analysis. The average Rg value for the ACE2 apo and complex form was found to be 2.47 and 2.46 nm, respectively, indicating that both apo and complex forms of ACE2 protein attained a similar level of compactness. The Rg graph is displayed in Fig. 6.

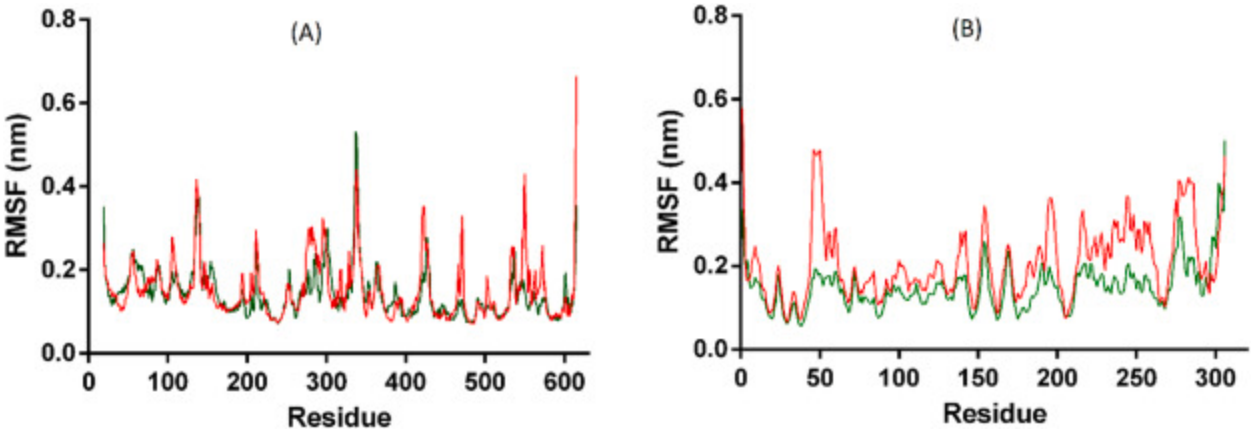


Download : Download high-res image (353KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 6. (A) and (B) displayed Rg of ACE2 and M^{pro}.

The backbone atom fluctuation of the ACE2 residues was analyzed by the RMSF data, which showed similar levels of fluctuation in apo and complex forms with an average RMSF of 0.15 and 0.14 nm, respectively. The MD analysis showed that the ACE2 complex structure retains similar compactness and residues motion like its apo structure, but with increased structural stability during the simulation. The RMSF graph is displayed in Fig. 7.



Download : Download high-res image (382KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 7. (A) and (B) displayed RMSF of ACE2 and M^{pro}.

In addition, the interface affinity of the protein and compound was analyzed by calculating the binding energy of the protein complex. The average binding energy calculated for ACE2 (BODO) and M^{pro}-(5GDE) complex is presented in Table 4 which represents that Van der Waals energy played a major role in maintaining the binding of compounds with protein in both of the complexes during the dynamics.

Table 4. The Binding energy of the protein-compound complex. Drug likeness property.

Complex	Van der Waal energy (Kj/mol)	Electrostatic energy (Kj/mol)	Polar salvation energy(Kj/mol)	SASA energy(Kj/mol)	Binding energy (Kj/mol)
ACE2-Comp	-181.67±0.97	-7.39±0.62	98.33±1.51	-15.75±0.08	-106.52±1.33
M^{pro}-Comp	-166.48±0.82	-40.96±0.65	108.23±0.89	-17.03±0.074	-116.31±0.89

Drug likeness is a crucial step in the initial step of drug discovery. The pharmacological properties of 4 high scoring phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* were studied. The pharmacokinetics profiling and toxicity predictions need to assess its drug-likeness property using Swiss ADME, which works on interpreting the molecular fingerprint of the submitted query structure, and analyze the presence or absence of chemical features in a molecule to publish pharmacokinetic data. The *in silico* pharmacokinetic predictions of the top 10 compounds of *A. adenophora* are depicted in Table 5.

Table 5. In silico pharmacokinetics prediction (Lipinski parameters) for the top 4 phytochemicals of *A. adenophora*.

Pharmacological properties	***BODO***	***5GDE***	***MDCQ***	***MDPC***
MW	504.61	382.40	532.49	516.49
n-rotb	1	4	11	10
n-HbA	6	8	12	11
n-HbD	0	4	6	6
ILog P	3.12	2.45	2.92	2.39
Lipinski violations	1	0	3	3
Lead likeness violations	1	1	2	2

MW: Molecular Weight, n-rotb: Number of rotable bonds, n-HbA: Number of hydrogen bond acceptor, n-HbD: Number of hydrogen bond donors.

Four compounds depicted in the table are high scoring compounds in 2 different receptors ACE2 and M^{pro} but BODO and 5GDE are the top-scoring compounds, respectively. These compounds also have single lead likeness violations. Therefore, these molecules can be considered for the further drug development steps. Among these two 5GDE has a molecular weight less than 500, which follow Lipinski's rule of five. This can propound that the compounds are safer and permissible for further study. The computational activity predication for expressed that selected phyto-compounds have mild to moderate potency against COVID-19 proteins.

3.3. Probable mechanism of action

The coronavirus is positive-strand RNA viruses (Weiss and Navas-Martin 2005). The process of viral replication and transcription is controlled by two overlapping polyproteins, the pp1a (replicase 1a, 450KD) and pp1ab (replicase 1ab, 750KD) (Yang et al., 2003). Frame shifting of the ribosome is essential for the expression of the C-proximal of pp1ab polyprotein (Kjær and Belsham 2018). The release of functional polypeptides from both polyproteins is controlled by M^{pro}, and necessary for proteolytic processing of polyproteins translated from viral RNA. The main protease slices the polyprotein by autolytic cleavage of the enzymes. This indicates blocking the activity of the main proteases could lead to inhibition of viral replication 5GDE, inhibits the M^{pro} with more binding affinity than native inhibitor through the multiple types of interactions.

Coronavirus also presents on protein S a specific binding site for ACE2 which serves as an entry point into the host cell. Various researches on ACE2 suggest, blocking the ACE2 receptor could make it more difficult for coronavirus to enter cells. BODO binds to the ACE2 receptor more effectively with higher binding affinity and most of the amino acid residue (GLU A:495, ASP A:494, PRO A:492, HIS A:493, TRP A:478, TYR A:613, GLUA:489) matches with native inhibitor hydroxychloroquine. 5GDE and BODO are phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* inhibit the viral replication and block the entry of SARS-CoV-2 through M^{pro} and ACE2 receptors. Phytochemicals of these two *A. adenophora* phytochemicals have shown more effective binding energy than its native inhibitors remdesivir and hydroxychloroquine.

4. Conclusion

Our aim of the study was to investigate efficiency of the phytocompounds against coronavirus. Therefore, the phytochemicals of *A. adenophora* are *in-silico* tested against M^{pro} and ACE2 receptor. Furthermore, the docking calculation confirmed that the phytocompound 5GDE consist significant identical interaction with selected protein as referenced compounds. However, the binding energy was measure slightly above than standard drug remdisivir and hydroxychloroquine. The MD analysis of M^{pro} complex structure found to retain similar compactness like its apo structure, but with increased structural stability and low residues fluctuation in comparison to the apo form during the simulation. Whereas, phytochemical BODO has shown high binding affinity (score), almost stable interaction with ACE2 receptor, retain similar compactness, and residues motion like its apo structure, but with increased structural stability during the simulation.

Our study showed natural compounds from *A. adenophora* have either similar or greater binding affinity than that of natural inhibitor remdesivir and hydroxychloroquine. Hence, 5GDE and BODO can be further developed as drug candidates against M^{pro} and ACE2 receptor of coronavirus, responsible for ongoing pandemic. Finally, we suggest from this *in-silico* study that *A. adenophora* phytochemicals block both M^{pro} and ACE2 receptors.

Declaration of competing interest

Authors have no conflict of interest regarding this article.

Acknowledgements

The authors are very grateful to the Department of Biotechnology and Bioinformatics, School of Life Sciences, University of Hyderabad, Hyderabad, Telangana, India. Prateek Pathak acknowledged that the work was supported by Government of the Russian Federation, contract 02. A03.21.0011.

Recommended articles

References

André et al., 2019 R. André, J. Catarro, D. Freitas, R. Pacheco, M.C. Oliveira, M.L. Serralheiro, P.L. Falé

Action of euptox A from Ageratina adenophora juice on human cell lines: a top- down study using FTIR spectroscopy and protein profiling

Toxicol. Vitro, 57 (2019), pp. 217-225

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Berman et al., 2000 H.M. Berman, J. Westbrook, Z. Feng, G. Gilliland, T.N. Bhat, H. Weissig, I.N. Shindyalov, P.E. Bourne

The protein data bank

Nucleic Acids Res., 28 (1) (2000), pp. 235-242

Google Scholar ↗

BhosaleYegnanarayan et al., 2012 U.A. Bhosale, R. Yegnanarayan, P. Pophale, R. Somani

Effect of aqueous extracts of Achyranthes aspera Linn. on experimental animal model for inflammation

Ancient Sci. Life, 31 (2012), pp. 202-206, 10.4103/0257-7941.107362 ↗

Google Scholar ↗

Bostanciklioglu and Temiz, 2020 S.M. Bostanciklioglu, E. Temiz

Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 is penetrating to dementia research

Curr. Neurovascular Res. (2020), pp. 1-5

Google Scholar ↗

Brockmeier and Lager, 2002 S.L. Brockmeier, K.M. Lager

Experimental airborne transmission of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus and Bordetella bronchiseptica

Vet. Microbiol., 89 (4) (2002), pp. 267-275

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Chen et al., 2020 Z.L. Chen, W.J. Zhang, Y. Lu, C. Guo, Z.M. Guo, C.H. Liao, X. Zhang, Y. Zhang, X.H. Han, Q.L. Li, J.H. Lu

From SARS-CoV to 2019-nCoV outbreak: similarities in the early epidemics and prediction of future trends

Chinese Med J, 133 (9) (2020), pp. 1112-1114

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Cousins, 2005 R.K. Cousins

ChemDraw ultra 9.0. CambridgeSoft, 100 CambridgePark drive

J. Am. Chem. Soc., 127 (11) (2005), pp. 4115-4116, 10.1021/ja0410237 ↗

Cambridge, MA 02140

www.cambridgesoft.com ↗

Google Scholar ↗

Cowley et al., 2000 J.A. Cowley, C.M. Dimmock, K.M. Spann, P.J. Walker

Gill-associated virus of Penaeus monodon prawns: an invertebrate virus with ORF1a and ORF1b genes related to arteri-and coronaviruses

J. Gen. Virol., 81 (6) (2000), pp. 1473-1484

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

He et al., 2008 L. He, J. Hou, M. Gan, *et al.*

Cadinane sesquiterpenes from the leaves of Eupatorium adenophorum

J. Nat. Prod., 71 (8) (2008), pp. 1485-1488, 10.1021/np800242w ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Jin et al., 2014 Y. Jin, L. Hou, M. Zhang, Z. Tian, A. Cao, X. Xie

Antiviral activity of *Eupatorium adenophorum* leaf extract against tobacco mosaic virus

Crop Protect., 60 (2014), pp. 28-33

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Kirchdoerfer and Ward, 2019 R.N. Kirchdoerfer, A.B. Ward

Structure of the SARS-CoV nsp12 polymerase bound to nsp7 and nsp8 co-factors

Nat. Commun., 10 (1) (2019), pp. 1-9

Google Scholar ↗

Kjær and Belsham, 2018 J. Kjær, G.J. Belsham

Modifications to the foot-and-mouth disease virus 2A peptide: influence on polyprotein processing and virus replication

J. Virol., 92 (8) (2018)

Google Scholar ↗

Lu et al., 2020 C.C. Lu, M.Y. Chen, W.S. Lee, Y.L. Chang

Potential therapeutic agents against COVID-19: what we know so far

J. Chin. Med. Assoc., 1–3 (2020), 10.1097/JCMA.0000000000000318 ↗

Google Scholar ↗

Ma et al., 2015 Q.P. Ma, C.R. Cheng, X.F. Li, X.Y. Liang, J. Ding

Chemistry, pharmacological activities and analysis of Ageratina adenophora

Asian J. Chem., 27 (2015), pp. 4311-4316

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Magrone et al., 2020 T. Magrone, M. Magrone, E. Jirillo

Focus on receptors for coronaviruses with special reference to angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 as a potential drug target-a perspective. Endocrine, Metabolic & Immune Disorders-Drug Targets (Formerly Current Drug Targets-Immune

Endocrine & Metabolic Disorders), 20 (6) (2020), pp. 807-811

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Malik, 2020 Y.A. Malik

Properties of coronavirus and SARS-CoV-2

Malays. J. Pathol., 42 (1) (2020), pp. 3-11

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

NCT04382391, 2020 NCT04382391

Study assessing vagus nerve stimulation in covid-19 respiratory symptoms

https://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT04382391 ↗ (2020)

Google Scholar ↗

Neupane et al., 2020 N.P. Neupane, A.K. Das, A.K. Singh, A. Verma

Off label medication to combat COVID-19: review Results to Date

Bentham Sci Coronaviruses, 1 (2020), pp. 1-2

CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

O'Boyle et al., 2011 N.M. O'Boyle, M. Banck, C.A. James, C. Morley, T. Vandermeersch, G.R. Hutchison

Open Babel: an open chemical toolbox

J. Cheminf., 3 (1) (2011), p. 33

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Pathak et al., 2020 P. Pathak, J. Novak, V. Naumovich, M. Grishina, A. Balkrishna, N. Sharma, V. Sharma, V. Potemkin, A. Verma

Polyphenolic rich extract of Oroxylum indicum alleviate β-glucuronidase activity via down-regulate oxidative stress: experimental and computational studies

Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology, 29 (2020), p. 101804

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Poudel et al., 2020 R. Poudel, N.P. Neupane, I.H. Mukeri, S. Alok, A. Verma

An updated review on invasive nature, phytochemical evaluation, & pharmacological activity of Ageratina Adenophora

11 (2020), pp. 2510-2520, 10.13040/IJPSR.0975-8232.11(6).2510-20 ↗

6

Google Scholar ↗

Robb et al., 2009 N.C. Robb, M. Smith, F.T. Vreede, E. Fodor

NS2/NEP protein regulates transcription and replication of the influenza virus RNA genome

J. Gen. Virol., 90 (6) (2009), pp. 1398-1407

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Sahai et al., 2020 R. Sahai, S. Dutta, T. Kumar

Anticoagulants in COVID-19 therapy: an evidence-based review

Int. J. Pharmaceut. Sci. Rev. Res., 63 (1) (2020), pp. 191-195

Google Scholar ↗

Tian et al., 2020 H. Tian, Y. Liu, Y. Li, C.H. Wu, B. Chen, M.U. Kraemer, B. Li, J. Cai, B. Xu, Q. Yang, B. Wang

An investigation of transmission control measures during the first 50 days of the COVID-19 epidemic in China

Science, 368 (6491) (2020), pp. 638-642

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Tskhay et al., 2020 A. Tskhay, A. Yezhova, K. Alibek

COVID-19 pandemic: is chronic inflammation a major cause of death?

medRxiv (2020), pp. 1-16, 10.1101/2020.05.12.20099572 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Wan et al., 2020 Y. Wan, J. Shang, R. Graham, R.S. Baric, F. Li

Receptor recognition by the novel coronavirus from wuhan: an analysis based on decade-long structural studies of SARS coronavirus

J. Virol., 94 (7) (2020), pp. 1-9, 10.1128/jvi.00127-20 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Weiss Susan, 2005 R. Weiss Susan

Coronavirus pathogenesis and the emerging pathogen severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus/susan R. Weiss, sonia navas-martin

Microbiol. Mol. Biol. Rev., 69 (4) (2005), pp. 635-664

Google Scholar ↗

World Health Organization, 2020 World Health Organization

Modes of Transmission of Virus Causing COVID-19: Implications for IPC Precaution Recommendations: Scientific Brief

World Health Organization (2020), p. 27

March 2020 (No. WHO/2019-nCoV/Sci_Brief/Transmission_modes/2020.1

CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Worldometers, 2020 Worldometers

Coronavirus cases

Retrieved November 27

https://www.worldometers.info/coronavirus/ ↗ (2020)

Google Scholar ↗

Wu et al., 2020 R. Wu, L. Wang, H.C.D. Kuo, A. Shannar, R. Peter, P.J. Chou, S. Li, R. Hudlikar, X. Liu, Z. Liu, G.J. Poiani

An update on current therapeutic drugs treating COVID-19

Current Pharmacology Reports (2020), p. 1

View PDF View article Google Scholar ↗

Yang et al., 2003 H. Yang, M. Yang, Y. Ding, Y. Liu, Z. Lou, Z. Zhou, L. Sun, L. Mo, S. Ye, H. Pang, G.F. Gao

The crystal structures of severe acute respiratory syndrome virus main protease and its complex with an inhibitor

Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. Unit. States Am., 100 (23) (2003), pp. 13190-13195

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Zhu et al., 2007 L. Zhu, O.J. Sun, W. Sang, Z. Li, K. Ma

Predicting the spatial distribution of an invasive plant species (Eupatorium adenophorum) in China

Landsc. Ecol., 22 (8) (2007), pp. 1143-1154

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Zoete et al., 2016 V. Zoete, A. Daina, C. Bovigny, O. Michielin

Swiss similarity: a web tool for low to ultra high throughput ligand-based virtual screening

J. Chem. Inf. Model., 56 (8) (2016), pp. 1399-1404, 10.1021/acs.jcim.6b00174 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Cited by (14)

An understanding of coronavirus and exploring the molecular dynamics simulations to find promising candidates against the Mpro of nCoV to combat the COVID-19: A systematic review

2022, Journal of Infection and Public Health

> *Citation Excerpt :*
>
> …In complex form, Mpro of nCoV backbone atoms fluctuated less than in apo form. The MD simulations revealed that the configuration of the Mpro of nCoV complex is compact like its apo configuration, but with improved structural stability and less residue fluctuation [98]. Desmond was used to conducting 100 ns MD simulations of Mpro of nCoV (6LU7) complexed with Amentoflavone and Morusin.…

Show abstract

An updated review on Eupatorium adenophorum Spreng. [Ageratina adenophora (Spreng.)]: traditional uses, phytochemistry, pharmacological activities and toxicity

2022, Pharmacological Research - Modern Chinese Medicine

Show abstract

Polyathia longifolia: Redox potential of a cellulose nanocrystal derivative and ADMET predictions of selected compounds

2022, Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology

> *Citation Excerpt :*
>
> …Lipinski's rule of 5 restricted the longimide A from oral administration because it violated two parameters. Interestingly, the other eight ligands were orally active and are consistent with our previous report (Neupane et al., 2021) (see Table 3). Parameters such as water solubility, Caco-2 permeability, intestinal absorption, skin permeability, glycoprotein substrate, and glycoprotein inhibitor were used to predict the absorption pharmacokinetics.…

Show abstract

Anti-bacterial efficacy of bio-fabricated silver nanoparticles of aerial part of Moringa oleifera lam: Rapid green synthesis, In-Vitro and In-Silico screening

2022, Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology

> *Citation Excerpt :*
>
> …Re-docking of all the compounds was performed to assure reproducibility. Receptor-ligands interactions have been analyzed through Discovery Studio 2020 Client (BIOVIA) (Neupane et al., 2021; Zoete et al., 2016). The drug-likeness properties of the four high scoring ligands molecules were analyzed using the Swiss ADME server (https://www.swissadme.ch/) (The ADME Parameters of all four ligand molecules were carried out using ADMET lab server (http://admet.scbdd.com) to predict the various pharmacokinetic & pharmacodynamics properties.)…

Show abstract

Comparative study of the interaction of ivermectin with proteins of interest associated with SARS-CoV-2: A computational and biophysical approach

2021, Biophysical Chemistry

> *Citation Excerpt :*
>
> …The host nuclear import system can be bound and sequestered by pathogens such as SARS-CoV-2 allowing transportation of viral proteins to the host nucleus leading to increased viral replication [12–15]. Additionally, we also consider the multi-functional helicase (nsp13) of SARS-CoV-2 responsible for viral replication (PDB: 6ZSL) [16–18], and the main protease (Mpro) of SARS-CoV-2 (PDB: 6LU7) as it is a key enzyme of coronaviruses and has a fundamental role in mediating viral replication and transcription, making it an attractive target for drugs [11,19–22]. All structures were obtained in PDB format from the RCSB protein database (https://www.rcsb.org/)….

Show abstract

Structural deformability induced in proteins of potential interest associated with COVID-19 by binding of homologues present in ivermectin: Comparative study based in elastic networks models

2021, Journal of Molecular Liquids

Citation Excerpt :

…The host nuclear import system can be bound and sequestered by pathogens such as SARS-CoV-2 allowing transportation of viral proteins to the host nucleus leading to increased viral replication [25–29]. Additionally, we also consider the multi-functional helicase (nsp13) of SARS-CoV-2 responsible for viral replication (PDB: 6ZSL) [30–32], and the main protease (Mpro) of SARS-CoV-2 (PDB: 6LU7) as it is a key enzyme of coronaviruses and has a fundamental role in mediating viral replication and transcription, making it an attractive target for drugs [33–37]. All structures were obtained in PDB format from the RCSB Protein Data Bank (https://www.rcsb.org/)….

Show abstract

View all citing articles on Scopus

1 Both the authors have equally contributed to the manuscript.

View Abstract

© 2021 Elsevier Ltd. All rights reserved.

All content on this site: Copyright © 2024 Elsevier B.V., its licensors, and contributors. All rights are reserved, including those for text and data mining, AI training, and similar technologies. For all open access content, the Creative Commons licensing terms apply.

RJC

RASĀYAN ***J. Chem.***
Vol. 14 | No. 3 |2068-2076| July - September | 2021
ISSN: 0974-1496 | e-ISSN: 0976-0083 | CODEN: RJCABP
http://www.rasayanjournal.com
http://www.rasayanjournal.co.in

SYNTHESIS, CHARACTERIZATION AND IN VITRO ANTIFUNGAL EVALUATION OF TRANSITION METAL COMPLEXES DERIVED FROM *N′*-SUBSTITUTED-4-METHYLPIPERIDINE-1-CARBOTHIOHYDRAZIDES

Juhi Baranwal[1], Praveen Kumar[2,✉], Manisha Kumari[3] and V.S. Tiwari[4]

[1]Department of Chemistry, Ranchi University, Ranchi-834002, Jharkhand, India.
[2,✉]Department of Pharmaceutical Chemistry, Faculty of Pharmacy, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah-206130, Uttar Pradesh, India.
[3]Department of Chemistry, R.T.C. Institute of Technology, Ranchi-835219, Jharkhand, India.
[4]Department of Chemistry, Doranda College, Ranchi-834002, Jharkhand, India.
✉Corresponding Author: praveensha77@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Series of coordination complexes of Cr(III), Ni(II) and Zn(II) with various *N′*-substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (**6a-f**) have been synthesized and characterized quantitatively and qualitatively by UV-visible spectroscopy, FTIR spectroscopy, ^{1}H NMR studies; microelemental analysis; electrical conductance values and magnetic susceptibility measurements. The metal complexes displayed greater antifungal activity than corresponding ligands and the order of their activity was found as [M(salmpth)(Py)] > [M(fmpth)$_2$] > [M(talmpth)$_2$]. The greater antifungal activity of metal complexes was found due to decrease in polarity of metal ions while coordinating with ligands during chelation process. The algacidal effect of few ligands *viz*. H_2salmpth, Hfmpth and Htalmpth and its chromium(III) complexes were also studied.

Keywords: Synthesis, Transition Metal Complexes, N'-Substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides, Antifungal Activity, Algacidal Effect.

INTRODUCTION

Modern coordination chemistry involves various types of strategically designed and functionalized ligand systems. Among them, *N′*-substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides are a salient class of Schiff base ligands in coordination chemistry due to the dual coordinating sites (N and S) as potential donors.[1-5] Moreover, the coordination compounds of transition metal ions with bidentate ligands having N and S as donor sites are considered significant due to similarity with redox-active metalloenzymes.[6-10] Furthermore, the potential of Schiff base ligands has urged the researchers to undertake them as an elite ligand.[11,12]

The synthesis of Schiff base ligands and their corresponding metal complexes in a controlled manner becomes an important strategic pathway.[13-16] In this study, we chose readily available, low-cost and potential organic molecules as precursors to synthesize the new Schiff base ligands and their metal complexes. The unique advantage of these Schiff base ligands is the change in their ligation behavior depending on the metallic systems and the stoichiometry.[17,18] Therefore given above said advantages, we had synthesized, characterized the novel Schiff base ligands (*N′*-Substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides, (6a-f) and their corresponding complexes of Cr(III), Ni(II) and Zn(II) (7a-z). These Schiff base ligands (6a-f) and potential metal complexes were subjected to antifungal evaluation and algicidal effect.

EXPERIMENTAL

Materials and Methods

The chemicals and solvents were procured from Sigma-Aldrich, USA and Merck KGaA, Darmstadt, Germany and employed without any purification.

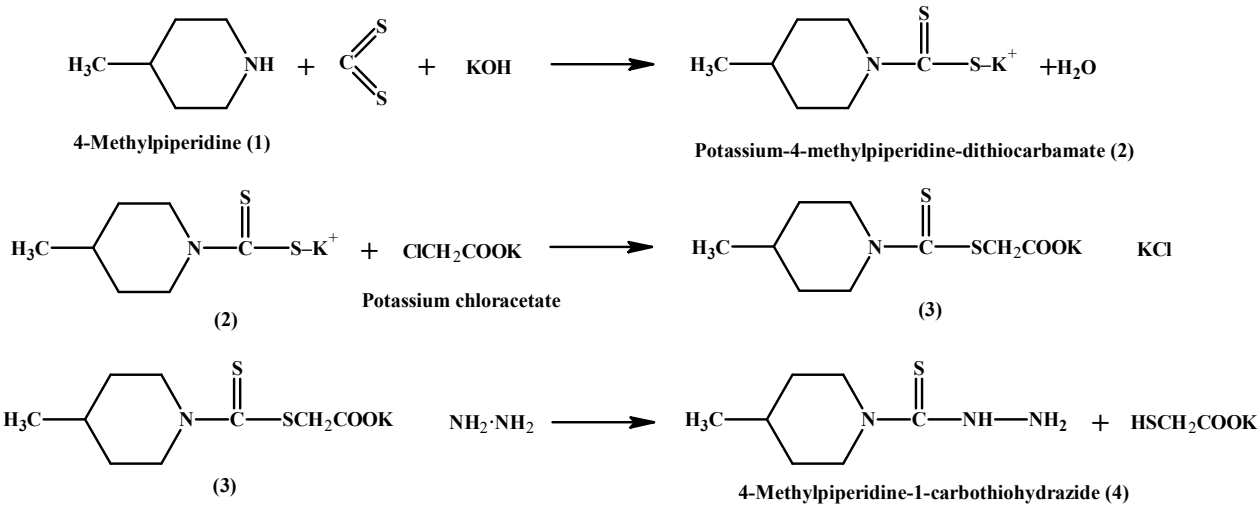
http://doi.org/10.31788/RJC.2021.1436204
This work is licensed under a CC BY 4.0 license.

Characterization

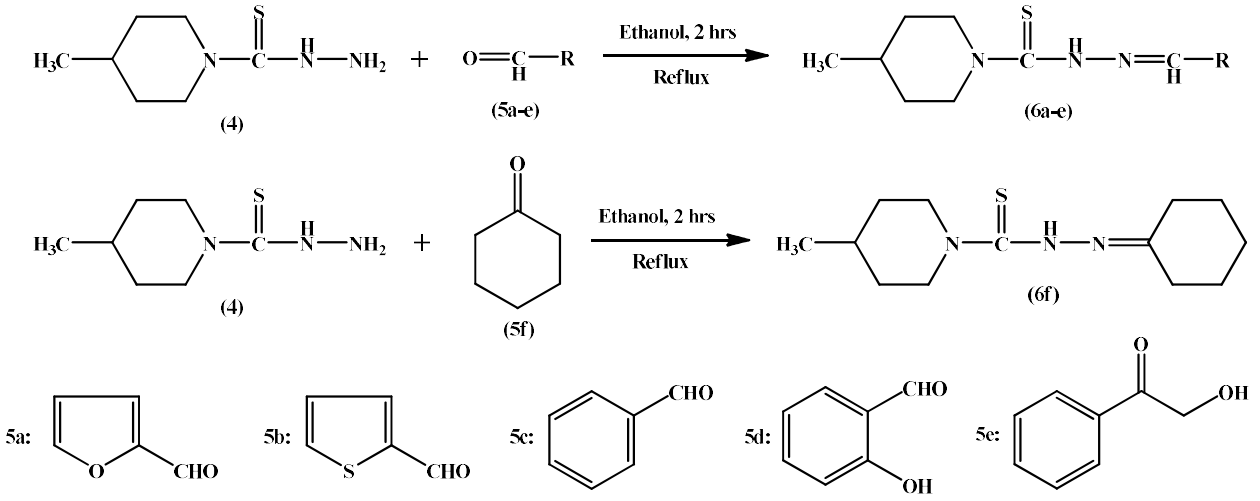
Gouy's method was used to determine the magnetic susceptibility at room temperature. FTIR spectra were recorded in the form of KBr disc between 4000-400 cm^{-1} on Perkin-Elmer FTIR spectrophotometer. The electronic absorption spectra of complexes and ligands were recorded between 200-900 nm in ethanol or DMF. ^1H NMR spectra were obtained on Bruker 400 MHz NMR Spectrometer using TMS as an internal standard. Sulphur and halogen were estimated gravimetrically in the form of $BaSO_4$ and AgCl, respectively. The metal ions were estimated by standard methods.[19]

Synthesis of Ligands

4-Methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (4) was synthesized using the reported method[20,21] with few alterations (Scheme-I). The *N*′-Substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (6a-f) were synthesized by refluxing an equimolar amount of 4-Methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (4) and corresponding aldehyde/ketone (5a-f) in ethanol for 2 hours. On cooling, the resultant obtained was filtered, washed with cold ethanol and recrystallized from ethanol (Scheme-II). The physicochemical and analytical data of synthesized ligands (6a-f) are summarized in Table-1.



Scheme-I: Synthesis of 4-Methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (4)



Scheme-II: Synthesis of *N*′-Substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (6a-f)

Table-1: Physico-analytical Data of Synthesized Ligands (6a-f)

Ligands	Color	Melting Point (ºC)	Elemental Analysis: % Found (Calcd.)			
			C	H	N	S
4-Methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (Hmpth, 4)	Flaky white	100	48.46 (48.55)	8.56 (8.67)	24.13 (24.27)	18.38 (18.49)
N′-cyclohexylidene-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (Hcycmpth, 6f)	Cream	149	61.47 (61.66)	10.48 (10.67)	16.44 (16.60)	12.32 (12.21)
N′-[(furan-2-yl)methylidene]-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (Hfmpth, 6a)	Cream	164	57.15 (57.37)	6.53 (6.77)	16.46 (16.73)	12.51 (12.74)
4-methyl-*N′*-[(thiophen-2-yl)methylidene]piperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (Htalmpth, 6b)	Cream	169	53.68 (53.93)	6.18 (6.36)	15.50 (15.73)	23.73 (23.97)
N′-benzylidene-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (Hbenmpth, 6c)	Cream	143	64.11 (64.36)	7.08 (7.27)	15.83 (15.49)	11.92 (11.86)
N′-[(2-hydroxyphenyl)methylidene]-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (H2Salmpth, 6d)	White	158	60.48 (60.64)	6.62 (6.85)	14.95 (14.76)	11.31 (11.15)
N′-(2-hydroxy-1-phenylethylidene)-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (H2apmpth, 6e)	White	166	61.62 (61.85)	6.92 (6.81)	14.22 (14.43)	10.73 (10.99)

Synthesis of Metal Complexes

Chromium Complexes $[CrL(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$ (LH=Hcycmpth, Hfmpth, Htalmpth, Hbenmpth,) and $[CrL(H_2O)_2Cl]$ (LH_2=H_2salmpth, H_2apmpth)

An ethanolic solution of metal chloride ($CrCl_3 \cdot 6H_2O$, 40-50 mL) was added an ethanolic solution of respective ligands (molar ratio - 1:1) and the reaction mixture was refluxed for 3-4 hours. The pH was maintained at ≈7-8 by adding sodium acetate solution. On cooling, the resultant metal complexes were filtered, washed with ethanol and dried over $CaCl_2$ (anhydrous) at room temperature.

Nickel and Zinc Metal Complexes

(a) $[ML_2]$ (M=Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}; LH = Hcycmpth, Hfmpth, Htalmpth, Hbenmpth) and $[M(LH)_2]$ (M = Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}, LH_2 = H_2salmpth, H_2apmpth)

To an ethanolic/aqueous solution of metal chloride ($NiCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$/ $ZnCl_2 \cdot H_2O$, 40-50 mL) was added hot ethanolic solution of appropriate ligand (1:2) slowly with continuous stirring and refluxed for 1-2 hours. On cooling, metal complexes were separated gradually. In the case of Zn(II) complexes, the complexes separated on adding an equal volume of water. The products were collected on a filter paper, washed with aqueous ethanol and dried over anhydrous $CaCl_2$ and finally vacuum dried.

$[ML(NH_3)]$ (M=Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}; LH_2= H_2salmpth, H_2apmpth)

An aqueous solution of appropriate metal acetate [$Ni(OAc)_2 \cdot 4H_2O$; $Zn(OAc)_2 \cdot 2H_2O$, 40-50 mL] was allowed to reflux for 2 hours with 40-50 mL ethanolic solution of appropriate ligand (1:1) in the presence of 15% of NH_4OH and pH was maintained at ≈ 9. The resulting metal complexes were collected on a filter paper, washed with aqueous ethanol and dried over anhydrous $CaCl_2$ and finally vacuum dried.

[ML(Py)] (M=Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}; LH_2= H_2salmpth, H_2apmpth)

An aqueous solution of metal chloride (0.0015 mol, 50 mL) was treated with 3-4 mL of pyridine and the resultant solution was added in hot ethanolic solution (50 mL) of appropriate ligand (0.0015 mol) and refluxed for 1-2 hours. On cooling, the metal complexes were separated. The solid product was washed with aqueous ethanol and dried with KOH+$CaCl_2$. Physico-analytical data of the synthesized complexes are given in Table-2.

Table-2: Physico-analytical Data of Schiff Base Metal Complexes derived from *N'*-substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (6a-f)

Complexes	Color	Elemental Analysis: % Found (Calc.)					μeff (B.M.)	Λ_M (ohm^{-1} cm^2 mol^{-1})
		M	C	H	N	S		
$[Cr(cycmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$,7a	Green	12.47 (12.68)	37.94 (37.81)	5.92 (5.89)	10.11 (10.24)	7.95 (7.80)	3.87	5.71
$[Cr(fmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$, 7b	Dark green	12.50 (12.71)	34.88 (34.73)	4.69 (4.88)	10.11 (10.26)	7.66 (7.82)	3.90	8.33
$[Cr(talmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$, 7c	Dark Green	12.08 (12.23)	33.67 (33.88)	4.52 (4.70)	9.68 (9.88)	14.88 (14.95)	3.89	7.15
$[Cr(benmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$, 7d	Dark Green	12.18 (12.38)	39.90 (39.80)	5.28 (5.17)	9.73 (9.62)	7.42 (7.61)	3.88	6.29
$[Cr(salmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl]$, 7e	Brown	12.73 (12.98)	41.76 (41.94)	5.53 (5.34)	10.31 (10.44)	7.76 (7.69)	3.89	7.74
$[Cr(apmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl]$, 7f	Brown	12.32 (12.54)	43.22 (43.12)	5.83 (5.73)	9.97 (9.83)	7.53 (7.72)	3.90	7.37
$[Ni(cycmpth)_2]$, 7g	Brown	10.46 (10.51)	55.40 (55.61)	7.23 (7.48)	14.75 (14.97)	11.18 (11.40)	Diamag.	6.53
$[Zn(cycmpth)_2]$, 7h	Light Yellow	11.25 (11.46)	54.88 (54.72)	7.26 (7.40)	14.65 (14.81)	11.11 (11.28)	Diamag.	5.74
$[Ni(fmpth)_2]$, 7i	Brown	10.38 (10.55)	51.33 (51.52)	5.57 (5.72)	14.88 15.02	11.26 (11.44)	Diamag.	7.45
$[Zn(fmpth)_2]$, 7j	Yellow	11.31 (11.50)	50.73 (50.97)	5.48 (5.66)	14.94 (14.86)	11.20 (11.32)	Diamag.	8.92
$[Ni(talmpth)_2]$, 7k	Brown	9.77 (9.98)	48.55 (48.73)	5.24 (5.41)	14.05 (14.21)	21.44 (21.65)	Diamag.	6.28
$[Zn(talmpth)_2]$, 7l	Yellow	10.63 (10.88)	48.11 (48.24)	5.17 (5.36)	14.15 (14.07)	21.30 (21.44)	Diamag.	7.54
$[Ni(benmpth)_2]$, 7m	Orange Red	10.08 (10.22)	58.06 (58.23)	5.71 (5.89)	14.32 (14.55)	10.86 (10.79)	Diamag.	4.90
$[Zn(benmpth)_2]$, 7n	Orange Yellow	10.93 (11.04)	57.51 (57.63)	5.61 (5.83)	14.26 (14.10)	10.76 (10.67)	Diamag.	10.52
$[Ni(HSalmpth)_2]$, 7o	Reddish Brown	9.44 (9.68)	54.97 55.07	5.33 (5.58)	13.58 (13.79)	10.32 (10.50)	Diamag.	6.4
$[Zn(HSalmpth)_2]$, 7p	Yellow	10.32 (10.56)	55.25 (55.63)	5.26 (5.52)	13.48 (13.65)	10.27 (10.40)	Diamag.	7.36
$[Ni(Hapmpth)_2]$, 7q	Brick Red	9.12 (9.26)	56.28 (56.51)	5.64 (5.96)	12.93 (13.18)	9.88 (10.04)	Diamag.	6.50
$[Zn(Hapmpth)_2]$, 7r	Yellow	9.87 (10.01)	55.74 (55.98)	6.31 (6.53)	12.87 (12.76)	9.73 (9.65)	Diamag.	7.75
$[Ni(Salmpth)(NH_3)]$, 7s	Red	16.63 (16.80)	47.67 (47.86)	5.48 (5.69)	15.74 (15.65)	8.96 (8.91)	Diamag.	9.63
$[Zn(Salmpth)(NH_3)]$, 7t	Yellow	18.03 (18.20)	47.86 (47.05)	5.47 (5.60)	15.47 (15.68)	8.68 (8.96)	Diamag.	11.31
$[Ni(apmpth)(NH_3)]$, 7u	Reddish Brown	15.98 (16.06)	49.14 (49.31)	5.93 (6.02)	15.17 (15.34)	8.58 (8.46)	Diamag.	10.85
$[Zn(apmpth)(NH_3)]$, 7v	Yellow	17.37 (17.52)	48.36 (48.51)	5.68 (5.92)	14.92 (14.99)	8.47 (8.62)	Diamag.	11.26
[Ni(Salmpth)Py], 7w	Red	14.11 (14.28)	54.98 (55.02)	5.11 (5.32)	13.34 (13.55)	7.51 (7.74)	Diamag.	8.28
[Ni(apmpth)Py], 7x	Reddish Brown	13.62 (13.81)	56.03 (56.20)	5.41 (5.62)	12.92 (13.01)	7.23 (7.49)	Diamag.	9.57
[Zn(Salmpth)Py], 7y	Light Yellow	15.33 (15.51)	54.24 (54.41)	5.09 (5.25)	13.12 (13.36)	7.45 (7.63)	Diamag.	10.12
[Zn(apmpth)Py], 7z	Yellow	14.88 (14.71)	55.20 (55.42)	5.36 (5.54)	12.64 (12.93)	7.18 (7.11)	Diamag.	6.32

Table-3: Electronic Spectral Data of Schiff Base Metal Complexes derived from *N'*-substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (6a-f)

Complexes	Electronic Bond Positions	Assingments
$[Cr(cycmpth)_2(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$	310w, 425s, 568sbr	$^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{1g}(P)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)$-$^4T_{1g}(F)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{2g}(P)$
$[Cr(fmpth)_2(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$	325w, 440sh, 580sbr	$^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{1g}(P)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)$-$^4T_{1g}(F)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{2g}(P)$
$[Cr(talmpth)_2(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$	315w, 432s, 570sbr	$^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{1g}(P)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)$-$^4T_{1g}(F)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{2g}(P)$
$[Cr(benmpth)_2(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$	318w, 445s, 575sbr	$^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{1g}(P)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)$-$^4T_{1g}(F)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{2g}(P)$
$[Cr(salmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl]$	320w, 452s, 582sbr	$^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{1g}(P)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)$-$^4T_{1g}(F)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{2g}(P)$
$[Cr(apmpth)(H_2O)_2Cl]$	325w, 455s, 585sbr	$^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{1g}(P)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)$-$^4T_{1g}(F)$; $^4A_{2g}(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_{2g}(P)$
$[Ni(cycmpth)_2]$	290ms, 440sh	π-π^* ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$
$[Ni(fmpth)_2]$	375sbr, 440br, 552m	C-T ; $A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1A_{2g}$
$[Ni(talmpth)_2]$	370sbr, 435br, 545m	C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1A_{2g}$
$[Ni(benmpth)_2]$	378br, 450m, 560m	C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1A_{2g}$
$[Ni(HSalmpth)_2]$	368b, 455mb, 565m	C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1A_{2g}$
$[Ni(Hapmpth)_2]$	272s, 370br, 460sh, 567m	π-π^* ; C-T; $^{1A}{}_{1g}\rightarrow{}^{1B}{}_{1g}$; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1A_{2g}$
$[Ni(Salmpth)(NH_3)]$	262s, 370sbr, 450sh	π-π^* ;C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$
$[Ni(apmpth)(NH_3)]$	260s, 365sbr, 447sh	π-π^* ;C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$
[Ni(salmpth)(Py)	265s, 372sbr, 450sh	π-π^* ;C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$
[Ni(apmpth)(Py)	262s, 368sbr, 445sh	π-π^* ;C-T ; $^1A_{1g}\rightarrow{}^1B_{1g}$

(Sh = shoulder, m = medium, s= strong, sbr = strong and broad)

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The analytical data recorded in Table-2 were found fully consistent with the composition of the complexes synthesized. Thermogravimetric analysis shows that all the synthesized complexes are stable below 180-190 ºC. The complexes are lesser soluble in ordinary organic solvents and are much soluble in DMSO, DMF and dioxane. Molar conductance of all the complexes was found in the range 5-15 Ω^{-1} cm^2 mol^{-1} displaying their non-ionic nature.[22] The Cr(III) complexes have magnetic moments value between 3.87-3.91 B.M. indicating their octahedral geometry. The diamagnetism of all Ni(II) complexes indicates their square planar geometry[23]. The preference for tetrahedral stereochemistry for complexes of d^{10} electronic system and observed metal-ligand stoichiometry indicate the tetrahedral structure for Zn(II) complexes, which were established as diamagnetic.[24]

Electronic Spectral Studies

The chemical spectra of all Cr(III) complexes were obtained in DMSO. The complexes exhibited bands at 16806-18518 cm^{-1} (595-540 nm), 22831-23539 cm^{-1} (438-425 nm) and 31250-32573 cm^{-1} (320-307 nm) which may be assigned to ^4A_2g (F) $\rightarrow$ ^4T_2g (F) (ν_1), $^4A_2g(F)\rightarrow{}^4T_1g(F)$ (ν_2) and ^4A_2g (F) $\rightarrow$ ^4T_1g (P) (ν_3) transitions sequentially in order of increasing energy. Out of these three spin-allowed *d-d* transitions, the one of lowest energy is a direct measure of the crystal field splitting Δ or 10Dq. These values are in better compliance with the reported values for octahedral Cr(III) complexes[25, 26]. The solid reflectance spectra of Ni(II) complexes below 400 nm display strong absorptions attributed to charge transfer band or ligand absorptions. A weak band or shoulder in the region 420-480 nm and 500-600 nm are attributed to $^1A_1g\rightarrow{}^1B_1g$ and $^1A_1g\rightarrow{}^1A_2g$ transitions respectively in a planner arrangement of Ni(II) atom geometry[23]. The broadband of thioamide ligands was observed in the regions $\approx$ 365 nm and suffered a blue shift in the complexes due to thioenolization, which broadens considerably due to overlap of ligands to metal charge transfer transitions[27] (Table-3).

FTIR Spectral Studies

The IR spectra of ligands exhibited bands at 1625 ± 5 cm^{-1}, which is due to $\nu_{C=N}$ of the azomethine group. The same band is observed at a lower frequency by 15-10 cm^{-1} as a strong band in all the complexes of Cr(III), Ni(II) and Zn(II) attributed to the coordination through azomethine nitrogen. It is further confirmed by the appearance of azine chromophore (>C=N-N=C<) around 1605-1600 cm^{-1} in the

complexes. The characteristic phenolic $\nu_{(O-H)}$ band due to the presence of -OH group at ortho position of ligands (H_2Salmpth) and (H_2ampth) was observed at 3293-3180 cm^{-1}, disappeared in the monoligated complexes of Cr(III), Ni(II) and Zn(II) having compositions [$CrL(H_2O)_2Cl$], [ML(Py)], [$ML(NH_3)$] (M=Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}, LH_2=H_2Salmpth, H_2apmth) suggesting the coordination by the phenolic oxygen after deprotonation. This broadband is intact in bischelates of Ni(II) and Zn(II) having compositions [ML_2] and [$M(LH_2)$ (LH=Hcycmpth, Hfmpth,Htalmpth, Hbenmpth and LH_2= H_2Salmpth, H_2ampth) and attributed to uncoordinated –OH and involved in H-bonding. In all the aqua complexes of Cr(III) having composition [$ML(H_2O)$] (LH_2= H_2Salmpth, H_2apampth) a broad bond appeared in the range of 3400-3300 cm^{-1} showing the existence of water. The rocking band of H_2O is not observed for coordinated water which indicates the lattice nature of H_2O in the complexes.[28] Drastic conditions required to dehydrate these complexes also confirm a structure containing water molecules in these complexes. The absence of any band in the region of 2600-2500 cm^{-1} due to $\nu_{(SH)}$ shows that all the ligands exist in thio-keto form, which is also supported by ^{1}H NMR studies. The IR absorption bands of ν_{NH} in the region 3300-3100 cm^{-1} of the free ligands disappeared in all the complexes indicating that the ligands are deprotonated in the complexes. The thioamide bands (IV) of the free ligands (935-865 cm^{-1}) which have a major contribution from $\nu_{c=s}$ vibration is observed at 705 ± 20 cm^{-1} in all the complexes, showing the coordination with deprotonated thiol sulphur. The coordination of NH_3 in the complex [$ML(NH_3)$)] [M=Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}, LH_2= H_2Salmpth, H_2apmpth] is indicated by the appearance of bands at 3300-3100, 1590, 1280 and 850 cm^{-1} assigned to νNH_3, δNH_3, ρNH_3 sequentially. The pyridine ring breathing mode of vibration observed at 1025 ± 5 cm^{-1} is regarded as a coordinated pyridine molecule.[29] The $\nu_{C=N}$ for such complexes was observed at 1595 ± 5 cm^{-1}. In the far-infrared region, all the complexes displayed several bands at 460-410, 400-380, 360-320 and 300-230 cm^{-1} those are assigned to M–O, M–N, M–S, M–Cl *str* vibration, respectively.

It was observed that in slightly alkaline conditions pH≈7-8 (or 9), the ligands H_2Salmpth and H_2apmpth, react with Cr(III), Ni(II) or Zn(II) salts giving rise to monoligated complexes [$CrL(H_2O)_2Cl$], [ML(Py)] and [$ML(NH_3)$], (M = Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}). It behaves in a dibasic tridentate manner and bonding takes place through O, N and S. In feebly alkaline or neutral conditions these and other ligands are found to act in a bidentate monobasic way bonding through azomethine N-atom and S-atom (*via* thioenolisation) keeping the –OH free.

^{1}H NMR Studies

The signals due to –NH proton at δ ≈11.8 ppm and phenolic –OH at δ ≈12.4-13.04 ppm of ligands H_2Salmpth and H_2apmpth disappeared in its monoligated complexes of compositions [$CrL(H_2O)_2Cl$], [ML(Py)] and [$ML(NH_3)$], (M = Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}), which shows the diabasic tridentate nature of these ligands in the complexes and bonding through O, N and S atoms. In the neutral bischelates of Ni(II) and Zn(II) signals due to –NH proton at δ 11-12 ppm of ligands disappears in complexes suggesting the thioenolization and coordination through deprotonated thiol sulphur atoms. In neutral, bischelates of H_2Salmpth and H_2apmpth of Ni(II) and Zn(II) the signals due to phenolic –OH at ≈12.4-13.04 ppm remain unaffected in complexes and its downfield shift than normal phenolic –OH shows H–bonding. The chemical shift δ 7.1-7.3 ppm of aromatic protons undergoes a slight downfield shift δ 7.4-7.9 ppm on complexation.

Thus, based on the above studies, the following tentative structures (Fig. 1.) have been proposed for the synthesized complexes.

Antifungal Evaluation

4-Methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (4), *N′*-substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (6a-f), monoligated pyridine complexes of *N′*-substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides derived from salicylaldehyde [M(salmpth)(Py)] and bis-ligated complexes derived from furfural [$M(fmpth)_2$] and thiophene-2-aldehyde [$M(talmpth)_2$], (M=Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}) have been tested for antifungal activity. Antifungal activity of these compounds was evaluated by Agar-based disk-diffusion method[30] against fungal strains *C. albicans* and *A. niger* using Griseofulvin as a standard drug. The results are

shown in Table-4. All the tested compounds were found to possess moderate to significant antifungal activity. The complexes were found more active than ligands and the order of their activity was found as $[M(salmpth)(Py)] > [M(fmpth)_2] > [M(talmpth)_2]$.

The algacidal effect of $CrCl_3$, the ligands- H_2salmpth, Hfmpth and Htalmpth and their chromium complexes were studied on the growth of green algae- chlorella. The ligands and complexes were found less toxic than metal chloride. The lesser algacidal effect of ligands and complexes concerning metal ions may be attributed to their larger size.

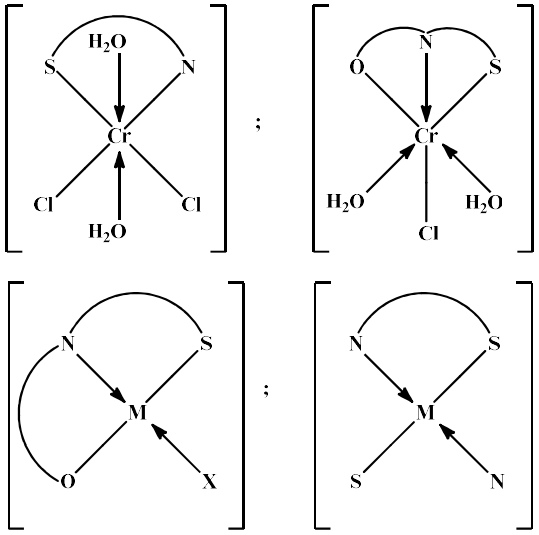


Fig. -1: Tentative Structures of the Complexes synthesized. Where X= Py or NH_3; M= Ni^{2+} or Zn^{2+}. The parts involving O, N and S atoms in the above structures represent the donor system of the ligands

Table-4: Antifungal Activity of 4-Methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazide (4), *N*′-Substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (6a-f) and Schiff base metal complexes (7w, 7y, 7i, 7j, 7k, 7l)

Tested Compound at a Concentration of 100 µg/ml	Zone of Inhibition (in mm)	
	C. albicans	*A. niger*
Hmpth, 4	08	10
Hfmpth, 6a	10	12
Htalmpth, 6b	09	10
Hbenmpth, 6c	05	-
H_2Salmpth, 6d	12	10
(H_2apmpth, 6e	08	11
Hcycmpth, 6f	12	10
[Ni(Salmpth)Py], 7w	17	19
[Zn(Salmpth)Py], 7y	19	20
$[Ni(fmpth)_2]$, 7i	14	11
$[Zn(fmpth)_2]$, 7j	15	14
$[Ni(talmpth)_2]$, 7k	12	10
$[Zn(talmpth)_2]$, 7l	14	10
Griseofulvin	22	25

CONCLUSION

Three bidentate N, S donor type *N*′-Substituted-4-methylpiperidine-1-carbothiohydrazides (**6a-f**) were synthesized using cyclohexanone, thiophene-2-aldehyde, benzaldehyde, salicylaldehyde, furfural and 2-hydroxyacetophenone. These ligands were complexed with transition metals to produce their metal complexes. Physico-analytical data including spectral data and elemental analysis of ligands & their metal(II) complexes were shown as per proposed structures. Potential ligands & their metal complexes

were tested for antifungal and algacidal potential. Results showed that metal complexes have greater antifungal activity in comparison to corresponding ligands. The greater antifungal activity of metal complexes was shown due to the chelation phenomenon, which coordinates the metal ion with ligands and makes a reduction in its polarity.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Authors are indebted to Head, Department of Chemistry, Ranchi University, Ranchi-834002, Jharkhand, India for providing laboratory facilities.

REFERENCES

1. M. Li, H. Wu, S. Zhang, L. Sun, H. Ke, Q. Wei and S. Gao, *European Journal of Inorganic Chemistry*, **26**, 811(2017), https://doi.org/10.1002/ejic.201601188
2. M. C. Heffern, V. Reichova, J.L. Coomes, A.S. Harney, E.A. Bajema and T.J. Meade, *Inorganic Chemistry*, **54**, 9066(2015), https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.inorgchem.5b01415
3. X. M. Wang, S. Chen, R. Q. Fan, F. Q. Zhang and Y. L. Yang, *Dalton Transactions*, **44**, 8107(2015), https://doi.org/10.1039/C5DT00057B
4. D. K. Maity and D. Ghoshal, *Journal of the Indian Institute of Science*, **97**, 261(2017), https://doi.org/10.1007/s41745-017-0033-5
5. S. Ejaz, H. Nadeem, R.Z. Paracha, S. Sarwar and S. Ejaz, *BMC Chemistry*, **13**, 115(2019), https://doi.org/10.1186/s13065-019-0631-6
6. E. Tas, M. Aslanoglu, A. Kilic, O. Kaplan and H. Temel, *Journal of Chemical Research*, **4**, 242(2006), https://doi.org/10.3184/030823406776894292
7. A. Das, Y. Ren, C. Hessin and M. Desage-El Murr, *Beilstein Journal of Organic Chemistry*, **16**, 858(2020), https://doi.org/10.3762/bjoc.16.77
8. Y. Sano, N. Lau, A. C. Weitz, J. W. Ziller, M. P. Hendrich and A. S. Borovik, *Inorganic Chemistry*, **56**, 14118(2017), https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.inorgchem.7b02230
9. A. Greatti, M. A. de Brito, A. J. Bortoluzzi and A. S. Ceccato, *Journal of Molecular Structure,* **688**, 185(2004), https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molstruc.2003.10.008
10. H. Adams, S. Clunas and D. E. Fenton, *Inorganic Chemistry Communications,* **4**, 667(2001), https://doi.org/10.1016/S1387-7003(01)00305-7
11. R. Ganguly, B. Sreenivasulu and J. J. Vittal, *Coordination Chemistry Reviews*, **252**, 1027(2008), https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccr.2008.01.005
12. M. Andruh, D. G. Branzea, R. Gheorghe and A.M. Madalan, *CrystEngComm,* **11**, 2571(2009), https://doi.org/10.1039/B909476H
13. M. J. O'Donnell and R. L. Polt, *Journal of Organic Chemistry*, **47**, 2663(1982), https://doi.org/10.1021/jo00134a030
14. H. Sachdeva, R. Saroj, S. Khaturia, D. Dwivedi and O.P. Chauhan, *Journal of Chemistry,* **2014,** 1(2014), https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/848543
15. Y. Jia and J. Li, *Chemical Reviews*, **115**, 1597(2015), https://doi.org/10.1021/cr400559g
16. C. W. Dikio, B.J. Okoli, F. M. Mtunzi, and G. Weaver, *Cogent Chemistry*, **3(1)**,1336864(2017), https://doi.org/10.1080/23312009.2017.1336864
17. K. L. Haas and K. J. Franz, *Chemical Reviews*, **109**, 4921(2009), https://doi.org/10.1021/cr900134a
18. J. Devi, N. Batra and R. Malhotra, *Spectrochimica acta. Part A, Molecular and Biomolecular Spectroscopy*, **97**, 397(2012), https://doi.org/10.1016/j.saa.2012.06.026
19. J. Mendham, R. C. Denney, J. D. Barnes and M. J. K. Thomas, Vogel's Textbook of Quantitative Chemical Analysis ed., Pearson Education Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi. Edition 6, Third Indian Reprint, pp. 454, 462, 472 (2003).
20. K. A. Jensen and J.F. Miquel, *Acta Chemica Scandinavica*, 189 (1970).
21. H. Gilman and A. H. Blatt, Organic Synthesis, Collective, ed. John Wiley, New York, Vol. I, pp. 448 (1966).
22. W. J. Geary, *Coordination Chemistry Reviews*, **7**, 81(1971), https://doi.org/10.1016/S0010-8545(00)80009-0
23. K. Dey and D. Bandyopadhyay, *Indian Journal of Chemistry*, **31A**, 34(1992)
24. B. N. Keshari and L. K. Mishra, *Indian Journal of Chemistry*, **20A**, 883(1981)

25. N. N. Greenwood and A. Earnshaw, Chemistry of Elements, ed., Reed Elsevier India Pvt. Ltd., pp. 1029 (2005).
26. M. Kumar and T. Sharma, *Journal of the Indian Chemical Society*, **68**, 539(1991).
27. A. Naik and V. K. Revankar, *Journal of Chemical Sciences*, **113**, 285(2001).
28. B. B. Mahapatra, S. N. Dehury, S. Pratihari and S. N. Chaulia, *Biokemistri*, **24**, 116(2012).
29. J. R. Dilworth and N. Wheatley, *Coordination Chemistry Reviews*, **199**, 89(2000), https://doi.org/10.1016/S0010-8545(99)00185-X
30. E.I. Nweze, P. K. Mukherjee and M. A. Ghannoum, *Journal of Clinical Microbiology,* **48**, 3750(2010), https://doi.org/10.1128/JCM.01357-10

[RJC-6204/2020]

DE GRUYTER

Requires Authentication | Published by **De Gruyter** | October 18, 2021

Naturally occurring heterocyclic anticancer compounds

Shashi Kiran Misra and Kamla Pathak

From the journal Physical Sciences Reviews
https://doi.org/10.1515/psr-2021-0038

Abstract

Naturally occurring heterocyclic scaffolds are key ingredients for the development of various therapeutics employed for biomedical applications. Heterocyclic pharmacophores are widely disseminated and have been befallen in almost all categories of drugs for the alleviation of myriad ailments including diabetes, neurodegenerative, psychiatric, microbial infections, disastrous cancers etc. Countless fused heterocyclic anticancerous templates are reported to display antimetabolite, antioxidant, antiproliferative, cytostatic etc. pharmacological actions via targeting different signaling pathways (cell cycle, PI-3kinase/Akt, p53, caspase extrinsic pathway etc.), overexpressive receptors (EGRF, HER2, EGF, VEGF etc.) and physiological enzymes (topoisomerase I and II, cyclin dependent kinase etc.). A compiled description on various natural sources (plants, microbes, marine) containing anticancer agents comprising heterocyclic ring specified with presence of nitrogen (vincristine, vinblastine, indole-3-carbinol, meridianins, piperine, lamellarins etc.), oxygen (paclitaxel, halichondrin B, quercetin, myricetin, kaempferol etc.) and sulphur atoms (brugine, fucoidan, carrageenan etc.) are displayed here along with their molecular level cytotoxic action and therapeutic applications.

Keywords: antimetabolite; cytotoxic; heterocyclic scaffolds; overexpressive receptors; signal pathways

Corresponding author: Prof. Kamla Pathak, Dean, Faculty of Pharmacy, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, 206130, Uttar Pradesh, India, E-mail: kamlapathak5@gmail.com

Author contributions: All the authors have accepted responsibility for the entire content of this submitted manuscript and approved submission.

Research funding: None declared.

Conflict of interest statement: The authors declare no conflicts of interest regarding this article.

References

1. Sachdeva, H, Mathur, J, Guleria, A. Indole derivatives as potential anticancer agents: a review. *J Chil Chem Soc* 2020;65:4900–7. https://doi.org/10.4067/s0717-97072020000204900 (https://doi.org/10.4067/s0717-97072020000204900) .

2. Jampilek, J. Heterocycles in medicinal chemistry. *Molecules* 2019;24:3839. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24213839 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24213839) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31731387/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6864827/)

3. Dze, K. Heterocycles, their synthesis and industrial applications: a review. *Int J Appl Sci Eng Technol* 2020;8:36–56. https://doi.org/10.22214/ijraset.2020.31786 (https://doi.org/10.22214/ijraset.2020.31786) .

4. Wang, W, Lei, L, Liu, Z, Wang, H, Meng, Q. Design, synthesis, and biological evaluation of novel nitrogen heterocycle-containing ursolic acid analogs as antitumor agents. *Molecules* 2019;24:877. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24050877 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24050877) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30832266/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6429512/)

5. Lang, DK, Kaur, R, Arora, R, Saini, B, Arora, S. Nitrogen-containing heterocycles as anticancer agents: an overview. *Anticancer Agents Med Chem* 2020;20:2150–68. https://doi.org/10.2174/1871520620666200705214917 (https://doi.org/10.2174/1871520620666200705214917) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32628593/)

6. Kim, YS, Milner, J. Targets for indole-3-carbinol in cancer prevention. *J Nutr Biochem* 2005;16:65–73. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jnutbio.2004.10.007 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jnutbio.2004.10.007) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15681163/)

7. Patil, R, Patil, SA, Beaman, KD, Patil, SA. Indole molecules as inhibitors of tubulin polymerization: potential new anticancer agents, an update (2013–2015). *Future Med Chem* 2016;8:1291–316. https://doi.org/10.4155/fmc-2016-0047 (https://doi.org/10.4155/fmc-2016-0047) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27476704/)

8. Garcia, HH, Brar, GA, Nguyen, DH, Bjeldanes, LF, Firestone, GL. Indole-3-carbinol (I3C) inhibits cyclin-dependent kinase-2 function in human breast cancer cells by regulating the size distribution, associated cyclin E forms, and subcellular localization of the CDK2 protein complex. *J Biol Chem* 2005;280:8756–64. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.m407957200 (https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.m407957200) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15611077/)

9. Bharate, SB, Yadav, RR, Battula, S, Vishwakarma, RA. Meridianins: marine-derived potent kinase inhibitors. *Mini Rev Med Chem* 2012;12:618–3. https://doi.org/10.2174/138955712800626728 (https://doi.org/10.2174/138955712800626728) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/22512550/)

10. Wright, AE, Killday, KB, Chakrabarti, D, Guzman, EA, Harmody, D, McCarthy, PJ, et al.. Dragmacidin G, a bioactive bis-indole alkaloid from a deep-water sponge of the genus Spongosorites. *Mar Drugs* 2017;15:16. https://doi.org/10.3390/md15010016 (https://doi.org/10.3390/md15010016) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28085024/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5295236/)

11. Barrows, LR, Radisky, DC, Copp, BR, Swaffar, DS, Kramer, RA, Warters, RL, et al.. Makaluvamines, marine natural products, are active anti-cancer agents and DNA topo II inhibitors. *Anticancer Drug Des* 1993;8:333–47.

12. Matsumoto, SS, Haughey, HM, Schmehl, DM, Venables, DA, Ireland, CM, Holden, JA, et al.. Makaluvamines vary in ability to induce dosedependent DNA cleavage via topoisomerase II interaction. *Anti Canc Drugs* 1999;10:39–46. https://doi.org/10.1097/00001813-199901000-00006 (https://doi.org/10.1097/00001813-199901000-00006) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/10194546/)

13. Andersen, RJ, Faulkner, DJ, Cun-heng, H, van Duyne, GD, Clardy, J. Metabolites of the marine prosobranch mollusk Lamellaria sp. *J Am Chem Soc* 1985;107:5492–5. https://doi.org/10.1021/ja00305a027 (https://doi.org/10.1021/ja00305a027) .

14. Urban, S, Butler, MS, Capon, RJ. Lamellarins O and P: new aromatic metabolites for the Australian marine sponge Dendrilla cactos. *Aust J Chem* 1994;47:1919–24. https://doi.org/10.1071/ch9941919 (https://doi.org/10.1071/ch9941919) .

15. Facompré, M, Tardy, C, Bal-Mahieu, C, Colson, P, Perez, C, Manzanares, I, et al.. Lamellarin D: a novel potent inhibitor of topoisomerase I. *Cancer Res* 2003;63:7392–9.

16. Vanhuyse, M, Kluza, J, Tardy, C, Otero, G, Cuevas, C, Bailly, C, et al.. Lamellarin D: a novel pro-apoptotic agent from marine origin insensitive to P-glycoprotein-mediated drug efflux. *Canc Lett* 2005;221:165–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.canlet.2004.09.022 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.canlet.2004.09.022) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15808402/)

17. Ganjoo, KN, Patel, SR. Trabectedin: an anticancer drug from the sea. *Expet Opin Pharmacother* 2009;10:2735–43. https://doi.org/10.1517/14656560903277236 (https://doi.org/10.1517/14656560903277236) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19743937/)

18. Monk, BJ, Lorusso, D, Italiano, A, Kaye, SB, Aracil, M, Tanović, A, et al.. Trabectedin as a chemotherapy option for patients with BRCA deficiency. *Canc Treat Rev* 2016;50:175–82. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ctrv.2016.09.009 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ctrv.2016.09.009) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27710871/)

19. Trabectedin: ecteinascidin 743, ecteinascidin-743, ET 743, ET-743, NSC 684766. *Drugs R D* 2006;7:317–28. https://doi.org/10.2165/00126839-200607050-00005 (https://doi.org/10.2165/00126839-200607050-00005) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16922593/)

20. Zheng, J, Zhou, Y, Li, Y, Xu, DP, Li, S, Li, HB. Spices for prevention and treatment of cancers. *Nutrients* 2016;8:495. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu8080495 (https://doi.org/10.3390/nu8080495) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27529277/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4997408/)

21. Gorgani, L, Mohammadi, M, Najafpour, GD, Nikzad, M. Piperine-the bioactive compound of black pepper: from isolation to medicinal formulations. *Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf* 2007;16:124–40. 10.1111/1541-4337.12246 (https://doi.org/10.1111/1541-4337.12246)

22. Rafiq, RA, Ganai, BA, Tasduq, SA. Piperine promotes ultraviolet (UV)-B-induced cell death in B16F10 mouse melanoma cells through modulation of major regulators of cell survival. *RSC Adv* 2015;5:11884–94. https://doi.org/10.1039/c4ra12860e (https://doi.org/10.1039/c4ra12860e) .

23. Soutar, DA, Doucette, CD, Liwski, RS, Hoskin, DW. Piperine, a pungent alkaloid from black pepper, inhibits B lymphocyte activation and effector functions. *Phytother Res* 2017;31:466–74. https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.5772 (https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.5772) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28102026/)

24. Rodgers, G, Doucette, CD, Soutar, DA, Liwski, RS, Hoskin, DW. Piperine impairs the migration and T cell-activating function of dendritic cells. *Toxicol Lett* 2016;242:23–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.toxlet.2015.11.025 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.toxlet.2015.11.025) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26640239/)

25. Manayi, A, Nabavi, SM, Setzer, WN, Jafari, S. Piperine as a potential anti-cancer agent: a review on preclinical studies. *Curr Med Chem* 2018;25:4918–28. https://doi.org/10.2174/0929867324666170523120656 (https://doi.org/10.2174/0929867324666170523120656) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28545378/)

26. Lai, LH, Fu, QH, Liu, Y, Jiang, K, Guo, QM, Chen, QY, et al.. Piperine suppresses tumor growth and metastasis in vitro and in vivo in a 4T1 murine breast cancer model. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2012;33:523–30. https://doi.org/10.1038/aps.2011.209 (https://doi.org/10.1038/aps.2011.209) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/22388073/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4003369/)

27. Samykutty, A, Shetty, AV, Dakshinamoorthy, G, Bartik, MM, Johnson, GL, Webb, B, et al.. Piperine, a bioactive component of pepper spice exerts therapeutic effects on androgen dependent and androgen independent prostate Cancer cells. *PLoS One* 2013;8:e65889. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0065889 (https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0065889) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23824300/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3688824/)

28. Damanhouri, ZA, Ahmad, A. A review on therapeutic potential of Piper nigrum L. (black pepper): the king of spices. *Med Aromatic Plants* 2014;3:161. https://doi.org/10.4172/2167-0412.1000161 (https://doi.org/10.4172/2167-0412.1000161) .

29. Vavrecková, C, Gawlik, I, Müller, K. Benzophenanthridine alkaloids of Chelidonium majus; I. Inhibition of 5- and 12-lipoxygenase by a non-redox mechanism. *Planta Med* 1996;62:397–401. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2006-957924 (https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2006-957924) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/9005450/)

30. Kim, S, Lee, TJ, Leem, J, Kyeong, SC, Park, JW, Taeg, KK. Sanguinarine-induced apoptosis: generation of ROS, down-regulation of Bcl-2, c-FLIP, and synergy with TRAIL. *J Cell Biochem* 2008;104:895–907. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcb.21672 (https://doi.org/10.1002/jcb.21672) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18189268/)

31. Debiton, E, Madelmont, JC, Legault, J, Barthomeuf, C. Sanguinarine-induced apoptosis is associated with early and severe cellular glutathione depletion. *Canc Chemother Pharmacol* 2003;51:474–82. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00280-003-0609-9 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00280-003-0609-9) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12700925/)

32. Vogt, AA, Tamewitz, A, Skoko, J, Sikorski, RP, Giuliano, KA, Lazo, JS. The benzo[c]phenanthridine alkaloid, sanguinarine, is a selective, cell-active inhibitor of mitogenactivated protein kinase phosphatase-1. *J Biol Chem* 2005;280:19078–86. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.m501467200 (https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.m501467200) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15753082/)

33. Chaturvedi, MM, Kumar, A, Darnay, BG, GBN, C, Agarwal, S, Aggarwal, BB. Sanguinarine (pseudochelerythrine) is a potent inhibitor of NF-κB activation, IκBα phosphorylation, and degradation. *J Biol Chem* 1997;272:30129–34. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.272.48.30129 (https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.272.48.30129) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/9374492/)

34. Ji, YB. *Active ingredients of traditional Chinese medicine: pharmacology and application*. USA: People's Medical Publishing Hourse Cp, Ltd.; 2011.

35. Kuo, PL, Lin, CC. Tetrandrine-induced cell cycle arrest and apoptosis inHep G2 cells. *Life Sci* 2003;73:243–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0024-3205(03)00266-2 (https://doi.org/10.1016/s0024-3205(03)00266-2) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12738038/)

36. Meng, LH, Zhang, H, Hayward, L, Takemura, H, Shao, RG, Pommier, Y. Tetrandrine induces early G1 arrest in human colon carcinoma cells by down-regulating the activity and inducing the degradation of G 1-S-specific cyclin-dependent kinases and by inducing p53 and p21Cip1. *Cancer Res* 2004;64:9086–92. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.can-04-0313 (https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.can-04-0313) .

37. Ng, LT, Chiang, LC, Lin, YT, Lin, CC. Antiproliferative and apoptotic effects of tetrandrine on different human hepatoma cell lines. *Am J Chin Med* 2006;34:125–35. https://doi.org/10.1142/s0192415x06003692 (https://doi.org/10.1142/s0192415x06003692) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16437745/)

38. Lee, SH, Son, JK, Jeong, BS, Jeong, TC, Chang, HW, Lee, ES, et al.. Progress in the studies on rutaecarpine. *Molecules* 2008;13:272–300. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules13020272 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules13020272) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18305418/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6245441/)

39. Zhang, Y, Wu, LJ, Tashiro, S, Onodera, S, Ikejima, T. Intracellular regulation of evodiamineinduced A375-S2 cell death. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2003;26:1543–7. https://doi.org/10.1248/bpb.26.1543 (https://doi.org/10.1248/bpb.26.1543) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/14600398/)

40. Zhang, Y, Wu, LJ, Tashiro, S, Onodera, S, Ikejima, T. Evodiamine induces tumor cell death through two different pathways: apoptosis and necrosis. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2004;25:83–9.

41. Wang, C, Wang, MW, Tashiro, S, Onodera, S, Ikejima, T. Roles of SIRT1 and phosphoinositide 3-OH kinase/protein kinase C pathways in evodiamine-induced human melanoma A375-S2 cell death. *J Pharmacol Sci* 2005;97:494–500. https://doi.org/10.1254/jphs.fpj04055x (https://doi.org/10.1254/jphs.fpj04055x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15821341/)

42. Yang, J, Wu, LJ, Tashino, SI, Onodera, S, Ikejima, T. Reactive oxygen species and nitric oxide regulate mitochondriadependent apoptosis and autophagy in evodiamine-treated human cervix carcinoma HeLa cells. *Free Radic Res* 2008;42:492–504. https://doi.org/10.1080/10715760802112791 (https://doi.org/10.1080/10715760802112791) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18484413/)

43. Pommier, Y. Topoisomerase I inhibitors: camptothecins and beyond. *Nat Rev Canc* 2006;6:789–802. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc1977 (https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc1977) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16990856/)

44. Kacprzak, KM. Chemistry and biology of camptothecin and its derivatives. In: Ramawat, K, Mérillon, JM, editors. *Natural products*. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer; 2013. 10.1007/978-3-642-22144-6_26 (https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-22144-6_26)

45. Tan, W, Li, Y, Chen, M, Wang, Y. Berberine hydrochloride: anticancer activity and nanoparticulate delivery system. *Int J Nanomed* 2011;6:1773–7. https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s22683 (https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s22683) .

46. Liu, X, Li, G, Zhu, H, Huang, L, Liu, Y, Ma, C, et al.. Beneficial effect of berberine on hepatic insulin resistance in diabetic hamsters possibly involves in SREBPs, LXRα and PPARα transcriptional programs. *Endocr J* 2010;57:881–93. https://doi.org/10.1507/endocrj.k10e-043 (https://doi.org/10.1507/endocrj.k10e-043) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20724798/)

47. Lee, IA, Hyun, YJ, Kim, DH. Berberine ameliorates TNBS-induced colitis by inhibiting lipid peroxidation, enterobacterial growth and NF-κB activation. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2010;648:162–70. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2010.08.046 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2010.08.046) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20828550/)

48. Katiyar, SK, Meeran, SM, Katiyar, N, Akhtar, S. p53 Cooperates berberine-induced growth inhibition and apoptosis of non-small cell human lung cancer cells in vitro and tumor xenograft growth in vivo. *Mol Carcinog* 2009;48:24–37. https://doi.org/10.1002/mc.20453 (https://doi.org/10.1002/mc.20453) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18459128/)

49. Meeran, SM, Katiyar, S, Katiyar, SK. Berberine-induced apoptosis in human prostate cancer cells is initiated by reactive oxygen species generation. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2008;229:33–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.taap.2007.12.027 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.taap.2007.12.027) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18275980/)

50. Wang, N, Feng, Y, Zhu, M, Tsang, CM, Man, K, Tong, Y, et al.. Berberine induces autophagic cell death and mitochondrial apoptosis in liver cancer cells: the cellular mechanism. *J Cell Biochem* 2010;111:1426–36. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcb.22869 (https://doi.org/10.1002/jcb.22869) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20830746/)

51. Kulkarni, YA, Garud, MS, Oza, MJ, Gaikwad, AB. Chapter 28 – Biomarkers of multiple sclerosis and their modulation by natural products. In: Watson, RR, Killgore, WDS, editors. *Nutrition and lifestyle in neurological autoimmune diseases*. USA: Academic Press; 2017:275–84 pp.
10.1016/B978-0-12-805298-3.00028-1 (https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-805298-3.00028-1)

52. Zhang, H, Chen, L, Sun, X, Yang, Q, Wan, L, Cheng, G. Matrine: a promising natural product with various pharmacological activities. *Front Pharmacol* 2020;11:588. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2020.00588 (https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2020.00588) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32477114/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7232545/)

53. Kragh Larsen, A, Grondard, L, Couprie, J, Bernard, D, Comoe, L, Jardillier, JC, et al.. The antileukemic alkaloid fagaronine is an inhibitor of DNA topoisomerases I and II. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1993;46:1403–12. https://doi.org/10.1016/0006-2952(93)90105-6 (https://doi.org/10.1016/0006-2952(93)90105-6) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/8240389/)

54. Cao, Z, Yang, P, Zhou, Q. Multiple biological functions and pharmacological effects of lycorine. *Sci China Chem* 2013;56:1382–91. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11426-013-4967-9 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s11426-013-4967-9) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32215001/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7088923/)

55. Cossy, J, Guérinot, A. Chapter five – Natural products containing oxygen heterocycles—synthetic advances between 1990 and 2015. In: Scriven, EFV, Ramsden, CA, editors. *Advances in heterocyclic chemistry*. USA: Academic Press; 2016, 119:107–42 pp. 10.1016/bs.aihch.2016.03.002 (https://doi.org/10.1016/bs.aihch.2016.03.002)

56. Weaver, BA. How taxol/paclitaxel kills cancer cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2014;2518:2677–81. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.e14-04-0916 (https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.e14-04-0916) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/25213191/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4161504/)

57. Foglietta, F, Spagnoli, GC, Muraro, MG, Ballestri, M, Guerrini, A, Ferroni, C, et al.. Anticancer activity of paclitaxel-loaded keratin nanoparticles in two-dimensional and perfused three-dimensional breast cancer models. *Int J Nanomed* 2018;13:4847–67. https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s159942 (https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s159942) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30214193/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6122896/)

58. Fanciullino, R, Ciccolini, J, Milano, G. Challenges, expectations and limits for nanoparticles-based therapeutics in cancer: a focus on nano-albumin-bound drugs. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 2013;88:504–13. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.critrevonc.2013.06.010 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.critrevonc.2013.06.010) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23871532/)

59. Foley, EA, Kapoor, TM. Microtubule attachment and spindle assembly checkpoint signaling at the kinetochore. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2013;14:25–37. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrm3494 (https://doi.org/10.1038/nrm3494) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23258294/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3762224/)

60. Ojedalopez, MA, Needleman, DJ, Song, C, Ginsburg, A, Kohl, PA, Li, Y, et al.. Transformation of taxol-stabilized microtubules into inverted tubulin tubules triggered by a tubulin conformation switch. *Nat Mater* 2014;13:195–203. https://doi.org/10.1038/nmat3858 (https://doi.org/10.1038/nmat3858) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24441880/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3946914/)

61. Liu, QA, Zheng, JJ, Gu, YC, Wang, CY, Shao, CL. Chapter 7 – The chemistry and bioactivity of macrolides from marine microorganisms. In: Rahman, AU, editor. *Studies in natural products chemistry*. USA: Elsevier; 2015, 44:353–401 pp. 10.1016/B978-0-444-63460-3.00007-9 (https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-444-63460-3.00007-9)

62. Hamel, E. Natural products which interact with tubulin in the Vinca domain: maytansine, rhizoxin, phomopsin A, dolastatins 10 and 15 and halichondrin B. *Pharmacol Ther* 1992;55:31–51. https://doi.org/10.1016/0163-7258(92)90028-x (https://doi.org/10.1016/0163-7258(92)90028-x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/1287674/)

63. Jordan, MA, Kamath, K, Manna, T, Okouneva, T, Miller, HP, Davis, C, et al.. The primary antimitotic mechanism of action of the synthetic halichondrin E7389 is suppression of microtubule growth. Littlefield and Leslie Wilson. *Mol Canc Therapeut* 2005;4:1086–95. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.mct-04-0345 (https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.mct-04-0345) .

64. Jordan, MA, Wilson, L. Microtubules as a target for anticancer drugs. *Nat Rev Canc* 2004;4:253–65. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc1317 (https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc1317) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15057285/)

65. Metodiewa, D, Jaiswal, AK, Cenas, N, Dickancaite, E, Segura-Aguilar, J. Quercetin may act as a cytotoxic prooxidant after its metabolic activation to semiquinone and quinoidal product. *Free Radical Biol Med* 1999;26:107–16. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0891-5849(98)00167-1 (https://doi.org/10.1016/s0891-5849(98)00167-1) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/9890646/)

66. Boots, AW, Haenen, GR, Bast, A. Health effects of quercetin: from antioxidant to nutraceutical. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2008;585:325–37. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2008.03.008 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2008.03.008) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18417116/)

67. Panche, AN, Diwan, AD, Chandra, SR. Flavonoids: an overview. *J Nutr Sci* 2016;5:e47. https://doi.org/10.1017/jns.2016.41 (https://doi.org/10.1017/jns.2016.41) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28620474/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5465813/)

68. Khan, F, Niaz, K, Maqbool, F, Ismail Hassan, F, Abdollahi, M, Nagulapalli Venkata, KC, et al.. Molecular targets underlying the anticancer effects of quercetin: an update. *Nutrients* 2016;8:529. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu8090529 (https://doi.org/10.3390/nu8090529) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27589790/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5037516/)

69. Spagnuolo, C, Russo, M, Bilotto, S, Tedesco, I, Laratta, B, Russo, GL. Dietary polyphenols in cancer prevention: the example of the flavonoid quercetin in leukemia. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2012;1259:95–103. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.2012.06599.x (https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.2012.06599.x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/22758641/)

70. Yoshida, M, Yamamoto, M, Nikaido, T. Quercetin arrests human leukemic T-cells in late G1 phase of the cell cycle. *Cancer Res* 1992;52:6676–81.

71. Zhang, Q, Zhao, XH, Wang, ZJ. Flavones and flavonols exert cytotoxic effects on a human oesophageal adenocarcinoma cell line (OE33) by causing G2/M arrest and inducing apoptosis. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2008;46:2042–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2008.01.049 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2008.01.049) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18331776/)

72. Richter, M, Ebermann, R, Marian, B. Quercetin-induced apoptosis in colorectal tumor cells: possible role of EGF receptor signaling. *Nutr Canc* 1999;34:88–99. https://doi.org/10.1207/s15327914nc340113 (https://doi.org/10.1207/s15327914nc340113) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/10453447/)

73. Lau-Cam, CA, Chan, HH. Flavonoids from Comptonia peregrine. *Phytochemistry* 1973;12:1829. https://doi.org/10.1016/0031-9422(73)80420-0 (https://doi.org/10.1016/0031-9422(73)80420-0) .

74. Perkin, AG, Hummel, JJ. LXXVI-The colouring principle contained in the bark of Myrica nagi Part I. *J Chem Soc Trans* 1896;69:1287–94. https://doi.org/10.1039/ct8966901287 (https://doi.org/10.1039/ct8966901287) .

75. Lin, GB, Xie, Y, Li, GW. Research advances of myricetin. *J Int Pharm Res* 2012;39:483–7.

76. López-Lázaro, M, Willmore, E, Austin, CA. The dietary flavonoids myricetin and fisetin act as dual inhibitors of DNA topoisomerases I and II in cells. *Mutat Res* 2010;696:41–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mrgentox.2009.12.010 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mrgentox.2009.12.010) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20025993/)

77. Lee, KW, Kang, NJ, Rogozin, EA, Kim, HG, Cho, YY, Bode, AM, et al.. Myricetin is a novel natural inhibitor of neoplastic cell transformation and MEK1. *Carcinogenesis* 2007;28:1918–27. https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgm110 (https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgm110) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17693661/)

78. Anderson, D, Dobrzyńska, MM, Yu, TW. Modulating effects of Silymarin and myricetin on food mutagens and doxorubicin in assays with different genetic endpoints. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol Oncol* 1997;16:313–27.

79. Labbé, D, Provençal, M, Lamy, S, Boivin, D, Gingras, D, Béliveau, R. The flavonols quercetin, kaempferol, and myricetin inhibit hepatocyte growth factor-induced medulloblastoma cell migration. *J Nutr* 2009;139:646–52. https://doi.org/10.3945/jn.108.102616 (https://doi.org/10.3945/jn.108.102616) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19244381/)

80. Ren, J, Lu, Y, Qian, Y, Chen, B, Wu, T, Ji, G. Recent progress regarding kaempferol for the treatment of various diseases (Review). *Exp Ther Med* 2019;18:2759–76. https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2019.7886 (https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2019.7886) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31572524/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6755486/)

81. Calderón-Montaño, JM, Burgos-Morón, E, Pérez-Guerrero, C, López-Lázaro, M. A review on the dietary flavonoid kaempferol. *Mini Rev Med Chem* 2011;11:298–344. https://doi.org/10.2174/138955711795305335 (https://doi.org/10.2174/138955711795305335) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21428901/)

82. Hegde, A, Bhatia, M. Hydrogen sulfide in inflammation: friend or foe? *Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets* 2011;10:118–22. https://doi.org/10.2174/187152811794776268 (https://doi.org/10.2174/187152811794776268) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21275899/)

83. Ren, J, Lu, Y, Qian, Y, Chen, B, Wu, T, Ji, G. Recent progress regarding kaempferol for the treatment of various diseases (Review). *Exp Ther Med* 2019;18:2759–76. https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2019.7886 (https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2019.7886) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31572524/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6755486/)

84. Chen, AY, Chen, YC. A review of the dietary flavonoid, kaempferol on human health and cancer chemoprevention. *Food Chem* 2013;138:2099–107. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2012.11.139 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2012.11.139) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23497863/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3601579/)

85. Yao, S, Wang, X, Li, C, Zhao, T, Jin, H, Fang, W. Kaempferol inhibits cell proliferation and glycolysis in esophagus squamous cell carcinoma via targeting EGFR signaling pathway. *Tumour Biol* 2016;37:10247–56. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13277-016-4912-6 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s13277-016-4912-6) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26831667/)

86. Kim, SH, Hwang, KA, Choi, KC. Treatment with kaempferol suppresses breast cancer cell growth caused by estrogen and triclosan in cellular and xenograft breast cancer models. *J Nutr Biochem* 2016;28:70–82. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jnutbio.2015.09.027 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jnutbio.2015.09.027) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26878784/)

87. Wu, LY, Lu, HF, Chou, YC, Shih, YL, Bau, DT, Chen, JC, et al.. Kaempferol induces DNA damage and inhibits DNA repair associated protein expressions in human promyelocytic leukemia HL-60 cells. *Am J Chin Med* 2015;43:365–82. https://doi.org/10.1142/s0192415x1550024x (https://doi.org/10.1142/s0192415x1550024x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/25779644/)

88. Di Carlo, G, Mascolo, N, Izzo, AA, Capasso, F. Flavonoids: old and new aspects of a class of natural therapeutic drugs. *Life Sci* 1999;65:337–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0024-3205(99)00120-4 (https://doi.org/10.1016/s0024-3205(99)00120-4) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/10421421/)

89. Batovska, DI, Todorova, IT. Trends in utilization of the pharmacological potential of chalcones. *Curr Clin Pharmacol* 2010;5:1–29. https://doi.org/10.2174/157488410790410579 (https://doi.org/10.2174/157488410790410579) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19891604/)

90. Pandey, MK, Sung, B, Ahn, KS, Aggarwal, BB. Butein suppresses constitutive and inducible signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) 3 activation and STAT3-regulated gene products through the induction of a protein tyrosine phosphatase SHP-1. *Mol Pharmacol* 2009;75:525–33. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.108.052548 (https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.108.052548) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19103760/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2684906/)

91. Bordoloi, D, Monisha, J, Roy, NK, Padmavathi, G, Banik, K, Chaudhary, H, et al.. An investigation on the therapeutic potential of butein, a tretrahydroxychalcone against human oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev APJCP* 2019;20:3437–46. https://doi.org/10.31557/apjcp.2019.20.11.3437 (https://doi.org/10.31557/apjcp.2019.20.11.3437) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31759370/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7063020/)

92. Cho, SG, Woo, SM, Ko, SG. Butein suppresses breast cancer growth by reducing a production of intracellular reactive oxygen species. *J Exp Clin Canc Res* 2014;33:51. https://doi.org/10.1186/1756-9966-33-51 (https://doi.org/10.1186/1756-9966-33-51) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24919544/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4064524/)

93. Park, I, Park, KK, Park, JH, Chung, WY. Isoliquiritigenin induces G2 and M phase arrest by inducing DNA damage and by inhibiting the metaphase/anaphase transition. *Canc Lett* 2009;277:174–81. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.canlet.2008.12.005 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.canlet.2008.12.005) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19167809/)

94. Zhang, B, Lai, Y, Li, Y, Shu, N, Wang, Z, Wang, Y, et al.. Antineoplastic activity of isoliquiritigenin, a chalcone compound, in androgen-independent human prostate cancer cells linked to G2/M cell cycle arrest and cell apoptosis. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2018;821:57–67. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2017.12.053 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2017.12.053) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/29277717/)

95. Chen, C, Shenoy, AK, Padia, R, Fang, D, Jing, Q, Yang P, et al.. Suppression of lung cancer progression by isoliquiritigenin through its metabolite 2, 4, 2′, 4′-Tetrahydroxychalcone. *J Exp Clin Canc Res* 2018;37:243. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-018-0902-4 (https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-018-0902-4) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30285892/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6171243/)

96. Shi, Y, Wu, W, Huo, A, Zhou, W, Jin, X. Isobavachalcone inhibits the proliferation and invasion of tongue squamous cell carcinoma cells. *Oncol Lett* 2017;14:2852–8. https://doi.org/10.3892/ol.2017.6517 (https://doi.org/10.3892/ol.2017.6517) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28928824/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5588287/)

97. Li, K, Zheng, Q, Chen, X, Wang, Y, Wang, D, Wang, J. Isobavachalcone induces ROS-mediated apoptosis via targeting thioredoxin reductase 1 in human prostate cancer PC-3 cells. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2018;2018. https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/1915828 (https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/1915828) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30410640/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6206523/)

98. Mordente, A, Meucci, E, Silvestrini, A, Martorana, GE, Giardina, B. New developments in anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity. *Curr Med Chem* 2009;16:1656–72. https://doi.org/10.2174/092986709788186228 (https://doi.org/10.2174/092986709788186228) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19442138/)

99. Tacar, O, Sriamornsak, P, Dass, CR. Doxorubicin: an update on anticancer molecular action, toxicity and novel drug delivery systems. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 2013;65:157–70. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.2042-7158.2012.01567.x (https://doi.org/10.1111/j.2042-7158.2012.01567.x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23278683/)

100. Omiecinski, CJ, Vanden Heuvel, JP, Perdew, GH, Peters, JM. Xenobiotic metabolism, disposition, and regulation by receptors: from biochemical phenomenon to predictors of major toxicities. *Toxicol Sci* 2011;120(1 Suppl):S49–75. https://doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/kfq338 (https://doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/kfq338) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21059794/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3145385/)

101. Clive, AO, Jones, HE, Bhatnagar, R, Preston, NJ, Maskell, N. Interventions for the management of malignant pleural effusions: a network meta-analysis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016;2016:CD010529. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD010529.pub3 (https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD010529.pub3) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32315458/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7173736/)

102. Hecht, SM. Bleomycin: new perspectives on the mechanism of action. *J Nat Prod* 2000;63:158–68. https://doi.org/10.1021/np990549f (https://doi.org/10.1021/np990549f) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/10650103/)

103. Sobell, HM. Actinomycin and DNA transcription. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1985;82:5328–31. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.82.16.5328 (https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.82.16.5328) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/2410919/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC390561/)

104. Khatua, S, Nair, CN, Ghosh, K. Immune-mediated thrombocytopenia following dactinomycin therapy in a child with alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma: the unresolved issues. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 2004;26:777–9. https://doi.org/10.1097/00043426-200411000-00020 (https://doi.org/10.1097/00043426-200411000-00020) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15543019/)

105. Sithranga Boopathy, N, Kathiresan, K. Anticancer drugs from marine flora: an overview. *J Oncol* 2010;2010:214186. https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/214186 (https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/214186) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21461373/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3065217/)

106. Naskar, K, Guha bakshi, DN. Vegetarian patterns of the sundarbans. In: *Mangrove swamps of the sundarbans. An ecological perspective*. Culcutta, India: Naya Prakash; 1995:27–174 pp.

107. Cotelle, N, Bemier, JL, Catteau, JP, Pommery, J, Wallet, JC, Gaydou, EM. Antioxidant properties of hydroxyl flavones. *Free Radical Biol Med* 1996;20:35–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/0891-5849(95)02014-4 (https://doi.org/10.1016/0891-5849(95)02014-4) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/8903677/)

108. Sithranga Boopathy, N, Kathiresan, K. Anticancer drugs from marine flora: an overview. *J Oncol* 2010;2010:214186. https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/214186 (https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/214186) .

109. Yi, XX, Deng, JG, Gao, CH, Hou, XT, Li, F, Wang, ZP, et al.. Four new cyclohexylideneacetonitrile derivatives from the hypocotyl of mangrove (Bruguiera gymnorrhiza). *Molecules* 2015;20:14565–75. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules200814565 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules200814565) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26274945/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6332330/)

110. Yang, H, Zeng, M, Dong, S, Liu, Z, Li, R. Anti-proliferative activity of phlorotannin extracts from brown algae Laminaria japonica Aresch. *Chin J Oceanol Limnol* 2010;28:122–30. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00343-010-9054-x (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00343-010-9054-x) .

111. Pangestuti, R, Kim, SK. Biological activities and health benefit effects of natural pigments derived from marine algae. *J Funct Food* 2011;3:255–66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2011.07.001 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2011.07.001) .

112. Asai, A, Sugawara, T, Ono, H, Nagao, H. Biotransformation of fucoxanthinol into amarouciaxanthin a in mice and HepG2 cells: formation and cytotoxicity of fucoxanthin metabolites. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2004;32:205–11. https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.32.2.205 (https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.32.2.205) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/14744942/)

113. Kwon, MJ, Nam, TJ. Porphyran induces apoptosis related signal pathway in AGS gastric cancer cell lines. *Life Sci* 2006;79:1956–62. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lfs.2006.06.031 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lfs.2006.06.031) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16876203/)

114. Zhang, Q, Li, N, Liu, X, Zhao, Z, Li, Z, Xu, Z. The structure of a sulfated galactan from Porphyra haitanensis and its in vivo antioxidant activity. *Carbohydr Res* 2004;339:105–11. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2003.09.015 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2003.09.015) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/14659676/)

115. Moghadamtousi, SZ, Karimian, H, Khanabdali, R, Razavi, M, Firoozinia, M, Zandi, K, et al.. Anticancer and antitumor potential of fucoidan and fucoxanthin, two main metabolites isolated from brown algae. *Sci* 2014;2014:768323. 10.1155/2014/768323 (https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/768323)

116. Cumashi, A, Ushakova, NA, Preobrazhenskaya, ME, D'Incecco, A, Piccoli, A, Totani, L, et al.. A comparative study of the anti-inflammatory, anticoagulant, antiangiogenic, and antiadhesive activities of nine different fucoidans from brown seaweeds. *Glycobiology* 2007;17:541–52. https://doi.org/10.1093/glycob/cwm014 (https://doi.org/10.1093/glycob/cwm014) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17296677/)

117. Itoh, H, Noda, H, Amano, H, Zhuaug, C, Mizuno, T, Ito, H. Antitumor activity and immunological properties of marine algal polysaccharides, especially fucoidan, prepared from Sargassum thunbergii of Phaeophyceae. *Anticancer Res* 1993;13:2045–52.

118. Koyanagi, S, Tanigawa, N, Nakagawa, H, Soeda, S, Shimeno, H. Oversulfation of fucoidan enhances its anti-angiogenic and antitumor activities. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2003;65:173–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0006-2952(02)01478-8 (https://doi.org/10.1016/s0006-2952(02)01478-8) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12504793/)

119. Kawamoto, H, Miki, Y, Kimura, T, Tanaka, K, Nakagawa, T, Kawamukai, M, et al.. Effects of fucoidan from Mozuku on human stomach cell lines. *Food Sci Technol Res* 2006;12:218–22. https://doi.org/10.3136/fstr.12.218 (https://doi.org/10.3136/fstr.12.218) .

120. Synytsya, A, Kim, WJ, Kim, SM, Pohl, R, Synytsya, A, Kvasnička, F, et al.. Structure and antitumour activity of fucoidan isolated from sporophyll of Korean brown seaweed Undaria pinnatifida. *Carbohydr Polym* 2010;81:41–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2010.01.052 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2010.01.052) .

121. Alekseyenko, TV, Zhanayeva, SY, Venediktova, AA, Zvyagintseva, TN, Kuznetsova, TA, Besednova, NN, et al.. Antitumor and antimetastatic activity of fucoidan, a sulfated polysaccharide isolated from the Okhotsk sea Fucus evanescens brown alga. *Bull Exp Biol Med* 2007;143:730–2. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10517-007-0226-4 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s10517-007-0226-4) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18239813/)

122. Chandrasekaran, R, Bian, W, Okuyama, K. Three-dimensional structure of guaran. *Carbohydr Res* 1998;312:219–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0008-6215(98)00249-3 (https://doi.org/10.1016/s0008-6215(98)00249-3) .

123. Necas, J, Bartosikova, L. Carrageenan: a review. *Vet Med* 2013;58:187–205. https://doi.org/10.17221/6758-vetmed (https://doi.org/10.17221/6758-vetmed) .

124. Haijin, M, Xiaolu, J, Huashi, GA. Carrageenan derived oligosaccharide prepared by enzymatic degradation containing anti-tumor activity. *J Appl Phycol* 2003;15:297–303. https://doi.org/10.1023/a:1025103530534 (https://doi.org/10.1023/a:1025103530534) . 10.1023/A:1025103530534 (https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1025103530534)

125. Yuan, H, Song, J, Li, X, Li, N, Liu, S. Enhanced immunostimulatory and antitumor activity of different derivatives of Carrageenan oligosaccharides from Kappaphycus striatum. *J Appl Phycol* 2011;23:59–65. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10811-010-9536-4 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s10811-010-9536-4) .

126. Zhou, G, Xin, H, Sheng, W, Sun, Y, Li, Z, Xu, Z. In vivo growth-inhibition of S180 tumor by mixture of 5-Fu and low molecular carrageenan from Chondrus ocellatus. *Pharmacol Res* 2005;51:153–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2004.07.003 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2004.07.003) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15629261/)

127. Zhou, G, Sheng, W, Yao, W, Wang, C. Effect of low molecular lambda-carrageenan from Chondrus ocellatus on antitumor H-22 activity of 5-Fu. *Pharmacol Res* 2006;53:129–34. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2005.09.009 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2005.09.009) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16310373/)

128. Vaddula, B, Tantak, M, Sadana, R, Gonzaleg, MA, Kumar, D. One-pot synthesis and in-vitro anticancer evaluation of 5-(2′-indolyl)thiazoles. *Sci Rep* 2016;6:23401. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep23401 (https://doi.org/10.1038/srep23401) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27021742/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4810428/)

129. Mezencev, R, Galizzi, M, Kutschy, P, Docampo, R. Trypanosoma cruzi: antiproliferative effect of indole phytoalexins on intracellular amastigotes in vitro. *Exp Parasitol* 2009;122:66–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.exppara.2009.01.013 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.exppara.2009.01.013) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19545522/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2784243/)

130. Smith, BA, Neal, CL, Chetram, M, Vo, B, Mezencev, R, Hinton, C, et al.. The phytoalexin camalexin mediates cytotoxicity towards aggressive prostate cancer cells via reactive oxygen species. *J Nat Med* 2013;67:607–18. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11418-012-0722-3 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s11418-012-0722-3) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23179315/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3644009/)

131. Mezencev, R, Updegrove, T, Kutschy, P, Repovská, M, McDonald, JF. Camalexin induces apoptosis in T-leukemia Jurkat cells by increased concentration of reactive oxygen species and activation of caspase-8 and caspase-9. *J Nat Med* 2011;65:488–99. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11418-011-0526-x (https://doi.org/10.1007/s11418-011-0526-x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21424253/)

132. Yang, Y, Wang, G, Wu, W, Yao, S, Han, X, He, D, et al.. Camalexin induces apoptosis via the ROS-ER stress-mitochondrial apoptosis pathway in AML cells. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2018;2018:7426950. https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/7426950 (https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/7426950) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30538806/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6261074/)

133. Cheung, KL, Kong, AN. Molecular targets of dietary phenethyl isothiocyanate and sulforaphane for cancer chemoprevention. *AAPS J* 2010;12:87–97. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12248-009-9162-8 (https://doi.org/10.1208/s12248-009-9162-8) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20013083/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2811646/)

134. Gupta, P, Wright, SE, Kim, SH, Srivastava, SK. Phenethyl isothiocyanate: a comprehensive review of anti-cancer mechanisms. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2014;1846:405–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbcan.2014.08.003 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbcan.2014.08.003) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/25152445/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4260992/)
Published Online: 2021-10-18

© 2021 Walter de Gruyter GmbH, Berlin/Boston

— or —

From the journal

Physical Sciences Reviews
Volume 8 Issue 8

Articles in the same Issue

Frontmatter

Reviews

Influence of lime (CaO) on low temperature leaching of some types of bauxite from Guinea

Ethnobotanical survey, phytoconstituents and antibacterial investigation of *Rapanea melanophloeos (L.) Mez.* bark, fruit and leaf extracts

Catalytic properties of supramolecular polymetallated porphyrins

Lignin-based polymers

Bio-based polyhydroxyalkanoates blends and composites

Biodegradable poly(butylene adipate-*co*-terephthalate) (PBAT)

Repurposing tires – alternate energy source?

Theoretical investigation of the stability, reactivity, and the interaction of methyl-substituted peridinium-based ionic liquids

Polymeric membranes for biomedical applications

Design of locally sourced activated charcoal filter from maize cob for wastewater decontamination: an approach to fight waste with waste

Downloaded on 12.6.2024 from https://www.degruyter.com/document/doi/10.1515/psr-2021-0038/html?lang=

ScienceDirect

Pharmacological Research - Modern Chinese Medicine

Volume 1, December 2021, 100011

Review

Polycystic ovarian syndrome: A review covering phytoconstituents for its outstrip management

Monika Joshi [a], Ravi Shankar [b], Kamla Pathak [c], Ramakant Yadav [d]

Show more

Outline | Share | Cite

https://doi.org/10.1016/j.prmcm.2021.100011

Get rights and content

Under a Creative Commons license

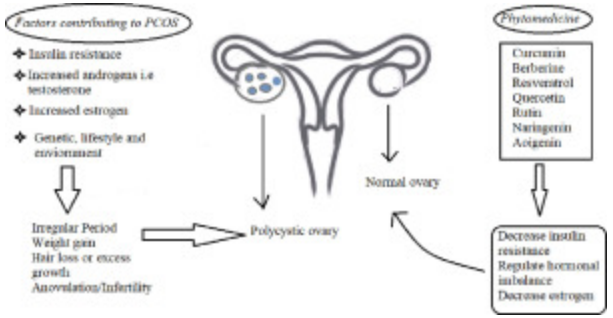
open access

Abstract

Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) is a multifactorial disease affecting women of all age groups in reproductive age and post-menopausal women. It is associated with a large range of clinical manifestations. Medical treatment depends on the symptoms observed, and the most common symptoms addressed in the case of PCOS are infertility, hirsutism, menstrual disorders, and obesity. There are significantly fewer therapies that can work on many symptoms, and the most difficult one is to treat infertility and hirsutism together, leading to a very hectic, tedious, and frustrating therapeutic period for patients.

Current treatments are associated with severe side effects, including visual disturbance, hot flushes, abdominal distension, mood swings associated with clomiphene citrate, while polymenorrhagia with spironolactone. Thus, phytoconstituents and lifestyle modification can be considered as a safe and effective treatment approach for PCOS management as are free from serious adverse effects and can work out at multiple targets simultaneously. The research reports have demonstrated the fact that phytoconstituents like curcumin, resveratrol, and berberine have great potential in reducing insulin resistance, modulating L.H. to FSH ratio, and reducing metabolic syndromes associated with the disease. The results obtained revealed that these phytoconstituents have comparable results with first-line drugs such as clomiphene and metformin in improving fertility, reducing obesity, and regularizing the menstrual cycle. The present review covers the pathophysiology of PCOS, the current treatment approach and their drawbacks, detailed preclinical and clinical studies phytoconstituents that have proven potential in managing PCOS symptoms along with their regulatory aspects.

Graphical abstract



Download : Download high-res image (214KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Previous

Next

Keywords

Polycystic ovarian syndrome; Phytoconstituents; Curcumin; Berberine; Resveratrol; Apigenin

1. Introduction

Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) is a multifactorial disease also called Stein– Leventhal syndrome or hyperandrogenic anovulation (H.A.). This disorder is one of the most common problems that affect women of all age groups in reproductive age and post-menopausal women and is associated with an extensive range of clinical manifestations [1]. The disease is characterized by severe fertility and reproductive health issues and can be potentially threatening when combines with other lifestyle-related disorders like obesity, metabolic disorders, or cardiovascular disorders. Stein and Leventhal in 1935, first described this disorder, and it is characterized by the presence of 10 or more small cysts underdeveloped ovarian follicles of the size of 2–9mm in single or both ovaries [2].

As per the National Institutes of Health (NIH), approximately 4 – 10% of females belonging to the age group of 18–45 years have suffered from the ill effects of this disease called PCOS [1]. In previous years when the information available was meager, it was only affecting adult women until recent evidence clearly proved that the disorder is a lifelong syndrome, manifesting since prenatal age. PCOS prevalence is traditionally estimated at 4%–8% from studies performed in Greece, Spain, and the USA [3]. According to the Rotterdam diagnostic criteria, it was reported that a prevalence rate of 3 to 26% is found in adolescents [4].

The disease affects physical and mental status and affects the economic well-being of the individual and carries an enormous economic burden. In the USA, approximately 4 billion dollars are spent every year to screen for the disease and manage various linked morbidities like obesity, hirsutism, diabetes mellitus, and infertility [5]. It was reported that the Australian Health annual budget of more than 800 million dollars is involved in diagnosing, mitigating, and management of this multifaceted disease [5]. The disease is associated with various co- morbidities if left untreated and if appropriate medical consultation is not taken. Thus, it is essential to have early diagnosis and treatment to prevent future health co-morbidities and reduce financial burden [6, 7].

The main factors which play a significant role in PCOS development include increased insulin level, hypothalamic-pituitary dysfunction, and ovarian dysfunction [6]. In PCOS, there is increased Luteinizing hormone (L.H.) to Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) secretion, further leading to increased secretion of ovarian androgens [8]. Increased levels of insulin work on the hypothalamus-pituitary gonad axis and stimulate L.H. to FSH ratio simultaneously enhance androgens synthesis. This results in excess testosterone, androstenedione, and dehydroepiandrosterone by the ovaries in the patients suffering from PCOS [6, 8].

Current treatment approaches utilized for PCOS management mainly include lifestyle modification, insulin sensitizer molecules, nutritional supplements, ovulation induction, high testosterone therapy, assisted reproductive technology therapy, and surgical treatment [9,10]. The primary treatment approach is based on decreasing insulin resistance and glucose intolerance which is mainly achieved by metformin [10,11]. However, recent studies also reported that pioglitazone could also be a potential therapeutic agent improving the menstrual cycle and ovulation of PCOS patients [12]. Hormonal Contraceptives are used as first line drugs in case of PCOS utilized for normalizing hormonal imbalances and reducing obesity and ovulatory dysfunctions. However, due to various side effects, there is a growing tendency to utilize herbal drugs and phytoconstituents. The main class of therapeutic agents used are natural antioxidants and anti-inflammatory agents to regulate metabolic disorders and hormonal imbalances and reduce associated severe co-morbidities like prolonged hypertension and hyperlipidaemia that may lead to Myocardial infarctions [12,13]. The phytoconstituents could be utilized as therapeutic agents in PCOS treatment in various ways starting from producing steroidogenic response and express estrogen receptor protein to the reduction of androgens, from increasing glucose uptake and to decreasing insulin resistance and improving metabolism [13,14].

These phytoconstituents are obtained from traditional Chinese herbs which has been used since ancient time and has now become a major part of China's medical system. Phytoconstituents as Conventional and alternative medicines (CAMS) are therefore a popular adjunct therapy in the treatment of PCOS as they are effective for female reproductive problems [15,16] and are generally associated with few side effects [17]. Traditional Chinese medicine formulas and herbs have been used to manage the health problems of women for hundreds of years. From ancient times, Chinese medicine prescription was composed of variety of herbs for treating specific diseases. Herbal formula and single herb were reportedly used by over 70% of women with PCOS and are a commonly encountered condition among traditional Chinese doctors . Many studies showed that both herbal formula and single herb are helpful for fertility, menstrual health, and other aspects of PCOS. In view of the

use of Herbal Medicine in PCOS are becoming popular in research and clinical practice [18]. Berberine (BBR) is one of the major components of the Chinese herbal medicines derived from Rhizoma Coptidis, Cortex Phellodendri, and Cortex Berberidis and has been utilized in treating diarrhea, metabolic disorders, and infertility for long time. It has been used for thousands of years in its herbal form to enhance fertility and recently as an extract combined with cyproterone acetate (CPA), clomiphene (CC), and letrozole (LET), to enhance their effectiveness. Recently, a large body of evidence has demonstrated that BBR has a comparable activity to Metformin in reducing IR [19], [20], [21], [22].

Curcuma and variety of herbal extracts have been used and can improve the menstrual cycle, ovulation, and fertility by regulating the secretion of endocrine hormones. The phytoconstituents present in the herbal extract may act directly on the hypothalamus to affect the hypothalamus-pituitary axis and reduce the release of gonadotrophin-releasing hormone, subsequently balancing the concentrations of LH, FSH, and T [23].

The reduction of LH levels results into increased sensitivity of ovarian tissue to circulating FSH, contributing to alleviation of the symptoms of excessive androgens, the follicular growth, and ovulation. Also, it was reported by various sources that many single herbs also have estrogen-like function, which was directly related to improve the implantation rate and pregnancy outcome, and can decrease the serum level of androgens by increasing the level of SHBG [24]. Resveratrol, a polyphenol which is the main constituent of the Chinese herb Hu Zhang (Polygoni Cuspidiati Rhizoma) has been observed to have antioxidant, anticancer and anti-inflammatory effects [25], [26], [27]. It was reported by various researchers and was proven clinically and experimentally that Resveratrol is highly effective in the treatment of PCOS as it has been suggested that the compound has antidiabetic effects [27]. In rat theca cells, resveratrol has been shown to inhibit cellular proliferation [28] and androgen production by a reduction in androstenedione levels and decrease in the expression of CYP17A mRNA [29]. Therefore, they may have important therapeutic potential for ovulatory dysfunction in PCOS

It has been reported by various research reports that ginsenosides derived from Ren Shen (Panax ginseng) possess antidiabetic qualities. Clinically, ginsenosides improve insulin sensitivity and glucose levels [30] in T2DM patients, an effect mirrored in diabetic rats, with evidence indicating improvements in both insulin and leptin sensitivity [26]. It was also reported by the help of rat model for PCOS that ginsenosides produced reproductive benefits as ginsenosides improved ovarian weight and reduced the number of antral follicles when compared to the model group [31].

So, it can be concluded that Chinese herbal medicines posses good clinical effectivity against PCOS and this single phytoconstituents can add up in increasing the efficacy and safety of the compounds.

This review will focus on the most recent information and research related to the etiology, the pathophysiology of the disease, diagnostic criteria, their limitations, treatment options prevailing, and phytoconstituents' role in mitigating and managing this complex disorder.

2. A basic understanding of PCOS

The symptoms, diagnostic criteria, and even the causes of PCOS development are a debatable issue until now, irrespective of certain workshops and joint conferences to reach a common conclusion. A joint suggestion by members of the European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology and the American Society of Reproductive Medicine in 2003 — the so-called Rotterdam criteria - which was also unaccepted globally, and three definitions for PCOS remain on the present-day also.

The Rotterdam definition is the most widely used and has the widest acceptance [32], [33], [34], [35], [36], [37]. The definition gives a hypothesis that the presence of PCOS can only be confirmed having at least two of the three characteristics (a) clinical and/or biochemical increased level of androgen,

(b) anovulation, and (c) polycystic ovarian morphology. Despite various workshops and conferences, a standard definition is still lacking, and Table1 gives an insight into various diagnostic criteria as per different agencies and societies. However, as per “Androgen Excess and PCOS Society” (A.E.–PCOS), PCOS is said to be present in the case of women if there is the presence of hyperandrogenism along with ovarian dysfunction in the form of ovulatory dysfunction and/or PCOM1, [38,39]. Finally, the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development gives an older definition that requires the presence of both.

Table 1. Diagnostic criteria for PCOS.

Presentation	NIH, 1990	ESHRE/ASRM, 2003	AES, 2006
Clinical or biochemical hyperandrogenism	Present	Present	Present
Oligo/anovulation	Present	Present	Present

Presentation	NIH, 1990	ESHRE/ASRM, 2003	AES, 2006
Presence of multiple cysts		Present	Present

NIH: National Institute of Health of the United States.

ESHRE: European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology.

ASRM: American Society of Reproductive Medicine; AES: Androgen Excess and PCOS Society.

*** NIH deals with only two parameters while ESHRE and AES evaluate 3 characteristics.

In case of ESHRE any two presentations out of three will be associated with PCOS.

In the case of AES, consideration is given to all the three criteria/presentations.

3. Etiology of PCOS: a multifaceted disorder

Despite continuous research in the field to better understand the morphology and pathology, and treatment approaches for PCOS, the primary cause of PCOS is still unknown. The most accepted model is that PCOS is a multifaceted disease involving various factors like genetics, environment, and intrinsic individual factors, which interact with leading to physiological consequences and, finally, a vicious hormonal and physiological cycle. The final factor in the disease progression is the development of hyperandrogenaemia, which leads to most of the clinical symptoms developed and is also the primary marker utilized for the diagnosis of PCOS. [40].

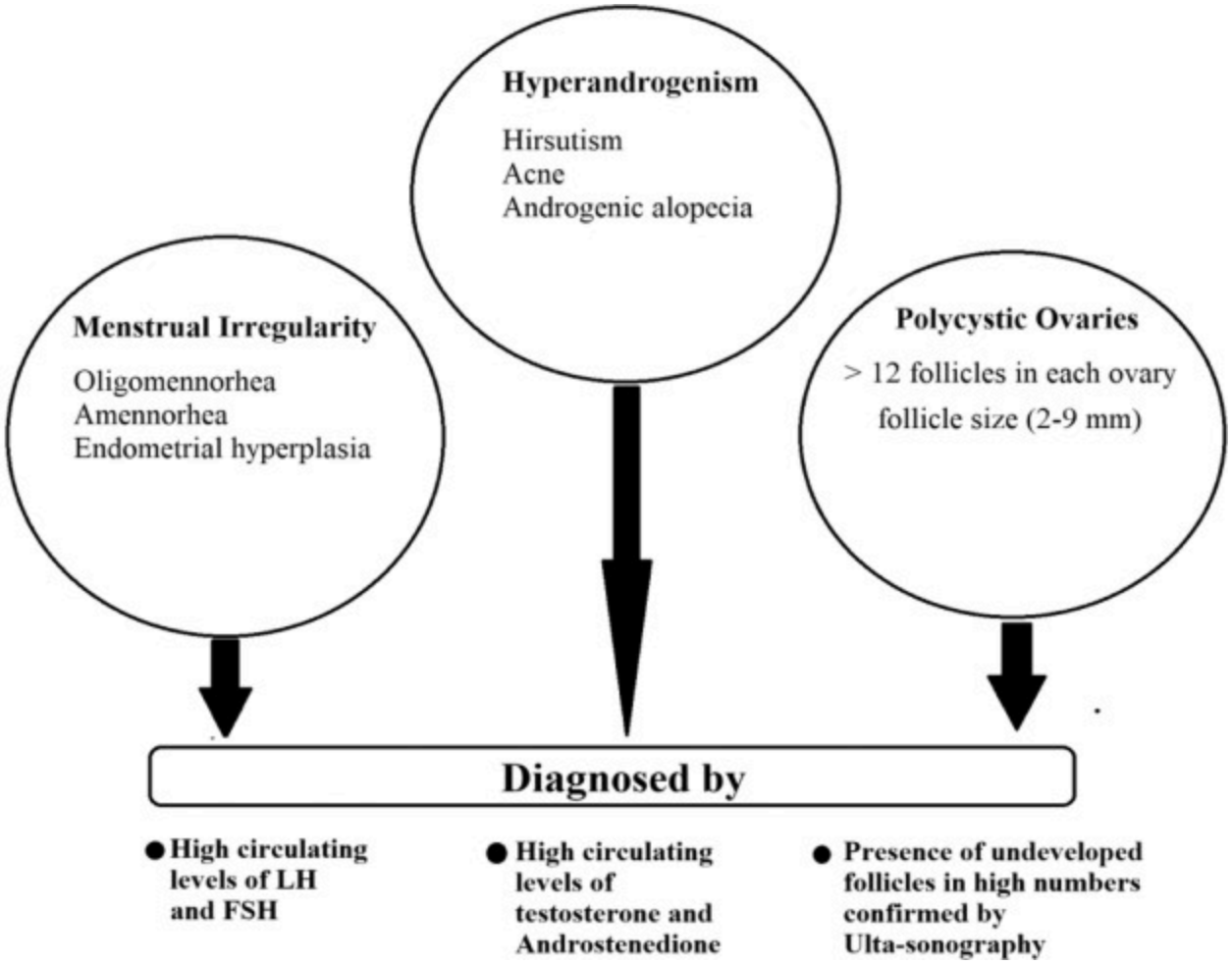
In PCOS, the ovarian cycle is disturbed at various levels. Anti-Mullerian Hormone (AMH), secreted by the granulosa cells, is a hormone present in high concentration in primordial antral follicles and controls the conversion of primordial follicles to primary stage follicles as a check factor [41]. Excessive secretion of the AMH hormone disrupts the normal cycle of the phenomenon of ovarian follicle development. It prevents the further development of follicles by inhibiting the response to FSH [42], finally leading to immature follicles that can cause infertility issues [43].

The second most common feature associated with PCOS is a disruption in the feedback system of the hypothalamus-hypophysis ovary axis (HHOA [44], which resulted in excess concentration of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH). Further, that results in an excess amount of luteinizing hormone (L.H.) to Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) secretions in the blood. This altered amount of the two hormones leads to excess production of androgen from the theca cells of the ovary. [45]. This further results in a decrease in the concentration of oestradiol and progesterone, which in turn again stimulates gonadotropic hypothalamic cells to secrete more amounts of GnRH and L.H. Thus this vicious cycle continues [46]. This plays the most crucial role in the development and progression of the disorder as shown in Fig.2. The excess androgens result in acne, hirsutism, co-morbidities like obesity and metabolic syndrome, etc., along with the development of immature multi follicles in the ovary termed PCOS. [47], which maintains all the characteristic hormonal imbalances.

The development of PCOS depends on certain Genetic factors as reported by various research reports that play an important role in developing this syndrome by helping in the production of abnormally high androgen in ovarian tissue. It is believed that PCOS follows Mendelian pattern of inheritance, in which the genetic defects pass to the next generation being a dominant autosomal allele, which is dependent on certain other factors including environmental conditions and epigenetic factors [48]. Sometimes, sudden inherent mutations in the genes coding for the androgen receptor, sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG), and steroidogenic enzymes can be a factor in the development of hyperandrogenemia [49].

4. Clinical manifestations of PCOS

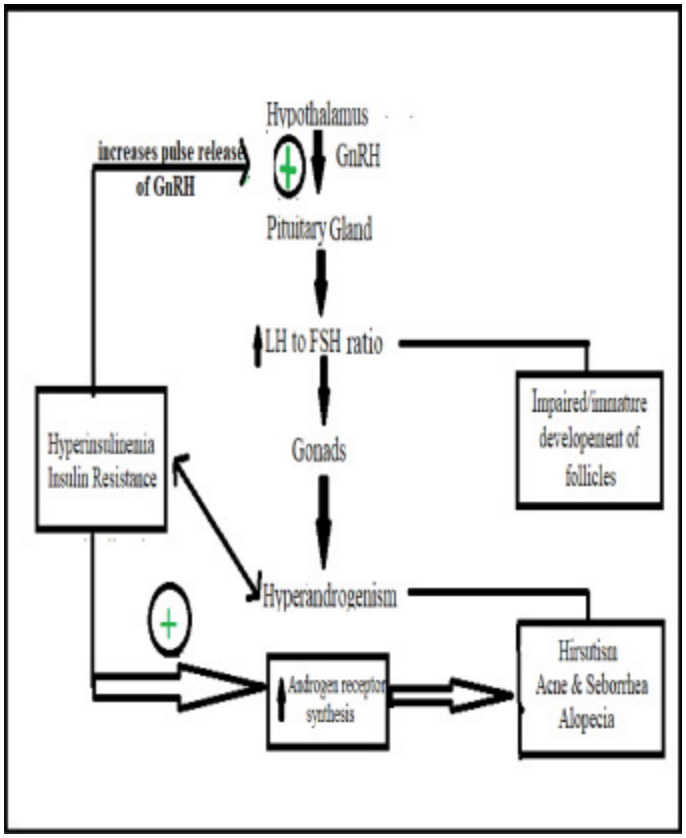
PCOS exhibition is significantly heterogeneous in the clinical setting, with an expansive clinical sign spectrum (Fig.1). Albeit the presence of oligomenorrhea demonstrates ovulatory brokenness, evident eumenorrhea does not totally preclude anovulation. The progesterone levels of < 3–4ng/mL in days 20–24 of the menstrual cycle are sufficient to evaluate the condition and result from being oligo/anovulatory. Conversely, a patient can be analyzed as anovulatory after learning anovulation in any event 2 menstrual cycles, within the sight of hypoprogesteronemia [50].



Download : Download high-res image (381KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 1. Clinical sign and symptoms of PCOS.



Download : Download high-res image (278KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 2. Proposed pathophysiology of PCOS.

4.1. Hirsutism

Hirsutism is the condition that results in excessive terminal hair in areas of the body that are usually hairless or with limited hair growth, such as the face, chest, areolas, abdomen, and upper thighs due to higher concentration of androgen. There are four different androgenic molecules secreted in a female reproductive age, including testosterone, dihydrotestosterone (DHT)

dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEAS), androstenedione. Only testosterone and DHT can bind to the androgen receptor and produce altered hair follicle morphology and physiology [51], [52], [53].

4.2. Acne and seborrhea

Sebaceous glands are small oil producing glands present in males and females both. The sebaceous glands are highly sensitive to the androgen concentration and release. The enhanced androgen concentration in case of PCOS leads to stimulation of sebaceous glands to produce more sebum, leading to the development of acne and seborrhoea [54]. The androgens are responsible for the proliferation of sebocytes mainly in forehead, chin and mid back region [55]. The local bacteria infect the hair follicle structure and release lipolytic enzymes, causing breakdown of triglycerides produced in the sebocyte, leading to blockade and deposition of oil and other degraded materials in the region [56].

4.3. Androgenic alopecia

Androgenic alopecia is the phenomenon of gradual hair loss in a definite pattern due to enhance concentration and secretions of androgens. In susceptible hair follicles, testosterone is converted to dihydrotestosterone (DHT), leading to increased DHT levels that finally bind to the androgen receptor and the genes responsible for the gradual transformation of large terminal follicles miniaturized follicles gets activated by the hormone receptor [57]. This was further consolidated by the reports generated by Cela etal., where 67% of the women with alopecia areata have PCOS and elevated levels androgenic hormones [58].

4.4. Onycholysis and onychorrhexis

Onycholysis is the process of separation of the nail plate from the nail bed due to onychocorneal band [59] and onychorrhexis is the process of splitting of nails in lengthways bridges [60]. The exact reason behind this consequence is not fully understood but various researches reported that higher androgen levels in PCOS leads to exacerbated onycholysis and onychorrhexis.

5. Current treatment approach for PCOS

The cure of PCOS is unknown till now [61]. The standard care treatment for PCOS is to modify lifestyle like reduction in weight, intake of low carbohydrate in diet and daily exercise [62]. Medical treatment depends on the symptoms observed and the most common symptoms addressed in the case of PCOS are, infertility, hirsutism, menstrual disorders, and obesity. There are very few therapies that can work on a multitude of symptoms. The most difficult one is to treat infertility and hirsutism together [63] as oral contraceptives will block the ovulation or anti-androgen use, which are teratogenic for the male fetus. Therefore, these therapies are contrary to each other and thus are fruitless for treating infertility and hirsutism together. Current treatment can be divided into two categories: (i) management of infertility due to anovulation/oligo-ovulation or (ii) treatment of symptoms associated with high androgen levels (i.e., acne, hirsutism, obesity, etc. that require long term maintenance [64].

1 Treatment of infertility

2 Fluctuation in women's hormones can lead to irregularities in menstrual cycle like oligomenorrhea, amenorrhea, and anovulatory cycles that can further cause ovarian dysfunction, uterine bleeding and infertility [65]. The first line treatment includes clomiphene citrate, an antiestrogen [66]. Nowadays letrozole, a aromatase inhibitors is considered to be equally effective for the women's who want to get pregnant [67], second line treatment is use of clomiphene citrate, either alone or in combination, with metformin third line treatment is exogenous gonadotropins or laparoscopic ovarian surgery [68,69].

6. Treatment for PCOS-related symptoms

6.1. Hirsutism

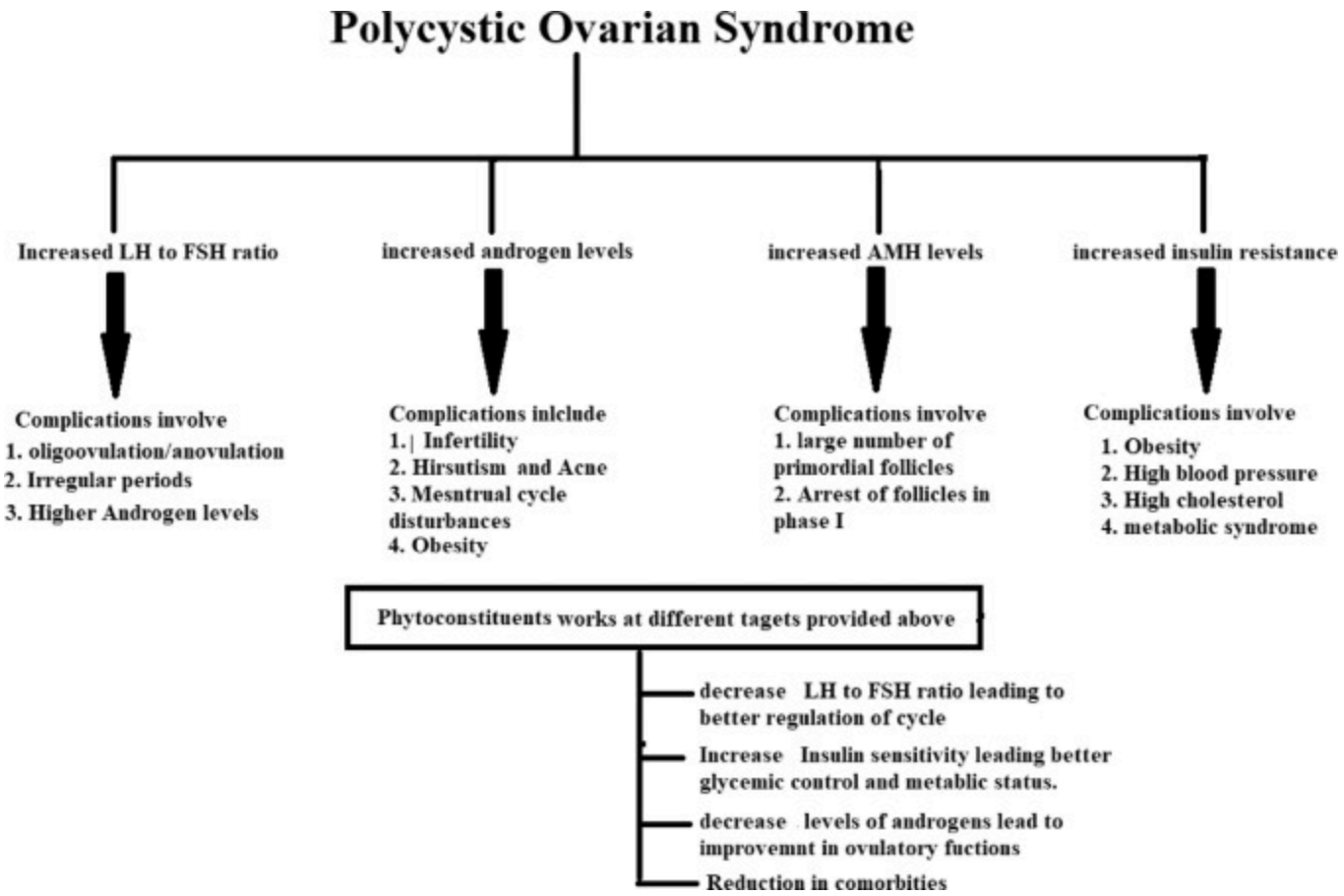
(i) The first line medications for the treatment of hirsutism are spironolactone, metformin, and eflornithine [70]. Further oral contraceptives and their combinations of either progestins of norgestimate, desogestrel, or drospirenone are commonly used for hirsutism due to their low androgenic effects [71].

(ii) Mensural disorders: Mensural disorders are mostly treated with oral contraceptives. Spironolactone [72], acarbose [73], rosiglitazone [74] and metformin [75] are the medications that were effective in case of mensural irregularities.

(iii) Insulin resistance or glucose intolerance: Metformin is the first choice in this case and is reported to ameliorate insulin resistance in women with PCOS [76]. Rosiglitazone [77] and pioglitazone [78] are also reported to be effective for PCOS.

However, the use of all these medications causes unwanted side effects in women The use of clomiphene citrate may lead to visual disturbances, hot flushes, abdominal distension, mood swings, breast tenderness, dizziness, and nausea currently 6 month license is given for clomiphene citrate use. Also anti-oestrogenic effects on the endometrium and cervical mucus are not present with clomiphene citrate and letrozole [79]. Spironolactone may cause polydipsia, polyuria, nausea, headaches, fatigue, gastritis and ovulatory dysfunction resulting in polymenorrhea. [80] Nausea vomiting and gastrointestinal disturbances are the side effects associated with the use of clomiphene citrate and metformin . Further, lifelong treatment of metformin for PCOS is required and it has been reported that cessation of drug after three months of treatment may reverse all the improvements [81].

A long term treatment approach may be required in case of PCOS, thus these side effects are significant and therefore plant based drugs that offer minimal adverse effects can be considered as most suitable approach for the management of PCOS. Following is the list of plant-based constituents that have reported beneficial effects for the management of PCOS. The basic mechanism of these phytoconstituents is presented in Fig3. Their biological source, IUPAC name and chemical structure were mentioned in Table2.

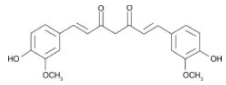
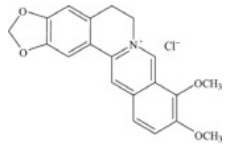
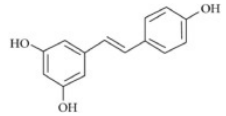
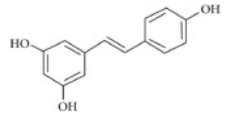
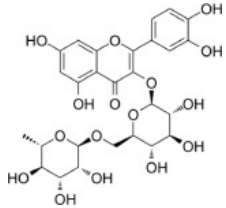
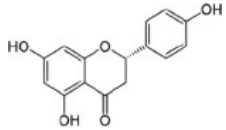
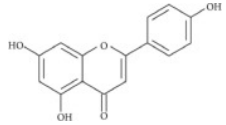
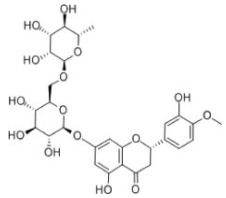


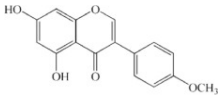
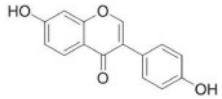
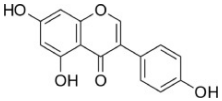
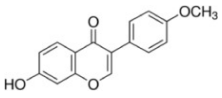
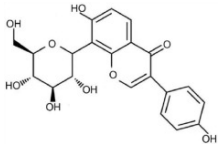
Download : Download high-res image (423KB)

Download : Download full-size image

Fig. 3. PCOS complications and role of phytoconstituents (basic mechanism).

Table 2. Biological source, IUPAC name and chemical structure of phytoconstituents having potential for PCOS management.

Phytoconstituents	Biological source	IUPAC name	Chemical structure
Curcumin	Rhizomes of Curcuma longa (tumeric)	1E,6E)−1,7-bis(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)−1,6-heptadiene-3,5-dion	
Berberine	Bark of Berberis vulgaris and Berberis aristata, Berberidaceae	16,17-dimethoxy-5,7-dioxa-13-azoniapentacyclo[11.8.0.0^{2,10}.0^{4,8}.0^{15,20}]henicosa-1(13),2,4(8),9,14,16,18,20-octaene	
Resveratrol	Vitis vinifera (red grapes)	3,5,4′-Trihydroxystilbene	
Quercetin	Camellia Sinensis, Moringa oleifera Ginkgo biloba, Hypericum perforatum, etc	3, 3′, 4′, 5, 7-pentahydroxyflvanone.	
Rutin	Buckwheat, Japanese pagoda tree, and Eucalyptus macrorhyncha	5, 7, 3′, 4′ tetrahydroxy flavonol −3- rhamnoglucoside	
Naringenin	Citrus fruits, bergamot, tomatoes and other fruits	2,3-dihydro-5,7-dihydroxy-2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)−4H-1-benzopyran-4-one	
Apigenin	Parsley, chamomile, celery, vine-spinach, artichokes, and oregano	4′,5,7,-trihydroxyflavone	
Hesperidin	Citrus fruits, including lemon, orange, lime, and grapefruit	3,5,7 trihydroxyflavanone 7-rhamnoglucoside	

Phytoconstituents	Biological source	IUPAC name	Chemical structure
Biochanin A	Trifolium pratense	5,7-dihydroxy-3-(4-methoxyphenyl)chromen-4-one	
Diazene	G. tinctoria, G. sagittalis	7,4′-Dihydroxyisoflavone	
Genistein	G. tinctoria, G. sagittalis	5,7-dihydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)chromen-4-one	
Formononetin	Roots of Astragalus embranaceus, Trifolium pretense, Glycyrrhiza glabra and Pueraria lobata	7-hydroxy-3-(4-methoxyphenyl) chromen-4-one	
Puerarin	Root of Pueraria lobata (Willd.) Ohwi	7-hydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)−8-[(2S,3R,4R,5S,6R)−3,4,5-trihydroxy-6-(hydroxymethyl)oxan-2-yl]chromen-4-one	

7. Phytoconstituents for PCOS management

7.1. Curcumin

Curcumin is a natural polyphenol and is reported to offer multiple health benefit [82]. It is obtained from rhizomes of Curcuma longa and other Curcuma spp [83]. Curcumin is reported to possess various activities like antioxidant [84], anti-inflammatory [85], anti-mutagenic [86], and anticancer [87,88] and thus is used traditionally in Asian countries as medicinal herb. Various clinical and preclinical studies confirm its efficacy for PCOS as well.

Heshmati et al., 2020 proved the curcumin efficacy for PCOS. A randomized double blind clinical trial was conducted on 72 patients suffering from PCOS that were assigned randomly for curcumin (500 mg thrice daily) and placebo. The levels of

fasting plasma glucose and dehydroepiandrosterone were decreased with difference of - 4.11 mg/dL; p (adjusted)=0.048 and −26.53 microgram/dL; p (adjusted)=0.035 respectively between intervention and control groups. Further, the authors reported absence of any serious adverse effects during the entire treatment of 12 weeks [89]

Curcumin also could reduce the oxidative stress in PCOS women. Heshmati et al., 2020 supported the statement through a randomized; double blinded clinical trial conducted on seventy-two women with PCOS receiving curcumin supplementation. Curcumin (1500 mg/kg) given thrice daily increased the gene expression of oxidative enzymes Peroxisome proliferator activated receptor g coactivator 1a PGC1a from 1.123±0.277 to 1.563±0.494 (p=0.011) and activity of the glutathione peroxidase enzyme from 108.83±7.19 to 32.83±13.10 significantly. Non-significant increase in enzyme superoxide dismutase (202.77±10.23 to 241.02±13.88) and gene expression of SIRT1: sirtuin-1 (1.740±0.636 to 3.167±1.0578) was reported [89].

Jamilian et al. also evaluated the efficacy of curcumin given at dose of 500 mg/day in 60 PCOS women. A randomized double blind clinical trial for 12 weeks was performed and the result demonstrated the positive effect of curcumin like reduction in fasting glucose (p=0.002), insulin resistance (p=0.02), total cholesterol (p=0.001) and bad cholesterol (p=0.001) along with increase in insulin sensitivity (p=0.02) and good cholesterol (HDL) (p=0.01) in comparison to placebo. Additionally, beneficial effects on the gene expression of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPAR-γ) (p=0.03) and low-density lipoprotein receptor (LDLR) (p<0.001) was also reported further supporting the curcumin role in managing the PCOS [90].

Sohaei et al., 2019 did a randomized double-blind clinical trial in which sixty women were chosen and randomly assigned to one of the two groups of treatment. The first group received curcumin as test drug (500 mg/d) or while the other group were given placebo two times a day up to 6 weeks. The study showed significant improvement in insulin sensitivity (p=0.020) and quantitative insulin sensitivity check index (QUICKI) (p=0.003) suggesting curcumin to be beneficial in improving the glycemia control in PCOS women [91].

Further, Reddys et al., in a preclinical study performed on letrozole induced PCOS in female Wistar rats, evaluated the potential of curcumin for PCOS given at a dose of 100 and 200 mg/kg for 15 days. The result showed marked decrease in the level of testosterone (44.10±8.63 from 140.00±5.77 ng/dl), with increase in levels of progesterone (32.93±4.06 from 12.41±0.24 ng/ml) and estradiol (30.48±1.32 from 26.73±1.41 pg/ml) in group receiving 200 mg/kg of curcumin. Also, reduction in the levels of triglycerides from 138.60±2.03 to 61.83±6.77 mg/dl, (129.30±2.01 to 68.20±9.08 mg/ml) and LDL

(83.42±2.49 to 17.40±9.59mg/ml) while increase in the level of HDL from 18.19±1.10 to 38.44±1.21mg/ml was reported. The images captured from light microscope revealed positive histomorphological changes (disappearance of cyst and appearance of hair follicles) in curcumin treated group. The authors concluded that the effect of curcumin in PCOS is similar to that observed with clomiphene citrate which is the first line therapy for infertility treatment in PCOS women [92].

7.2. Berberine

Berberine is an isoquinoline alkaloid obtained from various medicinal plants including chinensis Franch, Hydrastis [93] canadensis L [94] and Coptis japonica Makino [95]. The pharmacological properties owned by berberine are antibacterial, antiarrhythmic, anti-diabetic and anti-hyperlipidemic [96]. Various research reports have revealed and proved that berberine has great potential in improving insulin resistance and glucose uptake, metabolic index, and can result into decreased androgen levels. It also has additional effects on body composition and hyperlipidemia in women suffering from PCOS [97]. Berberine through multiple pathways and targets is reported to be beneficial for PCOS management. Kuang et al., 2020 conducted a clinical study to discover the contribution of serum inflammatory cytokines and berberine in insulin signaling pathway in the patients suffering from PCOS. The study confirmed the increased level of, IL-17a (P=0.001), IL-6 (P=0.035) and IL-1Ra (P<0.0001) in PCOS group in comparison to Non-PCOS group. Significant reduction in the expression level of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR mRNA) (P=0.001), and increase in the expression level of insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1 mRNA) (P=0.009) was observed in the PCOS granule cells that will increase the sensitivity of insulin [98].

In another study, the effect of berberine on metabolic features of PCOS women was evaluated and compared with metformin. Wei et al., performed a trial on 89 women with PCOS. The decrease in waist circumference was (88.38±5.84vs 80.22G ±.17 in berberine group (berberine+cyproterone acetate) in comparison to metformin group (metformin+cyproterone acetate) (89.12±7.06vs 85.03±6.53) (p=0.001). A significantly greater reduction was observed for waist to hip ratio (WHR) in berberine group (0.89±0.03vs 0.82±0.04) than in metformin group (0.9G0.04vs 0.87G0.03); (P<0.001). Also a decrease in total cholesterol, and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (P < 0.05), triglycerides along with increase in high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and sex hormone-binding globulin (P<0.05) was reported [99].

Shen et al. confirmed the protective effect of berberine on dehydroepiandrosterone induced PCOS rats. Berberine was administered for 6 weeks in a dose of 150mg/kg/day. berberine was reported to regulate the expression level of toll-like

receptor 4 (TLR4), Src family tyrosine kinase (LYN), phatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), NF-kB, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), IL-1, IL-6, and caspase-3 along with decrease in cell apoptosis rate suggesting the role of berberine in PCOS management [100].

The positive effect of berberine against the symptoms of PCOS was checked in an in-vivo study conducted by Lu et al. in 2020 on PCOS mice that were divided into three groups, low-dose berberine (250mg/kg), medium-dose berberine (500mg/kg) and high dose berberine (1000mg/kg) groups. Significant decrease in body weight 17.92±1.53 and 17.68±1.27 from 19.83±1.72 was seen in the groups receiving berberine in dose of 500mg/kg and 1000mg/kg respectively. Reduction in levels of sex hormones testosterone and luteinizing hormone was also prominent in both the groups along with improvement in ovulatory function and reduction in inflammatory factors suggesting berberine to be a potential phytoconstituent for PCOS management [101].

Xiaoke et al., was granted Patent entitled “Use of berberine in the treatment of infertility and ovulatory dysfunction in year 2014 . The study was conducted over 214 patients with ovulatory and was compared with the standard drug clomiphene for 6 months treatment. The results clearly demonstrated that berberine can promote follicular discharge in patients with ovulatory infertility, and was superior to clomiphene in reducing multiple pregnancy rates, premature birth, pregnancy induced hypertension and various other complications of pregnancy in case of PCOS [102].

7.3. Resveratrol

Resveratrol also named as 3,5,4′-trihydroxy-trans-stilbene, is a plant derived polyphenol which was first isolated in 1940 from the roots of white hellebore (Veratrum grandiflorum O. Loes), then in 1960 from the roots of Polygonum cuspidatum and is now detected in around 70 species of plants including grapes. Resveratrol is reported to have beneficial effects in various diseases like cancer, diabetes, inflammation, heart diseases etc. [103]. Its efficacy for PCOS is also well documented. A clinical trial was conducted by Mansour et al. 2021, on 78 patients receiving 1000mg of the drug for period of three months to check the effect of resveratrol for PCOS. The result showed increased mensuration rate (76.47% vs. 51.61%; p=0.03) and reduced hair loss (32.10% vs. 68.00%; p=0.009) was observed while the level of lipid, insulin and androgens remains unchanged after the treatment [104].

The in vivo study performed by Rencber et al., on DHEA-induced PCOS rats also revealed the efficacy of the drug for PCOS. The rats were treated with resveratrol (20 mg/kg/day), metformin (300 mg/kg/day) and their combination. A decrease in the levels of testosterone, LH, LH/FSH, TNF-apha and tissue AMH level was noted with all the treatment groups with more marked effect in resveratrol treatment group (1.04±0.03 over 1.91±0.09 ng/ml), (0.04±0.01 over 0.11±0.01 mIU/ml), (0.30±0.05 over 0.82±0.08), (195.46±15.66 over 276.59±19.28) ng/ml and (6.17±0.26 over 9.14±0.66 ng/10 mg prot.) respectively . Further the images captured through light and electronic microscope revealed secondary, atretic and Graafian follicles. Insignificant difference was reported in between resveratrol and metformin treatment groups suggesting that resveratrol can be used as an alternative to metformin treatment [105].

7.4. Quercetin

Quercetin is a natural flavonoid that can be obtained from fruits and vegetables that mainly include citrus fruits including red grapes, onions, apples, berries, tea, nuts and seeds. Quercetin possesses various therapeutic properties like antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-diabetic, anti-hypertensive and anticancer. Oxidative stress is considered to be the major factor leading to PCOS and thus several antioxidants activity have also been proved effective for the management of PCOS including quercetin [106].

The correlation between PCOS and failure of endocrine gland is also well established. The level of adiponectin gets reduced in PCOS women irrespective of obesity. Rezvan et al., evaluated the efficacy of quercetin on adiponectin-mediated insulin sensitivity in 84 PCOS women. Quercetin in a dose of 500 mg twice a day when administered for 12 weeks showed an increase in the level of total adiponectin by 6% and high molecular weight adiponectin by 4% approximately when compared to placebo. Also decrease in testosterone level (0.71 ng/dl in quercetin over 0.77 ng/dl in placebo; $p<0.001$) and L.H. (8.42 IU/l in quercetin over 8.68 IU/l in placebo; $p=0.009$) was reported along with significant reduction in HOMA-IR in quercetin group ($p<0.001$) emphasizing the role of quercetin in revamping the adiponectin-mediated insulin resistance and hormones level in PCOS women. [107].

Wang et al., studied the therapeutic effect of quercetin in reducing insulin resistance in PCOS rat model. Quercetin was reported to decrease the level of blood insulin, NF-κB, interleukin 1β, IL-6 and TNF-α. Also 58.33% recovery rate of estrous

cycle was observed after the quercetin treatment. The mechanism involved is improvement of NF-κB signaling pathway and rectification of inflammatory microenvironment of ovarian tissue in PCOS induced rat model [108].

Another in vivo study conducted by Jahan et al., showed the potential of quercetin in letrozole induced PCOS in Female Sprague Dawley rat. Quercetin in a dose of 30 mg/kg showed decrease in levels of testosterone (0.78 ng/ml±0.14 in quercetin vs. PCOS positive control 1.69 ng/ml±0.17, ($p<0.001$) and estradiol (8.85 pg/ml±0.19 in quercetin vs. PCOS positive 1.61 pg/ml±0.29) with simultaneous increase in progesterone levels (34.47 ng/ml±1.65 in quercetin vs. 11.08 ng/ml±1.17 in PCOS positive) depicting marked regulation of steroidogenesis [109].

Neisy et al., evaluated the potential of quercetin in dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) induced Sprague-Dawley female rats. Quercetin outstripped the insulin resistance in PCOS induced rats. Increased liver glucokinase and hexokinase was observed. Significant surge in estrogen receptor-α and glucose transporter 4 genes expression in uterus was also reported, suggesting the function of quercetin in improving the insulin resistance which is the major complication for PCOS [110].

7.5. Rutin

Rutin is a citrus flavonoid glycoside which was first obtained from the plant Ruta graveolens and is also identified in plants like passion flower, buckwheat, tea, and apple. Rutin is reported to posses several pharmacological activities that include antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, vasoprotective, neuroprotective and cardioprotective actions [111]. Transplantation of Brown adipose tissue is reported to mitigate PCOS by triggering endogenous BAT. However, clinically transplantation of BAT is not applicable. Therefore Hu et al., investigated the efficiency of rutin in BAT activation in dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)-induced PCOS rat. After 3 weeks of rutin treatment dramatic increase in endogenous activity of BAT was observed in positron emitted tomography-computed tomography (PET-CT), thus revamping insulin resistance and thermogenesis. Moreover, it regulated the levels of androgen hormones and ovarian steroidogenic enzymes like aromatase, 17β-HSD, 3β-HSD etc. suggesting rutin to be a novel phytochemical for PCOS treatment by activating BAT [112].

In another study by Yuan et al., with study on rats revealed that rutin can decrease fat and insulin resistance in obese mice . the mechanism involved is by increasing the activity of brown adipose tissue (BAT) and inducing the activity of the beige adipocytes in subcutaneous adipose tissue .Rutin results in SIRT1 activation and increase in expenditure of energy resulting in decrease in obesity suggesting it a potential therapeutic compound for metabolic disorders [113].

Jahan et al., checked the potential of rutin in the treatment of endocrine, oxidative and reproductive dysfunctions in PCOS induced female Sprague-Dawley rats. Rutin was administered in a dose of 100 and 150 mg/kg for 15 days. Improvement in lipidic profile (testosterone reduced to 5.77±0.68 and 8.21±1.85a from 10.19±0.76 ng/ml and progesterone level were increased to 19.66±5.34 and 24.63±3.46 from 14.26±2.70 in groups receiving rutin 100 mg/kg and 150 mg/kg respectively). Histopathological evaluation of ovary showed a reduction in number of cystic follicles in rutin treated groups providing evidence for the ameliorative effect of rutin in treating the various clinical manifestations associated with PCOS [114].

Endometriosis is also prevalent in infertile women with PCOS. Talebi et al., access the effect of rutin on edometriosis through mechanism of antioxidant and apoptosis. Administration of Rutin at dose of 3 and 6 gm reduces the expression of Bcl-2 relative density (1.0 from 2.2) and Pro-caspase9 in comparison to control ($p<0.05$). More reduction of pro caspase relative density was observed in case of group receiving 3 gm (1.5 and 2.2 in lower and higher dose group respectively from 3.5). Tunel staining result demonstrated that animals treated with rutin showed greater apoptosis . Also the concentration of anti-oxidant were increased after the 28 days of treatment with rutin [115].

7.6. Naringenin

Naringenin is a flavonoid which is obtained naturally from like grapefruit, oranges, bergamot, tomatoes etc. The properties associated with this phytoconstituent are antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antiviral, antibacterial, antitumor, antiadipogenic and cardioprotective [116]. Hong et al., investigated the antioxidant and steroidogenic therapeutic effect of naringenin in letrozole-induced PCOS rats. Twenty eight female Sprague-Dawley rats were treated with naringenin in a dose of 20 mg/kg. The results demonstrated increased levels of reactive oxygen species, scavenging enzymes: catalase, superdimutase and glutathione peroxidase ($p<0.05$), with decrease in weight. Glucose (99 over 150 mg/dl), estradiol (3 over 5.8 pg/ml) and testosterone (275 over 360 ng/ml) levels were normalized. The normal anatomy of the ovaries was retained as depicted in histopathological studies confirming the role of naringenin in PCOS treatment [117].

In another study by Wu et al., the effect of naringenin was investigated on letrozole induced PCOS rat model. The rats were treated for two months with the flavonoid. Results clearly revealed that naringenin can significantly reduce level of testosterone (5 over 12 ng/ml), follicle-stimulating hormone (3.2 from 5.8IU/l), luteinizing hormone (6 from 10IU/L), improve insulin resistance and the ovarian tissue pathological changes, reduced body weight in the PCOS model rat in comparison to

PCOS model group ($p<0.05$). Also beneficial microbes like Butyricimonas, Lachnospira, Faecalibacterium, Parabacteroides, Butyricicoccus and Roseburia were found in feces of PCOS rat model through rDNA detection further confirming the positive impact of theflavonoid in PCOS management [118].

7.7. Apigenin

Apigenin is a flavonoid present abundantly in range of plants that include fruits (oranges), vegetables (celery, parsley, onions), herbs (thyme, chamomile basil), and plant derived beverages (beer, wine, tea,). This phytoconstituent possesses anti-cancer, antiviral, anti-inflammatory, anti-mutagenic, purgative effects, antioxidant activity and also act a radical scavenger [119]. Darabi et al., 2020 conducted study to determine its effect on hormone levels, gonadotropins, inflammatory factors, and oxidative stress in ovarian tissue of PCOS induced female Wistar rats. This research revealed a decrease in testosterone (1.4±0.1 from 2.9±0.4ng/ml), LH (4.6±0.1 from 7.6±0.4mIU/ml) and LH-FSH ratio (0.02±0.75 from 1.9±0.1) when compared to PCOS control group. The inflammatory factors like tumor necrosis factor-a, interleukin-6, and total oxidative status were reduced along with significant increase in total antioxidant capacity and superoxide dismutase in comparison to PCOS group. Further histological studies showed reduction in number of cysts, corpora lutea and thickness of theca layer .Thus apigenin can be used as an alternative treatment for PCOS management [120].

Apigenin can alter the lipid and glucose level, can prevent metabolic syndrome that may help PCOS patients to manage their symptoms. Yang et al. determined the protective role of apigenin on metabolic syndrome in high fructose fed diet-mice. The result showed improvement in insulin resistance, glucose level (reduced from approx. 11 to 9mmol/l), lipid level (HDL increased from approx. 0.6 to 1mmol/l, LDL from aprox. 1.6 to 1.1mmol/l) and HO-1 and NQO1 protein expressions that alleviate the oxidative stress concluding that apigenin can prevent many detrimental metabolic effects [121].

7.8. Hesperidin

Hesperidin, a bioflavanoid was first obtained from inside portion of orange peel. It is found abundantly in several citrus fruits that include lime, orange, grapefruit and lemon. This phytochemical posses several activity like anti-inflammatory, anti-microbial, type-II diabetes, cardiovascular and skin lightening . Lifestyle modification like sustainable weight loss, exercise and dietary modification has also played role in management of PCOS and Hesperidin can enhance the effectiveness of lifestyle modification. Yari et al., conducted randomized controlled trial in 49 subjects receiving Hesperidin (500mg twice a

day) and brown flaxseed (30g milled) in combination along with lifestyle intervention. Result showed non-significant reduction in waist circumference from −6.75cm to −3.57cm. Significant improvement in lipidic profile, atherogenic indices, glucose homeostasis parameters, and inflammatory biomarkers were also reported in comparison to control group ($p<0.05$). Reduction in blood pressure was also observed (−5.66 over −1.56mmHg) $P=0.049$. Thus this compound can also have potential for PCOS management [122].

Hespridin has been reported to improve insulin resistance. The same has been proved by Peng et al., using rat model of alloxan and high fat diet induces insulin resistance. The hesperidin was administered at dose of 100mg/kg and result showed hesperidin ability to regulate glycolysis and gluconeogenesis. Reduction in Blood glucose (from 19.8 to 10.6mmol/L), Insulin resistance index (approx.. from 2.5 to 1.3) was observed when compared to model group. This effect is produced by inducing insulin receptor (IR) and phosphoinositide-dependent kinase 1 (PDK1) phosphorylation. Also decrease in the activity of glucose-6-phosphatase and phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase was reported [123]

In vitro study conducted by Shoorej et al., has given initial evidence by investigating the hesperidin effect at different concentration on growth and maturation of preantral follicle isolated from ovaries of immature mice. Hesperidin at concentration of 10, 22.5, and 50μmol/L was studied in different groups. The 12 days culture period showed significant increase in the percentage of rate of survival, formation of antrum, obtained metaphase II oocytes, 17β-estradiol (2785 over 1872pg/mL) and progesterone (36 over 17ng/ml) secretion in the group supplemented with hesperidin 50μmol/L when compared to control ($p<0.05$). The mean diameter of follicles was increased in all groups with maximum for group Hesp 50 (approx.50μm). Moreover, addition of hesperidin at conc of 50μmol/L showed increased fertilization rate and embryo development for the first time in this study suggesting hesperidin to be future phytochemical for infertility treatment. However, in vivo studies and clinical trials are required to explore its effect on PCOS [124].

7.9. Phytoestrogen

Phytoestrogen are natural plant derived isoflavanone, mainly found in soy based products that offers several health benefits for diseases related to cardiovascular, osteoporosis, cancer and menopausal symptoms [125]

Phytoestrogens such as Biochanin A, Daidzein, Genistein, formononetin and Puerarin are reported to have beneficial effects on PCOS management. The secretion and metabolism of androgen and estrogen gets disrupted in PCOS women, that leads to

increase serum concentrations of androstenedione, testosterone and dehydroepiandrosterone. Phytoestrogen are very similar to estrogen 17-β estradiol and diethylstilbesterol in terms of size and molecular structure and thus can bind to estrogenic receptors and exhibit anti-estrogenic effects, thus balancing the level of hormones in PCOS women [126].

To demonstrate the effectiveness of soy-isoflavone or phytoestrogen for PCOS Jamilian et al., 2016 conducted randomized, double blind, placebo controlled trial .Women diagnosed with PCOS that includes were administered phytoestrogen mixture consisting 37.5 mg genistein, 10 mg daidzein, and 2.5 mg glycitein for 12 weeks. Result demonstrated significant reduction in free androgen index (−0.03±0.04 from +0.02±0.03; $P<0.001$) and serum triglycerides (−13.3±62.2 from +10.3±24.5 mg/dL; $P=0.04$, insulin level in serum (−1.2±4.0 from 2.8±4.7)μIU/ml; $P<0.001$. Significant increase in plasma glutathione level and decrease in monoaldehyde levels also suggested positive effect of phytoestrogen for PCOS management [127].

In another in-vivo study conducted by Rajan et al., 2016 examined phytoestrogen role in letrozole induce PCOS model of Sprague–Dawley rat . Mixture of phytoestrogen (genistin, daidzin and its aglycone form genistein and daidzein accounting for 59.91, 12.05, 23.53, and 4.49% respectively) 50 and 100 mg/kg was administered orally for 3 weeks consecutively. The changes caused by letrozole induced PCOS was reversed with maximum effect in high dose receiving group. Decrease in body weigh gain, diestrous days (approx. 40 from 79%),testosterone level (55 from 115 ng/ml), 17β-HSD enzyme activity and oxidative stress was observed. Moreover histological images showed that treatment with phytoestrogen resulted in normal granulosa cell layer and well developed antral follicles [128].

7.9.1. Biochanin A (BCA)

Biochanin A is a isoflavanone phytoestrogen present in soy based products mainly in red clover named scientifically Trifolium pratense [129]. Phytoestrogen have can bind to estrogen receptors and thus may affect reproductive function in females. Biochanin A is reported to posses anticancer, neuroprotective, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anti-microbial and hepatoprotective activity [130]. It also possess biological activity similar to estrogen . Biochanin is also reported to have beneficial effect in reproductive process and thus can manage PCOS.

Nynca et al., 2013 evaluated in-vitro effect of biochanin A using invitro model of porcine granulosa cells. The cells were preincubated and cultured in Biochanin A(0.0.05, 0.5,5, 50 mM) for 48 h. Biochanin A was reported to inhibit the basal progesterone level significantly from follicles by leutilized granulosa cells while the effect on estradiol secretion remains

unaffected. The treatment does not cause any effect on cell viability. Also enhanced expression of estrogen receptor β immunoexpression was observed in the cells from both medium and large size follicles ($p<0.05$). further studies are required to explore is effect in PCOS [131].

7.9.2. Daidzein

Daidzein is found in plants like legumes, soyabeans, mug beans and green beans in significant amount. Many studies have reported numerous health benefits of Daidzein for several diseases like cancer, cardiovascular and inflammation . Reports confirming daidzein and its metabolite equol positive role in female reproductive and ovarin cell function has been reported.

Medigovic et al., conducted in-vivo study to investigate the effect of Daidzein in 12 months old female rats for hormonal and functional parameters of the pituitary ovarian axis. 35 mg/kg of Daidzen or Genistein or0.625 mg/kg of estradiol was administered subcutaneously for 28 days. After the treatment of Diadzen and Genistein less anteric follicles and more healthy primordial and primary follicles were reported. Estradiol results in increase in atretic follicles and mostly causes negative impact on ovaries. Diadzein also results in increase progesterone level by 34% and decrease in testosterone levels by 49% ($p<0.05$). Further both the drugs Diadzein and Genistein decreases CuZnSOD (Copper Zinc superoxide dismutase) and CAT (catalase) activity in female rat ovaries with more pronounced effect was observed with Diadzein [132].

Diadzein have proven activity with other phytoestrogen in PCOS patients however its individual therapeutic effect is yet to be explored in PCOS patient.

7.9.3. Genistein

Genistein is another isoflavone phytoestrogen that binds to estrogen receptor ERα and Erβ. In 1899 the compound was first isolated from Genista tinctoria L and now is found to present as main secondary metabolite in Trifolium species and in Glycine max L. (synonym Soja hispida) [133] .

Haddad et al., 2020 explored Genistein for its influence on Sprague Dawley rats with premature ovarian failure (POF) induced by 3.2 Gy γ-radiation. The rats were treated with either Genistein (5 mg/kg i.p) or Ethinyl estradiol (0.1 mg/kg s.c) given once in a day for 10 days. Genistein administration leads to decreased atretic follicles . The diminished serum levels of estradiol

(approx. 100 from 50pg/ml) and anti-Müllerian hormone (12 from 7ng/ml) due to radiation was restored after the treatment with Genistein. Also the expression of Bacl2 was augmented and Bax was suppressed along with improvement in granulosa cell proliferation. Oxidative stress markers level like GSH (67.77±7.98 over 24.09±8.09μg/mg) and glutathione peroxidase activity (4.89±0.53 over 2.87±0.08U/g tissue) was also improved suggesting Genistein to be a novel treatment modality for premature ovarian function in females [134].

Zhang et al., 2019 studied genistein estrogenic property on expression of follicle-stimulating hormone receptor (FSHR) and luteinizing hormone receptor (LHR) in rat ovaries with PCOS. Genistein was administered at dose of 5,10 and 20mg/kg daily in low dose (L-gen), middle dose(m-gen) and high dose group (H-gen) respectively. After treatment significant reduction was observed in testosterone (7.269±0.625 over 8.341±0.425nmol/L), LH (3.225±0.405 over 4.518±0.477ng/ml) and LH/FSH ratio 1.385±0.184 over 2.607±0.446). Also the concentration of progesterone was markedly increased (5.177±0.453vs 1.645±0.468μg/L) in group receiving H-Gen in comparison to PCOS model control group. Further LHR protein expression was enhanced and FSHR protein expression was suppressed resulting in improvement in ovarian function [135] .

In another study Chi et al., 2018 identified the genistein role on expression of Bcl-2 mRNA and Bax mRNA in rat ovaries with PCOS by in-situ hybridization and concentration of Bcl-2 and Bax protein was determined by ELISA. Genistein in dose group was administered either at the concentration of 5 (L-gen), 10(M-Gen) or 20(H-Gen) mg/kg of body weight. The result demonstrated increased expression of Bcl-2 mRNA and Bcl-2 protein in comparison to model group ($p<0.01$) while Bax expression was suppressed. Further the diameter of cystic follicles was reduced significantly when compared to model group ($p<0.05$) with maximum reduction of 0.583±0.066 from 0.611±0.076cm^2 was observed in high dose group recommending genistein to be a potential phytoestrogen for management of PCOS [136].

The reported antioxidant activity of GEN on ovarian tissue of rats induced by PCOS was explored by Rajaei et al., 2018. Treatment with GEN 1mg/kg body weight for 14 days lead to significant reduction in the malondialdehyde levels (approx. 24 from 38μmol/mg) with increase in the total antioxidant capacity(approx. 2.0 from 0.06mmol/L), glutathione peroxidase (approx. 149 from 71U/mg), and superoxide dismutase activities (approx. 15 from 6U/mg) in comparison to PCOS model group. Further images from histological investigation revealed GEN was able to restore normal morphology of ovary with reduction in atretic follicles suggesting GEN administration may provide beneficial effects in PCOS patients [137].

7.9.4. Formononetin

Formononetin is another phytoestrogen isoflavone present in roots of Astragalus embranaceus, Trifolium pretense, Glycyrrhiza glabra and Pueraria lobata. Formononetin have anti-inflammatory, cardiovascular, anti-diabetic, antioxidant, anticancer, neuroprotective00. and anti-microbial properties. It has been reported to regulate lipid, glucose and insulin [138]. Oza et al., orally administered 10, 20 and 40 mg/kg of the drug in Streptozocin induced Sprague Dawley rats diabetic model. Group receiving higher dose of drug showed maximum improvement in plasma glucose level (approx. 13 from 28 mmol/l), TG (approx. 0.6 from 3.0 mmol/l), LDL (approx. 1.1 from 2 mmol/l) and HDL (approx. 0.4 from 1.4 mmol/l) significantly ($p<0.01$). Formononetin also plays important role in reducing oxidative stress. However there is no report available for formononetin that can explore its efficacy for PCOS. Due to its structure similarities with estrogen and positive effects in reducing lipid level, glucose level, improving insulin index and reducing oxidative stress suggest that it can be a potential compound for PCOS management [139].

Puerarin is a isoflavanoid found in the root of Pueraria lobata (Willd.) Ohwi which is commonly known as Gegen in China. It is traditionally used as herbal medicine for the treatment of diabetes [140]. Due to its reported effectiveness for several metabolic disorders,

Li et al., 2021 conducted randomized clinical trial on Chinese women to evaluate its potential for PCOS. Women's having premature ovarian failure were divided in two groups i.e. obese(Body mass index, BMI >25 kg/m^2) and non-obese groups . Standard treatment (orally Diane-35,one tablet daily plus metformin, 1.5 g/d) were given to the patients along with Puerarin (150 mg/d) for a period of three months. The group receiving additional treatment of Puerarin showed significant improvements in superoxide dismutase (SOD),and sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG) in both obese and non-obese patients when compared to the group not receiving additional treatment of Puerarin. Also obese women's showed significant decrease in systolic blood pressure, total cholestrola and testosterone levels suggesting that puerarin can be used effectively for PCOS management [141].

In another study by Cun et al., 2015 the effectiveness of puerarin injection on resistance to insulin and sex hormones was evaluated in dehydroepiandrosterone induced 92 female rats. The rats were divided into two groups, control group receiving metformin orally and observational group receiving transabdominal injection of puerarin. The effectiveness rate was significantly higher in observational group (approx. 85%) in comparison to control group (approx. 65%) ($p<0.05$). The level of

fasting glucose, fasting insulin and reproductive hormones were reduced in observational group in comparison to control group($p<0.01$) concluding that Puerain can be used to manage the symptoms associated with PCOS [142].

8. Regulatory aspects of phytoconstituents

Plant-based therapeutic agents are an essential alternative to modern medicine. These plant-derived therapeutic agents were thought to be less toxic as compared to synthetic ones. However, due to the absence of regulatory control, a growing number of reports highlight their side effects for various diseases. The main reason behind this is the unavailability of sufficient data about their quality, safety, and efficacy. Therefore, it is vital to perceive the dangers related to the use of natural pills so that their safety can be assured for public health [143]. There are quite a few demanding situations that should be faced while enforcing guidelines or regulations in the discipline of phytoformulations. Challenges regularly encountered in most countries are common and related to the regulatory status, quality control, monitoring safety, and insufficient expertise of dynamics and kinetics inside countrywide regulatory authorities. [144]. These products are not registered in several countries, sold freely by medical agencies, and thus available to customers without prescription [145]. The World Health Organization's (WHO) Traditional Medicine (T.M.) Strategy 2014–2023 is to increase knowledge sharing and to provide guidance on regulatory and quality control to promote safety, quality and efficacy of phytopharmaceuticals [146]. In India, the 2015 regulatory requirement for phytoformulation is under the control of the Central Drugs Standards Control Organization (CDSCO) that mandates the regulatory submission necessities for scientific data on safety, efficacy, and quality of phytoformulations evaluated and marketed on comparable strains to synthetic, chemical moieties. A new appendix I B has been added in schedule Y that detailed the data required to be submitted to conduct a clinical trial or import or export or manufacture any phyto-based formulation in India [147]. These new regulations are comparable to those of the USA, China and will promote research and development in phytopharmaceuticals [148]. Currently, several regulatory frameworks are available, but the missing part is the harmony between the regulating agencies [149, 150]. Therefore, a global harmony between the regulatory agencies is required so that only the safe and effective composition can enter the market and public health safety can be assured [151]. Also, knowledge sharing between the agencies, physicians, and patients about the use and safety must be done to develop trust. These potential phytoconstituents can be used effectively.

9. Conclusion

In the current scenario, the prevalence of PCOS is getting increased and tits management is essential to improve the quality of life. Currently, available medications regulate the mensural cycle, androgen level, obesity, ovulation and insulin resistance. The treatment approach is different for each symptom, and effective treatment to manage PCOS is still a challenge. In recent years phytoconstituents have gained much attention due to the less severe side effects associated with them. Further well-designed preclinical and clinical trials have proved that these phytoconstituents can reduce FSH, L.H., testosterone and insulin resistance. Curcumin, berberine, and resveratrol can serve as a potential alternative for clomiphene citrate and metformin for PCOS management. Due to the absence of proper regulatory control, minimal information is available regarding their safety, quality, and efficacy. This limitation, however, must not frame a shadow over these phytoconstituents. However, it must instead emphasize conducting more continued research so that these agents can be used more effectively for PCOS and benefit humanity. In the future, phytoconstituents may serve as a practical and patient compliant treatment approach for PCOS management.

Declaration of Competing Interest

The authors reflect no conflict of interest.

Recommended articles

References

[1] R. Azziz, K.S. Woods, R. Reyna, T.J. Key, E.S. Knochenhauer, B.O. Yildiz
The prevalence and features of the polycystic ovary syndrome in an unselected population
J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 89 (2004), pp. 2745-2749, 10.1210/jc.2003-032046 ↗
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[2] A. Balen, M. Rajkowha
Polycystic ovary syndrome–a systemic disorder?
Best Pract. Res. Clin. Obstet. Gynaecol., 17 (2003), pp. 263-274

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[3] E.S. Knochenhauer, T.J. Key, M. Kahsar-Miller M, W. Waggoner, L.R. Boots, R. Azziz
Prevalence of the polycystic ovary syndrome in unselected black and white women of the southeastern United States: a prospective study
J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 83 (1998), p. 3078
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[4] K.F. Michelmore, A.H. Balen, D.B. Dunger, M.P. Vessey
Polycystic ovaries and associates; clinical and biochemical features in young women
Clin. Endocrinol., 51 (1999), p. 779
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[5] R. Azziz, C. Marin, L. Hoq, E. Badamgarav, P. Song
Health care-related economic burden of the polycystic ovary syndrome during the reproductive life span
J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 90 (2005), pp. 4650-4658, 10.1210/jc.2005-0628 ↗
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[6] R. Hart, D.A. Doherty
The potential implications of a pcos diagnosis on a woman's long-term health using data linkage
J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 100 (2005), pp. 911-919
Google Scholar ↗

[7] F. Kamangar, J.P. Okhovat, T. Schmidt, A. Beshay, L. Pasch, M.I. Cedars, H. Huddleston, K. Shinkai
Polycystic ovary syndrome: special diagnostic and therapeutic considerations for children
Pediatr. Dermatol., 32 (2015), pp. 571-578
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[8] N.F. Goodman, R.H. Cobin, W. Futterweit, J.S. Glueck, R.S. Legro, E. Carmina

Association of Clinical Endocrinologists (AACE); American College of Endocrinology (ACE); Androgen Excess and PCOS Society (AES). American association of clinical endocrinologists, american college of endocrinology, and androgen excess and pcos society disease state clinical review: guide to the best practices in the evaluation and treatment of polycystic ovary syndrome–PART 1

Endocr. Pract., 11 (2015), pp. 1291-1300

View PDF View article CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[9] P. Jin, Y. Xie Y

Treatment strategies for women with polycystic ovary syndrome

Gynecol. Endocrinol., 34 (2018)

272–7

Google Scholar ↗

[10] P.A. Regidor, A.E. Schindler, B. Lesoine, R. Druckman

Management of women with PCOS using myo-inositol and folic acid. New clinical data and review of the literature

Horm. Mol. Biol. Clin. Investig., 34 (2018)

2017-0067

Google Scholar ↗

[11] Y. Xu, Y. Wu, Q. Huang

Comparison of the effect between pioglitazone and metformin in treating patients with PCOS:a meta-analysis

Arch. Gynecol. Obstet., 296 (2017), pp. 661-677

CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[12] Q.W. Ma, Y. Tan

Effectiveness of co-treatment with traditional Chinese medicine and letrozole for polycystic ovary syndrome: a meta-analysis

J. Integr. Med., 15 (2017), pp. 95-101

View PDF View article View in Scopus Google Scholar

[13] B.N. Desai, R.H. Mahajan, L.P. Nampoothiri

Aloe barbadensis Mill. formulation restores lipid profile to normal in a letrozole-induced polycystic ovarian syndrome rat model

Pharmacog. Res., 4 (2012), pp. 109-115

View in Scopus Google Scholar

[14] M. Gholamalizadeh, S. Doaei, M.E. Akbari, S. Rezaei, A.M. Jarrahi

Influence of fat mass-and obesity-associated genotype, body mass index, and dietary intake on effects of iroquois-related homeobox 3 gene on body weight

Chin. Med. J (Engl)., 131 (2018), p. 2112

CrossRef View in Scopus Google Scholar

[15] X. Wu, E.H.Y. Ng, E. Stener-Victorin, R.S. Legro

Effects and mechanisms of complementary and alternative medicine during the reproductive process

Evid. Based Complement, Alternat. Med (2014), Article 698921

2014

View in Scopus Google Scholar

[16] K. Ried

Chinese herbal medicine for female infertility: an updated meta-analysis. Complement

Ther. Med., 23 (2015), pp. 116-128

View PDF View article View in Scopus Google Scholar

[17] G.Y. Yeh, D.M. Eisenberg, T.J. Kaptchuk, R.S. Phillips

Systematic review of herbs and dietary supplements for glycemic control in diabetes

Diabetes Care, 26 (2003), pp. 1277-1294

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[18] W. Shen, B. Jin B, Y. Pan, Y. Han, T. You, Z. Zhang, Y. Qu, S. Liu, Y. Zhang
The effect of traditional Chinese medicine-associated complementary and alternative medicine on women with polycystic ovary syndrome
Eved. Based Complement. Alternat. Med. (2021)
2021
Google Scholar ↗

[19] Y.S. Lee, W.S. Kim, K.H. Kim, M.J. Yoon, H.J. Cho, Y. Shen, *et al.*
Berberine, a natural plant product, activates AMP-activated protein kinase with beneficial metabolic effects in diabetic and insulin-resistant states
Diabetes, 55 (2006), pp. 2256-2264
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[20] J. Yin, Z. Gao, D. Liu, Z. Liu, J. Ye
Berberine improves glucose metabolism through induction of glycolysis
Am. J. Physiol.-Renal Physiol., 294 (2008), pp. E148-E156
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[21] M. Wang, S. Chen, D. Zhang
Systematic Evaluation of the randomized controlled trial system for polycystic ovary syndrome treated by berberine and metformin
Guangdong Med. J., 36 (2015), pp. 3866-3870
Google Scholar ↗

[22] J. Yin, H. Xing, J. Ye
Efficacy of berberine in patients with Type 2 Diabetes
Metabolism, 57 (2008), pp. 712-717

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[23] R.L. Barbieri

The endocrinology of the menstrual cycle

Methods Mol. Biol., 1154 (2014), pp. 145-169, 10.1007/978-1-4939-0659-8_7 ↗

Google Scholar ↗

[24] J. Rhy, KuB.M. Ku, Y.K. Lee, J.Y. Jeong, S. Kang, J. Choi, *et al.*

Resveratrol reduces TNF-α-induced U373MG human glioma cell invasion through regulating NF-κB activation and uPA/uPAR expression

Anticancer Res., 31 (2011), pp. 4223-4230

Google Scholar ↗

[25] S.Y. Han, Y.J. Choi, M.K. Kang, J.H. Park, Y.H. Kang

Resveratrol suppresses cytokine production linked to FcepsilonRI-MAPK activation in IgE-antigen complex-exposed basophilic mast cells and mice

Am. J. Chin. Med., 43 (2015), pp. 1605-1623

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[26] C.Y. Yang, J. Wang, Y. Zhao, L. Shen, X. Jiang, Z.G. Xie, N. Liang, L. Zhang, Z.H. Chen

Anti-diabetic effects of Panax notoginseng saponins and its major anti-hyperglycemic components

J. Ethnopharmacol., 130 (2010), pp. 231-236

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[27] I

I. Ortega, A.J. Duleba

Ovarian actions of resveratrol

Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci., 1348 (2015), pp. 86-96

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[28] D.H. Wong, J.A. Villanueva, A.B. Cress, A.J. Duleba
Effects of resveratrol on proliferation and apoptosis in rat ovarian theca-interstitial cells
Mol. Human Reprod., 16 (2010), pp. 251-259
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[29] I. Ortega, J.A. Villanueva, D.H. Wong, A.B. Cress, A. Sokalska, S.D. Stanley, A.J. Duleba
Resveratrol potentiates effects of simvastatin on inhibition of rat ovarian theca-interstitial cells steroidogenesis
J. Ovarian. Res., 7 (2014), pp. 1-8
Google Scholar ↗

[30] R. Uzayisenga, P.A. Ayeka, Y. Wang
Anti-diabetic potential of panax notoginseng saponins (PNS): a Review
Phytother. Res., 28 (2014), pp. 510-516
2014
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[31] J.H. Jung, H.T. Park, T. Kim, M.J. Jeong, S.C. Lim, S.Y. Nah, I.-.H. Cho, S.H. Park, S.S. Kang, C.J. Moon, J.C. Kim, S.H. Kim, C.S. Bae
Therapeutic effect of korean red ginseng extract on infertility caused by polycystic ovaries
J. Ginseng Res., 35 (2011), pp. 250-255
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[32] National Institutes of Health Evidence-Based Methodology Workshop on Polycystic Ovary Syndrome
Evidence-based Methodology Workshop on Polycystic Ovary Syndrome
Final Rep. (2021)
https://prevention.nih.gov/sites/default/files/201806/FinalReport.pdf ↗
Accessed on 29th may
Google Scholar ↗

[33] The Rotterdam ESHRE/ASRM-Sponsored PCOS Consensus Workshop Group
Revised 2003 consensus on diagnostic criteria and long-term health risks related to polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS)
Hum. Reprod., 19 (2004), pp. 41-47
Google Scholar ↗

[34] R.S. Legro, S.A. Arslanian, D.A. Ehrmann, K.M. Hoeger, M.H. Murad, R. Pasuali, C.K. Welt
Diagnosis and treatment of polycystic ovary syndrome: an endocrine society clinical practice guideline
J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 98 (2013), pp. 4565-4592
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[35] Jean Hailes for Women's Health: www.managingpcos.org.au ↗ 2021 (accessed on 29th may 2021).
Google Scholar ↗

[36] National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE)
Polycystic ovary syndrome
Clin. Knowl. Summ. (2021)
https://cks.nice.org.uk/polycystic-ovary syndrome 2021(accessed 26th may
Google Scholar ↗

[37] R. Azziz, E. Carmina, D. Dewailly, E. Diamanti-Kandarakis, H.F. Escobar-Morreale, W. Futterweit, O. E Janssen, R.S. Legro, R.J. Norman, A.E. Taylor, S.F. Witchel
Position statement: criteria for defining polycystic ovary syndrome as a predominantly hyperandrogenic syndrome: an Androgen Excess Society guideline
J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 91 (2006), pp. 4237-4245
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[38] J.K. Zawadski, A. Dunaif
Diagnostic criteria for polycystic ovary syndrome: towards a rational approach

A. Dunaif, J.R. Givens, F.P. Haseltine, G.R. Merriam (Eds.), Polycystic Ovary Syndrome (editors), Blackwell Scientific, Boston (1992), pp. 377-384

Google Scholar ↗

[39] E. Diamanti-Kandarakis, J. Papailiou, S. Palimeri

Hyperandrogenemia: pathophysiology and its role in ovulatory dysfunction in PCOS

Pediatr. Endocrinol. Rev., 3 (2006), pp. 198-204

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[40] L. Pellatt, S. Rice, H.D. Mason

Anti-M¨ullerian hormone and polycystic ovary syndrome: a mountain too high?

Reproduction, 139 (2010), pp. 825-833

2010

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[41] A. Karkanaki, C. Vosnakis, D. Panidis

The clinical significance of anti-m¨ullerian hormone evaluation in gynecological endocrinology

Hormones, 10 (2011), pp. 95-103

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[42] A. Pierre, M. Peign´e, M. Grynberg, A. Pierre, M. Peigné, M. Grynberg, N. Arouche, J. Taieb, L. Hesters, J. Gonzalès, J.Y. Picard, D. Dewailly, R. Fanchin, S. Catteau-Jonard, N. Clemente, *et al.*

Loss of LH-induced down-regulation of anti-Mullerian hormone receptor expression may contribute to anovulation in women with polycystic ovary syndrome

Hum. Reprod., 28 (2013), pp. 762-769

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[43] S.K. Blank, C.R. McCartney, J.C. Marshall

The origins and sequelae of abnormal neuroendocrine function in polycystic ovary syndrome

Hum. Reprod. Update, 12 (2006), pp. 351-361

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[44] S.K. Blank, C.R. McCartney, S. Chhabra, K.D. Helm, C.A. Eagleson, R. J.Chang, J.C. Marshall

Modulation of gonadotropin-releasing hormone pulse generator sensitivity to progesterone inhibition in hyperandrogenic adolescent girls— Implications for regulation of pubertal maturation

J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metabol., 94 (2009), pp. 2360-2366

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[45] C.M. Solorzano, J.P. Beller, M.Y. Abshire, J.S. Collins, C.R. McCartney, J.C. Marshall

Neuroendocrine dysfunction in polycystic ovary syndrome

Steroids, 77 (2012), pp. 332-337

Google Scholar ↗

[46] M. Karoshi, S.O. Okolo

Commentary: polycystic ovarian disease (PCOD): a misnomer, looking for a new name

Int. J. Fertil. Women's Med., 49 (2004), pp. 191-192

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[47] M. Urbanek

The genetics of the polycystic ovary syndrome

Nat. Clin. Pract. Endocrinol. Metabol., 3 (2007), pp. 103-111

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[48] D.H. Abbott, D.A. Dumesic, S. Franks

Developmental origin of polycystic ovary syndrome—A hypothesis

J. Endocrinol., 174 (2002), pp. 1-5

CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[49] O. Głuszak, U. Stopińska-Głuszak, P. Glinicki, R. Kapuscinski, H. Snochowska, W. Zgliczyński, R. Dębski

Phenotype and metabolic disorders in polycystic ovary syndrome

ISRN Endocrinol. (2012), pp. 1-7

2012

CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[50] P.A. Essah, E.P. Wickham III, J.R. Nunley, J.E. Nestler

Dermatology of androgen-related disorders

Clin. Dermatol., 24 (2006), pp. 289-298

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[51] H. Uno

Biology of hair growth

Semin. Reprod. Endocrinol., 4 (2) (1986), pp. 131-141

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[52] H.G. Burger

Androgen production in women

Fertil. Steril., 77 (2002), pp. S3-S5

Google Scholar ↗

[53] G.P. Redmond, W.F. Bergfeld

Diagnostic approach to androgen disorders in women: acne, hirsutism, and alopecia

Cleveland Clin. J. Med., 57 (1990), pp. 423-427

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[54] C.C. Zouboulis

Acne and sebaceous gland function

Clin. Dermatol., 22 (2004), pp. 360-366

2004

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[55] C.C. Zouboulis, K. Degitz

Androgen action on human skin—Frombasic research to clinical significance

Experiment. Dermatol., 13 (2004), pp. 5-10

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[56] E. Makrantonaki, R. Ganceviciene, C. Zouboulis

An update on the role of the sebaceous gland in the pathogenesis of acne

Dermato-Endocrinol, 3 (2011), pp. 41-49

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[57] V.H. Price

Androgenetic alopecia in women

J. Investig. Dermatol. Symp. Proc., 8 (2003), pp. 24-27

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[58] E. Cela, C. Robertson, K. Rush, E. Kousta, D.M. White, H. Wilson, G. Lyons, P. Kingsley, M.I. McCarthy, S. Franks

Prevalence of polycystic ovaries in women with androgenic alopecia

Eur. J. Endocrinol., 149 (2003), pp. 439-442

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[59] C.R. Daniel III, M. Iorizzo, B.M. Piraccini, A. Tosti

Simple onycholysis

Cutis, 87 (2011), pp. 226-228

Google Scholar ↗

[60] P.C.M. van de Kerkhof, M.C. Pasch, R.K. Scher, M. Kerscher, U. Gieler, E. Haneke, P. Fleckman

Brittle nail syndrome: a pathogenesis-based approach with a proposed grading system

J. Am. Acad. Dermatol., 53 (2005), pp. 644-651

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[61] E.K. Barthelmess and R.K. Naz. Polycystic ovary syndrome: current status and future perspective, Front. Biosci. (Elite Ed); 6: 104–119.

Google Scholar ↗

[62] S. Pachiappan, S. Matheswaran, P.P. Saravanan, G. Muthusamy

Medicinal plants for polycystic ovary syndrome: a review of phytomedicine research

Int. J. Herbal Med., 5 (2017), pp. 78-80

Google Scholar ↗

[63] L.W. Roth, H. Huang, R.S. Legro, M.P. Diamond, C. Coutifaris, S.A. Carson, M.P. Steinkampf, B.R. Carr, P.G. McGovern, N.A. Cataldo, G.G. Gosman, J.E. Nestler, E.R. Myers, H. Zhang, W.D. Schlaff

Altering hirsutism through ovulation induction in women with polycystic ovary syndrome

Obstet. Gynecol., 119 (2012), pp. 1151-1156

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[64] 2017 Jan 11

R.S. Legro

Evaluation and treatment of polycystic ovary syndrome

K.R. Feingold, B. Anawalt, A. Boyce, G. Chrousos, W.W. de Herder, K. Dhatariya (Eds.), Endotext [Internet] (editors), South Dartmouth (MA): MDText.com, Inc. (2000)

PMID: 25905194

Google Scholar ↗

[65] D.A. Ehrmann

Polycystic ovary syndrome

N. Engl. J. Med., 352 (2005), pp. 1223-1236

Google Scholar ↗

[66] A.H. Balen, L.C. Morley, M. Misso, S. Franks, R.S. Legro, C.N. Wijeyaratne, E. Stener-Victorin, B.C. Fauser, R.J. Norman, H. Teede
The management of anovulatory infertility in women with polycystic ovary syndrome: an analysis of the evidence to support the development of global WHO guidance
Hum. Reprod. Update, 22 (2016), pp. 687-708
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[67] S. Franik, J.A. Kremer, W.L. Nelen, C. Farquhar
Aromatase inhibitors for subfertile women with polycystic ovary syndrome
Cochrane Database Syst. Rev., 2 (2014), Article CD010287
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[68] Consensus on infertility treatment related to polycystic ovary syndrome
Hum. Reprod., 23 (2008), pp. 462-477
https://academic.oup.com/humrep/article/23/3/462/2915005 ↗
(accessed 7th june 2021)
Google Scholar ↗

[69] Consensus on infertility treatment related to polycystic ovary syndrome
Fertil. Steril., 89 (2008), pp. 505-522
https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18243179/ ↗
(accessed 9th June 2021)
Google Scholar ↗

[70] L. Radosh
Drug Treatments for Polycystic Ovary Syndrome
Am. Fam. Physician., 79 (8) (2009), pp. 671-676
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[71] M.A. Ganie, M.L. Khurana, M. Eunice, M. Gulati, S.N. Dwivedi, A.C. Ammini

Comparison of efficacy of spironolactone with metformin in the management of polycystic ovary syndrome: an open-labeled study

J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 89 (2004), p. 4655

Google Scholar ↗

[72] I.A. Penna, P.R. Canella, R.M. Reis, M.F. Silva de Sá, R.A. Ferriani

Acarbose in obese patients with polycystic ovarian syndrome: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study

Hum. Reprod., 20 (2005), pp. 2396-2401

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[73] M. Yilmaz, A. Karakoc, F.B. Törüner FB, B. Bingol, N. Cakir, B. Tiras, G. Ayvaz, M. Arslan

The effects of rosiglitazone and metformin on menstrual cyclicity and hirsutism in polycystic ovary syndrome

Gynecol. Endocrinol., 21 (2005), pp. 154-160

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[74] S. Eisenhardt, N. Schwarzmann, V. Henschel, A. Germeyer, M. von Wolff, A. Hamann, T. Strowifzki

Early effects of metformin in women with polycystic ovary syndrome: a prospective randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial

J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 91 (2006), pp. 946-952

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[75] H.F. Allen, C. Mazzoni, R.A. Heptulla, M.A. Murray, N. Miller, L. Koenigs, E.O. Reiter

randomized controlled trial evaluating response to metformin versus standard therapy in the treatment of adolescents with polycystic ovary syndrome

J. Pediatr. Endocrinol. Metab., 18 (2005), pp. 761-768

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[76] A. Lemay, S. Dodin, L. Turcot, F. Dechene, J.C. Forest
Rosiglitazone and ethinyl estradiol/cyproterone acetate as single and combined treatment of overweight women with polycystic ovary syndrome and insulin resistance
Hum. Reprod., 21 (2006), pp. 121-128
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[77] D. Glintborg, A.P. Hermann, M. Andersen, C. Hagen, H.B. Nielsen, J.D. Velduhis, J.K. Henriksen
Effect of pioglitazone on glucose metabolism and luteinizing hormone secretion in women with polycystic ovary syndrome
Fertil. Steril., 86 (2006), pp. 385-397
View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[78] A. Alchami, O. O'Donovan, M. Davies
PCOS: diagnosis and management of related infertility
Obstet. Gynaecol. Reprod. Med., 25 (2015), pp. 279-282, 10.1016/j.ogrm.2018.12.00 ↗
1-5
View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[79] P.M. Spritzer, K.O. Lisboa, S. Mattiello, F. Lhullier
Spironolactone as a single agent for long-term therapy of hirsute patients
Clin. Endocrinol. (Oxf), 52 (2000), pp. 587-594
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[80] K. Harwood, P. Vuguin, J. DiMartino-Nardi
Current approaches to the diagnosis and treatment of polycystic ovarian syndrome in youth
Horm. Res., 68 (2007), pp. 209-217
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[81] S.J. Hewlings, D.S. Kalman

Curcumin: a review of its' effects on human health

Foods, 6 (10) (2017), p. 92

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[82] B.B. Aggarwal, A. Kumar, A.C. Bharti

Anticancer potential of curcumin: preclinical and clinical studies

Anticancer Res., 23 (2003), pp. 363-398

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[83] A. Sahebkar, M.C. Serbanc, S. Ursoniuc, M. Banach

Effect of curcuminoids on oxidative stress: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials

J. Funct. Foods, 18 (2015), pp. 898-909, 10.1016/j.jff.2015.01.005 ↗

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[84] Y. Panahi, M.S. Hosseini, N. Khalili, E. Naimi, L.E. Simental-Mendia, M. Majeed, A. Sahebkar

Effects of curcumin on serum cytokine concentrations in subjects with metabolic syndrome: a post-hoc analysis of a randomized controlled trial

Biomed. Pharmacother., 82 (2016), pp. 578-582, 10.1016/j.biopha.2016.05.037 ↗

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[85] G.B. Mahady, S.L. Pendland, G. Yun, Z.Z. Lu

Turmeric (Curcuma longa) and curcumin inhibit the growth of Helicobacter pylori, a group 1 carcinogen

Anticancer Res., 22 (2002), pp. 4179-4181

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[86] L. Vera-Ramirez, P. Perez-Lopez, A. Varela-Lopez, M. Ramirez-Tortosa, M. Battino, J.L. Quiles

Curcumin and liver disease

Biofactors, 39 (2013), pp. 88-100, 10.1002/biof.1057 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[87] L.E. Wright, J.B. Frye, B. Gorti, B.N. Timmermann, J.L. Funk
Bioactivity of turmeric-derived curcuminoids and related metabolites in breast cancer
Curr. Pharm. Des., 19 (2013), pp. 6218-6225, 10.2174/1381612811319340013 ↗
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[88] H. Javad, A. Moini, M. Sepidarkish, M. Morvaridzadeh, M. Salehi, A. Palmowski, M.F. Mojtahedi, F. Shidfar
Effects of curcumin supplementation on blood glucose, insulin resistance and androgens in patients with polycystic ovary syndrome: a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled clinical trial
Phytomedicine, 80 (2021), Article 153395, 10.1016/j.phymed.2020.153395 ↗
Google Scholar ↗

[89] J. Heshmati, F. Golab, M. Morvaridzadeh, E. Potter, M. Akbari-Fakhrabadi, F. Farsi, S. Tanbakooei, F. Shidfar, The effects of curcumin supplementation on oxidative stress, Sirtuin-1 and peroxisome proliferator activated receptor g coactivator 1a gene expression in polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) patients: a randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial 14 (2020) 77–82
Google Scholar ↗

[90] M. Jamilian, F. Foroozanfard, E. Kavossian, E. Aghadavod, R. Shafabakhsh, A. Hoseini, Z. Asemic
Effects of curcumin on body weight, glycemic control and serum lipids in women with polycystic ovary syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial
Clin. Nutr. ESPEN, 36 (2020), pp. 128-133
View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[91] S. Sohaeia, R. Amania, M.J. Tarrahib, H. Ghasemi-Tehrani
The effects of curcumin supplementation on glycemic status, lipid profile and hs-CRP levels in overweight/obese women with polycystic ovary syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial

Complement. Ther. Med., 47 (2019), Article 102201

Google Scholar ↗

[92] P.S. Reddy, N. Begum, S. Mutha, V. Bakshi

Beneficial effect of curcumin in letrozole induced polycystic ovary syndrome

Asian Pac. J. Reprod., 5 (2016), pp. 116-122

View PDF View article CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[93] J. Tang, Y. Feng, S. Tsao, N. Wang, R. Curtain, Y. Wang

Berberine and Coptidis rhizoma as novel antineoplastic agents: a review of traditional use and biomedical investigations

J. Ethnopharmacol., 126 (1) (2009), pp. 5-17

https://doi. org/10.1016/j.jep.2009.08.009

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[94] B.Y. Hwang, S.K. Roberts, L.R. Chadwick, C.D. Wu, A.D. Kinghorn

Antimicrobial constituents from goldenseal (the Rhizomes of Hydrastis canadensis) against selected oral pathogens

Planta Med., 69 (7) (2003), pp. 623-627, 10.1055/s-2003-41115 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[95] J.Y. Cho, A.R. Kim, M.H. Park

Lignans from the rhizomes of Coptis japonica differentially act as anti-inflammatory principles

Planta Med., 67 (4) (2001), pp. 312-316, 10.1055/s-2001-14322 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[96] Y. An, Y. Zhang, H. Lu, L. Li, Z. Sun

Effect of berberine on clinical, metabolic and endocrine indexes and pregnancy ourcome in women with polycystic ovary syndrome undergoing IVF treatment

Mod. J. Integr. Tradit. Chin. West. Med., 25 (5) (2016), pp. 459-462
+466https://doi.org/10.3969/j.issn.1008- 8849.2016.05.002

CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[97] H. Wang, C. Zhu, Y. Ying, L. Luo, D. Huang, Z. Luo
Metformin and berberine, two versatile drugs in treatment of common metabolic diseases
Oncotarget, 9 (11) (2018), pp. 10135-10146

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[98] H. Kuang, Y. Duan Y, D. Li, Y. Xu, W. Ai, W. Li W, Y. Wang, S. Liu, M. Li, X. Liu, M. Shao
The role of serum inflammatory cytokines and berberine in the insulin signaling pathway among women with polycystic ovary syndrome
PLoS ONE, 15 (8) (2020), Article e0235404
https://doi. org/10.1371/journal.pone.0235404

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[99] W. Wei, H. Zhao, A. Wang, M. Sui, K. Liang, H. Deng, Y. Ma, Y. Zhang, H. Zhang, Y. Guan
A clinical study on the short-term effect of berberine in comparison to metformin on the metabolic characteristics of women with polycystic ovary syndrome
Eur. J. Endocrinol., 166 (2012), pp. 99-105

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[100] H.R. Shen, X. Xu, X.L. Li
Berberine exerts a protective effect on rats with polycystic ovary syndrome by inhibiting the inflammatory response and cell apoptosis
Reprod. Biol. Endocrinol., 19 (2021)

Google Scholar ↗

[101] K. Lu, H. Lin

Effect of berberine on hyperandrogenemia, ovulation dysfunction and inflammation in a mouse model of polycystic ovary syndrome

Trop. J. Pharm. Res., 19 (2020), pp. 1963-1968

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[102] W. Xiaoke, Patent on Use of berberine in preparation of drug for treating ovulatory dysfunction infertility (2016) (wo/2016/008282).

Google Scholar ↗

[103] B. Salehi, A.P. Mishra, M. Nigam, B. Sener, M. Kilic, M. Sharifi-Rad, P. Valere, T. Fokou, N. Martins, J. Sharifi-Rad

Resveratrol: a double-edged sword in health benefits

Biomed., 6 (2018), p. 91, 10.3390/biomedicines6030091 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[104] A. Mansour, M. Samadi, M. Sanginabadi, H. Gerami, S. Karimi, S. Hosseini, N. Shirzad, A. Hekmatdoost, A. Mahdavi-Gorabi, M.R. Mohajeri-Tehrani, M. Qorbani

Effect of resveratrol on menstrual cyclicity, hyperandrogenism and metabolic profile in women with PCOS

Clin. Nutrit., 40 (2021), pp. 4106-4112

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[105] S.F. Rencber, S.K. Ozbek, C. Eraldemır, Z. Sezer, T. Kum, S. Ceylan, E. Guzel

Effect of resveratrol and metformin on ovarian reserve and ultrastructure in PCOS: an experimental study

J. Ovarian. Res., 11 (2018), p. 55

Google Scholar ↗

[106] F.P.F. Tabrizi, F. Hajizadeh-Sharafabad, M. Vaezi, H. Jafari-Vayghan4, M. Alizadeh, V. Maleki

Quercetin and polycystic ovary syndrome, current evidence and future directions: a systematic review

J. Ovarian Res., 13 (2020), p. 11, 10.1186/s13048-020-0616 ↗

Google Scholar ↗

[107] N. Rezvan1, A. Moini, L. Janani, K. Mohammad, A. Saedisomeolia, M. Nourbakhsh, S. Gorgani-Firuzjaee, M. Mazaherioun, M.J. Hosseinzadeh-Attar

Effects of quercetin on adiponectin-mediated insulin sensitivity in polycystic ovary syndrome: a randomized placebo-controlled double-blind clinical trial

Horm. Metab. Res., 49 (2017), pp. 115-121

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[108] Z. Wang, D. Zhai, D. Zhang, L. Bai, R. Yao, J. Yu, W. Cheng, C. Yu

Quercetin decreases insulin resistance in a polycystic ovary syndrome rat model by improving inflammatory microenvironment

Reprod. Sci., 24 (2017), pp. 682-690

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[109] S. Jahan, A. Abid, S. Khalid, T. Afsar, Q. Ul-Ain, G. Shaheen, A. Almajwal, S. Razak

Therapeutic potentials of Quercetin in management of polycystic ovarian syndrome using Letrozole induced rat model: a histological and a biochemical study

J. Ovarian Res., 11 (2018), p. 2

Google Scholar ↗

[110] A. Neisy, F. Zal, A. Seghatoleslam, S. Alaee

Amelioration by quercetin of insulin resistance and uterine GLUT4 and ERα gene expression in rats with polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS)

Reprod. Fertil. Dev., 31 (2019), pp. 315-323, 10.1071/RD18222 ↗

PMID: 30103849

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[111] A. Ganeshpurkar, A.K. Saluja

The Pharmacological Potential of Rutin

Saudi Pharm. J., 25 (2017), pp. 149-164

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[112] T. Hua, X. Yuana, R. Yea, H. Zhoua, J. Lina, C. Zhanga, H. Zhanga, G. Weia, M. Donga, Y. Huanga, W. Lime, Q. Liuf, H.J. Leea, W. Jin

Brown adipose tissue activation by rutin ameliorates polycystic ovary syndrome in rat

J. Nutrit. Biochemi., 47 (2017), pp. 21-28

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[113] X. Yuan, G. Wei, Y. You, Y. Huang, H.J. Lee, M. Dong, Jun Lin, *et al.*

Rutin ameliorates obesity through brown fat activation

FASEB J., 31 (2017), pp. 333-345

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[114] S. Jahan, F. Munir, S. Razak, A. Mehboob, Q. Ul Ain, H. Ullah, T. Afsar, G. Shaheen, A. Almajwal

Ameliorative effects of rutin against metabolic, biochemical and hormonal disturbances in polycystic ovary syndrome in rats

J. Ovarian Res., 9 (2016), p. 86

Google Scholar ↗

[115] H. Talebi, M.R. Farahpour, H. Hamishehkar

The effectiveness of Rutin for prevention of surgical induced endometriosis development in a rat model

Sci. Rep., 11 (2021), p. 7180

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[116] B. Salehi, P. Valere, T. Fokou, M. Sharifi-Rad, P. Zucca, R. Pezzani, N. Martins, J. Sharifi-Rad

The therapeutic potential of Naringenin: a review of clinical trials

Pharm, 12 (2019), p. 11, 10.3390/ph12010011 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[117] Y. Hong, Y. yin, Y. Tan, K. Hong, H. Zhou
The Flavanone, naringenin, modifies antioxidant and steroidogenic enzyme activity in a rat model of letrozole-induced polycystic ovary syndrome
Med. Sci. Monit., 25 (2019), pp. 395-401
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[118] Y.X. Wu, X.Y. Yang, Y.Y. Hu, T. An, B.H. Lv, J. Lian. Naringenin, a Flavonoid, Modulates Gut Microbiome and Ameliorates Hormone Levels to Improve Polycystic Ovary Syndrome in Letrozole-induced Rats & nbsp. 2020, PREPRINT (Version 1) available at Research Square [https://doi.org/10.21203/rs.3.rs-92829/v1]
Google Scholar ↗

[119] B. Salehi, A. Venditti, Mehdi Sharifi-Rad, D. Kregiel, J. Sharifi-Rad, A. Durazzo, M. Lucarini, A. Santini, E.B. Souto, E. Novellino, H. Antolak, E. Azzini, W.N. Setzer, N. Martins
The Therapeutic Potential of Apigenin
Int. J. Mol. Sci., 20 (2019), p. 1305, 10.3390/ijms20061305 ↗
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[120] P. Darabi, H. Khazali, M.M. Natanz
Therapeutic potentials of the natural plant flavonoid apigenin in polycystic ovary syndrome in rat model: via modulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines and antioxidant activity
Gynecol. Endocrinol. (2019), pp. 1-6, 10.1080/09513590.2019.1706084 ↗
1-6
Google Scholar ↗

[121] M. Yang, Z.H. Jiang, C.G. Li, Y.J. Zhu, Z. Li, Y.Z. Tang
Apigenin prevents metabolic syndrome in high-fructose diet-fed mice by Keap1-Nrf2 pathway
Biomed. Pharmacother., 105 (2018), pp. 1283-1290
View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[122] Z. Yari, Z. NaserNakhaee, E. Karimi-Shahrbabak, M. Cheraghpour, M. Hedayati, S.M. Mohaghegh
Combination therapy of faxseed and hesperidin enhances the effectiveness of lifestyle modifcation in cardiovascular risk control in prediabetes: a randomized controlled trial
Diabetol. Metab. Syndr., 13 (2021), p. 3
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[123] P. Peng, J. Jin, G. Zou, Y. Sui, Y. Han, D. Zhao and L. Liu. Hesperidin prevents hyperglycemia in diabetic rats by activating the insulin receptor pathway. 21 (2021) 53.
Google Scholar ↗

[124] M.Q. Man, B. Yang, P.M. Elias
Benefits of hesperidin for cutaneous functions, evidence-based complement
Alternativ. Med. (2019), pp. 1-19
2019
CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[125] M.N. Najafi, J. Kasaian, L. Kovatsi, G. Leon, E.K. Solout, M. Hashemzaei
Phytoestrogens and the polycystic ovary syndrome: a systematic review of clinical evidence and laboratory findings
Farmacia, 66 (2018), pp. 223-229
View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[126] I.S. Kim
Current perspectives on the beneficial effects of soybean isoflavones and their metabolites for humans
Antioxidants, 10 (2021), p. 1064
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[127] M. Jamilian, Z. Asemi
The effects of soy isoflavones on metabolic status of patients with polycystic ovary syndrome

J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metabol., 101 (2016), pp. 3386-3394, 10.1210/jc.2016-1762

View in Scopus Google Scholar

[128] R.K. Rajan, S.S.K. M, B. Balaji

Soy isoflavones exert beneficial effects on letrozole-induced rat polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS) model through anti-androgenic mechanism

Pharm. Biol., 55 (2017), pp. 242-251, 10.1080/13880209.2016.125842

1

View in Scopus Google Scholar

[129] W.C. Ko, L.H. Lin, H.Y. Shen, C.Y. Lai, C.M. Chen, C.H. Shih

Biochanin A, a Phytoestrogenic Isoflavone with Selective Inhibition of Phosphodiesterase 4, Suppresses Ovalbumin-Induced Airway Hyperresponsiveness

Evid.-Based Complement. Alternat. Med., 635058 (2011), pp. 1-13

Article ID

CrossRef Google Scholar

[130] A. Sarfraz, M. Javeeda, M.A. Shah, G. Hussain, N. Shafiq, I. Sarfraz

Biochanin A: a novel bioactive multifunctional compound from nature

Sci. Total Environ., 722 (2020), Article 137907

View PDF View article View in Scopus Google Scholar

[131] A. Nynca, S. Swigonska, J. Piasecka, A. Kolomycka, B. Kaminska, M. Radziewicz-Pigiel

Biochanin A affects steroidogenesis and estrogen receptor-b expression in porcine granulosa cells

Theriogenology, 80 (2013), pp. 821-882

View in Scopus Google Scholar

[132] I.M. Medigovic, J.B.Z Ivanovic, V.Z. Ajdzanovic, A.L. NikolicKokic, S.D. Stankovic, S.L. Trifunovic

Effects of soy phytoestrogens on pituitary-ovarian function in middle-aged female rats

Endocrine, 50 (2015), pp. 764-776

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[133] C. Spagnuolo, G.L. Russo, I.E. Orhan, S. Habtemariam, M. Daglia

Genistein and cancer: current status, challenges, and future directions: american society for nutrition

Adv. Nutr., 6 (2015), pp. 408-419, 10.3945/an.114.008052 ↗

View PDF View article View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[134] Y.H. Haddad, R.S. Said, R. Kamel, E.M. El Morsy, E. ElDemerdash

Phytoestrogen genistein hinders ovarian oxidative damage and apoptotic cell deathinduced by ionizing radiation: cooperative role of ERβ, TGFβ, and FOXL2

Nature, 10 (2020), Article 133551

Google Scholar ↗

[135] T. Zhang, X.X. Chi

Estrogenic properties of genistein acting on FSHR and LHR in rats with PCOS

Pol. J. Vet. Sci., 22 (2019), pp. 83-90

Google Scholar ↗

[136] X.X. Chi, T. Zhang, X.L. Chu, J.L. Zhen, D.J. Zha

The regulatory effect of Genistein on granulosa cell in ovary of rat with PCOS through Bcl-2 and Bax signaling pathways

J. Vet. Med. Sci., 80 (2018), pp. 1348-1355

2018

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[137] S. Rajaei, A. Alihemmati, A. Abedelahi. Antioxidant effect of genistein on ovarian tissue morphology, oxidant and antioxidant activity in rats with induced polycystic ovary syndrome. Int. J. Reproduct. BioMed. 17, Issue no. 1, DOI 10.18502/ijrm.v17i1.3816

Google Scholar ↗

[138] V.J. Vishnuvathan, K.S. Lakshmia, A.R. Srividya

Medicinal Uses of Formononetin- A review

J. Ethnobiol. Traditional Med. Photon, 126 (2016), pp. 1197-1209

Google Scholar ↗

[139] M.J. Oza1, Y.A. Kulkarni

Formononetin treatment in Type 2 diabetic rat reduces Insulin resistance and hyperglycemia

Front. Pharmacol., 9 (2018), pp. 1-11

Google Scholar ↗

[140] Y.X. Zhou, H. Zhang, C. Peng. Puerarin: a review of pharmacological effects, 7 (2014) 961–975.

Google Scholar ↗

[141] W. Li, H. Hu, G. Zou, Z. Ma, J. Liu, F. Li

Therapeutic effects of puerarin on polycystic ovary syndrome.A randomized trial in Chinese women

J. Res. Med. Sci., 16 (2011), pp. 297-302

Google Scholar ↗

[142] Y.C. Lu, G.R. Tang, C.H. Han. Effect of puerarin injection on insulin resistance and reproductive hormones of rats with polycystic ovary syndrome/Maternal and Child Health Care of China 30 (2015) 4372–4374.

Google Scholar ↗

[143] H. Shoorei, M. Banimohammad, M.M. Kebria, M. Afshar, M.M.H. Taheri, M. Shokoohi, M.S.G. Farashah, M. Eftekharzadeh, O. Akhiani, R. Gaspar, H. Pazoki-Toroudi

Hesperidin improves the follicular development in 3D culture of isolated preantral ovarian follicles of mice

Experiment. Biol. Med., 244 (2019), pp. 352-361

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[144] M. Lam, A.R. Carmichael, H.R. Griffiths
An aqueous extract of Fagonia cretica induces DNA damage, cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in breast cancer cells via FOXO3a and p53 expression
PLoS ONE, 7 (2012), p. e40152
7
CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[145] WHO Geneva
National Policy on Traditional Medicine and Regulation of Herbal Medicines
Report of a World Health Organization Global Survey (2021)
https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/43229 ↗
accessed 10 June
Google Scholar ↗

[146] M. Ekor
The growing use of herbal medicines: issues relating to adverse reactions and challenges in monitoring safety
Front. Farmacol., 4 (2014), p. 177
Google Scholar ↗

[147] A. Bhatt
Phytopharmaceuticals: a new drug class regulated in India
Perspect. Clin. Res., 7 (2016), pp. 59-61
CrossRef ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[148] D.A. Narayana, C. Katiyar
Draft amendment to drugs and cosmetics rules to license science based botanicals, phytopharmaceuticals as drugs in India

J. Ayurveda Integr. Med., 4 (2013), pp. 245-246

CrossRef ↗ View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[149] T. Khan, M. Ali, A. Khan, P. Nisar, S.A. Jan, S. Afridi, Z.K. Shinwari

Anticancer plants: a review of the active phytochemicals, applications in animal models, and regulatory aspects

Biomolecules, 10 (2020), p. 47, 10.3390/biom10010047 ↗

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

[150] M. Mezher

FDA Adopts ICH Guideline on nonclinical evaluation for anticancer drugs; regulatory affairs professional society: Rockville

MD, USA (2018)

https://www.fda.gov/media/100344/download ↗

accessed 20th Jun 2021

Google Scholar ↗

[151] J. Calixto

Efficacy, safety, quality control, marketing and regulatory guidelines for herbal medicines (phytotherapeutic agents), Braz

J. Med. Biol. Res., 33 (2000), pp. 179-189

View in Scopus ↗ Google Scholar ↗

Cited by (4)

The Potential Utility of Tirzepatide for the Management of Polycystic Ovary Syndrome ↗

2023, Journal of Clinical Medicine

Alternative treatment of polycystic ovary syndrome: pre-clinical and clinical basis for using plant-based drugs ↗

2023, Frontiers in Endocrinology

Neuroprotective activity of Indonesian traditional herbal medicine: A systematic review ↗

2023, Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science

Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS): Approach to traditional systems, natural and bio-chemical compounds for its management ↗

2022, Indian Journal of Biochemistry and Biophysics

© 2021 The Author(s). Published by Elsevier B.V.

All content on this site: Copyright © 2024 Elsevier B.V., its licensors, and contributors. All rights are reserved, including those for text and data mining, AI training, and similar technologies. For all open access content, the Creative Commons licensing terms apply.

RELX™

DE GRUYTER

Requires Authentication | Published by **De Gruyter** | August 23, 2021

Anticancer potential of indole derivatives: an update

Shashi Kiran Misra, Devender Pathak and Kamla Pathak

From the journal Physical Sciences Reviews
https://doi.org/10.1515/psr-2021-0028

Abstract

The heterocyclic indole is one of the most prevalent pharmacophores in nature. It has been a highly privileged scaffold for designing targeted and anticancer therapeutics. Countless fused heterocyclic templates have been developed with diverse physicochemical and biological properties. Due to their versatile ethanobotanical and pharmacological values, indole and its derivatives seek high demand in the chemical and healthcare sectors. Extensive anticancer research has been conducted in this decade to evaluate their efficacy for diverse malignancies. The chapter explores the anticancer activity of natural and synthetic indole derivatives expressed through targeting different biological receptors and enzymes.

Keywords: anticancer agents; heterocyclic; indole derivatives; receptors

Corresponding author: Kamla Pathak, Faculty of Pharmacy, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, 206130, Uttar Pradesh, India, E-mail: kamlapathak5@gmail.com

Author contributions: All the authors have accepted responsibility for the entire content of this submitted manuscript and approved submission.

Research funding: None declared.

Conflict of interest statement: The authors declare no conflicts of interest regarding this article.

References

1. Kaushik, NK, Kaushik, N, Attri, P, Kumar, N, Kim, CH, Verma, AK, et al.. Biomedical importance of indoles. *Molecules* 2013;18:6620–62. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules18066620 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules18066620) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23743888/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6270133/)

2. Sachdeva, H, Mathur, J, Guleria, A. Indole derivatives as potential anticancer agents: a review. *J Chil Chem Soc* 2020;65:4900–7. https://doi.org/10.4067/s0717-97072020000204900 (https://doi.org/10.4067/s0717-97072020000204900) .

3. Lee, J-H, Lee, J. Indole as an intercellular signal in microbial communities. *FEMS Microbiol Rev* 2010;34:426–44. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-6976.2009.00204.x (https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-6976.2009.00204.x) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20070374/)

4. Baeyer, A, Emmerling, A. Synthese des Indols. *Ber Dtsch Chem Ges* 1869;2:679–82. https://doi.org/10.1002/cber.186900201268 (https://doi.org/10.1002/cber.186900201268) .

5. Lynn, A, Collins, A, Fuller, Z, Hillman, K, Ratcliffe, B. Cruciferous vegetables and colorectal cancer. *Proc Nutr Soc* 2006;65:135–44. https://doi.org/10.1079/pns2005486 (https://doi.org/10.1079/pns2005486) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16441953/)

6. Heine, W, Radke, M, Wutzke, KD. The significance of tryptophan in human nutrition. *Amino Acids* 1995;9:91–205. https://doi.org/10.1007/bf00805951 (https://doi.org/10.1007/bf00805951) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24178836/)

7. Xua, W, Gaviab, DJ, Tang, Y. Biosynthesis of fungal indole alkaloids. *Nat Prod Rep* 2014;31:1474–87. https://doi.org/10.1039/c4np00073k (https://doi.org/10.1039/c4np00073k) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/25180619/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4162825/)

8. Fernandez-Perez, F, Almagro, L, Pedreno, MA, Gomez Ros, LV. Synergistic and cytotoxic action of indole alkaloids produced from elicited cell cultures of catharanthus roseus. *Pharm Biol* 2013;51:304–10. https://doi.org/10.3109/13880209.2012.722646 (https://doi.org/10.3109/13880209.2012.722646) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23137274/)

9. Snook, CP. Indole hallucinogens. In: Brent, J, Burkhart, K, Dargan, P, Hatten, B, Megarbane, B, Palmer, R, editors. *Critical care toxicology*. Cham: Springer; 2016. 10.1007/978-3-319-20790-2_48-1 (https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-20790-2_48-1)

10. Michel, F, Monique, T, Luc, A. Indole alkaloids from strychnos species and their antiplasmodial and cytotoxic activites. *Chem Nat Compd* 2003;39:513–19. 10.1023/B:CONC.0000018100.67335.b5 (https://doi.org/10.1023/B:CONC.0000018100.67335.b5)

11. Yin, W, Wang, TS, Yin, FZ, Cai, BC. Analgesic and anti-inflammatory properties of brucine and brucine N-oxide extracted from seeds of Strychnos nux-vomica. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2003;88:205–14. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0378-8741(03)00224-1 (https://doi.org/10.1016/s0378-8741(03)00224-1) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12963144/)

12. Saidou, B-H, Mégalizzi, V, Cao, M, Angenot, L, Kiss, R, Van Damme, M, et al.. Isostrychnopentamine, an indolomonoterpenic alkaloid from Strychnos usambarensis, with potential anti-tumor activity against apoptosis-resistant cancer cells. *Int J Oncol* 2010;36:961–5. https://doi.org/10.3892/ijo_00000575 (https://doi.org/10.3892/ijo_00000575) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20198341/)

13. Yu, H, Jin, H, Gong, W, Wang, Z, Liang, H. Pharmacological actions of multi-target-directed evodiamine. *Molecules* 2013;18:1826–43. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules18021826 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules18021826) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23434865/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6270287/)

14. Batiha, GE-S, Alkazmi, LM, Nadwa, EH, Rashwan, EK, Beshbishy, AM, Shaheen, H, et al.. Physostigmine: a plant alkaloid isolated from Physostigma venenosum: a review on pharmacokinetics, pharmacological and toxicological activities. *J Drug Deliv Therapeut* 2020;10:187–90. https://doi.org/10.22270/jddt.v10i1-s.3866 (https://doi.org/10.22270/jddt.v10i1-s.3866) .

15. Bialonska, D, Zjawiony, JK. Aplysinopsins-Marine indole alkaloids: chemistry, bioactivity and ecological significance. *Mar Drugs* 2009;7:166–83. https://doi.org/10.3390/md7020166 (https://doi.org/10.3390/md7020166) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19597579/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2707041/)

16. Dadashpour, S, Emami, S. Indole in the target-based design of anticancer agents: a versatile scaffold with diverse mechanisms. *Eur J Med Chem* 2018;150:9–29. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2018.02.065 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2018.02.065) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/29505935/)

17. Abdelrahim, M, Newman, K, Vanderlaag, K, Samudio, I, Safe, S. 3,3′-diindolylmethane (DIM) and its derivatives induce apoptosis in pancreatic cancer cells through endoplasmic reticulum stress-dependent upregulation of DR5. *Carcinogenesis* 2006;27:717–28. https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgi270 (https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgi270) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16332727/)

18. Firestone, GL, Bjeldanes, LF. Indole-3-carbinol and 3-3'-diindolylmethane antiproliferative signaling pathways control cell-cycle gene transcription in human breast cancer cells by regulating promoter-Sp1 transcription factor interactions. *J Nutr* 2003;133:2448–55. https://doi.org/10.1093/jn/133.7.2448s (https://doi.org/10.1093/jn/133.7.2448s) .

19. Garcia, HH, Brar, GA, Nguyen, DH, Bjeldanes, LF, Firestone, GL. Indole-3-carbinol (I3C) inhibits cyclin-dependent kinase-2 function in human breast cancer cells by regulating the size distribution, associated cyclin E forms, and subcellular localization of the CDK2 protein complex. *J Biol Chem* 2005;280:8756–64. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.m407957200 (https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.m407957200) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15611077/)

20. Grubbs, CJ, Steele, VE, Casebolt, T, Juliana, MM, Eto, I, Whitaker, LM, et al.. Chemoprevention of chemically-induced mammary carcinogenesis by indole-3- carbinol. *Anticancer Res* 1995;15:709–16.

21. Malejka-Giganti, D, Parkin, DR, Bennett, KK, Lu, Y, Decker, RW, Niehans, GA, et al.. Suppression of mammary gland carcinogenesis by post-initiation treatment of rats with tamoxifen or indole-3-carbinol or their combination. *Eur J Canc Prev* 2007;16:130–41. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.cej.0000228401.14988.50 (https://doi.org/10.1097/01.cej.0000228401.14988.50) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17297389/)

22. Chen, D, Carter, TH, Auborn, KJ. Apoptosis in cervical cancer cells: implications for adjunct anti-estrogen therapy for cervical cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2004;24:2649–56.

23. Cover, CM, Hsieh, SJ, Cram, EJ, Hong, C, Riby, JE, Bjeldanes, LF, et al.. Indole-3-carbinol and tamoxifen cooperate to arrest the cell cycle of MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. *Canc Res* 1999;59:1244–51.

24. Rahman, KW, Ali, S, Aboukameel, A, Sarkar, SH, Wang, Z, Philip, PA, et al.. Inactivation of NF-{kappa} B by 3,3'-diindolylmethane contributes to increased apoptosis induced by chemotherapeutic agent in breast cancer cells. *Mol Canc Therapeut* 2007;6:2757–65. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.mct-07-0336 (https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.mct-07-0336) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17913854/)

25. Weng, JR, Tsai, CH, Kulp, SK, Wang, D, Lin, CH, Yang, HC, et al.. A potent indole-3-carbinol derived antitumor agent with pleiotropic effects on multiple signaling pathways in prostate cancer cells. *Canc Res* 2007;67:7815–24. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.can-07-0794 (https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.can-07-0794) .

26. Tomasini, P, Egea, J, Souquet-Bressand, M, Greillier, L, Barlesi, F. Alectinib in the treatment of ALK-positive metastatic non-small cell lung cancer: clinical trial evidence and experience with a focus on brain metastases. *Ther Adv Respir Dis* 2019;13:1753466619831906. https://doi.org/10.1177/1753466619831906 (https://doi.org/10.1177/1753466619831906) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30786826/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6385324/)

27. Fujimura, T, Furugaki, K, Harada, N, Yoshimura, Y. Enhanced antitumor effect of alectinib in combination with cyclin-dependent kinase 4/6 inhibitor against RET-fusion–positive non–small cell lung cancer cells. *Canc Biol Ther* 2020;21:863–70. https://doi.org/10.1080/15384047.2020.1806643 (https://doi.org/10.1080/15384047.2020.1806643) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32835580/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7515507/)

28. Dhuguru, J, Skouta, R. Role of indole scaffold as pharmacophores in the development of anti-lung cancer agents. *Molecules* 2020;25:1615. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules25071615 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules25071615) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32244744/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7181244/)

29. Le Tourneau, C, Raymond, E, Faivre, S. Sunitinib: a novel tyrosine kinase inhibitor. A brief review of its therapeutic potential in the treatment of renal carcinoma and gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST). *Therapeut Clin Risk Manag* 2007;3:341–8. https://doi.org/10.2147/tcrm.2007.3.2.341 (https://doi.org/10.2147/tcrm.2007.3.2.341) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18360643/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1936316/)

30. Lin, B, Song, X, Yang, D, Bai, D, Yao, Y, Lu, N. Anlotinib inhibits angiogenesis via suppressing the activation of VEGFR2, PDGFR_ and FGFR1. *Gene* 2018;654:77–86. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gene.2018.02.026 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gene.2018.02.026) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/29454091/)

31. Reck, M, Mellemgaard, A, Novello, S, Postmus, PE, Gaschler-Markefski, B, Kaiser, R, et al.. Change in non-small-cell lung cancer tumor size in patients treated with nintedanib plus Docetaxel: analyses from the Phase III LUME-Lung 1 Study. *OncoTargets Ther* 2018;11:4573–82. https://doi.org/10.2147/ott.s170722 (https://doi.org/10.2147/ott.s170722) .

32. Bharate, SB, Yadav, RR, Battula, S, Vishwakarma, RA. Meridianins: marine-derived potent kinase inhibitors. *Mini Rev Med Chem* 2012;12:618–31. https://doi.org/10.2174/138955712800626728 (https://doi.org/10.2174/138955712800626728) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/22512550/)

33. Seldes, AM, Brasco, MFR, Franco, LH, Palermo, JA. Identification of two meridianins from the crude extract of the tunicate Aplidium meridianum by tandem mass spectrometry. *Nat Prod Res* 2007;2:555–63. https://doi.org/10.1080/14786410601133517 (https://doi.org/10.1080/14786410601133517) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17497427/)

34. Radwan, MA, El-Sherbiny, M. Synthesis and antitumor activity of indolylpyrimidines: marine natural product meridianin D analogues. *Bioorg Med Chem* 2007;15:1206–11. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2006.11.023 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2006.11.023) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17157024/)

35. Reyes, F, Fernandez, R, Rodriguez, A, Francesch, A, Taboada, S, Avila, C, et al.. Aplicyanins A-F, new cytotoxic bromoindole derivatives from the marine tunicate Aplidium cyaneum. *Tetrahedron* 2008;64:5119–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2008.03.060 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2008.03.060) .

36. Badria, FA, Soliman, SM, Atef, S, Islam, MS, Al-Majid, AM, Dege, N, et al.. Anticancer indole-based chalcones: a structural and theoretical analysis. *Molecules* 2019;24:3728–34. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24203728 (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24203728) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31623155/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6832658/)

37. Herbst, RS, Oh, Y, Wagle, A, Lahn, M. Enzastaurin, a protein kinase c selective inhibitor, and its potential application as an anticancer agent in lung cancer. *Clin Canc Res* 2007;13:4641–6. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-07-0538 (https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-07-0538) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17671157/)

38. Kohmoto, S, Kashman, Y, McConnell, OJ, Rinehart, KL, Wright, A, Koehn, F. Dragmacidin, a new cytotoxic bis(indole) alkaloid from a deepwater marine sponge, Dragmacidon sp. *J Org Chem* 1988;53:3116–18. https://doi.org/10.1021/jo00248a040 (https://doi.org/10.1021/jo00248a040) .

39. Wright, AE, Killday, KB, Chakrabarti, D, Guzman, EA, Harmody, D, McCarthy, PJ, et al.. A bioactive bis-indole alkaloid from a deep-water sponge of the genus spongosorites. *Mar Drugs* 2017;15:16–27. https://doi.org/10.3390/md15010016 (https://doi.org/10.3390/md15010016) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28085024/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5295236/)

40. Haider, K, Rahaman, S, Yar, MS, Kamal, A. Tubulin inhibitors as novel anticancer agents: an overview on patents (2013-2018). *Expert Opin Ther Pat* 2019;29:623–41. https://doi.org/10.1080/13543776.2019.1648433 (https://doi.org/10.1080/13543776.2019.1648433) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31353978/)

41. Patil, R, Patil, SA, Beaman, KD, Patil, SA. Indole molecules as inhibitors of tubulin polymerization: potential new anticancer agents, an update (2013-2015). *Future Med Chem* 2016;8:1291–316. https://doi.org/10.4155/fmc-2016-0047 (https://doi.org/10.4155/fmc-2016-0047) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27476704/)

42. Patel, Y, Vadgama, V, Baxi, S, Chandrabhanu, TB. Evaluation of hypolipidemic activity of leaf juice of Catharanthus roseus (Linn.) G. Donn. in guinea pigs. *Acta Pol Pharm* 2011;68:927–35.

43. Wang, CH, Wang, GC, Wang, Y, Zhang, XQ, Huang, XJ, Zhang, DM, et al.. Cytotoxic dimeric indole alkaloids from Catharanthus roseus. *Fitoterapia* 2012;83:765–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fitote.2012.03.007 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fitote.2012.03.007) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/22445552/)

44. Moudi, M, Go, R, Yien, CY, Nazre, M. Vinca alkaloids. *Int J Prev Med* 2013;4:1231–5.

45. Kufe, DW, Pollock, RE, Weichselbaum, RR, Bast, RC, Gansler, TS, Holland, JF, et al.. *Holland-Frei cancer medicine*, 6th ed. Hamilton (ON): BC Decker Inc; 2003.

46. Bennouna, J, Delord, JP, Campone, M, Nguyen, L. Vinflunine: a new microtubule inhibitor agent. *Clin Canc Res* 2008;14:1625–32. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-07-2219 (https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-07-2219) .

47. Ueda, K, Cardarelli, C, Gottesman, MM, Pastan, I. Expression of a full-length cDNA for the human "MDR1" gene confers resistance to colchicine, doxorubicin, and vinblastine. *Proc Natl Acad Sci* 1987;84:3004–8. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.84.9.3004 (https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.84.9.3004) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/3472246/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC304789/)

48. Sen, K, Mandal, M. Second generation liposomal cancer therapeutics: transition from laboratory to clinic. *Int J Pharm* 2013;448:28–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.03.006 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.03.006) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23500602/)

49. Maia, ALC, Ferreira, CA, Barros, ALB, E Silva, ATM, Ramaldes, GA, Silva Cunha Júnior, AD, et al.. Vincristine-loaded hydroxyapatite nanoparticles as a potential delivery system for bone cancer therapy. *J Drug Target* 2018;26:592–603. https://doi.org/10.1080/1061186x.2017.1401078 (https://doi.org/10.1080/1061186x.2017.1401078) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/29098881/)

50. Zhang, T, Zheng, Y, Peng, Q, Cao, X, Gong, T, Zhang, Z. A novel submicron emulsion system loaded with vincristine-oleic acid ion-pair complex with improved anticancer effect: in vitro and in vivo studies. *Int J Nanomed* 2013;8:1185–96. https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s41775 (https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s41775) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23658485/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3607420/)

51. Zu, Y, Zhang, Y, Zhao, X, Zhang, Q, Liu, Y, Jiang, R. Optimization of the preparation process of vinblastine sulfate (VBLS)-loaded folate-conjugated bovine serum albumin (BSA) nanoparticles for tumor-targeted drug delivery using response surface methodology (RSM). *Int J Nanomed* 2009;4:321–33. https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s8501 (https://doi.org/10.2147/ijn.s8501) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/20054435/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2802044/)

52. Bahadori, F, Topcu, G, Eroglu, MS, Onyuksel, H. A new lipid based nano formulation of vinorelbine. *AAPS PharmSciTech* 2014;15:1138–48. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-014-0146-3 (https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-014-0146-3) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24871553/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4179676/)

53. Zhang, Y, Yang, S-H, Guo, XL. New insights into Vinca alkaloids resistance mechanism and circumvention in lung cancer. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2017;96:659–66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopha.2017.10.041 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopha.2017.10.041) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/29035832/)

54. Cong, H, Zhao, X, Castle, BT, Pomeroy, EJ, Zhou, B, Lee, J, et al.. An indole-chalcone inhibits multidrug-resistant cancer cell growth by targeting microtubules. *Mol Pharm* 2018;15:3892–900. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.molpharmaceut.8b00359 (https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.molpharmaceut.8b00359) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30048137/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6511885/)

55. Zhao, X, Dong, WL, Gao, YD, Shin, D-S, Ye, Q, Su, L, et al.. Novel indolyl-chalcone derivatives inhibit A549 lung cancer cell growth through activating Nrf-2/HO-1 and inducing apoptosis in vitro and in vivo. *Sci Rep* 2017;7:3919–29. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-04411-3 (https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-04411-3) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28634389/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5478673/)

56. Salum, LB, Mascarello, A, Canevarolo, RR, Altei, WF, Larenjeira, ABA, Neuenfeldt, PD, et al.. N-(10-naphthyl)-3, 4, 5-trimethoxybenzohydrazide as microtubule destabilizer: synthesis, cytotoxicity, inhibition of cell migration and in vivo activity against acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Eur J Med Chem* 2015;96:504–18. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2015.02.041 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2015.02.041) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/25951294/)

57. Sundaree, S, Vaddula, BR, Tantak, MP, Khandagale, SB, Shi, C, Shah, K, et al.. Synthesis and anticancer activity study of indolyl hydrazide–hydrazones. *Med Chem Res* 2016;25:941–50. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-016-1522-1 (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-016-1522-1) .

58. Mukherjee, DD, Kumar, NM, Tantak, MP, Das, A, Ganguli, A, Datta, S, et al.. Development of novel bis(indolyl)-hydrazide-hydrazone derivatives as potent microtubule-targeting cytotoxic agents against A549 lung cancer cells. *Biochemistry* 2016;55:3020–35. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.biochem.5b01127 (https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.biochem.5b01127) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27110637/)

59. Martino, GD, Regina, GL, Coluccia, A, Edler, MC, Barbera, MC, Brancale, A, et al.. Arylthioindoles, potent inhibitors of tubulin polymerization. *J Med Chem* 2004;47:6120–3. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm049360d (https://doi.org/10.1021/jm049360d) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15566282/)

60. Buvana, C, Raveendran, A, Suresh, R, Haribabu, Y. Indole-3-glyoxylamide- an important scaffold for anticancer activity. *Asian J Pharmaceut Res Dev* 2020;8:218–30.

61. Kim, HJ, Bae, SC. Histone deacetylase inhibitors: molecular mechanisms of action and clinical trials as anti-cancer drugs. *Am J Transl Res* 2011;3:166–79.

62. Weisberg, E, Catley, L, Kujawa, J, Cavazza, C, Anderson, K, Griffin, JD. Histone deacetylase inhibitor NVP-LAQ824 has significant activity against myeloid leukemia cells in vitro and in vivo. *Leukemia* 2004;18:1951–63. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.leu.2403519 (https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.leu.2403519) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15496979/)

63. Kelly, WK, Marks, PA. Drug insight: histone deacetylase inhibitors- development of the new targeted anticancer agent suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid. *Nat Clin Pract Oncol* 2005;2:150–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncponc0106 (https://doi.org/10.1038/ncponc0106) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/16264908/)

64. Komatsu, N, Kawamata, N, Takeuchi, S, Yin, D, Chien, W, Miller, CW, et al.. SAHA, a HDAC inhibitor, has profound anti-growth activity against non-small cell lung cancer cells. *Oncol Rep* 2006;5:187–91. https://doi.org/10.3892/or.15.1.187 (https://doi.org/10.3892/or.15.1.187) .

65. Han, S, Fukazawa, T, Yamatsuji, T, Miyachi, H, Maeda, Y, Durbin, M, et al.. Anti-tumor effect in human lung cancer by a combination treatment of novel histone deacetylase inhibitors: SL142 or SL325 and retinoic acids. *PloS One* 2010;5:e13834. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0013834 (https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0013834) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21079797/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2973950/)

66. Lai, MJ, Huang, HL, Pan, SL, Liu, Y-M, Peng, C-Y, Lee, H-Y, et al.. Synthesis and biological evaluation of 1-arylsulfonyl-5-(N-hydroxyacrylamide) indoles as potent histone deacetylase inhibitors with antitumor activity in vivo. *J Med Chem* 2012;55:3777–91. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm300197a (https://doi.org/10.1021/jm300197a) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/22439863/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4201585/)

67. Tokala, R, Sana, S, Lakshmi, UJ, Sigalapalli, DK, Gadewal, N, Kode, J, et al.. Design and synthesis of thiadiazolo-carboxamide bridged β-carboline-indole hybrids: DNA intercalative topo-IIα inhibition with promising antiproliferative activity. *Bioorg Chem* 2020;105:104357. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioorg.2020.104357 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioorg.2020.104357) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/33091673/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7543778/)

68. Chaniyara, R, Tala, S, Chen, CW, Zang, X, Kakadiya, R, Lin, LF, et al.. Novel antitumor indolizino[6,7-b]indoles with multiple modes of action: DNA cross-linking and topoisomerase I and II inhibition. *J Med Chem* 2013;56:1544–63. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm301788a (https://doi.org/10.1021/jm301788a) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23360284/)

69. Chang, SM, Christian, W, Wu, MH, Chen, TL, Lin, YW, Suen, CS, et al.. Novel indolizino[8,7-b]indole hybrids as anti-small cell lung cancer agents: regioselective modulation of topoisomerase II inhibitory and DNA crosslinking activities. *Eur J Med Chem* 2017;27:235–49. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2016.12.046 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2016.12.046) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28064078/)

70. Barrows, LR, Radisky, DC, Copp, BR, Swaffar, DS, Kramer, RA, Warters, RL, et al.. Makaluvamines, marine natural products, are active anti-cancer agents and DNA topo II inhibitors. *Anti Canc Drug Des* 1993;8:333–47.

71. Nadkarni, D, Wang, F, WangW, Rayburn, E, Ezell, S, Murugesan, S, et al.. Synthesis and in vitro anti-lung cancer activity of novel 1, 3, 4, 8- tetrahydropyrrolo [4, 3, 2-de]Quinolin-8(1H)-o ne alkaloid analogs. *Med Chem* 2009;5:227–36. https://doi.org/10.2174/157340609788185873 (https://doi.org/10.2174/157340609788185873) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19442212/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6690190/)

72. Wang, W, Rayburn, ER, Velu, SE, Nadkarni, DH, Murugesan, S, Zhang, R. In vitro and in vivo anticancer activity of novel synthetic makaluvamine analogues. *Clin Canc Res* 2009;15:511–8. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-08-2689 (https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-08-2689) .

73. Chen, C-W, Wu, M-H, Chen, Y-F, Yen, T-Y, Lin, Y-W, Chao, S-H, et al.. Corrigendum to "A potent derivative of Indolizino [6,7-b]Indole for treatment of human non-small cell lung cancer cells". *Neoplasia* 2016;18:808–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neo.2016.10.005 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neo.2016.10.005) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27978996/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5156521/)

74. Khwaza, V, Oyedeji, OO, Aderibigbe, BA. Ursolic acid-based derivatives as potential anti-cancer agents: an update. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020;21:5920–7. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21165920 (https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21165920) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32824664/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7460570/)

75. Li, A-L, Hao, Y, Wang, W-Y, Liu, Q-S, Yue, S, Gu, W. Design, Synthesis, and Anticancer evaluation of novel indole derivatives of ursolic acid as potential topoisomerase II Inhibitors. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020;21:2876–84. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21082876 (https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21082876) .

PubMed (https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/32326071/)
PubMed Central (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7215373/)

Received: 2021-03-16
Accepted: 2021-06-26
Published Online: 2021-08-23

© 2021 Walter de Gruyter GmbH, Berlin/Boston

— or —

From the journal

Physical Sciences Reviews
Volume 8 Issue 8

Articles in the same Issue

Frontmatter

Reviews

Influence of lime (CaO) on low temperature leaching of some types of bauxite from Guinea

Ethnobotanical survey, phytoconstituents and antibacterial investigation of *Rapanea melanophloeos (L.) Mez.* bark, fruit and leaf extracts

Catalytic properties of supramolecular polymetallated porphyrins

Lignin-based polymers

Bio-based polyhydroxyalkanoates blends and composites

Biodegradable poly(butylene adipate-*co*-terephthalate) (PBAT)

Repurposing tires – alternate energy source?

Theoretical investigation of the stability, reactivity, and the interaction of methyl-substituted peridinium-based ionic liquids

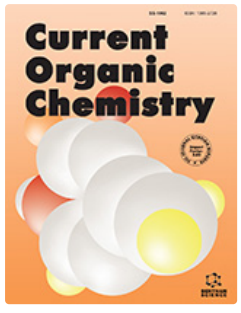
Polymeric membranes for biomedical applications

Design of locally sourced activated charcoal filter from maize cob for wastewater decontamination: an approach to fight waste with waste

Downloaded on 12.6.2024 from https://www.degruyter.com/document/doi/10.1515/psr-2021-0028/html?lang=en

BENTHAM SCIENCE

Search here... Login Register Cart 0



Current Organic Chemistry

Editor-in-Chief

ISSN (Print): 1385-2728
ISSN (Online): 1875-5348

Back Journal Subscribe

Review Article

Green Chemistry Approaches to the Synthesis of Flavonoids

Author(s): Yogesh Murti*, Devender Pathak and Kamla Pathak

Volume 25, Issue 17, 2021

Published on: 28 July, 2021

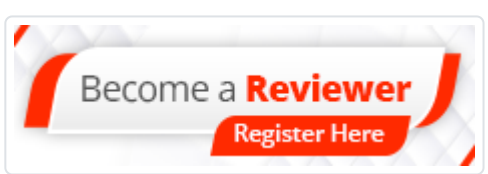
Page: [2005 - 2027]

Pages: 23

DOI: 10.2174/1385272825666210728095624

Price: $65

Purchase PDF



Abstract

In nature, flavonoids constitute a relatively diverse family of aromatic molecules such as flavones, flavonols, flavanones, isoflavone, chalcones, and their derivatives. Natural and synthetic flavonoids have reported diverse biological activity including antimycobacterial, antimicrobial, antiproliferative, antiarrhythmic, antiviral, antihypertensive, antioxidant, and anti-inflammatory. Flavonoids have garnered much attention as potential targets for nutraceuticals and pharmaceuticals. The recent development of “Green Chemistry” has enabled us to manipulate biosynthetic pathways to generate a library of synthetic flavonoids and to diminish the hazards for human health and environmental pollution from conventional methods. This paper presents an exhaustive review of the green synthesis of flavonoids. Green chemistry is the need for the day; hence chalcones can be synthesized in an eco-friendly manner without using solvents. The chalcone synthesis involves the solvent-free solid-state trituration between

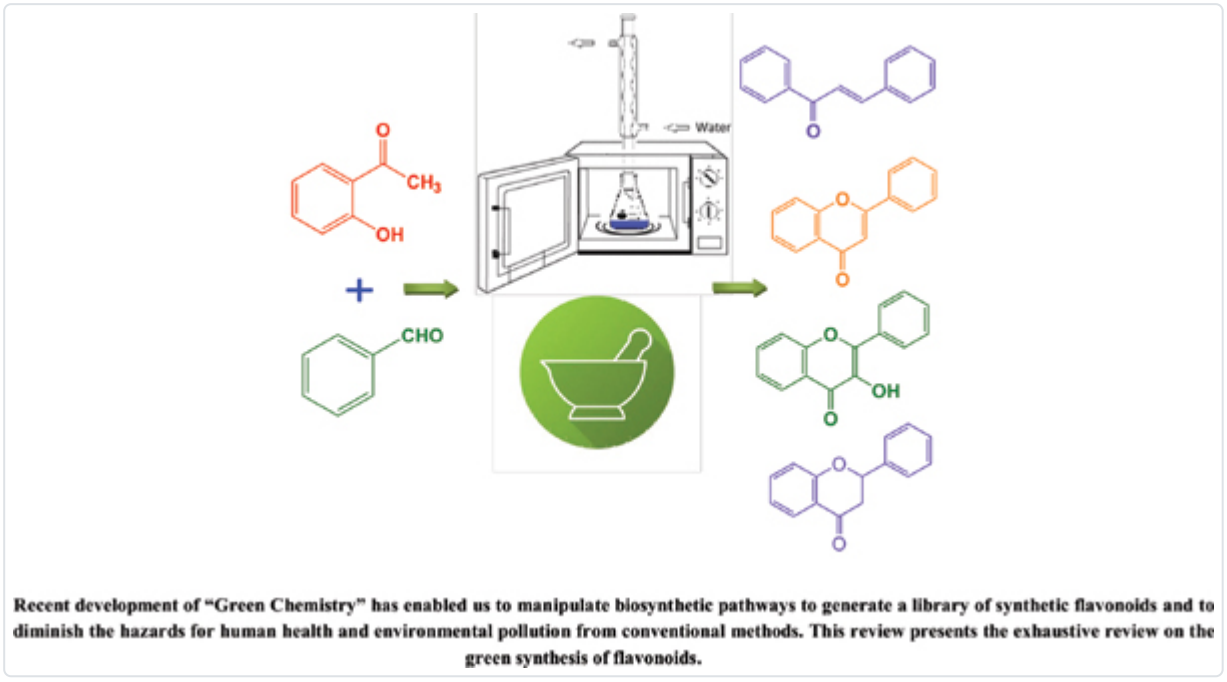
acetophenone derivatives and substituted benzaldehydes in the presence of NaOH/KOH as a base (Claisen-Schmidt reaction). Using these chalcone derivatives, synthesis of flavonoids can be done. In the pharmaceutical arena, economical bulk production of different types of flavonoids has been successfully established by green chemistry techniques.

Keywords: Green synthesis, flavonoids, chalcones, microwave irradiation, grinding, Claisen-Schmidt condensation.

« Previous

Next »

Graphical Abstract



Recent development of "Green Chemistry" has enabled us to manipulate biosynthetic pathways to generate a library of synthetic flavonoids and to diminish the hazards for human health and environmental pollution from conventional methods. This review presents the exhaustive review on the green synthesis of flavonoids.

Mark Item Purchase PDF Rights & Permissions Print Cite

Article Metrics

PDF

56

9

9 Total citations
9 Recent citations

1.68 Field Citation Ratio
n/a Relative Citation Ratio

FIND YOUR **INSTITUTION**

Journal Information

About Journal

Editorial Board

Current Issue

Volumes /Issues

For Authors

For Editors

For Reviewers

Explore Articles

Open Access

For Visitors

© 2024 Bentham Science Publishers | Privacy Policy

SPRINGER LINK

Log in

Menu Search Cart

Home AAPS PharmSciTech Article

Printing Methods in the Production of Orodispersible Films

Review Article Published: 09 April 2021

Volume 22, article number 129, (2021) Cite this article

AAPS PharmSciTech

Aims and scope

Submit manuscript

Maram Suresh Gupta, Tegginamath Pramod Kumar, Robert Davidson, Guruprasad Rao Kuppu, Kamla Pathak & Devegowda Vishakante Gowda

1364 Accesses 20 Citations 3 Altmetric Explore all metrics →

Abstract

Orodispersible film (ODF) formulations are promising and progressive drug delivery systems that are widely accepted by subjects across all the age groups. They are traditionally fabricated using the most popular yet conventional method called solvent casting method. The most modern and evolving method is based on printing technologies and such printed products are generally termed as printed orodispersible films (POFs). This modern technology is well suited to fabricate ODFs across different settings (laboratory or industrial) in general and in a pharmacy setting in particular. The present review provides an overview of various printing methods employed in fabricating POFs. Particularly, it provides insight about preparing POFs using inkjet, flexographic, and three-dimensional printing (3DP) or additive manufacturing techniques like filament deposition modeling, hot-melt ram extrusion 3DP, and semisolid extrusion 3DP methods. Additionally, the review is focused on patenting trends in POFs using ESPACENET, a European Patent Office search database. Finally, the review captures future market potential of 3DP in general and ODFs market potential in particular.

This is a preview of subscription content, log in via an institution to check access.

Access this article

Log in via an institution

Buy article PDF 39,95 €

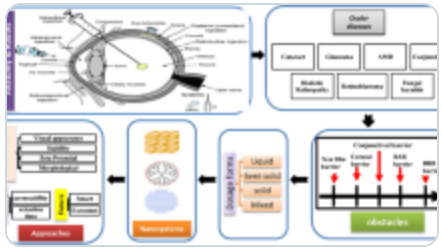
Price includes VAT (India)

Instant access to the full article PDF.

Rent this article via DeepDyve

Institutional subscriptions →

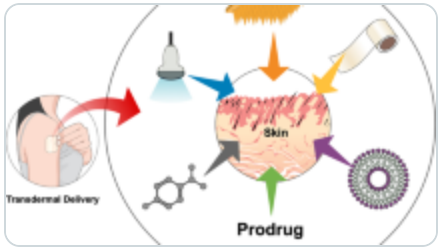
Similar content being viewed by others



Ocular Drug Delivery: a Comprehensive Review

Article | Open access

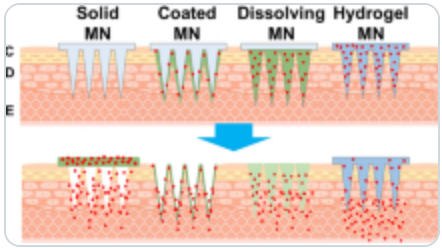
14 February 2023



Enhancement strategies for transdermal drug delivery systems: current trends and applications

Article | Open access

20 January 2021



Microneedle for transdermal drug delivery: current trends and fabrication

Article | 04 March 2021

References

1. Ph. Eur 9.3, Oromucosal preparations, in: European Pharmacopoeia Commission (Ed.), European Pharmacopoeia. European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines & Healthcare (EDQM), Strasbourg, France, 2018.

2. Dixit RP, Puthli SP. Oral strip technology: overview and future potential. J Control Release. 2009;139(2):94–107. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jconrel.2009.06.014.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

3. https://ncithesaurus.nci.nih.gov/ncitbrowser/ConceptReport.jsp?dictionary=NCI_Thesaurus&ns=ncit&code=C42984. Accessed on 12th May 2020.

4. Anon. Pharmaceutical dosage forms. In: United States pharmacopoeia, 40-NF35; 2017.

Google Scholar

5. Hoffmann EM, Breitenbach A, Breitkreutz J. Advances in orodispersible films for drug delivery. Expert Opin Drug Deliv. 2011;8(3):299–316. https://doi.org/10.1517/17425247.2011.553217.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

6. Preis M, Woertz C, Schneider K, Kukawka J, Broscheit J, Roewer N, et al. Design and evaluation of bilayered buccal film preparations for local administration of lidocaine hydrochloride. Eur J Pharm Biopharm. 2014;86(3):552–61. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpb.2013.12.019.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

7. Tian Y, Orlu M, Woerdenbag HJ, Scarpa M, Kiefer O, Kottke D, et al. Oromucosal films: from patient centricity to production by printing techniques. Expert Opin Drug Deliv. 2019;16(9):981–93. https://doi.org/10.1080/17425247.2019.1652595.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

8. International PCT Publication No.: WO2020014776; Title: Cannabinoid oral dispersible film strip.

9. International PCT Publication No.: 2018094037; Title: Oral thin films comprising plant extracts and methods of making and using same.

10. Gopi S, Amalraj A, Kalarikkal N, Zhang J, Thomas S, Guo Q. Preparation and characterization of nanocomposite films based on gum arabic, maltodextrin and polyethylene glycol reinforced with

turmeric nanofiber isolated from turmeric spent. Mater Sci Eng C Mater Biol Appl. 2019;97:723–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2018.12.089.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

11. Daud AS, Sapkal NP, Bonde MN. Development of Zingiber officinale in oral dissolving films: effect of polymers on in vitro, in vivo parameters and clinical efficacy. Asian J Pharm. 2011;5(3):183–9. https://doi.org/10.4103/0973-8398.91995.

Article CAS Google Scholar

12. International patent publication No.: WO2012/103464; Title: Oral thin film vaccine preparation.

13. Saha S, Tomaro-Duchesneau C, Daoud JT, Tabrizian M, Prakash S. Novel probiotic dissolvable carboxymethyl cellulose films as oral health biotherapeutics: in vitro preparation and characterization. Expert Opin Drug Deliv. 2013;10(11):1471–82. https://doi.org/10.1517/17425247.2013.799135.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

14. https://www.curepharmaceutical.com/cure-products/vitamin-d/. Accessed on 10th May 2020.

15. Han X, Yan J, Ren L, Xue M, Yuan Z, Wang T, et al. Preparation and evaluation of orally disintegrating film containing donepezil for Alzheimer disease. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol. 2019;54:101321. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jddst.2019.101321.

Article CAS Google Scholar

16. El-Setouhy DA, El-Malak NSA. Formulation of a novel tianeptine sodium orodispersible film. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2010;11(3):1018–25. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-010-9464-2.

Article CAS PubMed PubMed Central Google Scholar

17. Manda P, Popescu C, Juluri A, Janga K, Kakulamarri PR, Narishetty S, et al. Micronized zaleplon delivery via orodispersible film and orodispersible tablets. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2018;19(3):1358–66. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-017-0924-9.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

18. Talekar SD, Haware RV, Dave RH. Evaluation of self-nanoemulsifying drug delivery systems using multivariate methods to optimize permeability of captopril oral films. Eur J Pharm Sci. 2019;130(December 2018):215–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejps.2019.01.039.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

19. Łyszczarz E, Hofmanová J, Szafraniec-Szczęsny J, Jachowicz R. Orodispersible films containing ball milled aripiprazole-poloxamer®407 solid dispersions. Int J Pharm. 2020;575(November 2019). https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.118955.

20. Bharti K, Mittal P, Mishra B. Formulation and characterization of fast dissolving oral films containing buspirone hydrochloride nanoparticles using design of experiment. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol. 2019;49(September 2018):420–32. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jddst.2018.12.013.

Article CAS Google Scholar

21. Chonkar AD, Rao JV, Managuli RS, Mutalik S, Dengale S, Jain P, et al. Development of fast dissolving oral films containing lercanidipine HCl nanoparticles in semicrystalline polymeric matrix for enhanced dissolution and ex vivo permeation. Eur J Pharm Biopharm. 2016;103:179–91. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpb.2016.04.001.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

22. Musazzi UM, Dolci LS, Albertini B, Passerini N, Cilurzo F. A new melatonin oral delivery platform based on orodispersible films containing solid lipid microparticles. Int J Pharm. 2019;559(October 2018):280–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.01.046.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

23. Zhang L, Li Y, Abed M, Davé RN. Incorporation of surface-modified dry micronized poorly water-soluble drug powders into polymer strip films. Int J Pharm. 2018;535(1-2):462–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2017.11.040.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

24. Foo WC, Khong YM, Gokhale R, Chan SY. A novel unit-dose approach for the pharmaceutical compounding of an orodispersible film. Int J Pharm. 2018;539:165–74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2018.01.047.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

25. Foo WC, Widjaja E, Khong YM, Gokhale R, Chan SY. Application of miniaturized near-infrared spectroscopy for quality control of extemporaneous orodispersible films. J Pharm Biomed Anal. 2018;150:191–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpba.2017.11.068.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

26. BE Patent No.: 637363; Title: New drugs and process for their preparation.

27. GB Patent No.:1061557; Title: New impregnated or coated films.

28. US Patent No. 4136145; Title: Medicament carriers in the form of film having active substance incorporated therein.

29. Mashru RC, Sutariya VB, Sankalia MG, Parikh PP. Development and evaluation of fast-dissolving film of salbutamol sulphate. Drug Dev Ind Pharm. 2005;31:25–34. https://doi.org/10.1081/DDC-43947.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

30. Cilurzo F, Cupone IE, Minghetti P, Selmin F, Montanari L. Fast dissolving films made of maltodextrins. Eur J Pharm Biopharm. 2008a;70:895–900. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpb.2008.06.032.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

31. Liu C, Chang D, Zhang X, Sui H, Kong Y, Zhu R, et al. Oral fast-dissolving films containing lutein nanocrystals for improved bioavailability: formulation development, in vitro and in vivo evaluation. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2017;18:2957–64. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-017-0777-2.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

32. Dinge A, Nagarsenker M. Formulation and evaluation of fast dissolving films for delivery of triclosan to the oral cavity. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2008;9:349–56. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-008-9047-7.

Article CAS PubMed PubMed Central Google Scholar

33. Patil H, Tiwari RV, Repka MA. Hot-melt extrusion: from Theory to application in pharmaceutical formulation. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2016;**17**:20–42. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-015-0360-7.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

34. Thakur S, Tyagi LK. Orodispersible films and their patent technology's as a novel drug delivery systems. Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res. 2019; Article No. 08;58(1):52–60.

CAS Google Scholar

35. Jani R, Patel D. Hot melt extrusion: an industrially feasible approach for casting orodispersible film. Asian J Pharm Sci. 2014;10:292–305. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajps.2015.03.002.

Article Google Scholar

36. Vasvári G, Kalmár J, Veres P, Vecsernyés M, Bácskay I, Fehér P, et al. Matrix systems for oral drug delivery: Formulations and drug release. Drug Discov Today Technol. 2018;27:71–80. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ddtec.2018.06.009.

Article PubMed Google Scholar

37. Rustemkyzy C, Belton P, Qi S. Preparation and characterization of ultrarapidly dissolving orodispersible films for treating and preventing iodine deficiency in the pediatric population. J Agric Food Chem. 2015;63(44):9831–8. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jafc.5b03953.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

38. Illangakoon UE, Gill H, Shearman GC, Parhizkar M, Mahalingam S, Chatterton NP, et al. Fast dissolving paracetamol/caffeine nanofibers prepared by electrospinning. Int J Pharm. 2014;477(1-2):369–79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2014.10.036.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

39. Li X, Kanjwal MA, Lin L, Chronakis IS. Electrospun polyvinyl-alcohol nanofibers as oral fast-dissolving delivery system of caffeine and riboflavin. Colloids Surf B: Biointerfaces. 2013;103:182–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.COLSURFB.2012.10.016.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

40. Thomas C. Leonard, Redeemed by history: Review essay on Thomas K. McCraw, Prophet of innovation: Joseph Schumpeter and creative destruction, 17(1) HISTORY OF ECONOMIC IDEAS 189 (2009), available at https://www.princeton.edu/~tleonard/papers/McCraw.pdf. Accessed on 3rd August 2020.

41. Basaran OA, Suryo R. Fluid dynamics: the invisible jet. Nat Phys. 2007;3:679–80.

Article CAS Google Scholar

42. Tekin E, Smith PJ, Schubert US. Inkjet printing as a deposition and patterning tool for polymers and inorganic particles. Soft Matter. 2008;4:703–13.

Article CAS Google Scholar

43. de Gans BJ, Schubert US. Inkjet Printing of Well-Defined Polymer Dots and Arrays. Langmuir. 2004;20:7789–93.

Article Google Scholar

44. Tarcha PJ, Verlee D, Hui HW, Setesak J, Antohe B, Radulescu D, et al. The application of ink-jet technology for the coating and loading of drug-eluting stents. Ann Biomed Eng. 2007;35(10):1791–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10439-007-9354-2.

Article PubMed Google Scholar

45. Wilson WC Jr, Boland T. Cell and organ printing 1: protein and cell printers. Anat Rec A Discov Mol Cell Evol Biol. 2003;272(2):491–6. https://doi.org/10.1002/ar.a.10057.

Article PubMed Google Scholar

46. Cui X, Gao G, Yonezawa T, Dai G. Human cartilage tissue fabrication using three-dimensional inkjet printing technology. J Vis Exp. 2014;(88):51294. Published 2014 Jun 10. https://doi.org/10.3791/51294.

47. Boehm RD, Miller PR, Daniels J, Stafslein S, Narayan RJ. Inkjet printing for pharmaceutical applications. Mater Today. 2014;17:247–52.

Article CAS Google Scholar

48. Okamoto T, Suzuki T, Yamamoto N. Microarray fabrication with covalent attachment of DNA using bubble jet technology. Nat Biotechnol. 2000;18(4):438–41. https://doi.org/10.1038/74507.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

49. Zhu X, Zheng Q, Yang H, Cai J, Huang L, Duan Y, et al. Recent advances in inkjet dispensing technologies: applications in drug discovery. Expert Opin Drug Discovery. 2012;7(9):761–70. https://doi.org/10.1517/17460441.2012.697892.

Article CAS Google Scholar

50. de Gans BJ, Duineveld PC, Schubert US. Adv Mater. 2004;16:203–13.

Article Google Scholar

51. How inkjet printers work? By: Jeff Tyson. https://computer.howstuffworks.com/inkjet-printer.htm. Accessed on 4th August 2020.

52. Delaney JT, Smith PJ, Schubert US. Inkjet printing of proteins. Soft Matter. 2009;5(24):4866–77. The Royal Society of Chemistry. https://doi.org/10.1039/B909878J.

Article CAS Google Scholar

53. Wang Y, Bokor J. Ultra-high-resolution monolithic thermal bubble inkjet print head. J Micro/Nanolith MEMS MOEMS. 2007;6:43009.

Article Google Scholar

54. Priest JW, Smith C, DuBois P. Liquid metal jetting for printing metal parts solid freeform fabrication proceedings. TX: University of Texas at Austin; 1997.

Google Scholar

55. Sadeghian H, Hojjat Y, Ghodsi M, Sheykholeslami MR. An approach to design and fabrication of a piezo-actuated microdroplet generator. Int J Adv Manuf Technol. 2014;70:1091–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00170-013-5371-5.

Article Google Scholar

56. Burgold J, Weise F, Fischer M, Schlingloff G, Henkel T, Albert J, et al. Evolution and operating experiences with different drop-on-demand systems. Macromol Rapid Commun. 2005;26:265–80. https://doi.org/10.1002/marc.200590007.

Article CAS Google Scholar

57. Hirshfield L, Giridhar A, Taylor LS, Harris MT, Reklaitis GV. Dropwise additive manufacturing of pharmaceutical products for solvent-based dosage forms. J Pharm Sci. 2014;103:496–506.

Article CAS Google Scholar

58. US Patent No.: 6591122; Title: Electrostatic mechanism for inkjet printers resulting in improved image quality; Assignee: Hewlett Packard Development Company.

59. Rung W. in Proc. IS&T's 8th Int'l. Congress on Adv. in Non-Impact Printing Technologies, IS&T, Springfield, VA, 1992, p. 229.

60. Meléndez PA, Kane KM, Ashvar CS, Albrecht M, Smith PA. Thermal inkjet application in the preparation of oral dosage forms: dispensing of prednisolone solutions and polymorphic characterization by solid-state spectroscopic techniques. J Pharm Sci. 2008;97:2619–36.

Article Google Scholar

61. Sumerel J, Lewis J, Doraiswamy A, Deravi LF, Sewell SL, Gerdon AE, et al. Piezoelectric ink jet processing of materials for medical and biological applications. Biotechnol J. 2006;1:976–87.

Article CAS Google Scholar

62. Scoutaris N, Alexander MR, Gellert PR, Roberts CJ. Inkjet printing as a novel medicine formulation technique. J Control Release. 2011;156:179–85.

Article CAS Google Scholar

63. Hue P. Le, Progress and trends in ink-jet printing technology, Oregon Journal of Imaging Science and Technology — Volume 42, Number 1, January/February 1998.

64. Lee BK, Yun YH, Choi JS, Choi YC, Kim JD, Cho YW. Fabrication of drug-loaded polymer microparticles with arbitrary geometries using a piezoelectric inkjet printing system. *Int J Pharm*. 2012;427(2):305–10. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2012.02.011.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

65. Vuddanda PR, Alomari M, Dodoo CC, Trenfield SJ, Velaga S, Basit AW, et al. Personalisation of warfarin therapy using thermal ink-jet printing. Eur J Pharm Sci. 2018;117:80–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejps.2018.02.002.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

66. Genina N, Janßen EM, Breitenbach A, Breitkreutz J, Sandler N. Evaluation of different substrates for inkjet printing of rasagiline mesylate. Eur J Pharm Biopharm. 2013b;85:1075–83. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpb.2013.03.017.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

67. Genina N, Fors D, Palo M, Peltonen J, Sandler N. Behavior of printable formulations of loperamide and caffeine on different substrates - effect of print density in inkjet printing. Int J Pharm. 2013a;453:488–97. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.06.003.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

68. Buanz ABM, Saunders MH, Basit AW, Gaisford S. Preparation of personalized-dose salbutamol sulphate oral films with thermal ink-jet printing. Pharm Res. 2011;28:2386–92. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11095-011-0450-5.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

69. Pardeike J, Strohmeier DM, Schrödl N, Voura C, Gruber M, Khinast JG, et al. Nanosuspensions as advanced printing ink for accurate dosing of poorly soluble drugs in personalized medicines. Int J Pharm. 2011;420:93–100. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2011.08.033.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

70. Alomari M, Vuddanda PR, Trenfield SJ, Dodoo CC, Velaga S, Basit AW, et al. Printing T3and T4oral drug combinations as a novel strategy for hypothyroidism. Int JPharm. 2018;549:363–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2018.07.062.

Article CAS Google Scholar

71. Edinger M, Bar-Shalom D, Sandler N, Rantanen J, Genina N. QR encoded smart oral dosage forms by inkjet printing. Int J Pharm. 2018;536:138–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2017.11.052.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

72. Planchette C, Pichler H, Wimmer-Teubenbacher M, Gruber M, Gruber-Woelfler H, Mohr S, et al. Printing medicines as orodispersible dosage forms: Effect of substrate on the printed micro-structure. Int J Pharm. 2016;509:518–27. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2015.10.054.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

73. Eleftheriadis GK, Monou PK, Bouropoulos N, Fatouros DG. In vitro evaluation of 2Dprinted edible films for the buccal delivery of diclofenac sodium. Materials (Basel). 2018;11:1–14. https://doi.org/10.3390/ma11050864.

Article CAS Google Scholar

74. Buanz ABM, Belaunde CC, Soutari N, Tuleu C, Gul MO, Gaisford S. Ink-jet printing versus solvent casting to prepare oral films: effect on mechanical properties and physical stability. Int J Pharm. 2015;494:611–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2014.12.032.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

75. Wickström H, Nyman JO, Indola M, Sundelin H, Kronberg L, Preis M, et al. Colorimetry as quality control tool for individual inkjet-printed pediatric formulations. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2017;18:293–302.

https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-016-0620-1.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

76. Dodoo CC, Stapleton P, Basit AW, Gaisford S. The potential of Streptococcus salivarius oral films in the management of dental caries: an inkjet printing approach. Int J Pharm. 2020;591:119962.

Article CAS Google Scholar

77. Raijada D, Genina N, Fors D, Wisaeus E, Peltonen J, Rantanen J, et al. A step toward development of printable dosage forms for poorly soluble drugs. J Pharm Sci. 2013;102(10):3694–704. https://doi.org/10.1002/jps.23678.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

78. Preis M, Gronkowsky D, Grytzan D, Breitkreutz J. Comparative study on novel test systems to determine disintegration time of orodispersible films. J Pharm Pharmacol. 2014;66(8):1102–11. https://doi.org/10.1111/jphp.12246.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

79. HP Thermal Inkjet vs piezo printheads the technology behind HP Latex printing https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wnfkOHUup2Q– Accessed on 20th January 2021.

80. Carreira L, Agbezuge L, Gooray A. Correlation between drying time and ink jet print quality parameters. Recent Prog Ink Jet Technol. 1996:1–4.

81. Costello A, Doherty D, LeBeau J, Warren R. Multilayer polymer inkjet printing: Worcester Polytechnic Institute Bachelor Thesis; 2010.

82. Sandler N, Määttänen A, Ihalainen P, Kronberg L, Meierjohann A, Viitala T, et al. Inkjet printing of drug substances and use of porous substrates-towards individualized dosing. J Pharm Sci. 2011;100(8):3386–95. https://doi.org/10.1002/jps.22526.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

83. Dimatix materials printer DMP2800 series user manual, 2010. FUJIFILM Dimatix, Inc., Santa Clara, California.

84. Thabet Y, Breitkreutz J. Printing pharmaceuticals by inkjet technology: proof of concept for stand-alone and continuous in-line printing on orodispersible films. J Manuf Process. 2018;35:205–15.

Article Google Scholar

85. Thabet Y, Lunter D, Breitkreutz J. Continuous inkjet printing of enalapril maleate onto orodispersible film formulations. Int J Pharm. 2018;546(1-2):180–7.

Article CAS Google Scholar

86. Musazzi UM, Khalid GM, Selmin F, Minghetti P, Cilurzo F. Trends in the production methods of orodispersible films. Int J Pharm. 2020;576:118963. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.118963.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

87. Janssen EM, Schliephacke R, Breitenbach A, Breitkreutz J. Drug-printing by flexographic printing technology--a new manufacturing process for orodispersible films. Int J Pharm. 2013;441(1-2):818–25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2012.12.023.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

88. US Patent Publication No. US 2014/0186427 A1; Title: Orodispersible films for the manufacturing of individualised medicine or for large scale production

89. US Patent No. 9539206; Title: Method for producing and monitoring oral active ingredient films.

90. Genina N, Fors D, Vakili H, Ihalainen P, Pohjala L, Ehlers H, et al. Tailoring controlled-release oral dosage forms by combining inkjet and flexographic printing techniques. Eur J Pharm Sci. 2012;47(3):615–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejps.2012.07.020.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

91. Assaifan AK, Al habis Nuha, Ahmad, I., Alshehri, N. A., & Alharbi, H. F. Scaling-up medical technologies using flexographic printing. Talanta. 2020;*121236*:121236. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.talanta.2020.121236.

Article CAS Google Scholar

92. President Barack Obama, State of the Union Address (Feb. 12, 2013) (transcript available at the White House website: Office of the Press Secretary, *available at* http://www.whitehouse.gov/the-press-office/2013/02/12/remarks-president-state-union-address, *archived at* http://perma.cc/KES9-7KBX) (accessed on 3rd August 2020).

93. 3-D printing: the printed world, THE ECONOMIST, Feb. 12, 2011, at 77–79, available at http://www.economist.com/node/18114221/. Accessed on 3rd August 2020.

94. Ventola CL. Medical applications for 3D printing: current and projected uses. P T. 2014;39(10):704–11.

PubMed PubMed Central Google Scholar

95. Asad Ali and Usama Ahmad and Juber Akhtar, 3D printing in pharmaceutical sector: an overview, pharmaceutical formulation design, IntechOpen, Rijeka, 2020, doi https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.90738.

96. Matt Petronzio, How 3D printing actually works, MASHABLE (Mar. 28, 2013), http://mashable.com/2013/03/28/3-D-printing-explained, archived at http://perma.cc/8GTA-UVXB; see also Rebecca Matulka, How 3D Printers Work, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (June 19, 2014, 9:28 AM), http://energy.gov/articles/how-3d-printers-work, *archived at* http://perma.cc/6CFR-UJSR (accessed on 3rd August 2020).

97. Elizabeth Palermo. *Fused deposition modeling: most common 3D printing method*, LIVESCIENCE (Sept. 19, 2013, 6:28 PM), http://www.livescience.com/39810-fused-deposition-modeling.html, *archived at* http://perma.cc/6FSV-AAEE (accessed on 3rd August 2020).

98. West TG, Bradbury TJ. 3D printing: a case of ZipDose® technology - world's first 3D printing platform to obtain FDA approval for a pharmaceutical product. 3D and 4D Printing in Biomedical Applications. 2018:53–79. https://doi.org/10.1002/9783527813704.ch3.

99. Awad A, Trenfield SJ, Goyanes A, Gaisford S, Basit AW. Reshaping drug development using 3D printing. Drug Discov Today. 2018b;23:1547–55. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.DRUDIS.2018.05.025.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

100. Goole J, Amighi K. 3D printing in pharmaceutics: a new tool for designing customized drug delivery systems. Int J Pharm. 2016;499:376–94. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2015.12.071.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

101. Norman J, Madurawe RD, Moore CMV, Khan MA, Khairuzzaman A. A new chapter in pharmaceutical manufacturing: 3D-printed drug products. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2017;108:39–50. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2016.03.001.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

102. Gioumouxouzis CI, Karavasili C, Fatouros DG. Recent advances in pharmaceutical dosage forms and devices using additive manufacturing technologies. Drug Discov Today. 2019;24:636–43.

https://doi.org/10.1016/j.drudis.2018.11.019.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

103. Liang K, Carmone S, Brambilla D, Leroux J-C. 3D printing of a wearable personalized oral delivery device: a first-in-human study. Sci Adv. 2018;4:eaat2544. https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.aat2544.

Article CAS PubMed PubMed Central Google Scholar

104. Okwuosa TC, Soares C, Gollwitzer V, Habashy R, Timmins P, Alhnan MA. On demand manufacturing of patient-specific liquid capsules via co-ordinated 3D printing and liquid dispensing. Eur J Pharm Sci. 2018;118:134–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.EJPS.2018.03.010.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

105. Jamróz W, Kurek M, Łyszczarz E, Szafraniec J, Knapik-Kowalczuk J, Syrek K, et al. 3D printed orodispersible films with Aripiprazole. Int J Pharm. 2017;533:413–20. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.IJPHARM.2017.05.052.

Article PubMed Google Scholar

106. Ehtezazi T, Algellay M, Islam Y, Roberts M, Dempster NM, Sarker SD. The application of 3D printing in the formulation of multilayered fast dissolving oral films. J Pharm Sci. 2018;107(4):1076–85.

https://doi.org/10.1016/j.xphs.2017.11.019.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

107. Fuenmayor E, Forde M, Healy AV, et al. Material considerations for fused-filament fabrication of solid dosage forms. Pharmaceutics. 2018;10(2):44. Published 2018 Apr 2. https://doi.org/10.3390/pharmaceutics10020044.

Article CAS PubMed Central Google Scholar

108. Musazzi UM, Selmin F, Ortenzi MA, Mohammed GK, Franzé S, Minghetti P, et al. Personalized orodispersible films by hot melt ram extrusion 3D printing. Int J Pharm. 2018;551:52–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.IJPHARM.2018.09.013.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

109. Öblom H, Sjöholm E, Rautamo M, Sandler N. Towards printed pediatric medicines in hospital pharmacies: Comparison of 2d and 3d-printed orodispersible warfarin films with conventional oral powders in unit dose sachets. Pharmaceutics. 2019;11(7):334.

Article Google Scholar

110. Sjöholm E, Sandler N. Additive manufacturing of personalized orodispersible warfarin films. Int J Pharm. 2019;564:117–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.04.018.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

111. Elbl J, Gajdziok J, Kolarczyk J. 3D printing of multilayered orodispersible films with in-process drying. *Int J Pharm*. 2020;575:118883. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.118883.

Article CAS PubMed Google Scholar

112. Cho H-W, Baek S-H, Lee B-J, Jin H-E. Orodispersible polymer films with the poorly water-soluble frug, olanzapine: hot-melt pneumatic extrusion for single-process 3D printing. Pharmaceutics. 2020;12(8):692.

Article CAS Google Scholar

113. Patel A, Prajapati DS, Raval JA. Fast dissolving films (Fdfs) as a newer venture in fast dissolving dosage forms. Int J Drug Dev Res. 2010;2:232–46.

Google Scholar

114. Kalyan S, Bansal M. Recent trends in the development of oral dissolving film. International Journal of Pharmtech Research. 2012;4:725–33.

CAS Google Scholar

115. Pathare YS, Hastak VS, Bajaj AN. Polymers used for fast disintegrating oral films: a review. Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res. 2013; no. 29;21(1):169–78.

CAS Google Scholar

116. International patent publication no.: WO2019198105A1; Title: Composition of active ingredient loaded edible ink and methods of making suitable substrates for active ingredient printing on orodispersible films; Applicant: ZIM Laboratories, India.

117. US Patent Publication No. US2011114532; Title: Method of manufacturing cellular films directly; Assignee: Roquette Freres SA

118. US Patent Publication No. US2020016092; Title: Low moisture rapidly disintegrating oral dissolvable film; Assignee: Cure Pharmaceutical, USA.

119. https://www.marketresearchfuture.com. Accessed on: 19th September 2019.

120. https://www.transparencymarketresearch.com/pressrelease/thin-film-drug-manufacturing-market.htm. Accessed on: 21st September 2019.

121. Patents and additive manufacturing: trends in 3D printing technologies – European Patent Office Report can be accessed from https://www.epo.org/about-us/services-and-activities/chief-economist/studies.html. Accessed on: 14th August 2020

Author information

Authors and Affiliations

Department of Pharmaceutics, JSS College of Pharmacy, JSS Academy of Higher Education and Research (JSSAHER), Sri Shivarathreeshwara Nagar, Mysore, 570 015, India

Maram Suresh Gupta, Tegginamath Pramod Kumar & Devegowda Vishakante Gowda

Cure Pharmaceutical, 1620 Beacon Place, Oxnard, California, 930 33, USA

Robert Davidson

Imaginarium India Private Limited (IIPL), The Great Oasis, Plot No: D-13, 7th Floor, Road# 21, MIDC, Marol Industrial Area, Andheri (E), Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Guruprasad Rao Kuppu

Pharmacy College Saifai, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, Uttar Pradesh, India
Kamla Pathak

Corresponding author

Correspondence to Maram Suresh Gupta.

Additional information

Publisher's Note

Springer Nature remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

Rights and permissions

Reprints and permissions

About this article

Cite this article

Gupta, M.S., Kumar, T.P., Davidson, R. *et al.* Printing Methods in the Production of Orodispersible Films. *AAPS PharmSciTech* **22**, 129 (2021). https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-021-01990-3

Received
18 December 2020

Accepted
11 March 2021

Published
09 April 2021

DOI
https://doi.org/10.1208/s12249-021-01990-3

KEY WORDS

ODFs POFs printing inkjet printing flexographic printing 3D printing pharmacy film

As a library, NLM provides access to scientific literature. Inclusion in an NLM database does not imply endorsement of, or agreement with, the contents by NLM or the National Institutes of Health.
Learn more: PMC Disclaimer | PMC Copyright Notice

Polymers (Basel). 2021 Aug; 13(15): 2514.
Published online 2021 Jul 30. doi: 10.3390/polym13152514
PMCID: PMC8347635
PMID: 34372116

Biomedical Applications of Quaternized Chitosan

Kamla Pathak,[1] Shashi Kiran Misra,[2] Aayush Sehgal,[3] Sukhbir Singh,[3] Simona Bungau,[4,5] Agnieszka Najda,[6,*] Robert Gruszecki,[6] and Tapan Behl[3,*]

Barbara Vigani, Academic Editor

Abstract

The natural polymer chitosan is the second most abundant biopolymer on earth after chitin and has been extensively explored for preparation of versatile drug delivery systems. The presence of two distinct reactive functional groups (an amino group at C2, and a primary and secondary hydroxyl group at C3 and C6) of chitosan are involved in the transformation of expedient derivatives such as acylated, alkylated, carboxylated, quaternized and esterified chitosan. Amongst these, quaternized chitosan is preferred in pharmaceutical industries owing to its prominent features including superior water solubility, augmented antimicrobial actions, modified wound healing, pH-sensitive targeting, biocompatibility, and biodegradability. It has been explored in a large realm of pharmaceuticals, cosmeceuticals, and the biomedical arena. Immense classy drug delivery systems containing quaternized chitosan have been intended for tissue engineering, wound healing, gene, and vaccine delivery. This review article outlines synthetic techniques, basic characteristics, inherent properties, biomedical applications, and ubiquitous challenges associated to quaternized chitosan.

Keywords: quaternized chitosan, antimicrobial, biocompatibility, biomedical, vaccine, wound healing

1. Introduction

Chitosan, an aminoglucopyran polysaccharide, is widely utilized in pharmaceuticals, cosmeceuticals, biomedicals, agricultures, foods and packaging sectors owing to its inherent properties including biodegradability, biocompatibility, and non-toxicity [1,2]. The natural biopolymer chitosan is predominantly obtained from the exoskeletons of marine crustaceans, mollusks, insects, and fungi through an alkali deacetylation process. Figure 1 illustrated the schematic developmental process of quaternized chitosan from native chitin [3]. In contrast to natural occurring chitin, chitosan is very soluble in acidic solvents and fluroalcohols. Chitosan is a weak base, possessing pKa ranging from 6.2 to 7.0, and tends to be biodegradable in both in vitro and in vivo into non-toxic metabolites. It can be easily digested by lysozyme into non-active oligosaccharide and is thus a desirable component for designing absorbable sutures, osteoconductive implants and tissue scaffolds [4]. The biological functions of chitosan biopolymer are based on its molecular weight, degree of acetylation, charge density and extent of quaternization [5]. The physicochemical and biological properties of chitosan are primarily affected by the degree of deacetylation that directly impact on its molecular weight, pKa, crystallinity, hydrophilicity, degradation, and biological actions [6,7]. A degree of deacetylation value close to 0% or 100% prolongs biodegradation and cell adhesion, whereas transitional values of the degree of deacetylation display speedy degradation rates of chitosan. The physicochemical properties including the degree of acetylation and the molecular weight of chitosan and its derivatives are accountable for its biological responses [8]. USFDA-approved chitosan is highly utilized in tissue engineering, skin regeneration and wound healing drug delivery systems [9]. The presence of inter- and intramolecular hydrogen bonds demonstrates crystalline behaviour, which accounts for its poor aqueous solubility. The limited solubility in a wide range of physiological solutions restricts the use of chitosan in designing drug delivery systems [10].

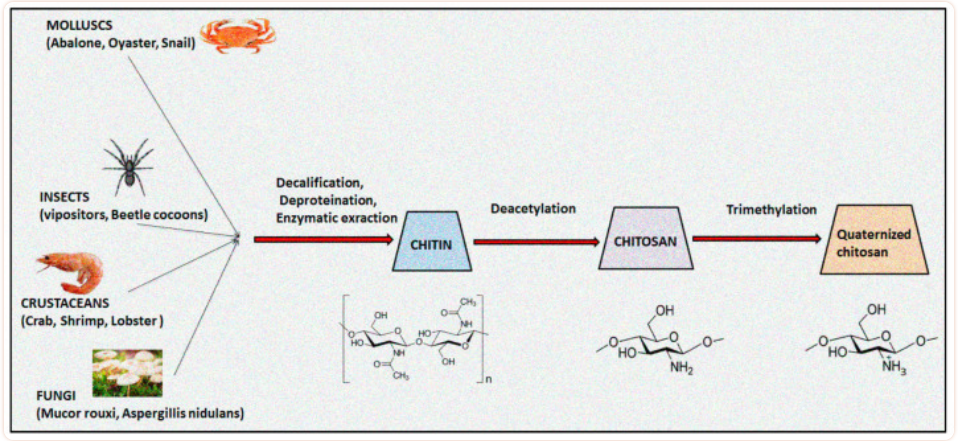


Figure 1

Schematic developmental process of quaternized chitosan from native chitin.

Conformational changes in the chitosan skeleton are reliant on local environmental conditions including the pH, pKa, N-substitution group, process temperature and types of acids. The functional groups (hydroxyl and amino) contribute an essential role for imparting solubility to the chitosan molecule. At low pH, the attached amino group undergoes protonation, solubilizes and provides positive charge to the medium, offering strong electrostatic interaction with negative charge cell components. Moreover, the pKa of amino group highly depends on the degree of acetylation (DA); hence, the solubility of chitosan is also reliant on DA [11].

Various chemical modification such as acetylation (insertion of anhydride and acyl chloride) [12], alkylation (alkyl group) [13], carboxylation (glyoxylic acid, chloroalkanoic acid) [14], quaternization (quaternary ammonium salts) [15], esterification (sulphuric acid, phosphoric acid and chlorosulfonic acid) [16] and etherification (chloroacetic acid, ethylene oxide, dimethyl sulphate) [17] at the C2, C3 and C6 position of chitosan are carried out to improve its physicochemical (enhanced aqueous solubility, improved absorption, high bioavailability, etc.) and biological properties (improved antimicrobial action and antioxidant, high penetration across cell membrane, mucoadhesiveness, etc.) Figure 2 displays the structural differentiation between chitosan and quaternized chitosan [18].

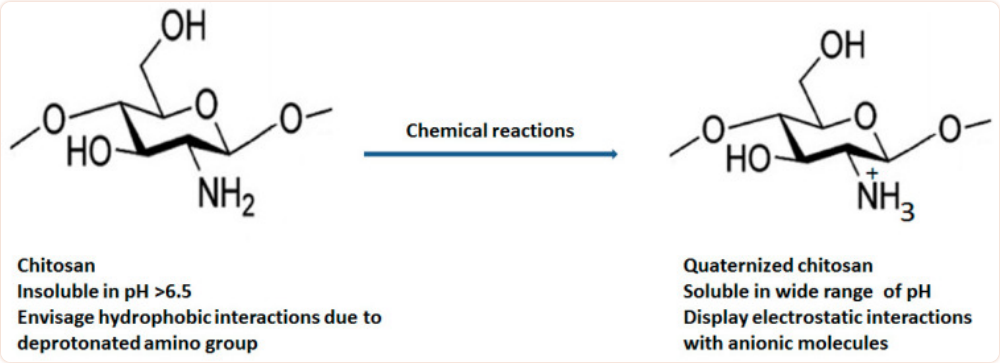


Figure 2

Structural differentiation between chitosan and quaternized chitosan.

2. Quaternized Chitosan Derivatives and Physicochemical Properties

The quaternization of chitosan involves the insertion of a hydrophilic group via any of three methods: direct quaternary ammonium substitution, epoxy derivative open loop and N-alkylation. A high degree of substitution provides better aqueous solubility and enhanced antimicrobial action, and lessens cytotoxicity with innate mucoadhesiveness and efficient penetration. The degree of quaternization and molecular weight are a few essential parameters that elicit physicochemical and biological actions (Table 1). Figure 3 compiles drug delivery approaches and biomedical applications of quaternized chitosan [19].

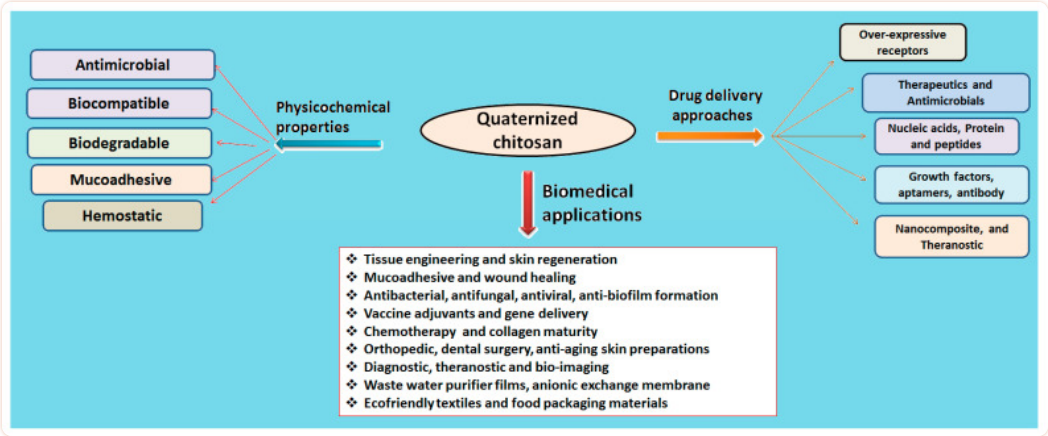


Figure 3

Quaternized chitosan and its physicochemical and drug delivery approaches.

Table 1

Effect of parameters influencing the biological responses [20,21].

Parameters	Responses
Degree of quaternization (<65%)	Increased cytotoxicity Increased mucoadhesiveness Decreased anticoagulation effect
Degree of quaternization (≥20%)	Increased antimicrobial action in pH = 7.2 No effect on antimicrobial action in acidic pH
Degree of substitution (<1%)	Increased antioxidant property
Degree of substitution (<25%)	Increased antithrombin action and acid-binding capacity
Degree of substitution (>1%)	Decreased moisture absorption and retention ability
High concentration	Increased particle size, aggregation, zeta potential, cytotoxicity Decreased knockdown efficiency and poor transfection efficacy

Quaternization not only enhances solubility but also escalates chargeability and antibacterial efficacy [22].

The mechanical property plays a vital role in imparting biomedical application. It is observed that mechanical property of chitosan enhances on increasing its concentration owing to high crystallinity. Jana et al. (2012) investigated the comparative tensile strength of scaffolds fabricated from chitosan solution (4–12%). As the concentration of chitosan increased in scaffold, augmented mechanical strength (from 1.74 MPa to 17.99 Mpa) was displayed through XRD patterns. The degree of protonation and extent of crystallinity mediated the high strength of chitosan [23,24,25]. Britto et al. (2007) synthesized quaternary salts of chitosan through dimethylsulphate reaction. The mechanical strength, Young's modulus and maximum strain were compared to the unmodified, N-alkylated and quaternized chitosan films, which are well depicted in Figure 4. Unmodified chitosan film exhibited higher mechanical strength compared to quaternized (N-dodecyl chitosan) and alkylated (butyl chitosan) in order of 44.0 Mpa > 38.3 Mpa > 13.4 Mpa, respectively [26,27,28].

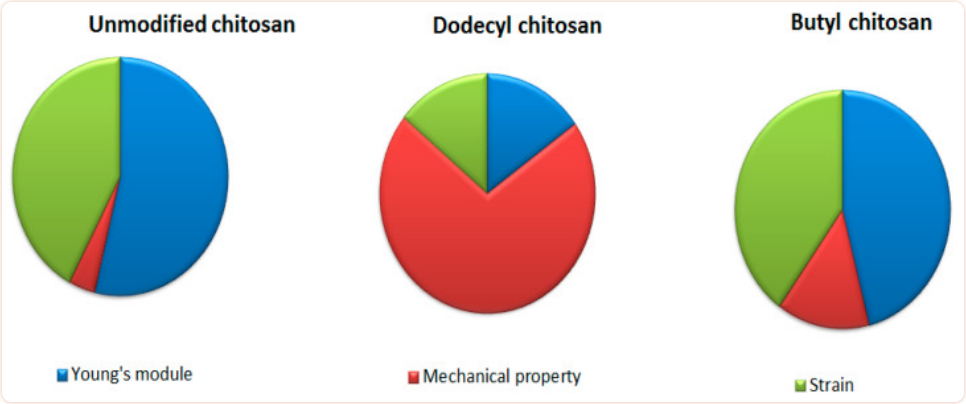


Figure 4

Comparative mechanical properties of chitosan and its derivatives.

2.1. N,N,N-Trimethyl Chitosan Chloride

The quaternization (trimethylation and triethylation) of decorated amino groups in molecular structure of chitosan is carried out by treating it with methyl iodide at a high temperature in alkali medium. Subsequently, the degree of quaternization of different grades of deacetylated chitosans is optimized through the modification of a number of reaction steps and time. N,N,N-trimethyl chitosan chloride (TMC), the most abundantly explored QCh derivative, has been utilized in the formulation of pharmaceutical products. It is obtained through the methylation of the amino group at the C2 site of chitosan backbone (Figure 4). QCH substituted through N-(3-chloro-2-hydroxy-propyl) trimethylammonium chloride has increased pharmacokinetic and antimicrobial properties. The extent of N-substitution (ES) affected antimicrobial action of QCH. The literature envisaged that when ES is 20% high, the efficacy of QCH derivative against pathogenic *E. coli* (16 to 64 µg/mL) and *S. aureus* (8 to 64 µg/mL) is enhanced. Furthermore, N-methylated, N-arylated, N,N-dimethylaminophenyl and pyridyl-substituted QCH are very soluble in water irrespective of the pH and exhibited superior antibacterial efficacy [29].

The multifunctional quaternized chitosan derivatives, their synthesis and biomedical applications are displayed in Figure 5 [30]. Other byproducts such as 6-O-methylated, 3-O-methylated and N, N-dimethylated chitosan are infrequently used due to their unfavourable properties. The very first TMC was synthesized by Terayama and coworkers and was called macramin [31,32]. A higher degree of quaternization achieved after O-methylation of chitosan at position 3-OH and 6-OH results in less soluble trimethyl chitosan

iodide. The methylation process is considerably decreased through recycling of the basic reaction until the desired product is achieved. Furthermore, preparation of trimethyl chitosan (N,N,N-trimethyl chitosan) is accomplished through an ion exchange process that possesses high solubility and basicity. Reports have cited that the intermediate degree of quaternization (~40%) evidences the highest solubility regardless of the molecular weight and degree of acetylation of chitosan due to the replacement of the attached primary amino functional group with quaternary amino groups at the C2 position [33]. The molecular weight of TMC increases during the course of reductive methylation because the methyl group is added to the previously attached ammonium group of the repeated monomers. Moreover, a significant decrease in molecular weight is noticed after treating with strong alkali at an elevated temperature, which causes degradation of the polymeric chain. Furthermore, an increase in the degree of quaternization of TMC polymers causes a decrease in the intrinsic viscosity [34]. The mucoadhesive property decreases with an increase in the degree of quaternization, owing to the alteration of conformation of polymers during the quaternization process, which affects the interaction between fixed positive charges on each polymeric chain at C2 position. It also decreases the polymer–polymer flexibility. Furthermore, attached functional groups (methyl, ethyl, propyl, benzyl, etc.) on amino groups may hide positive charges and this causes a steric effect. Both decrease the polymeric chain flexibility and produce steric effects that influence the extent of charge transfer between cationic TMC and anionic sialic acid present in the mucus, thus resulting in inferior mucoadhesiveness [35].

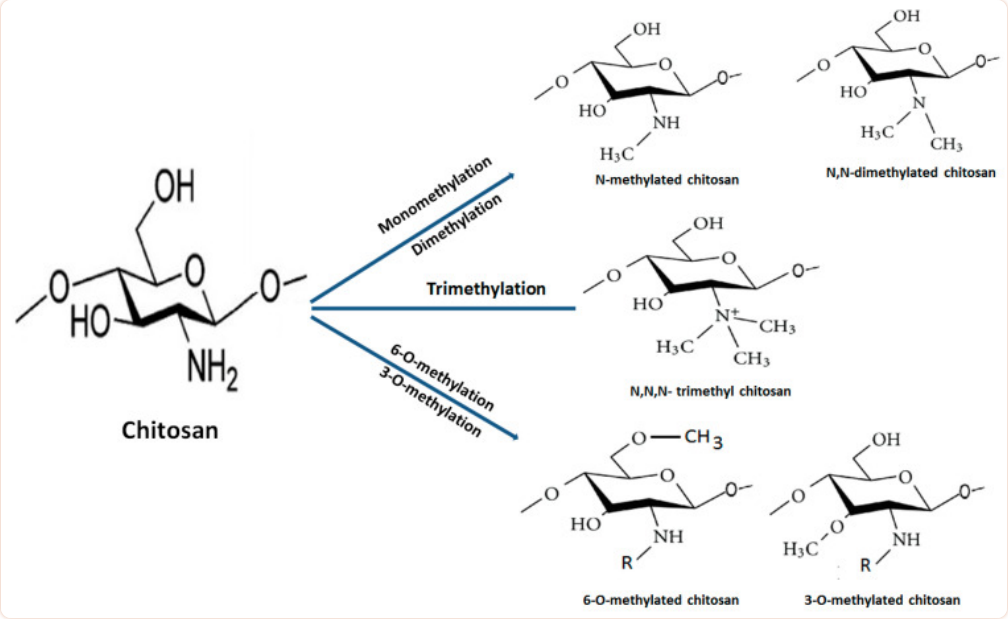


Figure 5

Different pathways for synthesis of methylated chitosan from native chitosan.

2.2. N-[(2-Hydroxyl-3-Trimethyl Ammonium) Propyl] Chitosan

N-[(2-hydroxyl-3-trimethyl ammonium) propyl] chitosan or HTCC is the second most-popular QCh prepared via alkylation process involving insertion of quaternary ammonium group at the outside the chitosan structure. Lang et al. 1980 synthesized the first HTCC through chitosan modification [36]. The reagent 'glycidyl trimethylammonium chloride' (GTMAC) is often used for direct replacement of hydrogen from attached amino and hydroxyl functional groups from chitosan at the C6 position to obtain O, N-substituted quaternized chitosan (HTCC), which enhances the aqueous solubility and superior antibacterial efficacy (Figure 6) [37]. The generated HTCC polymers have different degrees of quaternization that refer to the extent of positive charge [38].

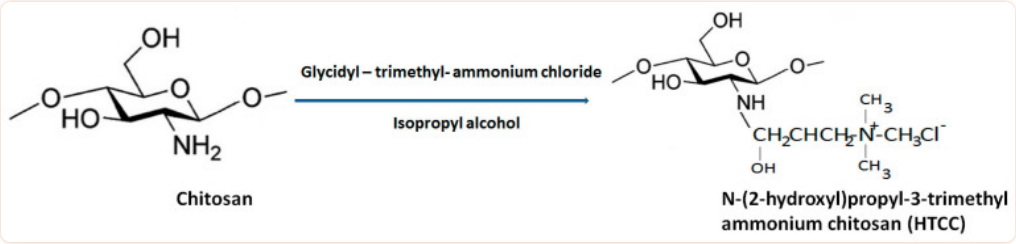


Figure 6

General synthesis of HTCC from biopolymer chitosan.

HTCC presents non-toxicity, improved aqueous solubility, and modified antimicrobial action along with biocompatibility and bioavailability features. Xiao et al. (2012) demonstrated that HTCC is more amorphous than crystalline chitosan. Quaternization weakens inter-/intra molecular hydrogen bonds and results in unorganized HTCC polymer that not only facilitates solubilization but also favours better absorption due to the diffusion of free water molecules from the HTCC chains [39].

Similarly, increased antimicrobial action is also defined due to abundant positive charge on HTCC that is attracted by negative surface charge present on the bacterial cell surface. HTCC encompasses permanent positive charges on its surface. The physicochemical properties of HTCC are highly reliant on the degree of quaternization. Wang et al. (2018) studied the effect of quaternization on the physicochemical and biological properties of HTCC. The outcomes revealed that the apparent viscosity, solubility, and elasticity are amplified by an increase in the degree of quaternization on storage. A lesser degree of quaternization produces hydrophobic HTCC polymer that is employed as an efficient vaccine adjuvant to adsorb antigens via hydrogen bonding formed through unoccupied amino groups [40]. Furthermore, Shagdarova et al. (2019) explained that a high degree of quaternization resulted in improved antibacterial action against *E. coli* and *S. epidermis* [41]. The versatile HTCC is widely combined with other chemicals such as poly (N-isopropylacrylamide) carboxylic acid, poly (l-caprolactone) and polyacrylonitrile to improve the solubility, tensile strength, and antimicrobial action for commercial purposes.

2.3. Pyridine Salt Grafted Quaternized Chitosan

Different new QCh-based pyridine salts have been derived that explore synergistic antiviral, antifungal and antibacterial action owing to the attached cationic pyridine salts. In this context, PACS (pyridine chloroacetyl chitosan), BHPACS (4-(5-bromo-2-hydroxybenzylideneamino)-pyridine) and CHPACS (4-(5-chloro-2-hydroxybenzylideneamino)-pyridine) synthetic quaternized chitosan derivatives

have been derived from reacting chloroacetyl chitosan and pyridine. These synthetic QCh-based substances exhibit strong antifungal potency towards *Monilinia fructicola*, *F. oxysporum*, *Cladosporium cucumerinum* and *Colletotrichum legenarium* [42]. The antifungal effect occurred through polycationic-charged pyridine consisting of QCh and negatively charged fungal cell surface. The sturdy electrostatic interaction causes the disorganization and denaturation of proteins present in cell membranes, and ultimately cell death. The literature also reports the synthesis of N-methyl-pyridinium and N-methyl-1, 2, 3-triazolium grafted QCh derivatives that were quite effective for phytopathogenic fungi including *F. wilt*, *Collectotrichum lagenarium* and *F. oxysporum*.

The presence of a pyridine ring and 1, 2, 3-trizolium in the QCh backbone depicted enhanced solubility in alkaline medium and mediated superior antifungal action compared to unmodified chitosan [43]. Jia et al. (2016) synthesized N-(1- carboxbutyl-4-pyridinium) chloride chitosan through introducing nucleophilic substitution on pyridine molecules (Figure 7 [44]. The antifungal activity against *B. cinerea* and *F. fulva* revealed disturbance in cell permeability owing to the adsorbed cationic charges on the fungal cell surface. Consequently, deformation of fungal hypha and cell death was reported [45].

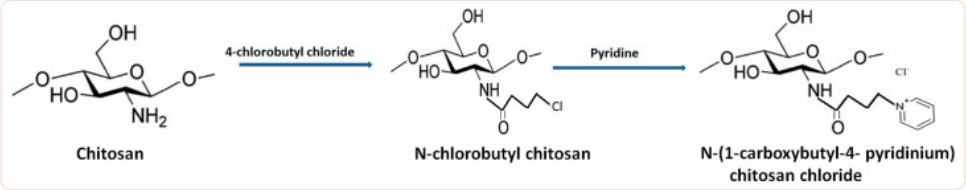


Figure 7

Synthetic route for the development of pyridine-grafted quaternized chitosan.

2.4. Phosphonium Salt Grafted Quaternized Chitosan

Multifunctional quaternary phosphonium salts are organophosphate biocides, basically obtained from the nucleophilic substitution reaction between halide salts and phosphine. These compounds have better antimicrobial action than QCh polymers and are employed in gene therapy, vaccine adjuvant and in water purification units. One of the reported water-soluble quaternary phosphonium salt (WSPCS) has been synthesized from QCh with a minimal degree of quaternization (~4%). The developed WSPCS also exhibited better solubility in organic solvents. Figure 8 illustrates the basic pathway for the synthesis of WSPCS. Increasing the substitution resulted in low cytotoxicity (for mouse fibroblast) and greater antimicrobial action [46]. The cross-linked quaternary-phosphonium chitosan is widely used in wastewater treatment as the phosphonium ion has greater efficiency for the adsorption of chromium ions.

Zeng et al. developed quaternary chitosan phosphonium particles loaded with pEGFP (plasmid type enhanced green fluorescent protein) for the formulation of novel gene vectors. The synthesized particles exhibited biosafety and high potential for gene transfection [47].

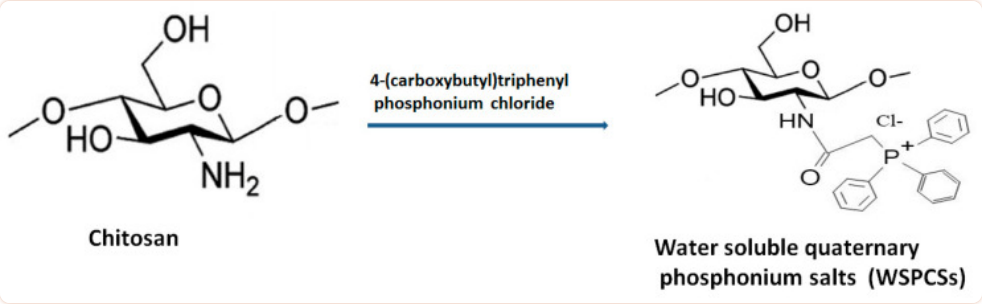


Figure 8

Synthesis of WSPCS from chitosan molecule.

2.5. Other Quaternized Chitosan Derivatives

N-betainates and mono/diquaternary piperazine derivatives of chitosan revealed a varied degree of quaternization without any side reactions. The development of these derivatives provided well-defined structural determinants that are accountable for extreme solubility (4–6% *w*/*v*) at pH = 7 and better absorption/permeation enhancer [48]. Table 2 enlists novel quaternized chitosan derivatives and their biomedical usage.

Table 2

Newly introduced quaternized chitosan derivatives and their biomedical application.

Quaternized Chitosan Derivatives	Biomedical Applications	References
N,N,N-trimethyl-O-(2-hydroxy-3-trimethylammonium propyl) chitosan (TMHTMAPC)	Antimicrobial against *S. aureus* and *E. coli* in both acidic and alkaline pH.	[37,54]
Water soluble N-piperazine chitosan	Pharmaceutical application	[55]
Water soluble N-betainate chitosan	Antibacterial for *S. aureus* and *E. coli* Effect of antibacterial efficacy decreased with increase in amino group substitution.	[48,56]
N,N-dimethyl-O-quaternary ammonium chitosan	Cosmeceuticals (moisturizer), antibacterial	[57]
O-acetyl-chitosan-N-2-hydroxypropyl trimethyl ammonium chloride	Antibacterial (*S. aureus* and *E. coli*), Food preservative	[58]
Amphiphilic 5-(bromo pentyl) trimethyl ammonium conjugated with dodecyl aldehyde chitosan (BPTADDACH)	Efficient drug carrier for hydrophobic candidates	[59]
Diethylaminoethyl-2-N-carboxymethyl-6-O Chitosan (DEAE–CMC) containing vitamin B12 microspheres	Blood compatible drug delivery system	[60]
N,N,N-(diethyl aryl) chitosan chloride	Antifungal/fungicide for crop threatening *Botrytis cinerea.*	[61]
Quaternized N-(aryl) chitosan	Modified antimicrobial action against *E. coli*, *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus* and *A. niger* due to presence of phenol hydroxyl group	[62]
Quaternized carboxymethyl chitosan containing guanidine groups (QGCMC)	Food preservative (enhanced shelf life of strawberries), strong bactericidal action in all ranges of pH (acidic, alkaline and neutral)	[63]
O-quaternary ammonium N-acyl thiourea chitosan (OQCATUCS)	*Synergistic antimicrobial action for S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *A. niger*, *P. aeruginosa* and *B. subtilis*	[64]
N,O-[N,N-diethylaminomethyl (diethyl dimethylene ammonium) n] methyl chitosan	Intraocular drug delivery (Enhanced permeability of dexamethasone)	[51,65]
Diethylaminoethyl-2-N-carboxymethyl-6-O Chitosan (DEAE–CMC)		

Rahimi et al. (2019) introduced QC-IMDZ, a novel quaternized chitosan, after grafting quaternary imidazole into the hydroxyl groups of chitosan backbone. Wound dressing material embedded with silver nanocomposite on the QC-IMDZ surface was fabricated that showed superior antimicrobial actions for both bacteria and fungi due to the presence of cationic imidazole. However, excess silver nanocomposite embedded film showed lower solubility and required a prolonged clotting time compared to a low amount silver-nanocomposites-embedded QC-IMDZ films [49].

Another quaternized chitosan derivative 'N-O-[N,N-diethylammoniomethyl (diethyldimethylene ammonium) methyl chitosan has the efficiency to modify the penetration of drug candidates irrespective of their affinity towards mucosal epithelium. Improved drug penetration through porcine buccal epithelium was observed via the paracellular route [50]. Furthermore, ex vivo and in vivo studies suggested satisfactory permeation of dexamethasone in rabbit cornea through the transcellular transport route compared to widely used TMC [51]. Figure 9 summarizes structural and biomedical applications of diverse QCh derivatives synthesized from natural chitosan. Figure 9 compiles a few quaternized chitosan derivatives and their biomedical applications [52,53].

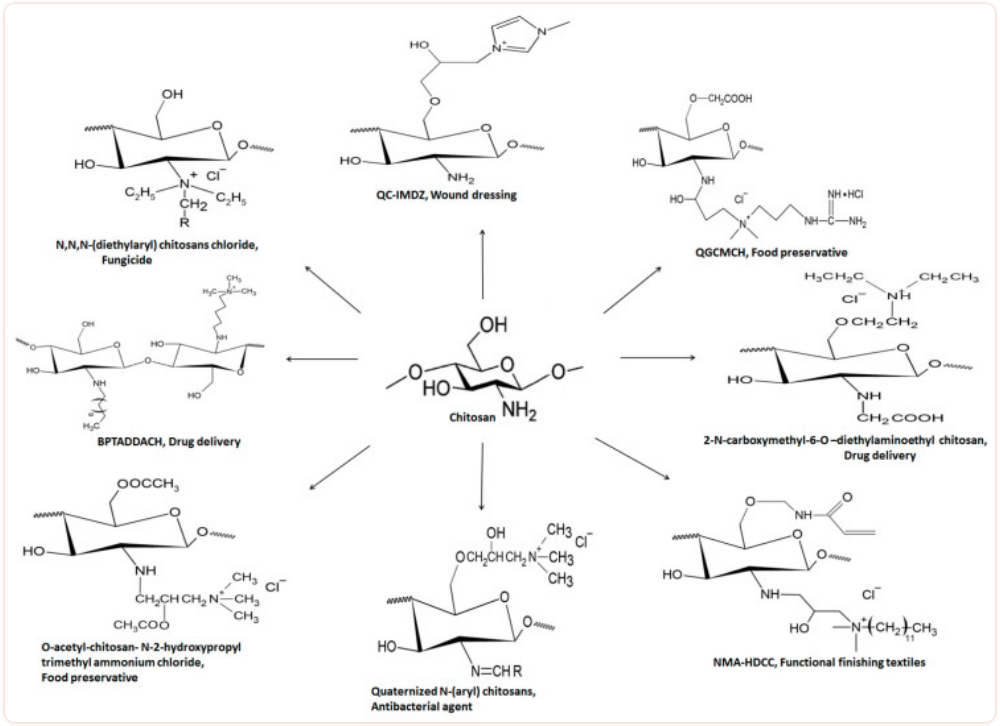


Figure 9

Structural illustration of different QCh derivatives and their biomedical applications.

Wang et al. (2016) developed five aqueous soluble quaternized chitosan derivatives (O-quaternary ammonium salt-chitosan) that contained N-methyl-N-R-N-bis(2-hydroxyethyl) ammonium bromide. Grafted R substituents were benzyl chloride, dodecyl, tetradecyl, hexadecyl and octadecyl. All the O-quaternized derivatives exhibited greater solubility, better antibacterial action for Gram-positive bacteria and lower cytotoxicity against AT2 cell lines. Furthermore, dodecyl- and tetradecyl-grafted O-quaternary ammonium salt chitosan exhibited better biological properties compared to other derivatives and suggested a facile way to design QCh-based hydrogels, membranes, coated beads, scaffolds, dressing materials and bandages and nanoparticles owing to extreme solubility, permanent cationic charges, and characteristic antibacterial actions [67].

Few fatty acids were conjugated on quaternized chitosan nanoparticles for the efficient insulin delivery in liver. Strong electrostatic interaction between positively charged quaternized chitosan and negatively charged insulin was observed. Furthermore, the addition of fatty acids increased the surface hydrophobicity, which mediated hepatocyte absorption, enhanced insulin accumulation in liver cells and illustrated a better antidiabetic effect. Insulin-embedded quaternized chitosan nanoparticles consisting of lauric acid and oleic acid exhibited impressive bioavailability of 233% and 311%, respectively, after subcutaneous administration [68].

3. Biomedical Applications of Quaternized Chitosan Derivatives

3.1. Antimicrobial

The chemical configuration of polycationic QCh is a desirable requisite for the antimicrobial action. Electrostatic interaction between cationic QCh and anionic microorganisms plays an important part for antibacterial activity. A higher degree of substitution of ammonium groups adorned on the backbone of QCh imparts a positive charge that neutralizes cell surfaces of bacteria and disturbs cytoplasmic integrity [37,69]. Moreover, hydrophobic alkyl substitutions on QCh stimulate significant bacterial death as they preferably interact with the inner surface of the bacterial cell wall. The antibacterial effect is prominent in neutral and high pH rather than acidic. The literature envisages that high-molecular-weight and solid QCh derivatives are unable to pass through the cell membrane. They are only adsorbed at the microbial cell surface, channelize electrostatic interactions, hamper nutrient transport, and cause alteration in cell permeability. Conversely, low-molecular-weight water-soluble QCh particles penetrate the bacterial cell wall, intercalate with DNA, and inhibit the transcription process [70]. QCh derivatives always remain positively charged and are soluble at all physiological pH.

The antibacterial activity of the very first N,N,N-trimethyl chitosan was reliant on the degree of quaternization from the [$-N(CH_3)_3$] structure present in the molecule. A higher degree of quaternization improved its aqueous solubility. Additionally, the presence of hydrophobic methyl groups increased the interaction with the lipoidal cell membrane of the microorganism and depicted superior antimicrobial action [71]. Another derivative, N,N-di-ethyl-N-methyl quaternized chitosan (DMCHT) was synthesized via reductive alkylation of aldehydes, through the formation of Schiff base. The developed QCh exhibited antimicrobial efficacy owing to the formation of polyelectrolyte complexes between QCh derivative and peptidoglycan of bacterial cell, which, in turn, inhibited the growth of bacteria [72]. The antimicrobial efficacy of TMC and DMCHT was compared at 50% degree of quaternization. The results showed superior antibacterial activity of TMC against *S. aureus* owing to the presence of smaller alkyl groups that enabled easy interaction with the cell wall of the bacteria. Voluminous DMCHT was comprised of heavy N-ethyl functional groups on its structure [73].

Furthermore, comparative antimicrobial efficiency was assessed among DMCHT (N, N-di-ethyl-N-methyl quaternized chitosan), BZDCHT (N-benzyl-N-N-di methyl chitosan) and BDCHT (N-butyl-N,N-dimethylchitosan) against *S. aureus* and *E. coli* at pH 7.4. The outcomes displayed prominent antimicrobial activity of these QCh as compared to chitosan. DMCHT and BDCHT showed higher hydrophilicity required for better antimicrobial efficacy in comparison to BZCHT. Insertion of hydrophobic groups (phenyl and benzyl) decreased the antimicrobial action by virtue of shielding interaction between N-quaternized site and the cell wall of the bacteria [74]. Reports cite that the protonated amine groups including $+NH_3$ and +ND/+NM (non-quaternized amine group) are highly effective antibacterials compared to +NT (N-trimethylated) ones. However, the chains of TMC derivatives are more flexible and readily interact with the bacterial cells than chitosan at pH ≥ 5.5 suggesting promising antibacterial potential where neutral pH required [75].

Fu et al. (2011) synthesized O, N-quaternized chitosan through attaching benzyl radical on N-quaternized chitosan followed by treatment with ethyl iodide in the presence of alkali at 36 °C. Developed cationic O,N-quaternized chitosan possessed enormous quaternary ammonium chloride moieties that interacted with negative residues of *S. aureus* cell surface. Therefore, affected cell integrity (protein, lipopolysaccharide and techoic acid), altered plasma membrane permeability, leakage of nutrients and mediated cell death [76]. Similar antibacterial action was observed for Gram-negative *E. coli* that contains a thick layer of extracellular lipopolysaccharide and checks the entry of foreign molecules. O-quaternized chitosan exhibited slightly less antibacterial action compared to O,N-quaternized chitosan derivatives by virtue of the reduced electron donation through N-benzyl modification [77,78].

Several natural and synthetic polymers are utilized either alone or in combination for the development of antibacterial systems [79]. In this context, the fabrication of non-woven nanofibers from QCh derivatives; i.e., N-(2-hydroxy)-propyl-3-trimethylammonium salt of chloride has been employed to elaborate wound healing properties of biomaterials including hydrophilicity, water retention capacity, mucoadhesiveness, antimicrobial efficacy, etc. [80]. However, the presence of ionogenic groups in quaternized chitosan generates high repulsive force that limits uniform fabrication of nanofibers via electrospinning. Thus, non-ionic polymers (poly-L-Lactide-co-d and poly vinyl alcohol) are incorporated to make the polymeric solution electrospinnable [81].

3.2. Antiproliferative

Biocompatible quaternized chitosan displays adequate antimicrobial and antiproliferative activity both in vitro and in vivo. For instance, QCh-coated sutures exhibited comparatively high anti-infection and cytocompatibility compared with triclosan-coated sutures, owing to the presence of ample positive charge on decorated quaternary ammonium functional groups that interact with the negatively charged phosphoryl groups of microorganisms [82]. Triclosan, a widely used antibacterial agent, has a significant advantage over other antibiotics by virtue of its low drug resistance and potent inhibition of biofilm formation. However, triclosan-coated sutures are effective in controlling surgical site infections, but the occurrence of tissue toxicity and induction of tumor proliferation and endocrine disorders limit its practice in surgical operation. The above investigation favored the usage of broad spectrum antibacterial QCh as an alternative to triclosan in orthopedic surgery [83].

Yang et al. (2016) elucidated limitations associated with vicryl plus (triclosan coated polyglactin) sutures such as surgical site infections and toxicity. Vicryl plus sutures were modified through surface coating of QC. Bacterial cell adhesion efficiency of modified HV sutures against *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *S. aureus* revealed significant antibacterial efficiency for both pathogens for 48 h. Furthermore, the HV sutures were found to be cytocompatible with human-skin-derived fibroblast cells. The procedural flexibility and economic value of QCh-modified HV sutures laid down a suitable strategy to manage suture-related infections in orthopedic surgeries [84,85].

Furthermore, Li et al. (2018) focused on the clinical application of QCh in malignant melanoma (B-Raf^{V600E}), one of the most invasive skin carcinomas. Human melanoma cells were interacted individually with vermurafenib (B-Raf^{V600E} inhibitor), QCh and a combination of both, to investigate cell permeability, proliferation, apoptosis, and viability. The outcomes revealed that the presence of QCh promoted an antiproliferative effect against melanoma cells. Moreover, QCh could enhance cell permeability at the preliminary stage, thus facilitating intracellular drug uptake. Interestingly, polycationic QCh made electrostatic interactions with negatively charged cancerous cells that disturbed their cytoplasmic integrity. The investigation concluded that QCh upset the surface charges on melanoma cell, which may be an important parameter to change cell permeability [86]. Wongwanakul et al. (2017) examined cell proliferation and cell differentiation properties of QCh on the intestinal barrier through CaCo-2 cell lines in vitro model. Poor cytotoxicity and superior biocompatibility on the intestinal barrier were observed from a lesser degree of substitution and low dose of QCh. The study suggested potential usage of QCH in designing oral drug delivery system [87].

3.3. Antibiofilm

Biofilms, the complex colonies of living microorganisms developed at the infection site, are extremely resistant to antibiotics and antimicrobials. These biofilms consist of a well-recognized self-produced extracellular matrix made up of protein, polysaccharide, and DNA [88]. Bacterial adherence and the biofilm formation at the implantation site involve two typical processes. Initially, the accumulation of microbial community starts, which releases polysaccharide intracellular adhesion, an extracellular substance. Furthermore, PIA is mediated through intracellular adhesion that comprised of different core genes such as ica A, B, C, ica D and one regulatory gene icaR. The icaA gene is an index of biofilm preparation. A high concentration of QCh is capable of preventing icaA transcription, thus limiting biofilm formation or microbial viability [89].

Biofilms produced at the post-surgical infection sites are mostly associated with the use of medical devices including catheters, implants, endotracheal tubes, valves, etc. Both Gram-positive (*S. aureus*, *S. epidermis*) and Gram-negative (*P. aeruginosa*) bacterial communities grow on healthcare devices [90]. These pathogenic bacteria can survive even in the presence of high doses of antibiotics (1000 times high) than required to eliminate their planktonic population. Once well-organized biofilm is formed around the surgical implants surface, it becomes difficult to completely rule out through antibiotic therapy [91].

Most of the existing antibiotics and antimicrobials are unable to eradicate biofilms, owing to their similar activity spectrum and common modes of action. QCh can be employed for the elimination of biofilm by virtue of its anti-infective property against bacteria, viruses, and fungi [77,92]. Both high- and low-molecular-weight QCh functionalized with hydrophobic residues (thiol protected 6-mercaptonicotinamide and methylated cyclodextrins) are reported as unconventional antimicrobial agents as they display improved wound healing, mucoadhesiveness and antibiofilm potential [93].

Piras et al. (2019) proved the biomedical application of QCh to be possible, i.e., antibacterial, anti-adhesive and antibiofilm. They demonstrated collective data of high- and low-molecular-weight QCh and their efficacy against common pathogens including *P. aeruginosa* and *S. epidermis*. Low-molecular-weight QCh derivatives were efficacious biofilm eliminators at very low concentrations, whereas high-molecular-weight QCh after covalent immobilization on titanium plates could be applied as spray or liquid plasters for the inhibition of bacterial adhesion. Thus, QCh-modified titanium implants mediated the dynamic strategy to terminate biofilm associated with medical devices [94].

3.4. Antifungal Activity

As with antibacterial activity, the occurrence of ample positive charge on QCh supposed to interact with the anionic residues of macromolecules present on the fungal surface resulted in the leakage of intracellular electrolytes and nutrients. Reports cite that QCh affects morphogenesis of the fungal cell wall and controls the functions of enzymes accountable for growth [95]. Guo et al. (2007) synthesized different QCh derivatives for the study of antifungal activity against *Botrytis cinerea* and *Colletotrichum lagenarium*. Four QCh derivatives, i.e., N-(2-hydroxyl-phenyl)-N,N-dimethyl CS, N-(5-bromic-2-hydroxyl-phenyl)-N,N-dimethyl CS, N-(2-hydroxyl-5-nitrophenyl)N,N-dimethtyl CS and N-(5-chloro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-N,N-dimethyl CS, were developed, which exhibited better antifungal effects compared to the unmodified chitosan [96]. The result emphasized that high molecularity of QCh is accountable for stronger antifungal efficacy [97].

Insertion of an arylfurfural group to the N-quaternized chitosan indicated amplified antifungal effects compared to unmodified chitosan. Moreover, N-quaternized arylfuran chitosan (QACHT) substituted with chlorine and nitrogen oxide further modified the antimicrobial and the antifungal effects that interacted with anionic macromolecules of fungal cell wall and mediating seepage of intracellular electrolytes [98]. Deacetylated chitosan functionalized with propyl and pentyl trimethylammonium bromide exhibited increased antifungal activity, i.e., three- and six-fold higher for *A. flavus*. In vitro antifungal assay evaluated the minimum inhibitory concentration for 72 h by varying the QCh derivatives concentration (0.5–16 g/L). The outcomes revealed that QCh derivatives inhibited mycelium growth even at one quarter of the concentration of deacetylated chitosan [99].

The antifungal activity of QCh can also be improved by the addition of more quaternary ammonium groups such as N-trimethyl. Increased molecular weight, positive charge, degree of quaternization and hydrophobic functional moieties intensify antifungal action. Il'ina et al. (2017) synthesized synthetic metal (Cu II) complexes of QCh (N-propyl chitosan derivative) and evaluated the antifungal efficacy against yeast (*C. albicans* and *R. rubra*) and mycelial fungi (*F. oxysporum* and *C. herbarum*). N-propyl-derived QCh was developed through treatment with glycidyl trimethyl ammonium chloride under controlled conditions. Amalgamation of N-propyl QCh (53%) and copper ions (13%) proved efficient against common fungal plant pathogen *F. oxysporum* [100]. Viegas de Souza et al. (2017) synthesized low-molecular-weight QCh derivative (dodecyl aldehyde-treated propyl trimethyl-ammonium bromide chitosan) to investigate the antifungal effect on *A. parasiticus* and *A. flavus*. The outcomes revealed that amphiphilic QCh derivatives exhibited amplified inhibition indices that were reliant on hydrophobicity and polymer concentrations. These QCh derivatives opened novel avenues for the development of chitosan-based biofungicides [101].

3.5. Mucoadhesiveness

N,N,N-trimethyl chitosan is widely utilized as a penetration enhancer for the delivery of peptides and macromolecular compounds across the mucosa in alkaline and neutral pH medium. Here, the degree of quaternization has a direct impact on the property of mucoadhesiveness and penetration across the membrane. Snyman et al. (2003) studied the effect of extent of quaternization (22–48%) and molecular mass (100,000 g/mole) on the biological activity of synthesized TMC polymers. The outcomes suggested decreased mucoadhesiveness on increased quaternization of TMC polymers [35,102].

The ocular or ophthalmic drug delivery system encounters several route barriers related to nasolacrimal drainage, stimulated lacrimation, blinking, blood ocular barrier and corneal impermeability. The use of mucoadhesive polymers such as chitosan derivatives facilitates effective ocular drug delivery owing to their elite interaction with the mucosal membrane. The presence of positive charge mediates the electrostatic interaction with the anionic mucin of the mucosal layer [103]. The ocular drug absorption of therapeutics depends on their aqueous solubility and mucoadhesiveness. Quaternized chitosan shows better candidature for enhanced permeation across ophthalmic tissues owing to their improved solubility and mucoadhesive property. However, beta-cyclodextrin conjugated chitosan has been employed for the ocular delivery of dexamethasone but restricted mucoadhesive limited their use.

Piras et al. (2018) demonstrated the development of methyl-beta-cyclodextrin grafted quaternary ammonium chitosan that was processed through treatment with hexamethylene diisocyanate. The QCh derivative efficiently carried dexamethasone, exhibited drastic changes in solubility and bioavailability. Moreover, a stable, mucoadhesive and controlled release formulation could be achieved. Preliminary assessments revealed that the developed conjugate has promising potential for the effective management of ocular disorders [93]. Yostawonkul et al. (2017) developed mucoadhesive oleoyl- quaternized chitosan-coated nanostructured lipid carriers

(NLCs). Alpha-mangostin, a hydrophobic drug was embedded in the developed NLC, which exhibited more than 90% entrapment efficiency and minimum polydispersity. Excellent mucoadhesive, higher physical stability and greater cytotoxicity were observed against cancerous Caco-2 cells over Hela cells [104].

Konovalova et al. (2018) analyzed the comparative mucoadhesive property of chitosan (20 kDa) and its hydrophobic and quaternized hydrophobic chitosan derivatives (HC and QHC). The unmodified chitosan exhibited large aggregates in the keratinocytes and colon cells of murine small intestine, whereas HC and QHC showed mucoadhesiveness as a fine dotted line when observed through confocal microscopy [105]. Hydrophobic derivatives of chitosan mediated local drug release and improved biodegradation.

3.6. Drug Carriers

3.6.1. Nanofibers

Nanofibers have always been a lucrative tool for the preparation of scaffolds, either as topically applied dressing material or in the membrane unit for filtration. Water purification systems enclosing membrane filtration units are widely accepted strategies for the retention of pathogens including bacteria and viruses according to their size. Table 3 compiles few novel biomedical usages of QCh-based nanofibers. Reports cite that holding small-sized viruses (<25 nm) necessitates enormous membrane surface area along with low water flux and high transmembrane pressure. Moreover, the filtration membrane unit has to be replaced with another new membrane frequently. To overcome this downside, Bai et al. (2013) fabricated an electro spun nanofibrous membrane comprised of quaternized chitosan polymer (HTCC) and graphene allotrope. HTCC has the proficiency to adsorb pathogenic non-enveloped porcine parvovirus on its surface. Distinctive attributes of graphene hydrophobicity and ionogenic HTCC enhanced the functional efficiency of developed nanofibers (95% virus retention). The developed nanofibers embedded with a blend of HTCC/graphene depicted effective microfiltration membrane water purification systems featured with low pressure technology for the significant removal of pathogens [106].

Table 3

Quaternized chitosan-embedded nanofibers in diverse biomedical arena.

Components	Purpose	Research Outcomes	References
HTCC and PVA	Retention of non-enveloped virus on the highly charged HTCC/PVA nanofibers.	Nano-scaled HTCC/PVA nanofibers (100–200 nm) were developed, having the potential to adsorb mammalian virus porcine parvovirus (95%). The developed system followed Freundlich isotherm and showed fast adsorption kinetics (pseudo first order), which suggested the formation of efficient filter material for the purification of water	[110]
Doxorubicin, poly (L-lactide-coD, L-lactide) and QCh	Doxorubicin embedded poly (L-lactide-coD, L-lactide) mats were modified with QCh to enhance anti-proliferative activity.	Developed mats were evaluated against human breast carcinoma cell lines (MCF-7) and exhibited reduced cell viability and amplified antiproliferative activity. Fluorescent microscopy revealed that the presence of QCh induced apoptosis, which was the primary mechanism of MCF-7 cell death.	[111]
2,3-Epoxy-propyl trimethyl ammonium chloride	QCh fibres were designed using 2,3-epoxypropyl trimethyl. Ammonium chloride following ring open reaction to modify antibacterial and liquid absorption capacity.	Outcomes revealed excellent water retention capacity, modified swelling index and mechanical strength compared to bare chitosan. Superior antibacterial efficacy against *S. aureus* and lower cytotoxicity suggested its vital role in fabricating wound dressing materials.	[112]
Poly (lactic acid), QCh	Stereo complex crystallite (SC) membrane containing poly (lactic acid) QCh were employed to design disinfectant wound dressing material.	The enhanced thermal and mechanical properties of developed SC membrane owing to restricted mobility of lactide chains. They have better wound healing capacity (100% in 15 days). This biomass-based membrane was multifunctional as it has antioxidant, antibacterial and wound healing	[113]

Santos et al. (2018) extended the study and fabricated antibacterial nanofibers from a blend of N-(2-hydroxy)-propyl-3-trimethylammonium chitosan chloride (QCh) and polycaprolactone (PCL) polymeric solutions. The produced nanofibers displayed improved hydrophilicity and tissue compatibility with superior mechanical strength when evaluated for enzymatic degradation, cell adhesion, and cytotoxicity against neonatal human dermal fibroblasts cells. The viscosity and degree of deacetylation of QCh strongly affected the alignment of nanofibers that was required for relative orientation with cancerous cells for better cytotoxic activity. The fabricated QCh/PCL nanofibers possessed essential benchmarks required for designing wound dressing materials in the domain of tissue engineering [107].

Amplified antimicrobial efficiency of quaternized chitosan was exploited by Cheah et al. (2019) as they performed surface grafting of PAN nanofibers (P-CN) with quarternary amine (glycidyl trimethyl ammonium chloride) functionalized chitosan under acidic, neutral, and alkaline conditions. Developed water-stable quaternized chitosan nanofibrous membranes (P-HTCC) were subjected for evaluation of antibacterial activity against *E. coli*. The outcomes from the microbiological assessment revealed that the quaternized chitosan-derived membrane developed in acidic medium exhibited stronger antibacterial action (99.95% for *E. coli*) compared to the neutral and alkaline medium. The fabricated P-HTCC membranes had the potential to be assembled into a microfiltration unit for the disinfection of Gram-negative pathogen *E. coli* [108].

Mi et al. (2014) addressed the issue of unsafe drinking water containing countless microbial loads and toxic impurities accountable for millions of deaths every year. An economical antiviral filtration material was fabricated utilizing ionogenic quaternized chitosan (HTCC) and non-ionogenic polyvinyl alcohol (PVA). The electrospun material embraced the high surface area required for effective water adsorption. Furthermore, HTCC/PVA nanofibers were treated with glutaraldehyde (cross linking agent) to control the water solubility and enhance the water stability (only 30% swelling in 6 h). The system could retain both enveloped and non-enveloped viruses. The HTCC-/PVA-embedded microfiltration membrane was affordable and proved to be an efficient low-pressure filtration unit by virtue of significant retention of pathogens [109].

3.6.2. Hydrogel Hydrogels have a cross-linked network of variable hydrophilic functional groups containing polymers that can absorb plentiful water. Surface-adorned hydrophilic groups such as amine ($-NH_2$), hydroxyl (−OH), sulphate ($-SO_3H$), and amide (−CONH−) empower hydrogel to absorb watery fluid that expands their volume due to swelling. Hydrogel-based dressing materials provide several advantages, including ample absorption of tissue exudate, maintenance of optimum moisture content at the site and encouraging cell proliferation (Table 4). Antibacterial hydrogels are highly required in the health care sector to accelerate the wound healing cure rate. In this context, Xiao et al. (2020) prepared hydrogel consisting of QCh, chemical cross-linker ‘polyacrylamide’, and silver nanoparticles. The developed hydrogel exhibited desirable tensile strength (approximately 100 kPa) with a shear stress of 10^4 Pa. Excellent swelling capacity, a synergistic antibacterial effect, and low toxicity of Ag-mediated hydrogel reinforced the designing of appropriate wound dressing materials [115].

Table 4

Biomedical utility of QCh-derived hydrogels.

Objective	Components	Research Highlights	References
Multifunctional QCh-based polyacrylamide hydrogel was developed that contained hemostatic and skin adhesive properties	QCh, Matrigel-polyacrylamide	The developed hybrid hydrogel had a three-dimensional microporous integrity and exhibited high mechanical strength and good adhesiveness with low toxicity. The outcomes from the histology study demonstrated improvement in wound healing, collagen deposition, and stimulation of skin adnexal regeneration. The developed QCh-based antibacterial hydrogel demonstrated promising potential for designing wound dressing materials.	[118]
Dual crosslinked QCh-clindamycin loaded hydrogel was prepared to manage methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) bacteria	QCh, clindamycin	The developed nanocomposite-embedded hydrogel withstood sufficient mechanical and injectable efficiencies. The system responded on variable pH that enabled maximum interaction with MRSA bacteria (90% killed) in acidic conditions and overcame the antibiotic resistance challenge.	[119]
A novel wound dressing-based injectable hydrogel was designed employing QCh and PLEL (PLEL-nBG-QCS-C) hydrogel to promote angiogenesis.	QCh and PLEL [Poly (D, L-lactide)-poly (ethylene glycol)-poly (D,L-lactide)] and bioactive glass	PLEL hydrogels preloaded with bioactive glass (CaO-SiO_2-P_2O_5) could efficiently seal the broken skin and increase the cure rate of wounds. Additionally, they were thermosensitive, tissue adhesive, and antibacterial.	[120]
		The developed transparent thermosensitive hydrogel presented desirable porosity	

You et al. (2016) synthesized quaternized chitosan via reaction of chitosan with 3-chloro-2-hydroxypropyltrimethylammonium chloride in an alkaline solution. Thereafter, the polyelectrolyte complex hydrogel was prepared through in situ polymerization of poly acrylic acid monomers in quaternized chitosan solution. Resultant elastic, mechanically strong and surface tunable hydrogel was developed that displayed superb solvent-induced shape memory performance [116].

Mamidi et al. (2021) demonstrated a pH- and thermal-responsive chitosan-based nanocomposite (CNP) hydrogel that has potential applications in nanomedicine and nanotechnology. They developed an integrated chitosan nanocomposite containing poly (N(4-aminophenyl) methacrylamide)- carbon and diclofenac. The system possessed several conductive physicochemical properties such as spherical shape and uniform particle size. Additionally, the CNPs were pH- and heat-sensitive and exhibited controlled release for 15 days. Moreover, the designed CNP showed significant cell viability for human fibroblast cells [117].

3.6.3. Beads Thermoduric bacteria that can survive even after pasteurization of milk pose momentous threat to dairy and beverages industries. To overcome this challenge, biodegradable HTCC-anchored magnetic cellulose beads were developed via the dropping technique which could resist temperature up to 300 °C. Extended antibacterial efficacy against *Alicyclobacillus acidoterrestris* suggested the potential application of developed beads for food safety management [125]. Furthermore, quaternized chitosan beads were developed to adsorb phosphate and nitrate ions present in aqueous solution. Quaternized chitosan beads were formulated through reacting cross-linked chitosan with trimethyl ammonium chloride. The quaternized chitosan beads were quite effective in the pH range of 3–9 and exhibited an adsorption capacity for phosphate (97.5%) and nitrate ions (99%) that followed Freundlich isotherm model. The presence of common ions such as chloride, sulphate and bicarbonate did not alter the sorption capacity of quaternized chitosan beads [126].

The literature envisages that polycationic ammoniated polymers are fascinating options for the adsorption of negatively charged ions and sulphated polysaccharides through electrostatic interaction. In this regard, QCh has been explored for capturing anions, even at high pH. Eskandarloo et al. (2018) proposed the formulation of quaternized chitosan/polystyrene microbeads (CS/PS) for the selective adsorption of heparin, an anticoagulant from porcine intestinal mucosa sample. The comparative adsorption efficiency of CS/PS microbeads and marketed Amberlite FPA98 Cl resin was evaluated utilizing a heparin-bovine serum albumin model in pH range 4.1–9.2. The outcomes depicted superior adsorption efficiency of CS/PS micro beads (2.84 mg/g) and could be regenerated after treating with sodium chloride solution. Furthermore, the recovered microbeads can be reused for adsorption of heparin without any loss of adsorption capacity. Moreover, CS/PS microbeads could adsorb heparin from real biological sample containing heparin [127].

Quinlan et al. (2016) utilized quaternized chitosan hydrogel beads for efficient adsorption of 2-naphthoxyacetic acid from oil sand processed water (OSPW) system. 2-naphthoxyacetic acid is highly toxic and occurs in significant concentrations (40–70 mg/L) in OSPW that requires prolonged time for degradation. Hence, it necessitates removal of 2-naphthoxyacetic acid through either filtration, advanced oxidation, or adsorption methods. QCh has been identified as an attractive adsorbent by virtue of adsorption of an-

ionic ions. The research emphasized retention of aromatic organic carboxylate site present in 2-naphthoxyacetic acid through polycationic QCh via the ion exchange adsorption process. The mode of adsorption signified Langmuir isotherm following pseudo first-order kinetics. The developed QCh hydrogel beads were moderately swellable and demonstrated effective adsorption of 2-naphthoxyacetic acid (91%) at the initial concentration of 200 mg/mL [128].

3.6.4. Nanoparticles Splendid accomplishments have been anticipated through chitosan-based nanoparticles for the management of different diseases over past decade. These biodegradable and biocompatible nanoparticles are not only exhibit improved solubility, site specific/localized action but also minimize undesirable toxicity. Highly demanded chitosan is frequently explored as a carrier in drug delivery systems, fabrication of wound dressing materials, management of skin regeneration and tissue engineering. Quaternized chitosan-based nanoparticles (QCh NPs) have attracted wide interest owing to their exclusive physicochemical and biological features. Chemical modification such as grafting, functionalization, Schiff base formation and quaternization are few strategies that expand physicochemical and biological features of chitosan. Quaternization of chitosan significantly improves the aqueous solubility in neutral pH hence enhances the diffusion of drug moiety across biological membrane in neutral/alkaline physiological conditions. The positive charge facilitates pronounced mucoadhesiveness, antimicrobial activity, biocompatibility, and biodegradability as well as widening its biomedical applications. Numerous trimethyl, triethyl, dimethyl ethyl, and N-(2-hydroxy-3 trimethyl ammonium) propyl derivatives of quaternized chitosans have been discussed in Table 5 as potential carriers for the transportation of proteins, genes, vaccines, and chemotherapeutics at the target site [39,129].

Table 5

QCh-based nanoparticles and their biomedical applications.

Objective	Components	Research Highlights	References
Ketoconazole was entrapped in QCh NPs for superior antifungal activity	Ketoconazole, QCh, sodium triphosphate	Nanoscaled KCZ-QCSNPs displayed superb entrapment efficiency (~90%). Performed tube dilution method revealed preeminent antimicrobial activity.	[134]
QCh derivative 'HTCC' NPs were embedded in various fabric materials to evaluate antimicrobial efficacy.	HTCC, cotton fabric, polyester, polyacrylic acid	The developed HTCC nanoparticles embedded in cotton fabric exhibited superior antimicrobial action against *Fusarium oxysporum* and *Bacillus subtilis* compared to polyester and mixture of cotton.	[135]
Anthrax vaccine adjuvant containing Fucoidan-HTCC nanoparticles were developed to improve rapid induction of immunity	Sulphated polysaccharide (Fucoidan, FUC) and HTCC	An active complexation between opposite-charged FUC and HTCC was conducted through varying their mass ratio. MTT assay on L929 or JAWS dendritic cells evaluated low cytotoxicity, improved cellular internalization and high cell viability. Combination of FUC-HTCCNPs and anthrax vaccine adsorbed (AVA) significantly improved magnitude of cellular/humoral immunity and mice survival rate compared to administration of AVA alone.	[136]
Nanoparticles containing N-2-HTCC and N,O-CMC encapsulated vaccine antigens (IBV/H120) were developed for significant	N-2-HTCC, N,O-carboxy methyl chitosan (CMC), infectious bronchitis virus (IBV) (H120 and Newcastle disease virus	The developed nanoparticles, i.e., N-2-HTCC-CMC/NDV/IBV, predicted great stability and low cytotoxicity on storing at 37 °C for 3 weeks. In vivo assay on chicken revealed sustained release of both NDV and IBV with enhanced release of IgG and IgA that	[137]

3.6.5. Quaternized Chitosan Nanocomposites Strong interaction between bifunctional quaternized chitosan and carbon nanocomposite displayed superior mechanical properties (tensile strength), improved ionic absorption, enhanced antimicrobial action owing to their enormous surface-to-volume ratio (surface area), smaller size, and higher dispersion in given media. Abdel-Aziz et al. (2020) have developed a novel antituberculosis delivery system composed of N,N,N-trimethyl chloride (TMC)/Ag nanocomposite synthesized through a one pot green route. Synthesized nanocomposite (11–17 nm) system has exhibited promising antimycobacterial action (MIC 1.95 µg/mL). The observed antitumor activity displayed less toxicity (IC_{50} 357.2 µg/mL) for normal (WI 38) lung cells and preeminent growth inhibition for A549 cancerous cells (IC_{50} 12.3 µg/mL) [130]. Luo et al. (2015) initially synthesized nanocomposites from chitosan/montmorillonite resin and quaternized modifier 2,3-epoxypropyltrimethyl ammonium chloride chitosan/montmorillonite resin. The developed quaternized chitosan-containing nanocomposites were small, spherical, smooth, dense, and exhibiting good dispersibility in water. The adsorption study performed on methyl orange revealed that quaternized chitosan/montmorillonite was strongly adsorbed compared to without montmorillonite, and thus can be a prospective material for column packing and wastewater treatment [131]. In this series, mechanical and ionic conductive properties of QCH functionalized carbon nanotube membrane matrix were evaluated. Improved dispersion of carbon nanotube promoted the load transfer and assisted hydroxide ion exchange through the membrane matrix. Reduced ionic conductivity and modified tensile strength indicated the potential application in preparation of anionic exchange membrane fuel cells [132]. Similarly, Gong et al. (2019) developed a layered double hydroxide ion conductor composed of QCH/PVA and carbon nanotubes. The system exhibited 1.57-fold enhanced tensile strength, 47 mS/cm^2 ionic conductivity at 80 °C, and displayed a good reinforcing property [133].

QCh nanoparticles are highly acclaimed for designing oral drug delivery systems by virtue of significant drug diffusion and improved penetration across the epithelial barrier. Several ‘bottom up’ methods for nanoparticles development are widely emphasized, including emulsion droplet coalescence, ionic gelation, the reverse micelle method, self-assembly, chemical alteration, coacervation, and precipitation. Methods such as milling, ultrasonication, and high-pressure homogenization listed as ‘top down’ are also employed for nanoparticles synthesis [140]. Omar et al. (2021) developed novel oral drug nanocarriers composed of quaternized aminated chitosan and curcumin to enable the slow release of curcumin at the site of colon.

The ionic gelation method was opted for to formulate nanoparticles (Q-AmCs NPs) employing different concentration of crosslinker ‘sodium triphosphate’. Formulated Q-AmCs NPs were comparatively nanoscaled (~162 nm) with higher entrapment efficiency (~94.4%) and maximum potential of +48.3 mV than aminated chitosan (~231 nm, 75%, +32.8 mV). The in vitro drug release study in various physiological media (simulate gastric fluid, pH = 1.2; and simulated colon fluid, pH = 7.4) exhibited controlled cumulative drug release in alkaline pH (74%). The NPs depicted acceptable biocompatibility and biodegradability that suggested potential use for cancer management [141]. Improved solubility of quaternized chitosan in variable pH ranges encourages versatile biomedical usage [142]. Advanced applications of quaternized chitosan NPs are reported in vaccine development as well. The occurrence of

cationic charge on quaternary ammonium groups is independent of any pH of surrounding media. Moreover, the positive charge facilitates advanced bioadhesion and drug delivery across mucosal membrane via strong electrostatic interaction with negatively charged endothelial regions [143].

3.6.6. Vaccine Adjuvants Vaccine adjuvants are essential components that modify vaccine potency through encouraging cell-mediated or humoral immune responses via vaccine antigens. An ideal adjuvant should have the efficacy to solubilize antigens, facilitate transportation across mucosal barrier and potential for encouraging systemic and mucosal immunity. Chitosan and chitosan derivatives are fascinating candidates for vaccine adjuvants by virtue of their remarkable physicochemical (solubility, stability, biodegradability) and biological values (cytocompatibility, non-toxicity, antimicrobial). Reports cited that quaternized chitosan have greater potential to induce antigen-presenting cells (APCs), encourage cytokine stimulation and produce preferred humoral, cellular, and mucosal immune responses [144].

A lot of chemical structure modifications have been performed with the primary amine group of chitosan to enable it to have high aqueous solubility without altering exclusive biological properties. QCh decorated with N, O-carboxymethyl and N-2-hydroxypropyl trimethyl functional moieties are frequently preferred for the synthesis of vaccine adjuvants. During vaccine preparation, the pH of QCh ranges from 4.3 to 5.5, which facilitates protonation of chitosan and makes natural electrostatic interaction with negatively charged encapsulated antigen [145]. QCh and its derivatives are utilized as potential mucosal vaccine adjuvants owing to their biological features including the formation of natural electrostatic interaction between cationic chitosan and anionic sialic acid in mucus that assists improved mucosal absorption of antigen. TMC possesses all these virtues along with higher aqueous solubility, greater mucoadhesiveness and more stability in diverse ionic conditions than chitosan; hence, it is utilized broadly in vaccine development. Moreover, TMC finds vital role in vaccine development because of its similar functional performance as that of synthetic adjuvants including alum, cyclic guanosine monophosphate and Freund's adjuvant, etc. [146]. Moreover, QCh has a better capacity to open tight mucosa junctions than chitosan, which facilitate permeability of antigens within the mucosal cells [147]. Biocompatible, non-reactogenic, economical and biodegradable QCh are also reported for their immunomodulation ability [148].

Recently, many novel vaccine adjuvants have been engineered for the modification of adaptive immune responses to deliver antigen in the body that enhance the potency and maintain immunity for a long duration. Alum has been the sole vaccine adjuvant approved for human use but limits significant stimulation of cell-mediated immune responses. In this context, Tao et al. (2017) evaluated immune-modifying features of N-(2-hydroxy) propyl-3-trimethylammonium chitosan chloride (HTCC) as a vaccine adjuvant for HEV (hepatitis E virus). HTCC showed strong immune-modifying effects when co-administered with HEV recombinant polypeptide inoculum via intramuscular way. The outcomes revealed enhanced serum HE-recognized IgG antibodies, amplified CD4+, $CD8^-$ T lymphocytes, proliferation of splenocytes, and growths of IFN-γ-secreting T helper cells in peripheral blood after vaccination [149]. Hence, HTCC adjuvant has the potential to induce significant antibody responses via stimulating Th-1 and Th-2 cells, cytotoxic T cells and macrophages that initiate typical mechanisms of the host defense process [150]. Th-1 cells are associated with protection against in-

tracellular pathogens and encourage delayed-type hypersensitivity reactions, whereas Th-2 cells encounter extracellular pathogens and mediate humoral responses. Figure 10 illustrates the development of immunity after the administration of mucoadhesive QCH-based vaccine adjuvant [151].

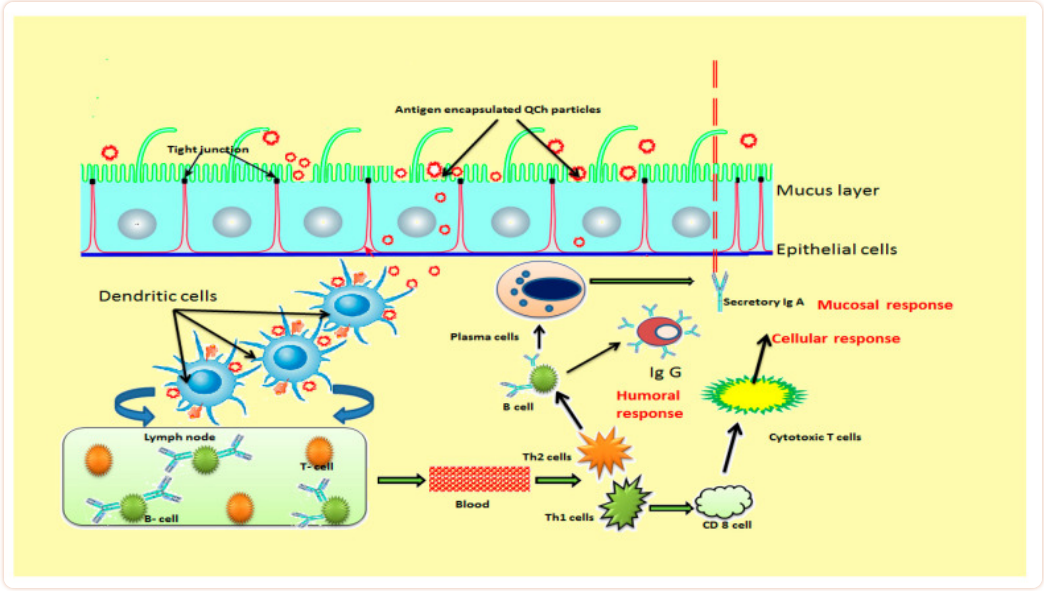


Figure 10

Schematic illustration of immunity development after administration of mucoadhesive QCh-based vaccine adjuvant.

Wu et al. (2012) extended the study and demonstrated safe usage of HTCC supported hydrogel for efficient nasal immunization. A novel thermosensitive hydrogel was developed utilizing α, β-glycerophosphate and different quaternized degree having HTCC (QD 41%, 60%, 79%, 99%). The developed adjuvant was linked with Zaire Ebola virus glycoprotein antigen and evaluated for intranasal vaccine delivery efficacy. HTCC with moderate quaternization (60% and 79%) induced high immune-modulating effects and extensively released IgG-G1-G2a antibodies in serum and IgA in lungs, probably due to prolonged resistance due to the thermosensitive nature of hydrogel. Furthermore, HTCC mediated the higher release of IFN-γ and interleukins (IL-2, IL-10, IL-4), and Th1 and Th2 cells displayed enhanced cellular immune responses [151,152].

Wang et al. (2016) developed quaternized chitosan-based microgel adjuvant for H_5N_1 spilt vaccine. Microgels were prepared through the premix membrane emulsification method without the addition of a chemical crosslinker. The formed polycationic QCh microgels were smaller (807 nm), pH-sensitive, biocompatible, and capable of enhancing both cellular/humoral immunity. Microgels containing QCh with a moderate degree of quaternization (41% and 60%) exhibited favorable immune responses at lower doses when investigated against bone-marrow-derived dendritic cells [153]. Traditional immunization techniques including subcutaneous and intramuscular administration can provoke systemic immunoresponses. These approaches are unable to evoke resilient local immunity, specifically in the mucosal region, the first line of defense against pathogens [154].

The nasopharynx lymphoid tissues cannot support strong mucosal immunity or immune responses. While antigen or foreign particles enter on the nasal mucosal surface, antigen presenting cells on epithelial cells identify and present them to macrophages or lymphocytes that cause their differentiation, activation, and proliferation. Non-adherent antigens are not entertained by the tightly bound epithelial cells, so they produce poor immunogenicity [155]. To overcome the above downside, Zhang et al. (2018) developed curdlan sulphate complexed O-HTCC nanoparticles adjuvant to improve immunogenicity of antigen ovalbumin (Ova) through intranasal vaccination. Soluble curdlan sulphate is an extracellular polysaccharide that particularly identifies the dectin1 receptor on immune cell surfaces. Reports cited that curdlan sulphate elicited satisfactory cellular or humoral responses. However, being anionic in nature, it is hardly adsorbed over nose epithelial cells that limit its application in mucosal immunotherapy. Hence, polycationic, immunogenic O-HTCC was chosen to make complex with negatively charged curdlan sulphate (CS) followed by entrapment of antigen ovalbumin (Ova). An efficient Ova-loaded vaccine adjuvant (Ova/CS/O-HTCC) was developed under mild conditions. When administered through nasal mucosa dripping in BALB/c mice (Bagg albino laboratory bred strain), adjuvant Ova/CS/O-HTCC activated APCs and enhanced both cellular and humoral activity of Ova. The adjuvant also ameliorated Th-2 cells responses and reduced allergic reactions [156].

Nevagi et al. (2018) developed an efficient self-adjuvating TMC-peptide vaccine based on ionic interaction between cationic TMC and anionic alpha-poly- (l-glutamic acid) peptide antigen. The designed system induced higher systemic and mucosal antibodies compared to the reference cholera toxin B, a mucosal adjuvant conjugated with TMC. A self-adjuvant evident reduction in bacterial burden in nasal secretions of immunized mice was thus found to be effective for group A *Streptococcus* pathogen [157].

4. Miscellaneous

4.1. Orthopedic Surgery

Biomaterial-related infections are serious glitches in orthopedic surgery. The application of antibiotics either locally or given systemically has proven valuable in clinical research. Bone cements are applied to deliver antibiotics locally in high doses without triggering systemic toxicity. However, at a high level, these antibiotics may reduce the osteoblasts cell viability, proliferation, and alkaline phosphatase action that hinders physiological functions of bone marrow mesenchymal cells, resulting in compromised bone healing process. To overcome the above issue, quaternized chitosan derivative 'hydroxy-propyl-trimethyl ammonium chloride chitosan (HACC)' loaded on polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) bone cement was investigated to resolve the formed biofilm on the surface of bone cement. HACC-functionalized PMMA bone cement exhibited better antibacterial action compared to control against versatile clinically isolated microbes including *S. epidermidis 389*, methicillin-resistant *S. epidermidis* and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* [158]. The developed system proved to have the potential to combat implant infections related to osteomyelitis. Moreover, the findings demonstrated better stem cell proliferation; osteogenesis and cell differentiation on the surface of HACC-loaded bone cement compared to antibiotic gentamycin-loaded bone cement [159]. Therefore, quaternized chitosan-based derivatives HACC finds biomedical roles in osteogenic activity, arthroplasty, and gene expression osteogenesis [160].

Furthermore, HACC with 6%, 18% and 44% degrees of quaternization coated on the titanium surface have been utilized for the evaluation of biofilm preventing efficiency. Titanium-based bioactive agents are widely used orthopedic implants due to their biocompatibility, mechanical strength, corrosion resistance and light weight. However, these implants provide a favorable environment for bacterial colonization followed by biofilm formation. Thus, prolonged application was compromised with defective osteoproliferation, poor osteogenesis and serious microbial infections. HACC-coated titanium implants would overcome the above issues with an enhanced anti-infective effect at the same time. HACCs (18% and 44% degree of quaternization) were biocompatible with osteogenic cells and significantly eradicated the developed biofilm around orthopaedic implants at very low MIC values [161].

Yang et al. (2016) extended biomedical applications of HACC-modified titania nanotubes to improve the in vivo anti-infection potential. Orthopaedic intramedullary nails are widely used for the treatment of open and closed 'tibial and femoral' fractures. However, there may be postoperative infections due to implanted intramedullary nails [162]. A high dose of antibiotics is recommended that causes systemic toxicity and osteomyelitis, and delays bone cells proliferation. Hence, implants with an advanced anti-infective property are required to fix the high rate of infections. This innovative research detailed formation of various titania nanotube (NT) loaded with HACC (NT-H) and chitosan (NT-C) and evaluated their comparative cytocompatibility, antimicrobial efficiency and osteoblastic activity against human bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells. The developed NT-H depicted impressive osteogenic action compared to other NT and NT-C nanotubes when assessed on a rat model having femoral medullary cavity implantation and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* infection. Superior antibacterial effect, cytocompatibility, and profound osteogenesis focused the clinical application of NT-H to manage orthopedic surgical implant-related infections.

Kadama et al. (2021) studied the antibacterial effect of HACC-coated 3D-printed titanium cage during the treatment of improper intervertebral disc space in a rat model. Ti-HACC and non-coated Ti with bioluminescent *S. aureus* were inserted in the caudal discs of model rat. From the in vivo imaging system (IVIVS), the post-operative infection-related changes such as bone destruction and the movement of the implanted cage were assessed on the first, third, and fifth day through micro-computer tomography. The outcomes defined the vital role of Ti-HACC for effective wound healing, improved tartrate-resistant acid phosphate-positive osteoclasts, better antibacterial action against *S. aureus* and preservation of structural damage in caudal disc in rat [163].

4.2. Dental Care and Cosmetics

Chitosan derivative N-[(2-hydroxy-3-trimethylammonium) propyl chitosan chloride, HTCC has better solubility in neutral and alkaline solutions. HTCC has been utilized for the preparation of dental care products owing to its enhanced antimicrobial action [164]. Quaternized chitosan and its substituents have promising action in reducing dental plaque associated with various pathogens. *Porphyromonas gingivalis*, *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*, *Streptococcus mutans* and *Prevotella intermedia* cause plaques and periodontal diseases. Endodontic cements based on QCh derivatives reduce inflammation and facilitate bone regeneration [165]. Literature reports promising antibacterial action of HTCC against *Enterococcus faecalis* that is associated with endodontic infection. *E. faecalis,* a Gram-positive bacteria, has been isolated from persistent endodontic infection that may cause severe root canal disorder. This pathogen may exist in non-culturable conditions and maintain viability through the year without requiring nutrients, thus damaging dentinal tubules and develop biofilms. Once biofilm is formed, *E. faecalis* becomes more virulent, can protect itself either from adverse condition or high doses of antibiotics [166].

Patel et al. (2020) explored the antibacterial efficiency of chitosan and HTCC against *E. faecalis* pathogen in the state of planktonic and biofilm. A colony-forming-unit study was performed to define the status of three strains of *E. faecalis* (ATCC 29212, P25RC, P52Sa) after treating with serially diluted (20–2500 µg/mL) chitosan and HTCC. Both chitosan (70 µg/mL) and HTCC (140 µg/mL) exhibited significantly higher antibacterial efficacy in double-distilled water as compared to phosphate-buffered saline. The presence of charged ions (Na^+, K^+, Cl^- and $H_2PO_4^-$) in phosphate-buffered saline might disrupt the involved electrostatic interaction that results in less antibacterial action [167]. Moreover, the biocompatibility of natural biopolymer chitosan and its derivative HTCC for the purpose of sealing/obturation of the root canal is far better, compared to other traditionally employed toxicity elicited substances such as zinc oxide, glass ionomers, resins, calcium hydroxide, etc. [168].

Thus, the biocompatibility and characteristic antibacterial efficacy of both chitosan and HTCC focus biomedical application in root canal therapy [169]. Lee et al. (2018) examined the antifungal activity of quaternized chitosan '2-[(acryloyloxy) ethyl] trimethylammonium' as tissue conditioner in the pathological condition 'denture stomatitis'. *Candida albicans* is a main etiological cause for denture stomatitis that affects mucosa underneath diseased teeth. QCh-based tissue conditioner of size 1 mm thickness and 10 cm diam-

eter was prepared and co cultured with *C. albicans*. Significantly diminished fungal colonies were observed with less than 5% QCh concentration compared to the resin denture base. Moreover, this amount did not affect the viability of gingival epithelium cells [170]. Table 6 collects novel research reports on QCh-based systems that have been explored for dental and cosmetic applications.

Table 6

Research highlights few dental/cosmetic uses of QCh derivatives.

QCh-Based System	Biomedical Application	References
Conjugates of chitosan and HTCC	Antibacterial activity against oral pathogen	[172]
Thermosensitive CS-HTCC/GP-Chlorhexidine hydrogel	Local drug delivery for periodontal treatment	[135]
CS-HTCC/GP thermosensitive hydrogel	Antibacterial efficient activator for periodontal pathogens such as *Porphyromonas gingivalis*, *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* and *Prevotella intermedia*.	[173]
Conjugate of Quaternized carboxymethyl chitosan (QCMC) and calcium hydroxide	QCMC strongly induced reparative dentine formation and showed a better ability in dentin inducing compared with calcium hydroxide.	[162]

Quaternized chitosan derivatives are highly utilized for the preparation of cosmetics including skin creams, shampoo, sprays, and dental remedies. Being natural with exclusive biological features, these biopolymers find an attractive domain in cosmeceuticals. Water-soluble quaternized chitosan (73% degree of quaternization) has been grafted with cyclodextrin (QCD-g-CS) to improve its antibacterial effect against several microorganisms, namely *C. albicans*, *S. mutans*, and *S. oralis* [171].

Sakulwech et al. (2018) extended the study by uploading the negatively charged hydrophilic guest (hyaluronic acid) on the QCD-g-CS to improve penetration enhancement. Hyaluronic acid is generally applied in skin remedies owing to improved skin elasticity, an anti-wrinkle effect and the retention of moisture content. Furthermore, it is popularly used for treating osteoarthritis and manifesting wound healing. The high molecular weight of hyaluronic acid limits its benefit in cosmetics. Amalgamation of quaternized chitosan and cyclodextrin facilitated enhanced solubility, absorption, and bioavailability to the dermal cells. The developed nanoparticles enhanced the penetration of hyaluronic acid in deeper tissues and provided a moisturizing effect. The developed nanoparticles were safe when investigated against skin fibroblast cells [174].

Khalaji et al. (2020) developed biocompatible and antibacterial scaffolds with a blend of synthetic PVA and natural water-soluble HTCC. Fabricated scaffolds exhibited sufficient mechanical strength that was appropriate for skin regeneration during dermal damage. Moreover, the embedded collagen provided additional biological properties, such as extracellular matrix simulation, better cell attachment and proliferation. Hence, fabricated scaffolds can be medically utilized as skin care products [175]. Chen et al. (2017) developed nanocomposite containing quaternized carboxylated chitosan and organic montmorillonite through solution-induced intercalation. A cosmetic cream against skin aging was prepared that exhibited better moisture adsorption, efficient UV protection and moisture retention behaviour without dermal irritation owing to the presence of quaternized carboxylated chitosan [22].

5. Future Prospective

Quaternized chitosan (QCH) derivatives have been extensively utilized for biomedical applications (tissue engineering, drug/gene delivery, antimicrobial, antiviral and immunoadjuvant) owing to their bio and cytocompatibility attributes. With the advancement of nanotechnology, QCH together with nanocomposites (carbon nanotubes and nanofillers) provide superior alternatives to the new arena of drug delivery and regenerative medicines. The reports and findings detailed that QCH derivatives are increasingly focused for the formulation of vaccine adjuvants, chemotherapeutic agents, ecofriendly textiles, and purified membrane matrix. Improved physicochemical properties including improved solubility, mucoadhesiveness, absorption and bioavailability pave QCH derivatives for the synthesis of less invasive and more effective formulations for the management of diverse disorders.

6. Conclusions

Multifunctional QCh derivatives have attracted high attention in the last two decades by their inherent virtues that have broadened biomedical applications. Reports cite extensive research on QCh-based drug carriers, vaccine adjuvant, anticancerous nanoparticles, antibacterial hydrogel, tissue scaffolds, and purification membranes that explore their exclusive physiochemical and biological actions. Furthermore, QCh derivative polymers exhibit high stability, biodegradability and biocompatibility that are essential benchmark for successful therapeutic remedies. However, the synthesis of QCh derivatives including pyridinium and phosphonium salts should be properly channelized at an industrial level to expose their superior biomedical applications on a large scale.

Author Contributions

Conceptualization, K.P., S.K.M., T.B. and A.N.; investigation, A.S. and S.S.; resources, R.G.; data curation, S.S.; writing—original draft preparation, K.P., S.S., A.S. and T.B.; writing—review and editing, A.N., S.B. and T.B.; visualization, S.S.; supervision, A.N. All authors have read and agreed to the published version of the manuscript, and have equal contribution to this paper.

Funding

This research received no external funding.

Institutional Review Board Statement

Not applicable.

Informed Consent Statement

Not applicable.

Data Availability Statement

Not applicable.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest. The funders had no role in the collection, analyses, in the writing of the manuscript, or in the decision to publish the results.

Footnotes

Publisher's Note: MDPI stays neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

References

1. Mourya V.K., Inamdar N.N. Chitosan-modifications and applications: Opportunities galore. *React. Funct. Polym.* 2008;68:1013–1051. doi: 10.1016/j.reactfunctpolym.2008.03.002. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

2. Kumar A., Kumar A. The virtuous potential of chitosan oligosaccharide for promising biomedical applications. *J. Mater. Res.* 2020;35:1123–1134. doi: 10.1557/jmr.2020.76. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

3. Islam S.M.A., Bhuvian M.A.R., Islam M.N. Chitin and Chitosan: Structure, Properties and Applications in Biomedical Engineering. *J. Polym. Environ.* 2017;25:854–866. doi: 10.1007/s10924-016-0865-5. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

4. Kahya N. Water Soluble Chitosan Derivatives and their Biological Activities: A Review. *Polym. Sci.* 2019;5:1–16. doi: 10.36648/2471-9935.5.1.44. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

5. Kofuji K., Qian C., Nishimura M., Sugiyama I., Murata Y., Kawashima S. Relationship between physicochemical characteristics and functional properties of chitosan. *Eur. Polym. J.* 2005;41:2784–2791. doi: 10.1016/j.eurpolymj.2005.04.041. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

6. Freier T., Koh H.S., Kazazian K., Shoichet M.S. Controlling cell adhesion and degradation of chitosan films by N-acetylation. *Biomaterials.* 2005;26:5872. doi: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2005.02.033. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

7. Yuan Y., Betsy M., Chesnutt W., Haggard O., Bumgardner Joel D. Deacetylation of Chitosan: Material Characterization and in vitro Evaluation via Albumin Adsorption and Pre-Osteoblastic Cell Cultures. *Materials.* 2011;4:1399–1416. doi: 10.3390/ma4081399. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

8. Marques C., Som C., Schmutz M., Borges O., Borchard G. How the Lack of Chitosan Characterization Precludes Implementation of the Safe-by-Design Concept. *Front. Bioeng. Biotech.* 2020;8:165. doi: 10.3389/fbioe.2020.00165. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

9. El Knidri H., Belaabed R., Addaou A., Laajeb A., Lahsini A. Extraction, chemical modification and characterization of chitin and chitosan. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2018;120 Pt A:1181–1189. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.08.139. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

10. Kumari S., Kumar A.S.H., Abanti S., Kumar R.P. Physicochemical properties and characterization of chitosan synthesized from fish scales, crab and shrimp shells. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2017;104 Pt B:1697–1705. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2017.04.119. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

11. Pillai C.K.S., Paul W., Sharma C.P. Chitin and chitosan polymers: Chemistry, solubility and fiber formation. *Prog. Polym. Sci.* 2009;34:641–678. doi: 10.1016/j.progpolymsci.2009.04.001. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

12. Cai J., Dang Q., Liu C., Fan B., Yan J., Xu Y., Li J. Preparation and characterization of N-benzoyl-O-acetyl-chitosan. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2015;77:52–58. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2015.03.007. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

13. Ma G., Yang D., Zhou Y., Xiao M., Kennedy J.F., Nie J. Preparation and characterization of water-soluble N-alkylated chitosan. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2008;74:121–126. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2008.01.028. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

14. Mohammadi E., Daraei H., Ghanbari R., Dehestani Athar S., Zandsalimi Y., Ziaee A., Maleki A., Yetilmezsoy K. Synthesis of carboxylated chitosan modified with ferromagnetic nanoparticles for adsorptive removal of fluoride, nitrate, and phosphate anions from aqueous solutions. *J. Mol. Liq.* 2019;273:116–124. doi: 10.1016/j.molliq.2018.10.019. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

15. Benediktsdóttir B.E., Baldursson Ó., Másson M. Challenges in evaluation of chitosan and trimethylated chitosan (TMC) as mucosal permeation enhancers: From synthesis to in vitro application. *J. Control. Release.* 2014;173:18–31. doi: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2013.10.022. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

16. Ramasamy P., Subhapradha N., Thinesh T., Selvin J., Selvan K.M., Shanmugam V., Shanmugam A. Characterization of bioactive chitosan and sulfated chitosan from Doryteuthis singhalensis (Ortmann, 1891) *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2017;99:682–691. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2017.03.041. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

17. Cao J., You J., Zhang L., Zhou J. Homogeneous synthesis and characterization of chitosan ethers prepared in aqueous alkali/urea solutions. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2018;185:138–144. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2018.01.010. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

18. Jia Z., Shen D., Xu W. Synthesis and antibacterial activities of quaternary ammonium salt of chitosan. *Carbohydr. Res.* 2001;333:1–6. doi: 10.1016/S0008-6215(01)00112-4. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

19. Anraku M., Gebicki J.M., Iohara D., Tomida H., Uekama K., Maruyama T., Hirayama F., Otagiri M. Antioxidant activities of chitosans and its derivatives in in vitro and in vivo studies. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2018;1:141–149. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2018.07.016. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

20. Kumirska J., Weinhold M.X., Thöming J., Stepnowski P. Biomedical Activity of Chitin/Chitosan Based Materials—Influence of Physicochemical Properties Apart from Molecular Weight and Degree of *N*-Acetylation. *Polymers.* 2011;3:1875–1901. doi: 10.3390/polym3041875. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

21. Aranaz I., Mengíbar M., Harris R., Miralles B., Acosta N., Calderon L., Sanchez A., Heras A. Role of Physicochemical Properties of Chitin and Chitosan on their Functionality. *Curr. Chem. Biol.* 2014;8:27–42. doi: 10.2174/2212796808011411120957O4. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

22. Chen K., Guo B., Luo J. Quaternized carboxymethyl chitosan/organic montmorillonite nanocomposite as a novel cosmetic ingredient against skin aging. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2017;173:100–106. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2017.05.088. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

23. Jana S., Florczyk S., Leung M., Zhang M. High-strength pristine porous chitosan scaffolds for tissue engineering. *J. Mater. Chem.* 2012;22:6291–6299. doi: 10.1039/c2jm16676c. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

24. Diabb Zavala J.M., Leija Gutiérrez H.M., Segura-Cárdenas E., Mamidi N., Morales-Avalos R. Manufacture and mechanical properties of knee implants using SWCNTs/UHMWPE composites. *J. Mech. Behav. Biomed. Mater.* 2021;120:104554. doi: 10.1016/j.jmbbm.2021.104554. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

25. Mamidi N., Velasco Delgadillo R.M., Barrera E.V. Covalently Functionalized Carbon Nano-Onions Integrated Gelatin Methacryloyl Nanocomposite Hydrogel Containing γ-Cyclodextrin as Drug Carrier for High-Performance pH-Triggered Drug Release. *Pharmaceuticals.* 2021;14:291. doi: 10.3390/ph14040291. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

26. Britto D., Assis O. Synthesis and mechanical properties of quaternary salts of chitosan-based films for food application. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2007;41:198–203. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2007.02.005. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

27. Mamidi N., Velasco Delgadillo R.M., Gonzáles Ortiz A., Barrera E.V. Carbon Nano-Onions Reinforced Multilayered Thin Film System for Stimuli-Responsive Drug Release. *Pharmaceutics.* 2020;12:1208. doi: 10.3390/pharmaceutics12121208. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

28. Mamidi N., Velasco Delgadillo R.M., Castrejon J.V. Unconventional and facile production of a stimuli-responsive multifunctional system for simultaneous drug delivery and environmental remediation. *Environ. Sci. Nano.* 2021;8:2081–2097. doi: 10.1039/D1EN00354B. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

29. Sajomsang W., Tantayanon S., Tangpasuthadol V., Daly W.H. Quaternization of N-aryl chitosan derivatives: Synthesis, characterization and antibacterial activity. *Carbohydr. Res.* 2009;344:2502–2511. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2009.09.004. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

30. Wu D., Zhu L., Li Y., Zhang X., Xu S., Yang G., Delair T. Chitosan-based Colloidal Polyelectrolyte Complexes for Drug Delivery: A Review. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2020;238:116–126. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116126. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

31. Terayama H., Terayama E. High molecular antibacterial substances derived from chitin. About the manufacture of Macramin. *J. Antibiot.* 1948;2:44–45. [Google Scholar]

32. Polnok A., Borchard G., Verhoef J.C., Sarisuta N., Junginger H.E. Influence of methylation process on the degree of quaternization of *N*-trimethyl chitosan chloride. *Eur. J. Pharm. Biopharm.* 2004;57:77–83. doi: 10.1016/S0939-6411(03)00151-6. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

33. Jintapattanakit S., Mao T., Kissel V.B.J. Trimethyl chitosan and its applications in drug delivery. *Eur. J. Pharm. Biopharm.* 2008;70:563. doi: 10.1016/j.ejpb.2008.06.002. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

34. Snyman D.J.H., Hamman J.S., Kotze J.E., Rollings A.F.K. The relationship between the absolute molecular weight and the degree of quaternisation of N-trimethyl chitosan chloride. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2002;50:145–150. doi: 10.1016/S0144-8617(02)00008-5. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

35. Snyman D., Hamman J.H., Kotze A.F. Evaluation of the Mucoadhesive Properties of *N*-Trimethyl Chitosan Chloride. *Drug Dev. Ind. Pharm.* 2003;29:61–69. doi: 10.1081/DDC-120016684. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

36. Muzzarelli R., Jeuniaux C., Gooday G.W., editors. *International Conference on Chitin and Chitosan.* Plenum Press; Senigallia, Italy: 1986. pp. 303–306. [Google Scholar]

37. Xu T., Xin M., Li M., Huang H., Zhou S., Liu J. Synthesis, characterization and antibacterial activity of N,O-quaternary ammonium chitosan. *Carbohydr. Res.* 2011;346:2445–2450. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2011.08.002. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

38. Seong H.S., Whang H.S., Ko S.W. Synthesis of a Quaternary Ammonium Derivative of Chito-oligosaccharide as Antimicrobial Agent for Cellulosic Fibers. *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.* 2000;76:2009–2015. doi: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-4628(20000628)76:14<2009::AID-APP3>3.0.CO;2-W. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

39. Xiao B., Wan Y., Wang X., Zha Q., Liu H., Qiu Z., Zhang S. Synthesis and characterization of N-(2-hydroxy)propyl-3-trimethyl ammonium chitosan chloride for potential application in gene delivery. *Colloids Surf. B Biointerfaces.* 2012;91:168–174. doi: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2011.10.053. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

40. Wang B., Yang X., Qiao C., Li Y., Li T., Xu C. Effects of chitosan quaternary ammonium salt on the physicochemical properties of sodium carboxymethyl cellulose-based films. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2018;184:37–46. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2017.12.030. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

41. Shagdarova B., Lunkov A., Il'ina A., Varlamov V. Investigation of the properties of N-[(2-hydroxy-3-trimethylammonium) propyl] chloride chitosan derivatives. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2019;124:994–1001. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.11.209. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

42. Li R., Guo Z., Jiang P. Synthesis, characterization, and antifungal activity of novel quaternary chitosan derivatives. *Carbohydr. Res.* 2010;345:1896–1900. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2010.05.029. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

43. Tan W., Li Q., Dong F., Zhang J., Luan F., Wei L., Chen Y., Guo Z. Novel cationic chitosan derivative bearing 1,2,3-triazolium and pyridinium: Synthesis, characterization, and antifungal property. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2018;182:180–187. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2017.11.023. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

44. Wei L., Li Q., Tan W., Dong F., Luan F., Guo Z., Saso L., Dux L., Wegrzyn G., Csont T. Synthesis,characterization, and the antioxidant activity of double quaternized chitosan derivatives. *Molecules.* 2017;22:501. doi: 10.3390/molecules22030501. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

45. Jia R., Duan Y., Fang Q., Wang X., Huang J. Pyridine-grafted chitosan derivative as an antifungal agent. *Food Chem.* 2016;196:381–387. doi: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2015.09.053. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

46. Wang L., Xu X., Guo S., Peng Z., Tang T. Novel water soluble phosphonium chitosan derivatives: Synthesis, characterization and cytotoxicity studies. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2011;48:375–380. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2010.12.006. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

47. Zeng K., Lin F.X., Xie J., Wang M.Z., Rong J.L., Zhao Y., You Y.Z., Asif A., Ge X.W. Chitosan modified by *g*-ray-induced grafting of poly(tributyl-(4-vinylbenzyl)phosphonium) as a biosafe and high-efficiency gene carrier. *New J. Chem.* 2017;41:4182–4189. doi: 10.1039/C7NJ00008A. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

48. Holappa J., Hjálmarsdóttir M., Másson M., Rúnarsson Ö., Asplund T., Soininen P., Nevalainen T., Järvinen T. Antimicrobial activity of chitosan N-betainates. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2006;65:114–118. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2005.11.041. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

49. Rahimi M., Ahmadi R., Samadi Kafil H., Shafiei-Irannejad V. A novel bioactive quaternized chitosan and its silver-containing nanocomposites as a potent antimicrobial wound dressing: Structural and biological properties. *Mater. Sci. Eng. C.* 2019;101:360–369. doi: 10.1016/j.msec.2019.03.092. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

50. Zambito Y., Uccello-Barretta G., Zaino C., Balzano F., Di Colo G. Novel transmucosal absorption enhancers obtained by aminoalkylation of chitosan. *Eur. J. Pharm. Sci.* 2006;29:460–469. doi: 10.1016/j.ejps.2006.09.001. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

51. Zambito Y., Zaino C., Burchielli S., Carelli V., Serafini M.F., Di Colo G. Novel quaternary ammonium chitosan derivatives for the promotion of intraocular drug absorption. *J. Drug Deliv. Sci. Technol.* 2007;17:19–24. doi: 10.1016/S1773-2247(07)50003-1. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

52. Freitas E.D., Moura C.F., Jr., Kerwald J., Beppu M.M. An Overview of Current Knowledge on the Properties, Synthesis and Applications of Quaternary Chitosan Derivatives. *Polymers.* 2020;12:2878. doi: 10.3390/polym12122878. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

53. Kulkarni A.D., Patel H.M., Surana S.J., Vanjari Y.H., Belgamwar V.S., Pardeshi C.V. N,N,N-Trimethyl chitosan: An advanced polymer with myriad of opportunities in nanomedicine. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2017;157:875–902. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2016.10.041. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

54. Dimulescu I.A., Nechifor A.C., Bărdacă C., Oprea O., Paşcu D., Totu E.E., Albu P.C., Nechifor G., Bungău S.G. Accessible Silver-Iron Oxide Nanoparticles as a Nanomaterial for Supported Liquid Membranes. *Nanomaterials.* 2021;11:1204. doi: 10.3390/nano11051204. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

55. Holappa J., Nevalainen T., Safin R., Soininen P., Asplund T., Luttikhedde T., Másson M., Järvinen T. Novel water-soluble quaternary piperazine derivatives of chitosan: Synthesis and characterization. *Macromol. Biosci.* 2006;6:139–144. doi: 10.1002/mabi.200500202. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

56. Cao L., Zhang H., Cao C., Zhang J., Li F., Huang Q. Quaternized Chitosan-Capped Mesoporous Silica Nanoparticles as Nanocarriers for Controlled Pesticide Release. *Nanomaterials.* 2016;6:126. doi: 10.3390/nano6070126. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

57. Cao Z., Liu W., Xiong J., Qu N., Li H., Yao G. Synthesis and properties of N,N-dimethyl-O-quaternary ammonium chitosan. *Adv. Mater. Res.* 2011;152:1337–1341. doi: 10.4028/www.scientific.net/AMR.219-220.1337. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

58. Cai J., Dang Q., Liu C., Wang T., Fan B., Yan J., Xu Y. Preparation, characterization and antibacterial activity of O-acetyl-chitosan-N-2-hydroxypropyl trimethyl ammonium chloride. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2015;80:8–15. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2015.05.061. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

59. Pedro R.D.O., Schmitt C.C., Neumann M.G. Syntheses and characterization of amphiphilic quaternary ammonium chitosan derivatives. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2016;147:97–103. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2016.03.083. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

60. Zhang A., Ding D., Ren J., Zhu X., Yao Y. Synthesis, characterization, and drug-release behavior of amphiphilic quaternary ammonium chitosan derivatives. *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.* 2014;131:1–9. doi: 10.1002/app.39890. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

61. Badawy M.E., Rabea E.I. Synthesis and antifungal property of N-(aryl) and quaternary N-(aryl) chitosan derivatives against Botrytis cinerea. *Cellulose.* 2014;21:3121–3137. doi: 10.1007/s10570-014-0333-0. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

62. Han Y., Lin Q. Synthesis, characterization, and antibacterial activity of quaternized of N-aromatic chitosan derivatives. *Appl. Mech. Mater.* 2012;138:1202–1208. doi: 10.4028/www.scientific.net/AMM.138-139.1202. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

63. Sang W., Tang Z., He M.Y., Hua Y.P., Xu Q. Synthesis and preservative application of quaternized carboxymethyl chitosan containing guanidine groups. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2015;75:489–494. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2015.01.009. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

64. Li Z., Yang F., Yang R. Synthesis and characterization of chitosan derivatives with dual-antibacterial functional groups. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2015;75:378–387. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2015.01.056. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

65. Alkahtane A.A., Ghanem E., Bungau S.G., Alarifi S., Ali D., Albasher G., Alkahtani S., Aleya L., Abdel-Daim M.M. Carnosic acid alleviates chlorpyrifos-induced oxidative stress and inflammation in mice cerebral and ocular tissues. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* 2020;27:11663–11670. doi: 10.1007/s11356-020-07736-1. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

66. Silva D.S., dos Santos D.M., Almeida A., Marchiori L., Campana-Filho S.P., Ribeiro S.J.L., Sarmento B. N-(2-Hydroxy)-propyl-3-trimethylammonium, O-Mysristoyl Chitosan Enhances the Solubility and Intestinal Permeability of Anticancer Curcumin. *Pharmaceutics.* 2018;10:245. doi: 10.3390/pharmaceutics10040245. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

67. Wang C.H., Liu W.S., Sun J.F., Hou G.G., Chen Q., Cong W., Zhao F. Non-toxic O-quaternized chitosan materials with better water solubility and antimicrobial function. *Int. J. Biolo. Macromol.* 2016;84:418–427. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2015.12.047. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

68. Li H., Zhang Z., Bao X., Xu G., Yao P. Fatty acid and quaternary ammonium modified chitosan nanoparticles for insulin delivery. *Colloids Surf. B.* 2018;170:136–143. doi: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2018.05.063. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

69. Sahariah P., Gaware V.S., Lieder R., Jónsdóttir S., Hjálmarsdóttir M.Á., Sigurjonsson O.E., Másson M. The Effect of Substituent, Degree of Acetylation and Positioning of the Cationic Charge on the Antibacterial Activity of Quaternary Chitosan Derivatives. *Mar. Drugs.* 2014;12:4635–4658. doi: 10.3390/md12084635. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

70. Jarmila V., Vavríková E. Chitosan derivatives with antimicrobial, antitumour and antioxidant activities-a review. *Curr. Pharm. Des.* 2011;17:3596–3607. [PubMed] [Google Scholar]

71. Sajomsang W., Gonil P., Saesoo S. Synthesis and antibacterial activity of methylated *N*-(4-*N*,*N*-dimethylaminocinnamyl) chitosan chloride. *Eur. Polym. J.* 2009;45:2319–2328. doi: 10.1016/j.eurpolymj.2009.05.009. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

72. Avadi M.R., Sadeghi A.M.M., Tahzibi A., Bayati K., Pouladzadeh M., Zohuriaan-Mehr M.J., Rafiee-Tehrani M. Diethylmethyl chitosan as an antimicrobial agent: Synthesis, characterization and antibacterial effects. *Eur. Polym. J.* 2004;40:1355–1361. doi: 10.1016/j.eurpolymj.2004.02.015. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

73. Sadeghi A.M., Dorkoosh F.A., Avadi M.R., Saadat P., Rafiee-Tehrani M., Junginger H.E. Preparation, characterization and antibacterial activities of chitosan, N-trimethyl chitosan (TMC) and N-diethylmethyl chitosan (DEMC) nanoparticles loaded with insulin using both the ionotropic gelation and polyelectrolyte complexation methods. *Int. J. Pharm.* 2008;355:299–306. doi: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2007.11.052. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

74. Vallapa N., Wiarachai O., Thongchul N., Pan J., Tangpasuthadol V., Kiatkamjornwong S., Hoven V.P. Enhancing antibacterial activity of chitosan surface by heterogeneous quaternization. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2011;83:868–875. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2010.08.075. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

75. Xu T., Xin M., Li M., Huang H., Zhou S. Synthesis, characteristic and antibacterial activity of *N*,*N*,*N*-trimethyl chitosan and its carboxymethyl derivatives. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2010;81:931–936. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2010.04.008. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

76. Fu X., Shen Y., Jiang X., Huang D., Yan Y. Chitosan derivatives with dual-antibacterial functional groups for antimicrobial finishing of cotton fabrics. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2011;85:221–227. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2011.02.019. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

77. Martins A.F., Facchi S.P., Follmann H.D., Pereira A.G., Rubira A.F., Muniz E.C. Antimicrobial activity of chitosan derivatives containing N-quaternized moieties in its backbone: A review. *Int. J. Mol. Sci.* 2014;15:20800–20832. doi: 10.3390/ijms151120800. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

78. Huang J., Jiang H., Qiu M., Geng X., Yang R., Li J., Zhang C. Antibacterial activity evaluation of quaternary chitin against Escherichia coli and Staphylococcus aureus. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2013;52:85–91. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2012.10.017. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

79. Prado H.J., Matulewicz M.C. Cationization of polysaccharides: A path to greener derivatives with many industrial applications. *Eur. Polym. J.* 2014;52:53–75. doi: 10.1016/j.eurpolymj.2013.12.011. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

80. Rieger K.A., Birch N.P., Schiffman J.D. Designing electrospun nanofiber mats to promote wound healing—A review. *J. Mater. Chem. B.* 2013;1:4531–4541. doi: 10.1039/c3tb20795a. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

81. Ignatova M.G., Manolova N.E., Toshkova R.A., Rashkov I.B., Gardeva E.G., Yossifova L.S., Alexandrov M.T. Electrospun nanofibrous mats containing quaternized chitosan and polylactide with in vitro antitumor activity against HeLa cells. *Biomacromolecules.* 2010;11:1633–1645. doi: 10.1021/bm100285n. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

82. Goodman M., Naiman D.Q., Lakind J.S. Systematic review of the literature on triclosan and health outcomes in humans. *Crit. Rev. Toxicol.* 2018;48:1–51. doi: 10.1080/10408444.2017.1350138. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

83. Nakamura T., Kashimura N., Noji T., Suzuki O., Ambo Y., Nakamura F., Kishida A. Triclosan-coated sutures reduce the incidence of wound infections and the costs after colorectal surgery: A randomized controlled trial. *Surgery.* 2013;153:576–583. doi: 10.1016/j.surg.2012.11.018. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

84. Yang Y., Yang S.B., Wang Y.G., Zhang S.H., Yu Z.F., Tang T.T. Bacterial inhibition potential of quaternised chitosan-coated VICRYL absorbable suture: An in vitro and in vivo study. *J. Orthop. Translat.* 2016;8:49–61. doi: 10.1016/j.jot.2016.10.001. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

85. Yang Y., Ao H., Wang Y., Lin W., Yang S., Zhang S., Yu Z., Tang T. Cytocompatibility with osteogenic cells and enhanced in vivo anti-infection potential of quaternized chitosan-loaded titania nanotubes. *Bone Res.* 2016;4:16027. doi: 10.1038/boneres.2016.27. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

86. Li M., Yang Y. Quaternized chitosan promotes the antiproliferative effect of vemurafenib in melanoma cells by increasing cell permeability. *Onco Targets Ther.* 2018;11:8293–8299. doi: 10.2147/OTT.S183311. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

87. Wongwanakul R., Jianmongkol S., Gonil P., Sajomsang W., Maniratanachote R., Aueviriyavit S. Biocompatibility study of quaternized chitosan on the proliferation and differentiation of Caco-2 cells as an in vitro model of the intestinal barrier. *J. Bioact. Compat. Polym.* 2017;32:92–107. doi: 10.1177/0883911516658780. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

88. Penesyan A., Gillings M., Paulsen I.T. Antibiotic discovery: Combatting bacterial resistance in cells and in biofilm communities. *Molecules.* 2015;20:5286–5298. doi: 10.3390/molecules20045286. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

89. Tan H., Ma R., Lin C., Liu Z., Tang T. Quaternized Chitosan as an Antimicrobial Agent: Antimicrobial Activity, Mechanism of Action and Biomedical Applications in Orthopedics. *Int. J. Mol. Sci.* 2013;14:1854–1869. doi: 10.3390/ijms14011854. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

90. Arciola C.R., Campoccia D., Montanaro L. Implant infections: Adhesion, biofilm formation and immune evasion. *Nat. Rev. Microbiol.* 2018;16:397–409. doi: 10.1038/s41579-018-0019-y. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

91. Patel R. Biofilm and antimicrobial resistance. *Clin. Orthop. Relat. Res.* 2005;437:41–47. doi: 10.1097/01.blo.0000175714.68624.74. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

92. Zaha D.C., Bungau S., Uivarosan D., Tit D.M., Maghiar T.A., Maghiar O., Pantis C., Fratila O., Rus M., Vesa C.M. Antibiotic Consumption and Microbiological Epidemiology in Surgery Departments: Results from a Single Study Center. *Antibiotics.* 2020;9:81. doi: 10.3390/antibiotics9020081. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

93. Piras A.M., Zambito Y., Burgalassi S., Monti D., Tampucci S., Terreni E., Fabiano A., Balzano F., Uccello-Barretta G., Chetoni P. A water-soluble, mucoadhesive quaternary ammonium chitosan-methyl-_-cyclodextrin conjugate forming inclusion complexes with dexamethasone. *J. Mater. Sci. Mater. Med.* 2018;29:42. doi: 10.1007/s10856-018-6048-2. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

94. Piras A.M., Esin S., Benedetti A., Maisetta G., Fabiano A., Zambito Y., Batoni G. Antibacterial, Antibiofilm, and Antiadhesive Properties of Different Quaternized Chitosan Derivatives. *Int. J. Mol. Sci.* 2019;20:6297. doi: 10.3390/ijms20246297. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

95. Li M.Q., Chen X.G., Liu J.M., Zhang W.F., Tang X.X. Molecular weight-dependent antifungal activity and action mode of chitosan against Fulvia fulva (Cooke) Ciffrri. *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.* 2011;119:3127–3135. doi: 10.1002/app.31831. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

96. Guo Z.Y., Xing R.G., Liu S., Zhong Z.M., Ji X., Wang L., Li P.C. The influence of the cationic of quaternized chitosan on antifungal activity. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 2007;118:214–217. doi: 10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2007.07.003. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

97. Guo Z.Y., Xing R.E., Liu S., Zhong Z.M., Ji X., Wang L., Li P.C. The influence of molecular weight of quaternized chitosan on antifungal activity. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2008;71:694–697. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2007.06.027. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

98. Chethan P.D., Vishalakshi B., Sathish L., Ananda K., Poojary B. Preparation of substituted quaternized arylfuran chitosan derivatives and their antimicrobial activity. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2013;59:158–164. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2013.04.045. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

99. de Oliveira Pedro R., Takaki M., Gorayeb T.C., Del Bianchi V.L., Thomeo J.C., Tiera M.J., de Oliveira Tiera V.A. Synthesis, characterization and antifungal activity of quaternary derivatives of chitosan on Aspergillus flavus. *Microbiol. Res.* 2013;168:50–55. doi: 10.1016/j.micres.2012.06.006. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

100. Il'Ina A.V., Shagdarova B.T., Lun'Kov A.P., Kulikov S.N., Varlamov V.P. In vitro antifungal activity of metal complexes of a quaternized chitosan derivative with copper ions. *Microbiology.* 2017;86:590–595. doi: 10.1134/S0026261717050101. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

101. De Souza R.H.F.V., Takaki M., Pedro R.D.O., Gabriel J.D.S., Tiera M.J., Tiera V.A.D.O., De Souza R.V. Hydrophobic effect of amphiphilic derivatives of chitosan on the antifungal activity against Aspergillus flavus and Aspergillus parasiticus. *Molecules.* 2013;18:4437–4450. doi: 10.3390/molecules18044437. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

102. Nechifor A.C., Pîrţac A., Albu P.C., Grosu A.R., Dumitru F., Dimulescu I.A., Oprea O., Paşcu D., Nechifor G., Bungău S.G. Recuperative Amino Acids Separation through Cellulose Derivative Membranes with Microporous Polypropylene Fiber Matrix. *Membranes.* 2021;11:429. doi: 10.3390/membranes11060429. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

103. Yostawonkul J., Surassmo S., Iempridee T., Pimtong W., Suktham K., Sajomsang W., Gonil P., Ruktanonchai U.R. Surface modification of nanostructure lipid carrier (NLC) by oleoyl-quaternized-chitosan as a mucoadhesive nanocarrier. *Colloids Surf. B Biointerfaces.* 2017;149:301–311. doi: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2016.09.049. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

104. Naik J.B., Pardeshi S., Patil R.P., Patil P.B., Mujumdar A. Mucoadhesive Micro-/Nano Carriers in Ophthalmic Drug Delivery: An Overview. *BioNano Sci.* 2020;10:564–582. doi: 10.1007/s12668-020-00752-y. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

105. Konovalova M., Shagdarova B., Zubareva A., Generalov A., Grechikhina M., Svirshchevskaya E. Development of mucoadhesive chitosan-based drug delivery system. *Prog. Chem. Appl. Chitin Deriv.* 2018;203:108–113. doi: 10.15259/PCACD.23.10. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

106. Bai B., Mi X., Xiang X., Heiden P.A., Heldt C.L. Non-enveloped virus reduction with quaternized chitosan nanofibers containing graphene. *Carbohydr Res.* 2013;18:137–142. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2013.08.020. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

107. Dos Santosa D.M., Leiteb I.S., de Lacerda Bukzema A., de Oliveira Santosa R.P., Frollinia E., Inadab N.M., Campana-Filho S.P. Nanostructured electrospun nonwovens of poly(ε-caprolactone)/quaternized chitosan for potential biomedical applications. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2018;186:110–121. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2018.01.045. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

108. Cheah W.Y., Show P.L., Ng I.S., Lin G.Y., Chiu C.Y., Chang Y.K. Antibacterial activity of quaternized chitosan modified nanofiber membrane. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2019;126:569–577. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.12.193. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

109. Mi X., Vijayaragavan K.S., Heldt C. Virus adsorption of water-stable quaternized chitosan nanofibers. *Carbohydr. Res.* 2014;387C:24–29. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2014.01.017. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

110. Mi X., Heldt C.L. Adsorption of a non-enveloped mammalian virus to functionalized nanofibers. *Colloids Surf. B Biointerfaces.* 2014;121:319–324. doi: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2014.06.007. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

111. Ignatova M., Yossifova L., Gardeva E., Manolova N., Toshkova R., Rashkov I., Alexandrov M. Antiproliferative activity of nanofibers containing quaternized chitosan and/or doxorubicin against MCF-7 human breast carcinoma cell line by apoptosis. *J. Bioact. Compat. Polym.* 2011;26:539–551. doi: 10.1177/0883911511424655. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

112. Zhou Y., Yang H., Liu X., Mao J., Gu S., Xu W. Potential of quaternization-functionalized chitosan fiber for wound dressing. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2013;52:327–332. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2012.10.012. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

113. Ren Y., Huang L., Wang Y., Mei L., Fan R., He M., Wang C., Tong A., Chen H., Guo G. Stereocomplexed electrospun nanofibers containing poly (lactic acid) modified quaternized chitosan for wound healing. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2020;247:116754. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116754. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

114. Liu G., Tsen W.C., Jang S.C., Hu F., Zhong F., Zhang B., Wang J., Liu H., Wang G., Wen S., et al. Composite membranes from quaternized chitosan reinforced with surface-functionalized PVDF electrospun nanofibers for alkaline direct methanol fuel cells. *J. Membr. Sci.* 2020;611:118242. doi: 10.1016/j.memsci.2020.118242. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

115. Xiao X., Zhu Y., Liao J., Wang T., Sun W., Tong Z. High-efficient and synergetic antibacterial nanocomposite hydrogel with quaternized chitosan/Ag nanoparticles prepared by one-pot UV photochemical synthesis. *Biopolymers.* 2020;111:e23354. doi: 10.1002/bip.23354. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

116. You J., Xie S., Cao J., Ge H., Xu M., Zhang L., Zhou J. Quaternized Chitosan/Poly(acrylic acid) Polyelectrolyte Complex Hydrogels with Tough, Self-Recovery, and Tunable Mechanical Properties. *Macromolecules.* 2016;49:1049–1059. doi: 10.1021/acs.macromol.5b02231. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

117. Mamidi N., Delgadillo R.M.V. Design, fabrication and drug release potential of dual stimuli-responsive composite hydrogel nanoparticle interfaces. *Colloid Surf. B.* 2021;204:111819. doi: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2021.111819. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

118. Xue H., Hu L., Xiong Y., Zhu X., Wei C., Cao F., Zhou W., Sun Y., Endo Y., Liu M., et al. Quaternized chitosan-Matrigel-polyacrylamide hydrogels as wound dressing for wound repair and regeneration. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2019;226:115302. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2019.115302. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

119. Wei S., Liu X., Zhou J., Zhang J., Dong A., Huang P., Wang W., Deng L. Dual-crosslinked nanocomposite hydrogels based on quaternized chitosan and clindamycin-loaded hyperbranched nanoparticles for potential antibacterial applications. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2020;155:153–162. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2020.03.182. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

120. Zheng Z., Bian S., Li Z., Zhang Z., Liu Y., Zhai X., Pan H., Zhao X. Catechol modified quaternized chitosan enhanced wet adhesive and antibacterial properties of injectable thermo-sensitive hydrogel for wound healing. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2020;249:116826. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116826. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

121. Fathi P., Omidi M.-Y., Mozafari M., Zamanian A. Synthesis and characterization of timolol maleate-loaded quaternized chitosan-based thermosensitive hydrogel: A transparent topical ocular delivery system for the treatment of glaucoma. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2020;159:117–128. [PubMed] [Google Scholar]

122. Ren Y., Zhao X., Liang X.P., Ma X., Guo B. Injectable hydrogel based on quaternized chitosan, gelatin and dopamine as localized drug delivery system to treat Parkinson's disease. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2017;105:1079–1087. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2017.07.130. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

123. Wang Y.-Q., Liu Y., Wang Y.-X., Wu Y.-J., Jia P.-Y., Shan J.-J., Wu J., Ma G.-H., Su Z.-G. The potential adjuvanticity of quaternized chitosan hydrogel based microparticles for porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus inactivated vaccine. *Int. Immunopharm.* 2016;39:84–91. doi: 10.1016/j.intimp.2016.07.012. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

124. Riham R., Mohamed Mahmoud H., Abu Elella M., Sabaa W. Synthesis, characterization and applications of N-quaternized chitosan/poly(vinyl alcohol) hydrogels. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2015;80:149–161. [PubMed] [Google Scholar]

125. Tan Y., Wu H., Xie T., Chen L., Hu S., Tian H., Wang Y., Wang J. Characterization and antibacterial effect of quaternized chitosan anchored cellulose beads. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2020;155:1325–1332. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2019.11.104. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

126. Sowmya A., Meenakshi S. An efficient and regenerable quaternary amine modified chitosan beads for the removal of nitrate and phosphate anions. *J. Environ. Chem. Eng.* 2013;1:906–915. doi: 10.1016/j.jece.2013.07.031. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

127. Eskandarloo H., Godec M., Arshadi M., Padilla-Zakour O.I., Abbaspourrad A. Multi-porous quaternized chitosan/polystyrene microbeads for scalable, efficient heparin recovery. *Chem. Eng. J.* 2018;348:399–408. doi: 10.1016/j.cej.2018.04.099. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

128. Quinlan P., Nathan G., Kam T. Removal of 2-naphthoxyacetic acid from aqueous solution using quaternized chitosan beads. *Can. J. Chem. Eng.* 2016;95 doi: 10.1002/cjce.22594. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

129. Li Q., Wang W., Hu G., Cui X., Sun D., Jin Z., Zhao K. Evaluation of Chitosan Derivatives Modified Mesoporous Silica Nanoparticles as Delivery Carrier. *Molecules.* 2021;26:2490. doi: 10.3390/molecules26092490. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

130. Abdel-Aziz M.M., Elella M.H.A., Mohamed R.R. Green synthesis of quaternized chitosan/silver nanocomposites for targeting mycobacterium tuberculosis and lung carcinoma cells (A-549) *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 2020;142:244–253. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2019.09.096. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

131. Luo J., Han G., Xie M., Cai Z., Wang X. Quaternized chitosan/montmorillonite nanocomposite resin and its adsorption behavior. *Iran. Polym. J.* 2015;24:531–539. doi: 10.1007/s13726-015-0343-2. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

132. Jang S.-C., Chuang F.-S., Tsen W.-C., Kuo T.-W. Quaternized chitosan/functionalized carbon nanotubes composite anion exchange membranes. *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.* 2019;136:47778. doi: 10.1002/app.47778. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

133. Chunli G., Shujun Z., Wen-Chin T., Fuqiang H., Fei Z., Bingqing Z., Hai L. Hierarchical layered double hydroxide coated carbon nanotube modified quaternized chitosan/polyvinyl alcohol for alkaline direct methanol fuel cells. *J Power Sources.* 2019;441:227176. [Google Scholar]

134. Dhiman P., Bhatia M. Ketoconazole loaded quaternized chitosan nanoparticles-PVA film: Preparation and evaluation. *Polym. Bull.* 2021 doi: 10.1007/s00289-020-03500-0. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

135. Ji Q.X., Zhao Q.S., Deng J., Lü R. A novel injectable chlorhexidine thermosensitive hydrogel for periodontal application: Preparation, antibacterial activity and toxicity evaluation. *J. Mater. Sci. Mater. Med.* 2010;21:2435–2442. doi: 10.1007/s10856-010-4098-1. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

136. Chuang C.C., Tsai M.H., Yen H.J., Shyu H.F., Cheng K.M., Chen X.A., Chen C.C., Young J.J., Kau J.H. A fucoidan-quaternary chitosan nanoparticle adjuvant for anthrax vaccine as an alternative to CpG oligodeoxynucleotides. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2020;229:115403. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2019.115403. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

137. Zhao K., Li S., Li W., Yu L., Duan X., Han J., Wang X., Jin Z. Quaternized chitosan nanoparticles loaded with the combined attenuated live vaccine against Newcastle disease and infectious bronchitis elicit immune response in chicken after intranasal administration. *Drug Deliv.* 2017;24:1574–1586. doi: 10.1080/10717544.2017.1388450. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

138. Lu Y., Cheng D., Lu S., Huang F., Li G. Preparation of quaternary ammonium salt of chitosan nanoparticles and their textile properties on Antheraea pernyi silk modification. *Textile Res. J.* 2014;84:2115–2124. doi: 10.1177/0040517514538691. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

139. Wen Y., Zhang X.Y., Sheng L., Lian X.J. Preparation and In Vitro Release Study of Quaternized Chitosan Nanoparticles. *Adv. Mater. Res.* 2014;1053:466–472. doi: 10.4028/www.scientific.net/AMR.1053.466. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

140. Abueva S.D., Kim C., Lee B., Nath B.T. Chitosan-hyaluronic acid polyelectrolyte complex scaffold crosslinked with genipin for immobilization and controlled release of BMP-2. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2015;115:160–169. [PubMed] [Google Scholar]

141. Omer A.M., Ziora Z.M., Tamer T.M., Khalifa R.E., Hassan M.A., Mohy-Eldin M.S., Blaskovich M.A.T. Formulation of Quaternized Aminated Chitosan Nanoparticles for Efficient Encapsulation and Slow Release of Curcumin. *Molecules.* 2021;26:449. doi: 10.3390/molecules26020449. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

142. Yu S., Hao S., Sun B., Zhao D., Yan X., Jin Z., Zhao K. Quaternized Chitosan Nanoparticles in Vaccine Applications. *Curr. Med. Chem.* 2020;27:4932–4944. doi: 10.2174/0929867326666190227192527. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

143. He M., Chu C.H. Dual stimuli responsive glycidyl methacrylate chitosan-quaternary ammonium hybrid hydrogel and its bovine serum albumin release. *J. Appl. Polym. Sci.* 2013;130:3736–3745. doi: 10.1002/app.39635. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

144. Li X., Xing R., Xu C., Liu S., Qin Y., Li K., Yu H., Li P. Immunostimulatory effect of chitosan and quaternary chitosan: A review of potential vaccine adjuvants. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2021;264:118050. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2021.118050. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

145. Verheul R.J., Amidi M., van der Wal S., van Riet E., Jiskoot W., Hennink W.E. Synthesis, characterization and in vitro biological properties of O-methyl free N,N,N-trimethylated chitosan. *Biomaterials.* 2008;29:3642–3649. doi: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2008.05.026. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

146. Malik A., Gupta M., Gupta V., Gogoi H., Bhatnagar R. Novel application of trimethyl chitosan as an adjuvant in vaccine delivery. *Int. J. Nanomed.* 2018;13:7959–7970. doi: 10.2147/IJN.S165876. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

147. Kammona O., Kiparissides C. Recent advances in nanocarrier-based mucosal delivery of biomolecules. *J. Control. Release.* 2012;161:781–794. doi: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2012.05.040. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

148. Zhao K., Zhang Y., Zhang X., Li W., Shi C., Guo C., Dai C., Chen Q., Jin Z., Zhao Y., et al. Preparation and efficacy of Newcastle disease virus DNA vaccine encapsulated in chitosan nanoparticles. *Int. J. Nanomed.* 2014;9:389–402. doi: 10.2147/IJN.S54226. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

149. Tao W., Zheng H.Q., Fu T., He Z.J., Hong Y. N-(2-hydroxy) propyl-3-trimethylammonium chitosan chloride: An immune-enhancing adjuvant for hepatitis E virus recombinant polypeptide vaccine in mice. *Hum. Vaccines Immunother.* 2017;13:1818–1822. doi: 10.1080/21645515.2017.1331191. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

150. Heyman B. Regulation of antibody responses via antibodies, complement, and Fc receptors. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 2000;18:709–737. doi: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.18.1.709. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

151. Almalik A., Alradwan I., Majrashi M.A., Alsaffar B.A., Algarni A.T., Alsuabeyl M.S., Alrabiah H., Tirelli N., Alhasan A.H. Cellular responses of hyaluronic acid-coated chitosan nanoparticles. *Toxicol. Res.* 2018;7:942–950. doi: 10.1039/C8TX00041G. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

152. Wu Y., Wu S., Hou L., Wei W., Zhou M., Su Z., Wu J., Chen W., Ma G. Novel thermal-sensitive hydrogel enhances both humoral and cell-mediated immune responses by intranasal vaccine delivery. *Eur. J.* 2012;81:486–497. doi: 10.1016/j.ejpb.2012.03.021. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

153. Wang Y.Q., Fan Q.Z., Liu Y., Yue H., Ma X.W., Wu J., Ma G.H., Su Z.G. Improving adjuvanticity of quaternized chitosan-based microgels for H5N1 split vaccine by tailoring the particle properties to achieve antigen dose sparing effect. *Int. J. Pharm.* 2016;515:84–93. doi: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2016.09.082. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

154. Brokstad K.A., Eriksson J.C., Cox R.J., Tynning T., Olofsson J., Jonsson R., Davidsson A. Parenteral vaccination against influenza does not induce a local antigen-specific immune response in the nasal mucosa. *J. Infect. Dis.* 2002;185:878–884. doi: 10.1086/339710. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

155. Neutra M.R., Kozlowski P.A. Mucosal vaccines: The promise and the challenge. *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 2006;6:148–158. doi: 10.1038/nri1777. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

156. Zhang S., Huang S., Lu L., Song X., Li P., Wang F. Curdlan sulfate-*O*-linked quaternized chitosan nanoparticles: Potential adjuvants to improve the immunogenicity of exogenous antigens via intranasal vaccination. *Int. J. Nanomed.* 2018;13:2377–2394. doi: 10.2147/IJN.S158536. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

157. Nevagi R.J., Khalil Z.G., Hussein W.M., Powell J., Batzloff M.R., Capon R.J., Good M.F., Skwarczynski M., Toth I. Polyglutamic acid-trimethyl chitosan-based intranasal peptide nano-vaccine induces potent immune responses against group A streptococcus. *Acta Biomater.* 2018;80:278–287. doi: 10.1016/j.actbio.2018.09.037. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

158. Tan H.L., Peng Z.X., Li Q.T., Xu X.F., Guo S.R., Tang T.T. The use of quaternised chitosan-loaded PMMA to inhibit biofilm for-mation and downregulate the virulence-associated gene expression of antibiotic-resistant staphylococcus. *Biomaterials.* 2012;33:365–377. doi: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2011.09.084. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

159. Tan H.L., Guo S.R., Yang S.B., XU X.F., Tang T.T. Physical characterization and osteogenic activity of the quaternized chitosan-loaded PMMA bone cement. *Acta Biomater.* 2012;8:2166–2174. doi: 10.1016/j.actbio.2012.03.013. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

160. Tan H.L., Ao H.Y., Ma R., Lin W.T., Tang T.T. In vivo effect of quaternized chitosan-loaded polymethylmethacrylate bone cement on methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus epidermidis infection of the tibial metaphysis in a rabbit model. *Antimicrob. Agents Chem.* 2014;58:6016–6023. doi: 10.1128/AAC.03489-14. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

161. Peng Z.X., Wang L., Du L., Guo S.R., Wang X.Q., Tang T.T. Adjustment of the antibacterial activity and biocompatibility of hydroxypropyltrimethyl ammonium chloride chitosan by varying the degree of substitution of quaternary ammonium. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2010;81:275–283. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2010.02.008. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

162. Sun L., Du Y., Fan L., Chen X., Yang J. Preparation, characterization and antimicrobial activity of quaternized carboxymethyl chitosan and application as pulp-cap. *Polymer.* 2006;47:1796–1804. doi: 10.1016/j.polymer.2006.01.073. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

163. Kadama J., Chen H., Zhou T., Kushioka J., Okada R., Tsukazaki H., Tateiwa D., Nakagawa S., Ukon Y., Bal Z., et al. Antibacterial efficacy of quaternized chitosan coating on 3D printed titanium cage in rat intervertebral disc space. *Spine J.* 2021;21:1529–9430. [PubMed] [Google Scholar]

164. Verlee A., Mincke S., Stevens C.V. Recent developments in antibacterial and antifungal chitosan and its derivatives. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2017;164:268–283. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2017.02.001. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

165. Tavaria F.K., Costa E.M., Pintado M.M., Pina-Vaz I., Carvalho M.F., Pintado M.M. A quitosana como biomaterial odontológico: Estado da arte. *Rev. Bras. Eng. Bioméd.* 2013;29:110–120. doi: 10.4322/rbeb.2013.002. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

166. Zhang C., Du J., Peng Z. Correlation between *Enterococcus faecalis* and persistent intraradicular infection compared with primary intraradicular infection: A systematic review. *J. Endod.* 2015;41:1207–1213. doi: 10.1016/j.joen.2015.04.008. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

167. Patel E., Pradeep P., Kumar P., Choonara Y.E., Pillay V. Oroactive dental biomaterials and their use in endodontic therapy. *J. Biomed. Mater. Res. B Appl. Biomater.* 2020;108:201–212. doi: 10.1002/jbm.b.34379. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

168. Troiano G., Perrone D., Dioguardi M., Buonavoglia A., Ardito F., Lo Muzio L. In vitro evaluation of the cytotoxic activity of three epoxy resin-based endodontic sealers. *Dent. Mater. J.* 2018;37:374–378. doi: 10.4012/dmj.2017-148. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

169. Wang N., Ji Y., Zhu Y., Wu X., Mei L., Zhang H., Deng J., Wang S. Antibacterial effect of chitosan and its derivative on Enterococcus faecalis associated with endodontic infection. *Exp. Ther. Med.* 2020;19:3805–3813. doi: 10.3892/etm.2020.8656. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

170. Lee H.L., Wang R.S., Hsu Y.C., Chuang C.C., Chan H.R., Chiu H.C., Wang Y.B., Chen K.Y., Fu E. Antifungal effect of tissue conditioners containing poly(acryloyloxyethyltrimethyl ammonium chloride)-grafted chitosan on Candida albicans growth in vitro. *J. Dent. Sci.* 2018;13:160–166. doi: 10.1016/j.jds.2017.06.004. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

171. Gonil P., Sajomsang W., Ruktanonchai U.R., Pimpha N., Sramala I., Nuchuchua O., Saesoo S., Chaleawlertumpon S., Puttipipatkhachorn S. Novel quaternized chitosan containing β-cyclodextrin moiety: Synthesis, characterization and antimicrobial activity. *Carbohydr. Polym.* 2011;83:905–913. doi: 10.1016/j.carbpol.2010.08.080. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

172. Ji Q.X., de Zhong Y., Lü R., Zhang W.Q., Deng J., Chen X.G. In vitro evaluation of the biomedical properties of chitosan and quaternized chitosan for dental applications. *Carbohydr. Res.* 2009;344:1297–1302. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2009.05.014. [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

173. Ji Q.X., Deng J., Yu X.B., Xu Q.C., Xu X.Y. An in vitro evaluation of the antibacterial activity of chitosan-based thermosensitive hydrogel against periodontal pathogens. *Shanghai Kou Qiang Yi Xue.* 2009;18:397–400. [PubMed] [Google Scholar]

174. Sakulwech S., Lourith N., Ruktanonchai U., Kanlayavattanakul M. Preparation and characterization of nanoparticles from quaternized cyclodextrin-grafted chitosan associated with hyaluronic acid for cosmetics. *Asian J. Pharm. Sci.* 2018;13:498–504. doi: 10.1016/j.ajps.2018.05.006. [PMC free article] [PubMed] [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

175. Khalaji S., Golshan Ebrahimi N., Hosseinkhani H. Enhancement of biocompatibility of PVA/HTCC blend polymer with collagen for skin care application. *Int. J. Polym. Mater. Polym. Biomater.* 2021;70:459–468. doi: 10.1080/00914037.2020.1725761. [CrossRef] [Google Scholar]

Back

Advertisel

Chemical Biology & Drug Design / Volume 97, Issue 3 / p. 572-591

REVIEW ARTICLE

1,3,4-oxadiazole and its derivatives: A review on recent progress in anticancer activities

Ankur Vaidya, Devender Pathak, Kamal Shah

First published: 18 September 2020
https://doi.org/10.1111/cbdd.13795
Citations: 68

Abstract

The 1,3,4-oxadiazole nucleus is a biologically imperative scaffold possesses numerous biological activities. The broad and potent activity of 1,3,4-oxadiazole and their derivatives has established them as important pharmacological scaffolds especially in the treatment of cancer disease. Several di-, tri-, aromatic, and heterocyclic substituted 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives have been reported to possess potent anticancer activity. These substituted 1,3,4-oxadiazoles had shown different mechanism of action and participated in anticancer drug discovery and development. This review is complementary to earlier reviews and aims to review the work reported on anticancer activities of 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives from year 2000 to the beginning of 2020.

CONFLICT OF INTERESTS

There is no conflict of interest.

Back

Abadi, A. H., Eissa, A. A. H., & Hassan, G. S. (2003). Synthesis of novel 1,3,4-trisubstituted pyrazole derivatives and their evaluation as antitumor and antiangiogenic agents. *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin*, **51**(7), 838–844.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Abbs, T. F., Reji, F., Devi, S. K. C., Thomas, K. K., Sreejalekshmi, K. G., & Manju, S. L. (2008). Synthesis and cytotoxicity studies of thiazole analogs of the anticancer marine alkaloid dendrodoine. *International Journal of Chemistry*, **47B**, 1145–1150.

Google Scholar

Abdo, N. Y. M., & Kamel, M. M. (2015). Synthesis and anticancer evaluation of 1,3,4-oxadiazoles, 1,3,4-thiadiazoles, 1,2,4-triazoles and mannich bases. *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin*, **63**, 369–376.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Aboraia, A. S., Rahman, H. M., Mahfouz, N. M., & Gendy, A. M. (2006). Novel 5-(2-hydroxyphenyl)-3-substituted-2,3-dihydro-1,3,4-oxadiazole-2-thaione derivatives: Promising anticancer agents. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, **14**(4), 1236–1246.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Adimule, V., Medapa, S., Jagadeesha, A. H., Kumar, L. S., & Rao, P. K. (2014). Synthesis, characterization and cytotoxic evaluation of novel derivatives of 1, 3, 4-oxadiazole containing 5-phenyl thiophene moiety. *IOSR Journal of Pharmacy and Biological Sciences*, **9**(5), 42–48.

Google Scholar

Back

agents. *Electronic Conference on Medicinal Chemistry*, 5(1), 1–18.

Google Scholar

Ashok, D., & Vanaja, B. (2016). Synthesis and anticancer activity evaluation of (*E*)-3-{[5-(aryl)-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl]methyl}-5-(3,4,5-trimethoxybenzylidene)thiazolidine-2,4-diones. *Journal of General Chemistry*, **86**(3), 81–685.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

Bajaj, S., Asati, V., Singh, J., & Roy, P. P. (2015). 1,3,4-Oxadiazoles: An emerging scaffold to target growth factors, enzyme and kinases as anticancer agents. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **97**, 124–141.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Basavaraj, R., Suresh, M., & Sangapure, S. S. (2005). Synthesis and pharmacological activities of some 2-arylamino/arylidene hydrazino-4-(5'-chloro-3'-methylbenzofuran-2'-yl)thiazoles. *International Journal of Heterocyclic Chemistry*, **15**, 153–156.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

Basavaraja, K. M., Somasekhar, B., & Appalaraju, S. (2008). Synthesis and biological activity of some 2-[3-substituted-2-thione-1,3,4-thiazole-5-yl) amino benzothiazoles. *International Journal of Heterocyclic Chemistry*, **18**, 69–72.

CAS Web of Science® Google Scholar

Bhatt, P., Sen, A., & Jha, A. (2020). Design and ultrasound assisted synthesis of novel 1,3,4-oxadiazole drugs for anti-cancer activity. *ChemistrySelect*, **5**, 3347–3354.

Back

Bhusari, K. P., Khedekar, P. B., Umathe, S. N., Bahekar, R. H., & Raghu Ram Rao, A.(2000). Synthesis of 8-bromo-9-substituted-1, 3-benzothiazolo-[5, 1-b]-1, 3, 4-triazoles and their anthelmintic activity. *International Journal of Heterocyclic Chemistry*, **9**, 275–278.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Chowki, A. A., Magdum, C. S., Ladda, P. L., & Mohite, S. K. (2008). Synthesis and antitubercular activity of 6-nitro-2-[4-formyl-3-(substituted phenyl) pyrazol-1-yl] benzothiazoles. *International Journal of Chemical Sciences*, **6**(3), 1600–1605.

CAS | Google Scholar

Das, S., Kumar, A. B., Singh, J., Maiti, B. C., & Maity, T. K. (2010). Synthesis of some novel 3,5-disubstituted 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives and anticancer activity on EAC animal model. *Medicinal Chemistry Research*, **20**(8), 1206–1213.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Demirayak, S., Kayagil, I., & Yurttas, L. (2011). Microwave supported synthesis of some novel 1,3-diarylpyrazino[1,2-a]benzimidazole derivatives and investigation of their anticancer activities. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **46**(1), 411–416.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Du, Q. R., Li, D. D., Pi, Y. Z., Li, J. R., Sun, J., & Fang, F. (2013). Novel 1,3,4-oxadiazole thioether derivatives targeting thymidylate synthase as dual anticancer /antimicrobial agents. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, **21**, 2286–2297.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Garg, D., Henrich, S., Salo-Ahen, O. M. H., Myllykallio, H., Costi, M. P., & Wade, R. C. (2010). Novel approaches for targeting thymidylate synthase to overcome the resistance and toxicity of anticancer drugs. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **53**, 6539–6544.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Ghag, S. P., & Kamath, C. R. (2017). Synthesis and anticancer activity of some novel 1, 3, 4-oxadiazole compounds of 5-amino pyrazole. *International Journal on Advanced Science, Engineering and Information Technology*, **5**(3), 52–56.

Google Scholar

Glomb, T., Szymankiewicz, K., & Swiatek, P. (2018). Anti-cancer activity of derivatives of 1,3,4-oxadiazole. *Molecules*, **23**, 3361. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules23123361

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Gudipati, R., Anreddy, R. N. R., & Manda, S. (2011). Synthesis, characterization and anticancer activity of certain 3-{4-(5-mercapto-1,3,4-oxadiazole-2-yl)phenylimino}indolin-2-one derivatives. *Saudi Pharmaceutical Journal*, **19**(3), 153–158. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsps.2011.03.002

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Guimaráes, C. R. W., Boger, D. L., & Jorgensen, W. L. (2005). Elucidation of fatty acid amide hydrolase inhibition by potent α-ketoheterocycle derivatives from Monte Carlo simulations. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, **127**(49), 17377–17384.

Back

Hans, J., Wallace, E. M., Zhao, Q., Lyssikatos, J. P., Aicher, T. D., Laird, E. R., Robinson, J., & Allen, S. (2012). Mitotic Kinesin inhibitors and methods of use thereof patent. Array BioPhrma Inc., US8236825.

Google Scholar

Jain, A. K., Sharma, S., Vaidya, A., Ravichandran, V., & Agrawal, R. K. (2013). 1,3,4-thiadiazole and its derivatives: A review on recent progress in biological activities. *Chemical Biology & Drug Design*, **81**(85), 557–576.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Jain, A. K., Vaidya, A., Ramchandran, V., Keshaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K.(2012). Recent development and biological activities of thiazolidinone derivatives: A Review. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, **20**(11), 3378–3395.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Jain, S., Chandra, V., Jain, P. K., Pathak, K., Pathak, D., & Vaidya, A. (2019). Comprehensive review on current developments of quinoline-based anticancer agents. *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*, **12**(8), 4920–4946.

CAS Web of Science® Google Scholar

Jain, S., Pattnaik, S., Pathak, K., Kumar, S., Pathak, D., Jain, S. K., & Vaidya, A. (2017). Anticancer potential of thiazole derivatives: A retrospective review. *Mini - Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, **18**(8), 640–655.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

Jisha, M. V., Kamalabhai, A. V. K., Babu, G., & Biju, C. R. (2013). Synthesis, characterization and *invitro* anticancer screening of novel thiazole-1,3,4-oxadiazole hybrid analogues. *Journal of Chemical and Pharmaceutical Research*, **5**(6), 64–70.

Back

Kapoor, A., & Dhiman, N. (2016). Anticancer evaluation of 2-aryl substituted benzimidazole derivatives bearing 1,3,4-oxadiazole nucleus. *Der Pharmacia Lettre*, **8**(12), 149–156.

CAS | Google Scholar

Karabasanagouda, T., Adhikari, A. V., Ramgopal, D., & Parameshwarappa, G. (2008). Synthesis of some new 2-(4-alkylthiophenoxy)-4-substituted-1, 3-thiazoles as possible anti-inflammatory and anti-microbial agents. *International Journal of Chemistry*, **47**, 144–152.

Google Scholar

Khalil, N. A., Kamal, A. M., & Emam, S. H. (2015). Design, synthesis, and antitumor activity of novel 5-pyridyl-1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives against the breast cancer cell line MCF-7. *Biological &/and Pharmaceutical Bulletin*, **38**, 763–773.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Kumar, A., Gupta, A., Kashaw, V., Shukla, G., Mishra, V., & Kashaw, S. K. (2012). Syntheses and anticancer evaluation of some novel 3-[5-(4-Substituted) phenyl-1,3,4-oxadiazole-2yl]-2- phenylquinazoline-4(3h)-ONES. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, **4**(1), 502–506.

CAS | Google Scholar

Kumar, D., Sundaree, S., Johnson, E. O., & Shah, K. (2009). An efficient synthesis and biological study of novel indolyl-1, 3, 4-oxadiazoles as potent anticancer agents. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, **19**(15), 4492–4494.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Chemistry Letters, **26**(19), 4829–4831.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Leizerman, I., Avunie, M. R., Elkabets, M., Fich, A., & Gheber, A. (2004). Differential effects of monastrol in two human cell lines. *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, **61**, 2060–2070.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Lelyukh, M., Havrylyuk, D., & Lesyk, R. (2015). Synthesis and anticancer activity of isatin, oxadiazole and 4-thiazolidinone based conjugates. *Chemistry & Chemical Technology*, **9**(1), 29–36.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Madhavilatha, B., Bhattacharjee, D., Sabitha, G., Reddy, B. V. S., Yadav, J. S., Jain, N., & Reddye, B. J. M. (2018). Synthesis and in vitro anticancer activity of novel 1,3,4-oxadiazole- linked 1,2,3-triazole/isoxazole hybrids. *Journal of Heterocyclic Chemistry*, **55**, 863–870.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Mahajan, N. S., Pattan, S. R., Jadhav, R. L., Pimpodkar, N. V., & Manikrao, A. M. (2008). Synthesis of some thiazole compounds of biological interest containing Mercapto Group. *International Journal of Chemical Sciences*, **6**(2), 800–806.

CAS | Google Scholar

Mochona, B., Mazzio, E., Gangapurum, M., Mateeva, N., & Redda, K. K. (2015). Synthesis of some benzimidazole derivatives bearing 1,3,4-oxadiazole moiety as anticancer agents. *Chemical Science Transactions*, **4**(2), 534–540.

Back

Mohan, C. D., Anilkumar, N. C., Rangappa, S., Shanmugam, M. K., Mishra, S., & Chinnathambi, A. (2018). Novel 1,3,4-Oxadiazole induces anticancer activity by targeting nF-κB in hepatocellular carcinoma cells. *Frontiers in Oncology.*, **8**, 42.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Moriarty, E., Carr, M., Bonham, S., & Aldabbagh, F. (2010). Synthesis and toxicity towards normal and cancer cell lines of benzimidazole quinones containing fused aromatic rings and 2-aromatic ring substituents. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **45**(9), 3762–3769.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Murty, M. S. R., Ram, K. R., Rao, R. W., Yadav, J. S., Rao, J. V., Cheriyan, V. T., & Anto, R. J. (2011). Synthesis and anticancer evaluation of amide derivatives of 1,3,4-oxadiazole linked with benzoxazole. *Medicinal Chemistry Research*, **20**, 576–586.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Neeraja, P., Srinivas, S., Mukkanti, K., Dubey, P. K., & Pal, S. (2016). 1H–1,2,3-Triazolyl-substituted 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives containing structural features of ibuprofen/naproxen: Their synthesis and antibacterial evaluation. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, **26**(21), 5212–5217.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Patel, N. B., Purohit, A. C., Rajani, D. P., Moo-Puc, R., & Rivera, G. (2013). New 2-benzylsulfanyl-nicotinic acid based 1, 3, 4-oxadiazoles: Their synthesis and biological evaluation. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **62**, 677–687.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Puthiyapurayil, P., Poojary, B., Chikkanna, C., & Buridipad, S. K. (2012). Design, synthesis and biological evaluation of a novel series of 1,3,4-oxadiazole bearing N-methyl-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl pyrazole moiety as cytotoxic agents. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **53**, 203–210.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Raffa, D., Daidone, G., Maggio, B., Cascioferro, S., Plescia, F., & Schillaci, D. (2004). Synthesis and antileukemic activity of new 3-(1-phenyl-3-methylpyrazol-5-yl)-2-styrylquinazolin-4(3H)-ones. *IL Farmaco.*, **59**(3), 215–221.

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

Ragab, A. F., Abou-Seri, S. M., Abdel-Aziz, S. A., Alfayomy, A. M., & Aboelmagd, M. (2017). Design, synthesis and anticancer activity of new monastrol analogues bearing 1,3,4-oxadiazole moiety. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **138**, 140–151.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Rahman, D., & Ezzat, A. (2013). Synthesis, quantitative structure-activity relationship and biological evaluation of 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives possessing diphenylamine moiety as potential anticancer agents. *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin*, **61**(2), 151–159.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Rajak, H., Agrawal, A., Parmar, P., Thakur, B. S., Veerasamy, R., & Sharma, P. C. (2011). 2,5-disubstituted-1,3,4-oxadiazoles/thiadiazole as surface recognition moiety: Design and synthesis of novel hydroxamic acid-based histone deacetylase inhibitors. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, **21**(19), 5735–5738.

Back

Rashid, M., Husain, A., & Mishra, R. (2012). Synthesis of benzimidazoles bearing oxadiazole nucleus as anticancer agents. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **54**, 855–866.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Rasool, I., Ahmad, M., Khan, Z. A., Mansha, A., Maqbool, T., Zahoor, A. F., & Aslam, S. (2017). Recent advancements in oxadiazolebased anticancer agents. *Tropical Journal of Pharmaceutical Research March*, **16**(3), 723–733.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Ravinaik, B., Ramachandran, D., & Rao, M. V. B. (2019). Synthesis and anticancer evaluation of amide derivatives of 1,3,4-oxadiazole linked with benzoxazole. *Russian Journal of General Chemistry*, **89**(5), 1003–1008.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Roy, P. P., Bajaj, S., & Maity, T. K. (2017). Synthesis and evaluation of anticancer activity of 1, 3, 4- oxadiazole derivatives against ehrlich ascites carcinoma bearing mice and their correlation with histopathology of liver. *International Journal of Pharmaceutical Education and Research*, **51**(2), 260–269.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Sahoo, U., Seth, A. K., Balaraman, R., Velmurugan, R., & Gangawane, A. K. (2015). Design, synthesis, and in-vitro antiproliferative effect of some novel 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives bearing benzimidazole nucleus. *Egyptian Pharmaceutical Journal*, **14**, 187–195.

Google Scholar

Back

disubstituted-1,3,4-oxadiazole analogue. *BioMed Research International*, **14**, 1–14.
http://downloads.hindawi.com/journals/bmri/2014/491492.pdf

Google Scholar

Selvaraj, K., Kulanthai, K., & Sadhasivam, G. (2017). Synthesis, characterization and biological evaluation of novel 2,5 substituted-1,3,4 oxadiazole derivatives. *Saudi Pharmaceutical Journal*, **25**(3), 337–345.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Sengupta, P., Dash, D. K., Yeligar, V. C., Murugesh, K., Rajlingam, D., Singh, J., & Maity, T. K. (2008). Evaluation of anticancer activity of some 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivates. *Indian Journal of Chemistry*, **47B**, 460–462.

CAS | Google Scholar

Shahzad, S. A., Yar, M., Bajda, M., Jadoon, B., Khan, Z. A., & Naqvi, S. A. R. (2014). Synthesis and biological evaluation of novel oxadiazole derivatives: A new class of thymidine phosphorylase inhibitors as potential antitumor agents. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, **22**(3), 1008–1015.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Singh, J. K., Ashok, B., Rajapandi, R., Ghosh, T., Mondal, A., Maiti, B. C., & Maity, T. K. (2010). Synthesis and anticancer activity of some 1, 3, 4-oxadiazole derivatives against ehlirchascites carcinoma bearing mice model. *Pharmacologyonline.*, **1**, 406–416.

Google Scholar

Subramanyam, M., Sreenivasulu, R., Gundla, R., Rao, M. V. B., & Rao, K. P. (2018). Synthesis, biological evaluation and docking studies of 1,3,4-oxadiazole fused benzothiazole derivatives for anticancer drugs. *Letters in Drug Design & Discovery*, **15**, 1299–1307.

Back

Sun, J., Zhu, H., Yang, Z. M., & Zhu, H. L. (2013). Synthesis, molecular modelling and biological evaluation of 2-aminomethyl-5-(quinolin-2-yl)-1,3,4-oxadiazole-2(3H)-thione quinolone derivatives as novel anticancer agent. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **60**, 23–28.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, A. K., Kumar, B. R. P., Sastry, G. N., Keshaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2017). CoMFA, CoMSIA, kNN MFA and docking studies of 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives as potent caspase-3 activators. *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*, **10**, S3936–S3946.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, A. K., Kumar, P., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2011). Predicting anti-cancer activity of quinoline derivatives: CoMFA and CoMSIA approach. *Journal of Enzyme Inhibition and Medicinal Chemistry*, **26**(6), 854–861.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Jain, P., Jain, P., Tiwari, N., Jain, R., Jain, R., Jain, A. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2016). Synthesis and biological activities of oxadiazole derivatives: A review. *Mini - Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, **16**(10), 825–845.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Prashantha Kumar, B. R., Singh, S. K., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2020). Synthesis of 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives: Anticancer and 3D QSAR studies. *Monatshefte Für Chemie - Chemical Monthly*, **151**, 385–395. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00706-020-02553-1

CAS | Google Scholar

Back

components in a signalling pathway. [illegible] Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry, 20(19), 1906–1931.
https://doi.org/10.2174/1389557520666200212105417

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vinayak, A., Sudha, M., & Lalita, K. S. (2017). Design, synthesis and characterization of novel amine derivatives of 5-[5-(chloromethyl)-1, 3, 4-oxadiazol-2-yl]-2-(4-fluorophenyl)-pyridine as a new class of anticancer agents. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*, **16**(1), 11–19.

CAS | Google Scholar

Zarghi, A., & Hajimahdi, Z. (2013). Substituted oxadiazoles: A patent review (2010–2012). *Expert Opin Ther Patents.*, **23**(9), 1209–1232.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Zhang, Q. Z., Zhang, X. M., Chang, Y. X. K., & Jiao, Q. C. (2010). A review on chemical and biological heterocyclic compound. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, **18**, 7836–7841.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Zhang, X. M., Que, M., Sun, J., Zhang, Y. B., Yang, Y. S., & Wang, X. L. (2011). Synthesis, evaluation, molecular docking studies of 1,3,4-oxadiazole derivatives possessing 1,4-benzodioxan moiety as potential anticancer agents. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, **19**(21), 6518–6524.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Download PDF

ABOUT WILEY ONLINE LIBRARY

Privacy Policy
Terms of Use
About Cookies
Manage Cookies
Accessibility
Wiley Research DE&I Statement and Publishing Policies
Developing World Access

HELP & SUPPORT

Contact Us
Training and Support
DMCA & Reporting Piracy

OPPORTUNITIES

Subscription Agents
Advertisers & Corporate Partners

CONNECT WITH WILEY

The Wiley Network
Wiley Press Room

Back

companies. All rights reserved, including rights for text and data mining and training of artificial technologies or similar technologies.

Available online at www.jmpas.com
ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019
Review article

PSYCHOLOGICAL DISTRESS IN HEALTHCARE WORKERS DURING COVID-19 PANDEMIC

Ramakant Yadav[1], Ankur Vaidya[2]*, Raj Kumar[3], Shweta Jain[4], Ajay Kumar Shukla[5]

1. Department of Neurology, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, U.P., India
2. Pharmacy College Saifai, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, U.P., India
3. Department of Neurosurgery, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, U.P., India
4. Sir Madan Lal Institute of Pharmacy, Etawah, U.P., India
5. Institute of Technology and Management, Department of Pharmacy GIDA, Gorakhpur, U.P., India

ABSTRACT

With the sudden outbreak of coronavirus disease of 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic, the Health Care Workers (HCWs) have claimed varying echelons of stress, anxiety and insomnia. This is the first write up ever reported describing the numerous studies conducted globally to determine the mental health issues in HCWs throughout in COVID-19 pandemic. Herein we compile the studies conducted in different countries worldwide. All these studies alleged high pervasiveness of stress, anxiety, depression, insomnia, somatization, obsessive-compulsive symptoms and other mental disorders in HCWs. Female medical staff showed high occurrence of mental distress over male medical staff. Transmission of infection from HCWs to their family members further increases fear and distress. Ample education, training, psychosocial services and social support have improve mental health of HCWs.

Keywords: Anxiety, Stress, Depression, Mental Health, Psychology, COVID-19

Received- 10/01/2021, **Reviewed-** 15/01/2021, **Revised/ Accepted**- 22/01/2021

Correspondence

Ankur Vaidya* ✉ ankur_vaidya2000@yahoo.co.in
Pharmacy College Saifai, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, U.P., India- 206130.

INTRODUCTIION

Human disease is an impairment of the usual state of a human being that disturbs or modifies its vital functions. Numerous drugs and technologies have been reported till date for the betterment of humanity. Recently, researchers focusing on new technologies including nanotechnology and drug design techniques for the treatment of these diseases.[1-4]

In December 2019, the sudden outbreak of a 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) originated from Wuhan, China, threatens the world that has rapidly spread globally and has now been declared as a pandemic by the WHO. 2019-nCoV is the causative virion of coronavirus disease of 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic, having spherical or pleomorphic enveloped, positive-sense, single-stranded RNA (possibly largest known genome of size between 26 kb and 32 kb) having nucleoprotein. Recently, COVID-19 pandemic has become a clinical threat not only to general population but also to healthcare workers (HCWs) worldwide and entire scientist, researchers and physicians all over the countries focused to find the treatment of this pandemic disease.[5]

Mild to severe symptoms of COVID-19 appear from 2 - 14 days after exposure. Fever, cough and tiredness are the common signs and symptoms, while muscle aches, chills, headache, chest pain, shortness or difficulty in breathing, sore throat and smell or taste loss are the other symptoms. Other less common symptoms, including nausea, vomiting and diarrhea have also been reported. Although favipiravir in combination with hydroxychloroquine and corticosteroids and many other drugs had recommended against 2019-nCoV, but still they are not the guarantee treatment of COVID-19.[6]
The ruined spread of 2019-nCoV over international travel density and immune naivety of the population, triggering urgent, draconian public health measures in many countries. The problem is more decisive for HCWs who are serving in COVID care centers. Psychological distress and mental health illness are the adjuvant symptoms of COVID-19 pandemic. As the

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

number of patients and occupancy of COVID-19 increases, the mental distresses also increases and urge the psychiatric treatment require not only for infected but also for health care professionals.[7] The enduring mental health impact of COVID- 19 among the common population, children, elderly, wandering workers and healthcare professionals increases the demand of mental health care from specialist professionals. However, to date, there is no specific recommendations issue for both general populations and HCWs from any international agencies mentioning the mental health issues during this COVID-19 pandemic. The fear for COVID-19 among the public appeared more as compared to the severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) outbreak, possibly due to increased air mobile and engrained global connectedness made the extent of COVID-19 appeared much more rambling. Furthermore, all-embracing coverage of corpus media, influences the psychological retort of the community to the COVID-19 threat, and further aggravates anxiety among community even when it is used to hearten them to take precautionary and preventive measures to guard themselves from the virus.[8]

Psychological Distress in Pandemic Condition

At the time of the SARS outbreak, 18% - 57% of HCWs claimed emotional distress. Similarly, during Ebola outbreak numbers of medical practitioners including HCWs were experienced psychological disturbance due to over workload and settings without any protective tools and ambitious mainly by empathy. Alike to SARS and Ebola, COVID-19 pandemic state is not so differ, and poses a more significant mental health effect on the medical practitioners.[9]

Although it is difficult to predict mental health consequences of the COVID-19 impact, however elevating rates of anxiety, depression, posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) and negative societal behaviors have been reported in health care workers. Healthcare workers remain worried for their relatives to be infected by their own transmission and thus avoid coming in contact with their family members.

A study was designed and conducted to assess the psychological impact of COVID- 19 on HCWs and to compare it to that of stress brought on by Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) epidemic in Saudi Arabia.[10] 811 HCWs was recruited to measure mental distress during COVID-19 pandemic, along with Generalized Anxiety Disorder (GAD-7). About 71.8% (582 out of 811) HCWs completed the survey questionnaire, in which about 40% were bared before to MERS-CoV infection. HCWs were reported more anxious about transmitting COVID-19 to a family member rather than acquiring the infection themselves and 41.0% staff was more stressed about COVID-19 as compared to MERS-CoV, while stress level was found to be equal in both infectious diseases. 68.25% (397) enrolled HCWs claimed for mild anxiety, followed with 20.8% (121) moderate anxiety, 8.1% (47) showed high moderate and only 2.9% (17) had very high anxiety against COVID-19 pandemic.

Factors Responsible For Psychological Distress

Demographics and negative society behavior

While taking all protective measures, people remain in fear with the realism of the current and vagueness of the future. Young teenagers and adults are facing uncertainty with respect to their career, professional life and jobs. Fear of infection is creating a panic situation among them. Maintaining a balance between mental and physical health is of utmost prominence to function with optimal clarity.[11] Moreover a negative society's behavior worsens the mental distress reactions (anger, insomnia, uncertainty and fear of illness), health risk behaviors (augmented consumption of tobacco, alcohol and social isolation), mental health disorders (i.e. anxiety disorders, depression, somatization and post-traumatic stress disorder), and lowered perceived health. Mental health professionals must ensure to provide necessary support to both who infected and to those who deliver care.

In India, the first suicidal case was revealed on 12th Feb 2020 in Andhra Pradesh. Although the patient was not infected with COVID-19, still he was so disturbed that in order to protect his family, he quarantined himself and later due to anxiety and fear committed to suicide by hanging himself from a tree.[12]

Increased loneliness and social isolation of HCWs in this pandemic situation, increases psychological distress. Monitoring loneliness and endorsing belongings are candidate mechanisms to protect against psychological distress.[13]

The interference of schedule clinical practice, the sense of loss of control and consequently fear of the impending decline of health services, has annoyed 'overflowing' anxiety and depression among HCWs, a feature which is common of epidemics.[14] Depression is related with deprived medication adherence, which may upsurge morbidity amid older healthcare professionals

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

with contemporaneous medical conditions. Seize of freedom of movement with family and friends, steady engagement in leisure deeds and gaining of sustenance and essential items also worsen the psychological poise of HCWs.

Furthermore, as the HCWs had been quarantined, showed severe symptoms of post-traumatic stress as compared to common public who had been quarantined. HCWS also felt more stigmatization than the common public, exhibited additional avoidance behaviors after quarantine, stated more financial loss in terms of income, and were steadily extra affected psychologically: they claimed extensively more annoyance, sadness, worry, fear, frustration, helplessness, loneliness, nervousness, isolation and were fewer happy.

A recent study conducted by Kazmi et al., (2020), to examine the impact of COVID-19 and lockdown on the mental health of the different age groups population of India.[15] Anxiety, depression and stress were investigated among 1000 individuals of different age groups, genders and employment. Young group (15-35 years) showed an increase incidence of depression, while anxiety and stress were prevalent among 21-25 years of individuals. A significant difference for depression and stress level were reported among employed and unemployed individuals, while no significant difference in anxiety level were claimed in both groups.

Chan and Chan (2004) reported that HCWs who were single, had a more jeopardy of emerging adverse psychiatric symptoms as compared to those who were married.[16] The problem is decisive when these HCWs have been quarantined regularly.

Shortage of healthcare workers

As the COVID-19 cases increase rapidly worldwide, the global public healthcare and mental health care emergency prerequisite also amplify. The scarcity of manpower worldwide is the major hurdle to deal with COVID-19 and thus healthcare workers faced an increased workload thru the fright of being infected. These medical responders face heightened stress and become emotionally exaggerated and traumatized. Increased workload, loneliness and segregation further more increase fear, anxiety, and depression and sleep disorders.

The condition is terrifying in those countries having inadequate numbers of mental health professionals in comparison to the forthcoming growth of demand. The most recently data published by Kirton (2020) illustrated that the European countries (Eurostat) including Switzerland having 51.7; in Germany 27.4, in France 22.9, in Italy 17.4, in Croatia 16.1, in Spain 10.5, in Poland 9.2 and in Bulgaria 7.8 numbers of psychiatrists available per 100.000 inhabitants.[17] Even in the U.S., the condition is also alarming and only 11 psychiatrists available per 100.000, while in China it is only 2.2. Furthermore, Marr (2019) reported that in the U.S. 40% lives in scarcity of mental health professionals and even 60% of the population survive without a psychiatrist. Although the availability of adequate numbers of mental health professionals and psychiatrists are not the warranty that the HCWs will not face the psychological distress and mental illness in times of the ongoing pandemic.

Poor working conditions

Health professionals working in critical care units like ICU, especially, require mental health professionals to reduce stress levels and risk of depression. These HCWs remains in fear of high chances of exposure risk possibly due to highly contagious with multiple transmission route, high exposure dose, long daily contact hours, and ICU stay.

Recently, Naushad et al., (2019) reported that the HCWs who works in emergency departments and or intensive care units had a high risk of mounting psychiatric outcomes than those working in other departments.[18] Working in isolation wards or containment zones further increase anxiety and fear of becoming infected.

According to World Health Organization (WHO) guidelines COVID-19 can be transmitted chiefly from person to person from nose or mouth in the forms of droplets. Thus aerosol generating procedures, including all trans oral interventions, nasal endoscopy, laryngoscopy and tracheostomy deemed to put medical professional at high risk of viral infection and thus International Head and Neck Scientific Group (IHNSG) advised to avoid all these aerosol generating procedures and recommended only to use in emergency.

Psychological Distress Among Healthcare Workers

Kang et al., (2020) reported first the mental health of 994-medical and nursing staff in Wuhan, China.[19] Of all participants, mental health disturbances were reported sub threshold (36.9%), mild (34.4%), moderate (22.4%) and severe (6.2%) in the instant rouse of the viral epidemic. Young women were heavily disturbed. Importantly, managing tactics were varied in all applicants ranging from perusing psychological materials (36.3%), psychological resources through

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

media (50.4%), and contributing in counseling or psychotherapy (17.5%).

Lai et al (2020) investigated the stress of unfamiliar environment among 1257 HCWs in 34 hospitals of China in COVID-19 pandemic.[20] These HCWs were directly engaged in patients care, who were suspected or confirmed COVID-19 positive. 70% of HCWs reported distress, while 50% reported depression of 1257 HCWs. Similarly, Lv et al., (2020) reported overall 34.7% anxiety incidence and 24.8% mild anxiety incidence among 8028 doctors and nurses of 8 provinces (i.e. Beijing, Guangdong, Hainan, Hebei, Henan, Hubei, Jiangxi and Shanxi) of China.[21] The authors concluded that Chinese medical staff suffered from the psychological disorders. Table 1 represents mental health stress of HCWs around the world.

Table 1: Mental health stress of HCWs, reported in different countries.

Country	Number of HCWs	Stress	Anxiety	Depression	Sleep Disturbance
China	1257	70%	-	50%	-
China	8282	-	34.7%	-	-
Italy	1379	49.38%	19.80%	24.73%	8.27%
Jordan	1,006	-	34%,	19%,	29%
Spain	1459	80.6%	-		-
China	1563	73·4%	44·7%	50·7%	36.1%

A pathetic condition has been aroused in Philadelphia on Thursday, 19 March 2020, when health commissioner Dr. Thomas announced 10 of the 44 people with the Covid virus are healthcare workers.[22] This report brought a major depression among HCWs.

Spanish physicians Fernández and coworkers (2020) conducted a national self-reported online questionnaire started on 29 March to 5 April 2020 among 781 HCWs including 385 physicians, 233 nurses, and 164 other professionals and 1006 non-HCWs.[23] Anxiety, depression and acute stress related questions were asked and measured on Hamilton Anxiety Scale (HARS), Beck Depression Inventory (BDI), and the Acute Stress Disorder Inventory (ASDI). For anxiety, no significant differences were observed between HCWs (M 18.2, S.D. 10.4) and non-HCW (M 16.9, S.D. 10.3). While greater depressive symptoms were reported in HCW ($\chi 2 = 2.9$, $p = 0.09$) as compared to non-HCWs. Furthermore, higher symptoms of acute stress were reported in HCWs (M 4.9, S.D. 3.1) than non-HCW (M 4.3, S.D. 3.1). These findings suggested that HCWs have greater impact on mental health than in non-HCWs; even nurses and physician trainees are the most vulnerable groups.

Rossi et al., (2020) reported first in Italy the psychiatric distress among HCWs during COVID-19 pandemic.[24] A web-based study data were collected between 27 March to 31March 2020, using an online questionnaire. HCWs of Italy could only be participating. 1379 HCWs were participated in online questionnaire and responds. 273 (19.80%), HCWs claimed anxiety; 114 (8.27%) insomnia; 341 (24.73%) depression; 681 (49.38%) respondents endorsed PTSS and 302 (21.90%), high perceived stress. Younger age and female sex were associated with all investigated outcomes except insomnia, while General practitioners were more likely to endorse PTSS than other HCWs. Health care assistants and nurses claimed severe insomnia. The author's claims mental health issues in HCWs during COVID-19 pandemic, especially in young women and frontline practitioner. Further monitoring and specific interventions for HCWs were suggested to minimize long-term mental health–related disabilities.

Recently, a very impressive study was conducted and reported by Pappa and colleagues (2020) in Brain, Behavior, and Immunity Journal.[25] A data was obtained available online up to April 17th 2020. The review protocol is registered in PROSPERO and total 33062 participants were enrolled in the study. Anxiety, depression and insomnia were reported among HCWs in COVID-19 pandemic. 29.06% female and 20.92% male HCWs reported for anxiety, while 26.87% female and 20.34% male suffered from depression. The nurses showed higher (25.80%) anxiety as compared to doctors (21.73%); similarly greater depression rate was reported in nurse (29.65%) over doctors (24.5%). These results showed gender and occupational differences. Female HCWs and nurses showed higher rates of affective symptoms compared to male HCWs and medical staff respectively.

Benjamin et al., (2020) investigated the psychological distress of HCWs in Singapore in the midst from 19 February to 13 March 2020.[26] All HCWs showed the incidence of anxiety, depression, stress, and PTSD. The nonmedical HCWs were reported at highest risk for psychological distress as compared to medical HCWs during this COVID-19 outbreak.

Alike of mental health issue in HCWs worldwide, in UK HCWs also reported unprecedented mental pressures during the dealing with the COVID-19 pandemic. Choudhury et al., (2020) reported the psychological distress amongst 106 healthcare workers, who were

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

working in a cardiac centre in the North West of England in this COVID-19 pandemic outbreak.[27] During the time, the centre was anticipating the arrival of large numbers of Covid-19 patients and the hospital had started receiving some earlier cases. Mild anxiety was reported in 27%, moderate in 12% and severe in 22% of survey participants. Women reported higher anxiety levels as compared to men. However, no significant differences in anxiety were reported on the basis of occupation, direct exposure to patients, age or length of NHS experience.

An Ireland physician Gavin and his team members (2020) reported 25% of HCWs were positive for COVID-19 sin Ireland, which was higher than Italy and Spain.[28] Higher positive cases in HCWs amplified fears of healthcare workers that may become ill and unable to care for or risk infecting their children. The authors reported psychological impact on Covid-19 frontline healthcare workers, high rates of anxiety, depression, distress and insomnia.

Tsamakis and colleagues (2020) reported the psychological burden on healthcare professionals in Greece during COVID-19 pandemic. Authors discussed potential measures to minimise psychological distress among frontline HCWs against this biothreat.[29]

An online survey among 1,006 practitioners (55.3% females) was conducted during a stringent lockdown in Jordan. Exhaustion (34%), anxiety (34%), depression (19%) and sleep disturbances (29%) were reported.[30] Salgado et al., (2020) described psychological distress level and Sense of Coherence (SOC) of healthcare professionals of Spain during COVID-19 crisis. 80.6% of healthcare professionals had shown psychological distress with mean score on the SOC-13 scale was 62.8 points (SD = 12.02).[31]

Recently, Zhang et al., (2020) reported the survey outcomes in Frontiers in Psychiatry. The survey involved 1563 medical staff, reported that 50·7% of medical staff found the incidence of depression, 44·7% had anxiety and 36.1% sleep disturbance. 73·4% of medical staff showed stress related symptoms. These outcomes may guide health authorities to allocate health resources and to generate suitable treatments for medical staff who have mental health problems.[32]

Very recent psychological intervention study was conducted by Huang et al., (2020) among 230 healthcare professionals who were involved in the treatment of COVID-19 in China.[33] The Self-rating Anxiety Scale (SAS) and PTSD- Self-rating Scale (PTSD-SS) were generated. 53 out of 230 (23.04%), healthcare professionals reported incidence of anxiety, while the severe anxiety (2.17% i.e. 5/230), moderate anxiety (4.78% i.e. 11/230) and mild anxiety (16.09% i.e. 37/230). Female medical staff showed higher incidence of anxiety as compared to male medical staff [25.67% (48/187) vs 11.63% (5/43) respectively], while nurses showed higher anxiety as compared to doctors [26.88% (43/160) vs 14.29% (10/70)]. These results showed high occurrence of anxiety and stress disorder among medical staff and suggested the psychological skills training of medical staff. Female nurses require more attention for mental health treatment.

Furthermore, an online survey was conducted from 19 February to 06 March 2020 by Zhang and colleagues in China, over 2,182 HCWs including both nonmedical health workers (no. 1255) and medical health workers (no. 927).[34] Medical-HCWs showed high prevalence of insomnia (38.4%), anxiety (13.0%), depression (12.2%), somatization (1.6%) and obsessive-compulsive symptoms (5.3%) over nonmedical-HCWs (30.5%; 8.5%; 9.5%; 0.4% and 2.2%) respectively. Medical HCWs had organic disease was an independent factor for anxiety, depression, insomnia, somatization and obsessive-compulsive symptoms; while nonmedical HCWs had organic disease was at risk factor for depression, insomnia and obsessive-compulsive symptoms. Female HCWs, lived in rural area were reported to be at vulnerable risk factors for anxiety, depression, insomnia and obsessive-compulsive symptoms.

Wang and co-authors (2020) investigated the instant psychological responses and associated factors during the early stage of COVID-19 outbreak in Mainland China among the common population.[35] Results showed that 53.8% of respondents claimed moderate or severe psychological impact, while 28.8% and 16.5% reported moderate to severe anxiety and depressive symptoms respectively.

Coping Strategies for Psychological Distress

After the first outbreak of COVID-19 in Wuhan, Hubei province, China, the indigenous government of Wuhan had executed the policies, addressing the mental health problems in infected medical staff. Almost 1230 medical HCWs had been called from different provinces to Wuhan for patients care, strengthen logistics support, and to lessen the work pressure on medical workers. A

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

shift system has been introduced to provide rest for front-line medical workers and to reduce work pressure. Online platforms had been generated to minimize the risk of transmission between the patients and medical staff. In Ren Min Hospital of Wuhan University and Mental Health Center of Wuhan, a psychological intervention team had been set up to provide mental support for HCWs. Hundreds of HCWs received these interventions, and reported worthy response, and their provision is mounting to extra persons and hospitals.

Chen et al., (2020) vividly illustrated a detailed psychological intervention plan of The Second Xiangya Hospital China for their HCWs, to maintain their mental health.[36] The plan covered three areas including a development of psychological intervention team to provide online materials; a psychological assistance hotline team to guide, supervise and to solve psychological problems; and psychological interventions for group activities. However, healthcare workers showed reluctant to participate in this programme and programme was redesigned and included rest area, guaranteed food, and record video sharing facilities with their families. The rest area was periodically visited by a counsellor. More than 100 HCWs could rest at a time, and most of them report feeling at home in this accommodation. A remarkable result were obtained among HCWs and recommended to include ongoing feedback and modification of such programmes.

Currently, in Ontario, within a week, more than 450 licensed social workers, psychologists and psychotherapists registered themselves to provide free telephone therapy sessions to HCWs in COVID-19 pandemic. While in Canada, medical students offer their services (e.g., household tasks, conveying groceries and providing child care) to HCWs in need.[37] All these tack ticks can lessen the effect of quarantine or isolation and aid to preserve wellness, and fitness in HCWs so that they can return to work when able.

Blake and coworkers, (2020) utilized Agile methodology for the development and evaluation of a digital learning package for the wellbeing for all UK HCWs.[38] The package had been accessed 17,633 times within 7 days and HCWs claimed higher satisfaction with it's content, usability and utility. The most important feature of this e-package was free of cost, and direct provides digital support on 'psychological wellbeing for healthcare workers'.

Timely monitoring and reporting mental distress reactions and mental health disorders in general populations and vulnerable groups, including front-line workers, should be the priority to minimize the self-harm and suicide attempts.

Guidelines to Reduce Psychological Burden of COVID-19

According to WHO, it is paradox that still there is no adequate guidelines previously available for HCWs who have been dealing with exposed individuals to provide counseling and psychiatric screening facilities to fight against anxiety, depression and suicide temper. WHO reports of 2020, further claims that numerous physicians develop anxiety, depression, PTSD and burnout after the cessation of the pandemic.

On 18 March 2020, WHO released the guideline regarding the psychosocial deliberations during this COVID-19 outbreak for the general population, healthcare workers, for team leaders or managers, for children to their carrier, for old age people and for people in isolation.

Considering the mental health response in medical staff, National Health Commission of China issued a guideline of psychological emergency intervention for 2019-nCoV on dated January 27, 2020. It was the first guideline in China, exploring the multifaceted psychological fortification of the mental health of medical workers.

CONCLUSION

Healthcare workers remain at increased peril of moral harm and mental health problems and need to proactive steps to protect their mental wellbeing during this COVID-19 pandemic. HCWs must be vigorously monitored, supported, and, where necessary, provided with evidence based treatment. Reducing stress by capitalizing on coping policies akin to encouraging lifestyle behaviors can enormously improve mental health well-being. Continuing convention with loved ones either direct or through social media with maintaining precautions also helps to reduce fear and anxiety. Engaging in habitual physical work, eating healthy food, practicing good sleep hygiene where possible, and guaranteeing sufficient rest and breaks between shifts have been recommended by the WHO. Avoid tobacco and consumption of alcohol or other drugs also beneficial for mental health.

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

CONFLICT OF INTEREST

The authors declare no conflict of interest, financial or otherwise.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Declared none

REFERENCES

1. Vaidya A, Pathak D, Shah K, 2020. 1,3,4-oxadiazole and its Derivatives: A Review on Recent Progress in Anticancer Activities. Chemical Biology & Drug Design (Online).
2. Vaidya A, Jain S, Jain A, Jain A, 2020. Simvastatin-Loaded PEGylated Solid Lipid Nanoparticles: Lipid Functionalization to Improve Blood Circulation. Bionanoscience (In Press).
3. Vaidya A, Jain S, Sahu S, Jain PK, Pathak K, Pathak D, Kumar R, Jain SK, 2020. Anticancer agents based on vulnerable components in a signalling pathway. Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry. 20(10), 886-907.
4. Vaidya A, Jain S, Kumar PBR, Singh SK, Kashaw SK, Agrawal RK, 2020. Synthesis of 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives: anticancer and 3D QSAR studies. Monatshefte für Chemie - Chemical Monthly. 151, 385-395.
5. Yang D, Leibowitz JL, 2015. The structure and functions of coronavirus genomic 3' and 5' ends. Virus Research. 206, 120–133.
6. Yousefi B, Valizadeh S, Ghaffari H, Vahedi A, Karbalaei M, Eslami M, 2020. A global treatments for coronaviruses including COVID-19. Journal of Cells & Physiology. 1–10 (online).
7. Maunder RG, 2009. Was SARS a mental health catastrophe? General Hospital Psychiatry. 31, 316–317.
8. Vaidya A, Jain S, Jain AK, Pkumar BR, Kashaw SK, Agrawal RK, 2015. Computational Analysis of Quinoline Derivatives as Potent Topoisomerase-II Inhibitors. Medicinal Chemistry Research. 24(1), 383-393.
9. Senga M, Pringle K, Rsay A, 2016. Factors underlying ebola virus infection among health workers, Kenema, Sierra Leone, 2014-2015. Clinical Infections Disease. 63, 454-459.
10. Temsah MH, Al-Sohime F, Alamro N, 2020. The psychological impact of COVID-19 pandemic on health care workers in a MERS-CoV endemic country. Journal of Infection and Public Health. 13(6), 877-882.
11. Shigemura J, Ursano RJ, Morganstein JC, Kurosawa M, Benedek DM, 2020. Public responses to the novel 2019 coronavirus (2019-nCoV) in Japan: mental health consequences and target populations. Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences. 74(4), 281-282.
12. Hindustan times. Fearing he had contracted coronavirus, man locks family, kills himself. https://www. hindustantimes.com/india-news/man-suffering-from-cold-and-fever-commitssuicide-in-andhra-pradesh-feared-he-had-contracted-coronavirus-says-family/storynECI2mhrvB5FiX2vHruFcK.html (Accessed 14 May 2020).
13. John A, Glendenning AC, Marchant A, Montgomery P, Stewart A, Wood S, Lloyd K, Hawton K, 2018. Self-harm, suicidal behaviours, and cyberbullying in children and young people: systematic review. Journal of Medical Internet Research. 20, e129.
14. Brooks SK, Dunn R, Amlôt R, Rubin GJ, Greenberg N, 2018. A systematic, thematic review of social and occupational factors associated with psychological outcomes in healthcare employees during an

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

infectious disease outbreak. Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine. 60, 248-257.

15. Kazmi SSH, Hasan K, Talib S, Saxena S, 2020. COVID-19 and Lockdwon: A Study on the Impact on Mental Health. SSRN Electronic Journal. (in press).
16. Jain AK, Veerasamy R, Vaidya A, Mourya V, Agrawal RK, 2010. QSAR analysis of some novel sulfonamides incorporating 1,3,5-triazine derivatives as carbonic anhydrase inhibitors. Medicinal Chemistry Research. 19, 1191-1202.
17. Vaidya A, Jain A, Khare P, Agrawal RK, Jain SK, 2009. Metronidazole Loaded Pectin Microspheres for Colon Targeting. Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences. 98, 4229-4236.
18. Naushad VA, Bierens JJ, Nishan KP, Firjeeth CP, Mohammad OH, Maliyakkal AM, Hadan SC, Schreiber MD, 2019. A systematic review of the impact of disaster on the mental health of medical responders. Prehospital and Disaster Medicine. 34, 632–643.
19. Kang L, Ma S, Chen M, 2020. Impact on mental health and perceptions of psychological care among medical and nursing staff in Wuhan during the 2019 novel coronavirus disease outbreak:A cross-sectional study. Brain Behaviour and Immunity. (in press).
20. Lai J, Ma S, Wang Y, 2020. Factors associated with mental health outcomes among health careworkers exposed to coronavirus disease. JAMA Network Open. 3(3), e203976.
21. Lv Y, Zhang Z, Zeng W, Li J, Wang X, Luo GQH, 2020. Anxiety and Depression Survey of Chinese Medical Staff Before and During COVID-19 Defense. The Lancet. (in press).
22. Bennett M, 2020. 10 Of 44 Coronavirus Cases In Philadelphia Are Healthcare Workers., (Accessed 29 May 2020).
23. Fernández LG, Ferreiro VR, Roldán PDL, Padilla S, Sierra IC, García MM, Martín JP, Jimenez RR, 2020. Mental health impact of COVID-19 pandemic on Spanish healthcare workers. Psychological Medicine. 27, 1-3.
24. Rossi R, Socci V, Pacitti F, Lorenzo GD, Marco AD, Siracusano A, Rossi S, 2020. Mental Health Outcomes Among Frontline and Second-Line Health Care Workers During the Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) Pandemic in Italy. JAMA Network Open. 3(5), e2010185.
25. Pappa S, Ntella V, Giannakas T, Giannakoulis VG, Papoutsi E, Katsaounou P, 2020. Prevalence of depression, anxiety, and insomnia among healthcare workers during the COVID-19 pandemic: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Brain Behavior and Immunity. (in press).
26. Benjamin YQT, Nicholas WSC, Grace KHL, 2020. Psychological Impact of the COVID-19 Pandemic on Health Care Workers in Singapore. Annals of Internal Medicine. M20-1083.
27. Choudhury T, Debski M, Wiper A, Abdelrahman A, Wild S, Chalil S, More R, Goode G, Patel B, Abdelaziz HK, 2020. Covid-19 Pandemic: Looking After the Mental Health of Our Healthcare Workers. Journal of Occupational and Environment Medicine. (in press).
28. Gavin B, Hayden J, Adamis D, McNicholas F, 2020. Caring for the Psychological Well-Being of Healthcare Professionals in the Covid-19 Pandemic Crisis. Irish Medical Journal. 113(4), P51.

ISSN NO. 2320–7418 DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

29. Tsamakis K, Rizos E, Manolis AJ, Chaidou S, Kympouropoulos S, Spartalis E, Spandidos DA, Tsiptsios D, Triantafyllis AS, 2020. COVID-19 pandemic and its impact on mental health of healthcare professionals. Experimental and Therapeutic Medicine. 19, 3451-3453.
30. Hawari FI, Obeidat NA, Dodin YI, Albtoosh AS, Manasrah RM, Alaqeel IO, Mansour AH, 2020. The inevitability of Covid-19 related distress among healthcare workers: findings from a low caseload country under lockdown. medRxiv. (in press).
31. Salgado JG, Salas SD, Martín MR, Moreno MO, Iglesias JJG, Frutos CR, 2020. Sense of Coherence and Psychological Distress among Healthcare Workers during the COVID-19 Pandemic in Spain. Sustainability. 12, 6855.
32. Zhang C, Yang L, Liu S, Ma S, Wang Y, Cai Z, Du H, Li R, Kang L, Su M, Zhang J, Liu Z, Zhang B, 2020. Survey of Insomnia and Related Social Psychological Factors Among Medical Staff Involved in the 2019 Novel Coronavirus Disease Outbreak. Frontiers in Psychiatry. 11, 306.
33. Huang JZ, Han MF, Luo TD, Ren AK, Zhou XP, 2020. Mental health survey of 230 medical staff in a tertiary infectious disease hospital for COVID-19. Chinese Journal of Industrial Hygiene and Occupational Disease. 38(3), 192-195.
34. Zhang WR, Wang K, Yin L, 2020. Mental Health and Psychosocial Problems of Medical Health Workers during the COVID-19 Epidemic in China. Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics. 9, 1-9.
35. Wang C, Pan R, Wan X, Yilin T, Linkang X, Cyrus SH, Roger CH, 2020. Immediate psychological responses and associated factors during the initial stage of the 2019 coronavirus disease (COVID-19) epidemic among the general population in China. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health. 17, 1729.
36. Chen Q, Liang M, Li Y, Guo J, Fei D, Wang L, He L, Sheng C, Cai Y, Li X, Wang J, Zhang Z, 2020. Mental health care for medical staff in China during the COVID-19 outbreak. Lancet Psychiatry. 7(4), e15–e16.
37. Vendeville G, 2020. As COVID-19 battle escalates, U of T students offer busy healthcare workers help on the home front. University of Toronto News. (Accessed 29 May 2020).
38. Blake H, Bermingham F, Johnson G, Tabner A, 2020. Mitigating the Psychological Impact of COVID-19 on HealthcareWorkers: A Digital Learning Package. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health. 17(9), 2997.

How to cite this article
Ramakant Yadav, Ankur Vaidya, Raj Kumar, Shweta Jain, Ajay Kumar Shukla, 2021. Psychological distress in healthcare workers during covid-19 pandemic. Jour. of Med. P'ceutical & Alli. Sci. V 10 - I 1, 1019. P-2644-2652. DOI: 10.22270/jmpas.V10I1.1019

MDPI (/)

Journals (/about/journals) Topics (/topics) Information (/authors) Author Services (/authors/english) Initiatives (/about/initiatives) About (/about)

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Sign In / Sign Up (/user/login)

Submit (https://susy.mdpi.com/user/manuscripts/upload?journal=chemistry)

Search for Articles:

Title / Keyword

Author / Affiliation / Email

Chemistry

All Article Types

Search

Advanced Search

MDPI
Submit to this Journal (https://susy.mdpi.com/user/manuscripts/upload?form%5Bjournal_id%5D%3D350)

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Review for this Journal (https://susy.mdpi.com/volunteer/journals/review)

Propose a Special Issue (/journalproposal/sendproposalspecialissue/chemistry)

► Article Menu

Article Menu

Subscribe SciFeed (/2624-8549/3/1/27/scifeed_display)

Recommended Articles

Related Info Link

More by Author Links

Article Views 2371

Citations 3

Table of Contents

- Abstract
- Introduction
- Material and Methods
- Results and Discussion
- Conclusions
- Funding
- Data Availability Statement
- Acknowledgments
- Conflicts of Interest
- References

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Order Article Reprints (/2624-8549/3/1/27/reprints)

(https://v
domain=www.mc
Altmetric

Share

Help

Cite

Discuss in SciProfiles
(https://s
groups/p

Open Access Article

Discovery of Novel 1,2,4-Oxadiazole Derivatives as Potent Caspase-3 Activator for Cancer Treatment

by **Ankur Vaidya** (mailto:ankuruprims@gmail.com) (https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6693-6085)

Pharmacy College, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah 206130, India

Chemistry **2021**, *3*(1), 373-381; **https://doi.org/10.3390/chemistry3010027 (https://doi.org/10.3390/chemistry30100**

Submission received: 15 December 2020 / Revised: 24 February 2021 / Accepted: 1 March 2021 / Published: 8 March 2021

MDPI (/)

utm_sou

Endorse

Comment

(This article belongs to the Special Issue **QSAR and QSPR: Recent Developments and Applications 2021 (/journal/chemistry/special_issues/QSAR_QSPR_Applications)**)

Download

Browse Figures

(https://pub.mdpi-res.com/chemistry/chemistry-03-00027/article_deploy/html/images/chemistry-03-00027-g001.png?1615180886) (https://pub.mdpi-res.com/chemistry/chemistry-03-00027/article_deploy/html/images/chemistry-03-00027-g002.png?1615180885) (https://pub.mdpi-res.com/chemistry/chemistry-03-00027/article_deploy/html/images/chemistry-03-00027-g003.png?1615180887) (https://pub.mdpi-res.com/chemistry/chemistry-03-00027/article_deploy/html/images/chemistry-03-00027-g004.png?1615180887) (https://pub.mdpi-res.com/chemistry/chemistry-03-00027/article_deploy/html/images/chemistry-03-00027-g005.png?1615180887)

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Versions Notes (/2624-8549/3/1/27/notes)

Abstract

In the present study, a quantitative structure–activity relationship (QSAR) and docking studies were accomplished on a series of 1,2,4-oxadiazoles. The results of QSARs are reliable and have high predictive ability for both the internal (q^2 = 0.610) and external (pred_r^2 = 0.553) datasets with least standard error (SE; i.e., 0.130) and four principal components, which signifies the reliability of the generated model. Molecular docking was also reported by the GOLD docking program, which showed that the hydrogen bonding may be responsible for the activity, and may be further increased upon adding high electronegative substitutions.

Keywords: 1,2,4-oxadiazole (/search?q=1%2C2%2C4-oxadiazole); **apoptosis (/search?q=apoptosis)**; **caspase (/search?q=caspase)**; **docking (/search?q=docking)**; **QSAR (/search?q=QSAR)**

1. Introduction

Cancer is the second leading cause of mortality globally and becomes the principal cause of mortality in developing countries [**1**,**2**,**3**]. Recently, several anticancer drugs have become available on the market, acting through different mechanisms; however, the majority of them are associated with serious side effects [**4**,**5**]. The lack of targeting ability of these drugs is responsible for their side effects [**6**]. Large numbers of heterocyclic compounds have been reported for potential anticancer activities [**7**]. These heterocyclic-based anticancer agents are either under investigation or marketed as potent anticancer agents [**8**,**9**,**10**,**11**]. Oxadiazole is an important five-membered heterocyclic compound, having one oxygen atom and two nitrogen atoms. Recently, several 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives have been shown to possess anticancer activity [**12**,**13**].

Nowadays, researchers are focusing on various groups of molecules that are involved in the apoptosis inducing cytotoxicity. Caspases, a group of cysteine proteases, are the executioners of apoptosis. These caspases cleave their substrates after aspartic acid residues. Initiator caspases (caspase 2/8/9/10) and effector caspases (caspase 3/6/7) are the two classes of caspase. Recently, the activation of caspase-3 mediated apoptosis becomes an interesting therapeutic strategy for cancer therapy. Zhang et al. reported a series of 3-Aryl-5-aryl-1,2,4-oxadiazoles as a novel apoptosis inducer through caspase-3 activation. The compounds' activities have been reported against breast and colorectal cancer cell lines [**14**].

The quantitative structure–activity relationship (QSARs) is an attempt to correlate the structural features of the compounds quantitatively with their biological activities. Researchers reported thousands of QSAR studies in the search for novel anticancer agents [**15**,**16**,**17**,**18**,**19**].

In the search for new anticancer agents, our research group previously reported QSAR studies of 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives describing the key structure features responsible for anticancer activities [**20**,**21**,**22**]. In the continuation of our previous work, herein we report the two-dimensional QSAR (2D-QSAR) and molecular docking studies' outcomes.

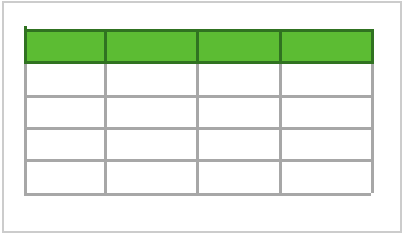
The 2D-QSAR studies were done using Step Wise k Nearest Neighbor Molecular Field Analysis [(SW) kNN MFA] using V-Life Molecular Design Software Version 3.0 (V-Life Molecular Design). The docking studies were also performed using GOLD software.

2. Material and Methods

2.1. Dataset

A dataset of twenty eight 3-aryl-5-aryl-1,2,4-oxadiazoles derivatives has been taken for present QSAR study (**Table 1**). Compounds have high structural diversity with ample range of biological activity [**14**,**23**].

Table 1. 1,2,4-Oxadiazole analogues and their experimental caspase-3 activator activity.



2.2. 2D QSAR

2D QSAR studies were performed via Step Wise k Nearest Neighbor Molecular Field Analysis [(SW) kNN MFA] method using V-Life Molecular Design Software Version 3.0 (V-Life Molecular Design) [**24**,**25**,**26**].

The 2D QSAR studies were performed by dividing compounds in the training and test dataset which resulted several QSAR equations. Unicolumn statistics was done to divide training and test data compounds. Twenty-two compounds were positioned in the training set and 6 compounds (**4b**, **4d**, **4e**, **10a**, **10d** and **11h**) in the test set.

2.3. Molecular Docking Analysis

Molecular docking was employed to locate the appropriate binding orientations and conformations of these 1,2,4-oxadiazoles interacting with caspase-3 using the docking program GOLD version 3.2. Ten docked conformers were produced for each 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivative. The conformation with the lowest docking energy in the most populated cluster is selected as the possible “active” conformation against the 1RE1 active site. In the present study, 28 compounds were successfully docked into the 1RE1 site.

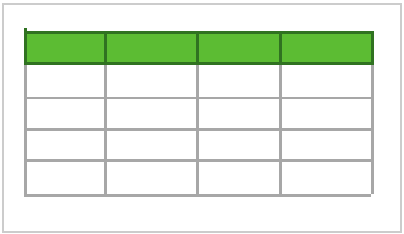
The X-ray crystal structure (pdb: 1RE1) of caspase-3 was obtained from the Protein Data Bank. Initially, for protein preparation, water molecules were removed, hydrogen atoms added and AMBER7FF99 charges to the protein were applied. The ligands were docked inside a cubic GRID box (within 5 A° surrounding to the cocrystallized ligand) centered at the midpoint between the Cys205 and Gly238. Ten docking runs were performed for each compound in the dataset. In most cases the chosen pose was the top ranked solution.

3. Results and Discussion

3.1. 2D QSAR Results

The results of the unicolumn statistics are summarized in **Table 2**, which showed that the test is interpolative i.e., both test and training dataset contain compounds of high structure diversity with variation in biological activity. The test and the training set contained a diverse set of compounds with low, moderate and high biological activity.

Table 2. Unicolumn statistical data of training and test set in 2D quantitative structure–activity relationship (QSAR) models.

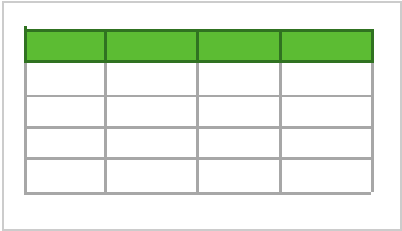


Finally, the following model was selected.

$$pEC_{50} = 0.243 * IP - 0.139 * BC + 0.155 * DM + 0.008 * PSA + 0.0005 \quad (1)$$

The obtained model showed a high correlation coefficient (r = 0.862) between descriptors including ionization potential (IP), bromine count (BC), dipole moment (DM), polar surface area (PSA) and anticancer activities. The squared correlation coefficient (r^2) of 0.743, explains 74.29% of the variance in biological activity. The obtained model is statistical significant with F values F(4,21) = 11.561. The obtained model showed both good internal and external predictive ability with cross-validated squared correlation coefficient for internal dataset (q^2) value 0.610 and for external dataset (pred_r^2) value 0.553 with a standard error (SE) of 0.130 (**Table 3**).

Table 3. Parameters value for the best 2D QSAR model generated.



In the model, the contribution of the descriptors is presented in the contribution chart (**Figure 1**), signifying the positive contribution of the ionization potential (IP), dipole moment (DM) and polar surface area (PSA) towards the biological activity. The addition of substitution that increases the polarity of the compounds results in increased anticancer activity. The negative contribution of the bromine count signifies the lower number of bromine encouraging biological activities.

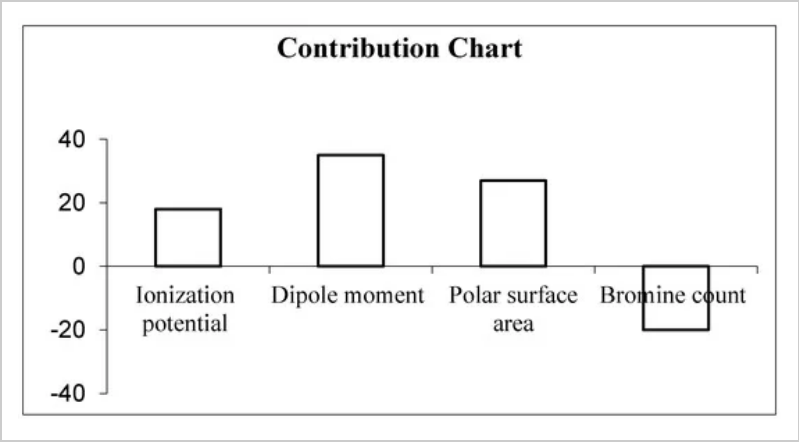
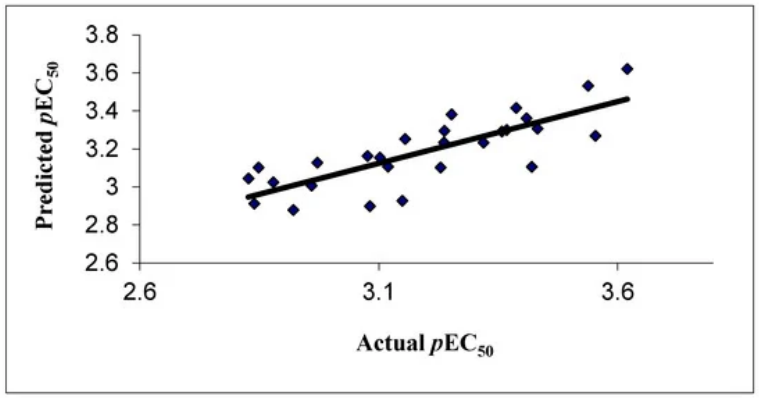


Figure 1. Contribution chart of descriptors in 2D QSAR model.

The correlation between the experimental and predicted activity of the compounds is shown in **Table 4** and represented in **Figure 2**.

MDPI (/)



(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

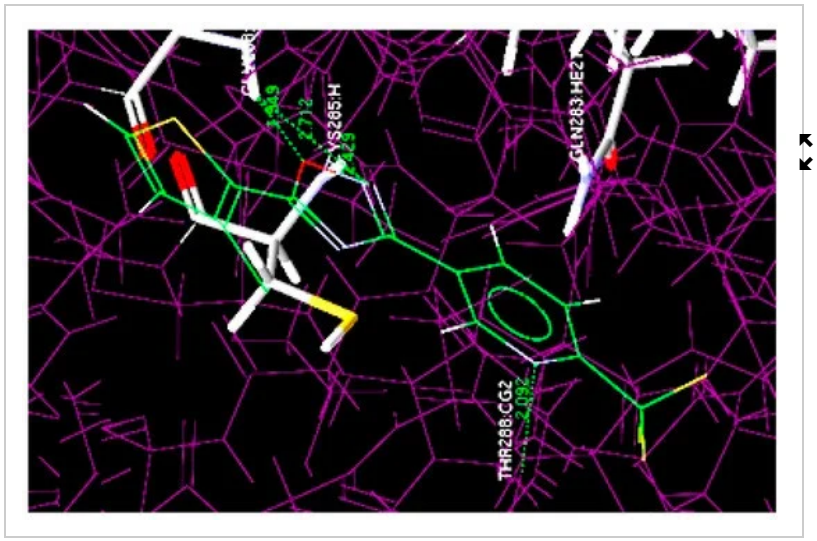
Figure 2. Correlation of experimental and predicted activity in 2D QSAR model.

Table 4. Experimental, predicted and residual activities of the compounds obtained in 2D QSAR and GOLD score.

3.2. GOLD Docking Studies

All 28, 1,2,4-oxadiazoles derivatives were docked into the binding site of caspase-3 and the energy scores of the activators are also shown in **Table 4**. A precise correlation was observed in between docking scores and pIC_{50} values.

A complete overview of GOLD docking is presented in **Figure 3** and **Figure 4**.



(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Figure 3. Overlay of docked highest potent oxadiazole compound (**4m**) at the active site of 1RE1.

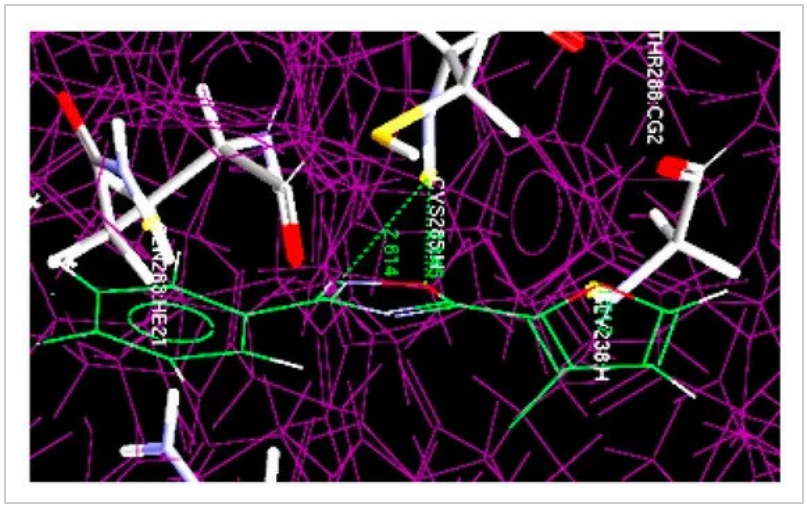


Figure 4. Overlay of docked least potent oxadiazole compound (**10b**) at the active site of 1RE1.

The docking results revealed that most active compound **4m** is properly located at the binding site of the Cys205 and Gly238 amino acid residues and numerous interactions occur between it and the binding region of the enzyme. The four key hydrogen bond interactions occur: (1) between the NH of Gly238 and the O of the oxadiazole ring; (2) between the NH of

Gly238 and the N of the oxadiazole ring; (3) between the NH of Cys285 and the N of the oxadiazole ring; (4) between the NH of THR288 and the N of the pyridine ring residue (**Figure 3**). The hydrogen bonding distances observed were 1.549 Å (O···H-NH-Gly238), 2.712 Å (N···H-NH-Gly238), 2.429 Å (N···H-NH-Cys285) and 2.092 Å between the N of the pyridine ring and NH of THR288 (N···H-NH-THR288).

Akin to compound **4m**, compound **10b** was also docked at the same binding pockets having Cys205 and Gly238 amino acid residues (**Figure 4**). The result showed the formation of two hydrogen bonds: (1) between the NH of Cys205 and the O of the oxadiazole ring (O···H-NH-Cys205), having 2.145 Å bond distance; (2) between the NH of Cys205 and the N of the oxadiazole ring (N···H-NH-Cys205) with 2.614 Å bond length.

The docking results revealed that the hydrogen bonding may be responsible for biological activity, which may be further increase upon adding more electronegative substitutions. The correlation between the dock score and the experimental activity is shown graphically in **Figure 5**, which shows a linear correlation between the dock score and biological activity.

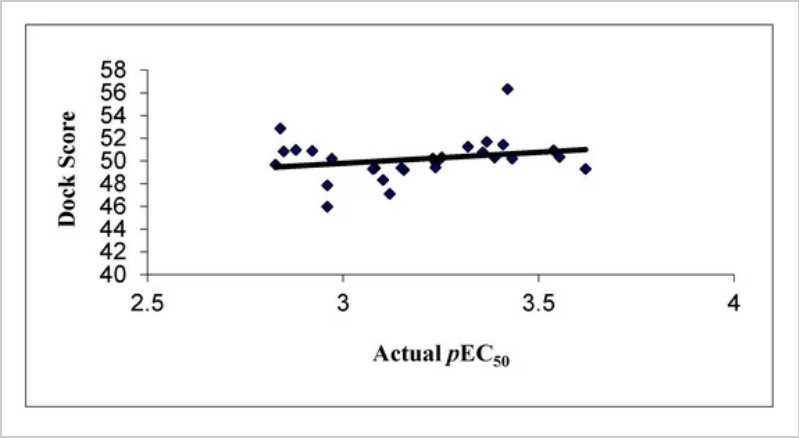


Figure 5. Correlation between the experimental activities and dock score in GOLD docking.

The results of the QSAR analysis clearly show that upon increasing the polarity in terms of theionization potential (IP), dipole moment (DM) and polar surface area (PSA), biological activity will also be enhanced. The docking results also support the QSAR outcomes.

4. Conclusions

In conclusion, the current QSAR studies established a reliable QSAR model with high predictive ability with $q^2 = 0.610$, $r^2 = 0.743$ and low standard error (SE) = 0.130 and four principal components. The predicted value of the external test set (pred_r^2) was also high (i.e., 0.553). The developed model was reliable, which indicated the importance of substitution in 1,2,4-oxadiazoles at their respective positions to improve anticancer activity. The positive contribution of ionization potential (IP), dipole moment (DM) and polar surface area (PSA) is conducive for biological activity, and further addition of these substitutions increases anticancer activity, while the negative contribution of the bromine count signifies the lower number of bromine encouraging the biological activities. The docking results explore the binding mode between the ligands and the receptor.

Funding

This research received no external funding.

Data Availability Statement

Data available in article and raw data are available from the corresponding authors upon request.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank G. Narahari Sastry, former head of the department, Molecular Modeling Group, IICT Hyderabad, India, for providing access to computational resources and for their valuable help during the modeling studies.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

References

1. Thun, M.J.; Henley, S.J.; Burns, D.; Jemal, A.; Shanks, T.G. Lung cancer death rates in lifelong nonsmokers. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* **2006**, *98*, 691–699. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Lung+cancer+death+rates+in+lifelong+nonsmokers&author=Thun,+M.J.&author=Henley,+S.J.&author=Burns,+D.&author=Jemal,+A.&author=Shanks,+T.G.&publication_year=2006&journal=J.+Natl.+Cancer+Inst.&volume=98&pages=691%E2%80%93699&doi=10.1093/jnci/djj187)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/djj187)**] [**Green Version (https://academic.oup.com/jnci/article-pdf/98/10/691/7687150/djj187.pdf)**]
2. Jain, S.; Pathak, K.; Vaidya, A. Molecular therapy using siRNA: Recent trends and advances of multi target inhibition of cancer growth. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* **2018**, *116*, 880–892. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Molecular+therapy+using+siRNA:+Recent+trends+and+advances+of+multi+target+inhibition+of+cancer+growth&author=Jain,+S.&author=Pathak,+K.&author=Vaidya,+A.&publication_year=2018&journal=Int.+J.+Biol.+Macromol.&volume=116&pages=880%E2%80%93892&doi=10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.05.077&pmid=29782974)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.05.077)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29782974)**]
3. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Sahu, S.; Jain, P.K.; Pathak, K.; Pathak, D.; Kumar, R.; Jain, S.K. Anticancer agents based on vulnerable components in a signalling pathway. *Mini Rev. Med. Chem.* **2020**, *20*, 886–907. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anticancer+agents+based+on+vulnerable+components+in+a+signalling+pathway&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Sahu,+S.&author=Jain,+P.K.&author=Pathak,+K.&author=Pathak,+D.&author=Kumar,+R.&author=Jain,+S.K.&publication_year=2020&journal=Mini+Rev.+Med.+Chem.&volume=20&pages=886%E2%80%93907&doi=10.2174/1389557520666200212105417&pmid=32048968)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/1389557520666200212105417)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/32048968)**]

4. Ayati, A.; Emami, S.; Asadipour, A.; Shafiee, A.; Foroumadi, A. Recent applications of 1,3-thiazole core structure in the identification of new lead compounds and drug discovery. *Eur. J. Med. Chem.* **2015**, *97*, 699–718. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Recent+applications+of+1,3-thiazole+core+structure+in+the+identification+of+new+lead+compounds+and+drug+discovery&author=Ayati,+A.&author=Emami,+S.&author=Asadipour,+A.&author=Shafiee,+A.&author=Foroumadi,+A.&publication_year=2015&journal=Eur.+J.+Med.+Chem.&volume=97&pages=699%E2%80%93718&doi=10.1016/j.ejmech.2015.04.015)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2015.04.015)**]

5. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Jain, A.K.; Agrawal, A.; Kashaw, S.K.; Jain, S.K.; Agrawal, R.K. Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors: A Review on Prospectives and Therapeutic Aspects. *Mini Rev. Med. Chem.* **2013**, *12*, 1967–1981. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Metabotropic+Glutamate+Receptors:+A+Review+on+Prospectives+and+Therapeutic+Aspects&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Agrawal,+A.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&author=Jain,+S.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2013&journal=Mini+Rev.+Med.+Chem.&volume=12&pages=1967%E2%80%931981&doi=10.2174/138955751131313010)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/138955751131313010)**]

6. Jain, S.; Vaidya, A.; Jain, A.K.; Agrawal, R.K.; Kashaw, S.K. Computational analysis of benzyl vinylogous derivatives as potent PDE3B inhibitors. *Arab. J. Chem.* **2017**, *10*, S109–S113. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Computational+analysis+of+benzyl+vinylogous+derivatives+as+potent+PDE3B+inhibitors&author=Jain,+S.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&publication_year=2017&journal=Arab.+J.+Chem.&volume=10&pages=S109%E2%80%93S113&doi=10.1016/j.arabjc.2012.07.014)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2012.07.014)**] [**Green Version ()**]

7. Jain, A.K.; Vaidya, A.; Ravichandran, V.; Kashaw, S.K. Recent Developments and *Biological Activities* of Thiazolidinone Derivatives: A Review. *Bioorg. Med. Chem.* **2012**, *20*, 3378–3395. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Recent+Developments+and+Biological+Activities+of+Thiazolidinone+Derivatives:+A+Review&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Ravichandran,+V.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&publication_year=2012&journal=Bioorg.+Med.+Chem.&volume=20&pages=3378%E2%80%933395&doi=10.1016/j.bmc.2012.03.069)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2012.03.069)**]

8. Jain, A.K.; Sharma, S.; Vaidya, A.; Ravichandran, V.; Agrawal, R.K. 1,3,4-Thiadiazole and Its Derivatives: A Review on Recent Progress in Biological Activities. *Chem. Biol. Drug. Des.* **2013**, *81*, 557–576. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=1,3,4-Thiadiazole+and+Its+Derivatives:+A+Review+on+Recent+Progress+in+Biological+Activities&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Sharma,+S.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Ravichandran,+V.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2013&journal=Chem.+Biol.+Drug.+Des.&volume=81&pages=557%E2%80%93576&doi=10.1111/cbdd.12125&pmid=23452185)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1111/cbdd.12125)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23452185)**]

9. Jain, S.; Pattnaik, S.; Pathak, K.; Kumar, S.; Pathak, D.; Jain, S.K.; Vaidya, A. Anticancer Potential of Thiazole Derivatives: A Retrospective Review. *Mini Rev. Med. Chem.* **2017**, *18*, 640–655. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anticancer+Potential+of+Thiazole+Derivatives:+A+Retrospective+Review&author=Jain,+S.&author=Pattnaik,+S.&author=Pathak,+K.&author=Kumar,+S.&author=Pathak,+D.&author=Jain,+S.K.&author=Vaidya,+A.&publication_year=2017&journal=Mini+Rev.+Med.+Chem.&volume=18&pages=640%E2%80%93655&doi=10.2174/1389557517666171123211321)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/1389557517666171123211321)**]

10. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Jain, A.K.; Prashanthakumar, B.R.; Kashaw, S.K.; Agrawal, R.K. Computational Analysis of Quinoline Derivatives as Potent Topoisomerase-II Inhibitors. *Med. Chem. Res.* **2015**, *24*, 383–393. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Computational+Analysis+of+Quinoline+Derivatives+as+Potent+Topoisomerase-II+Inhibitors&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Prashanthakumar,+B.R.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2015&journal=Med.+Chem.+Res.&volume=24&pages=383%E2%80%93393&doi=10.1007/s00044-014-1131-9)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-014-1131-9)**]

11. Jain, S.; Chandra, V.; Pankaj Kumar, J.; Pathak, K.; Pathak, D.; Vaidya, A. Comprehensive review on current developments of quinoline-based anticancer agents. *Arab. J. Chem.* **2019**, *12*, 4920–4946. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Comprehensive+review+on+current+developments+of+quinoline-based+anticancer+agents&author=Jain,+S.&author=Chandra,+V.&author=Pankaj+Kumar,+J.&author=Pathak,+K.&author=Pathak,+D.&author=Vaidya,+A.&publication_year=2019&journal=Arab.+J.+Chem.&volume=12&pages=4920%E2%80%934946&doi=10.1016/j.arabjc.2016.10.009)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2016.10.009)**] [**Green Version ()**]

12. Anjos, J.V.; Ricardo, A.W.; Filho, N.; Nascimento, S.C.; Srivastava, R.M.; Melo, S.; Sinou, D.J. Synthesis and cytotoxic profile of glycosyl-triazole linked to 1,2,4-oxadiazole moiety at C-5 through a straight-chain carbon and oxygen atoms. *Eur. J. Med. Chem.* **2009**, *44*, 3571–3576. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Synthesis+and+cytotoxic+profile+of+glycosyl-triazole+linked+to+1,2,4-oxadiazole+moiety+at+C-5+through+a+straight-chain+carbon+and+oxygen+atoms&author=Anjos,+J.V.&author=Ricardo,+A.W.&author=Filho,+N.&author=Nascimento,+S.C.&author=Srivastava,+R.M.&author=Melo,+S.&author=Sinou,+D.J.&publication_year=2009&journal=Eur.+J.+Med.+Chem.&volume=44&pages=3571%E2%80%933576&doi=10.1016/j.ejmech.2009.03.002)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2009.03.002)**]

13. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Jain, P.; Jain, P.; Tiwari, N.; Jain, R.; Jain, R.; Jain, A.K.; Agrawal, R.K. Synthesis and Biological Activities of Oxadiazole Derivatives: A Review. *Mini Rev. Med. Chem.* **2016**, *16*, 825–845. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Synthesis+and+Biological+Activities+of+Oxadiazole+Derivatives:+A+Review&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Jain,+P.&author=Jain,+P.&author=Tiwari,+N.&author=Jain,+R.&author=Jain,+R.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2016&journal=Mini+Rev.+Med.+Chem.&volume=16&pages=825%E2%80%93845&doi=10.2174/1389557516666160211120835)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/1389557516666160211120835)**]

14. Zhang, H.Z.; Kaisbhatla, S.; Kuemmerle, J.; Kemnitzer, W.; Mason, K.O.; Qui, L.; Grundy, C.C.; Tseng, B.; Drew, J.; Cai, S.X. Discovery and Structure−Activity Relationship of 3-Aryl-5-aryl-1,2,4-oxadiazoles as a New Series of Apoptosis Inducers and Potential Anticancer Agents. *J. Med. Chem.* **2005**, *48*, 5215–5223. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Discovery+and+Structure%E2%88%92Activity+Relationship+of+3-Aryl-5-aryl-1,2,4-oxadiazoles+as+a+New+Series+of+Apoptosis+Inducers+and+Potential+Anticancer+Agents&author=Zhang,+H.Z.&author=Kaisbhatla,+S.&author=Kuemmerle,+J.&author=Kemnitzer,+W.&author=Mason,+K.O.&author=Qui,+L.&author=Grundy,+C.C.&author=Tseng,+B.&author=Drew,+J.&author=Cai,+S.X.&publication_year=2005&journal=J.+Med.+Chem.&volume=48&pages=5215%E2%80%935223&doi=10.1021/jm050292k)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1021/jm050292k)**]

15. Bhatiya, R.; Vaidya, A.; Kashaw, S.K.; Jain, A.K.; Agrawal, R.K. QSAR analysis of furanone derivatives as potential COX-2 inhibitors: kNN MFA approach. *J. Saudi Chem. Soc.* **2014**, *18*, 977–984. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=QSAR+analysis+of+furanone+derivatives+as+potential+COX-2+inhibitors:+kNN+MFA+approach&author=Bhatiya,+R.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2014&journal=J.+Saudi+Chem.+Soc.&volume=18&pages=977%E2%80%93984&doi=10.1016/j.jscs.2011.12.002)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jscs.2011.12.002)**] [**Green Version ()**]

16. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Jain, S.; Jain, A.K.; Agrawal, R.K. Quantitative Structure-Activity Relationships: A Novel Approach of Drug Design and Discovery. *J. Pharm. Sci. Pharmacol.* **2014**, *1*, 219–232. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Quantitative+Structure-Activity+Relationships:+A+Novel+Approach+of+Drug+Design+and+Discovery&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2014&journal=J.+Pharm.+Sci.+Pharmacol.&volume=1&pages=219%E2%80%93232&doi=10.1166/jpsp.2014.1024)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1166/jpsp.2014.1024)**]

17. Agrawal, R.K.; Jain, A.K.; Veerasamy, R.; Vaidya, A.; Kashaw, S.; Mourya, V.K.; Agrawal, R.K. QSAR analysis of B-ring-modified diaryl ether derivatives as a InhA inhibitors. *Med. Chem. Res.* **2012**, *21*, 145–151. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=QSAR+analysis+of+B-ring-modified+diaryl+ether+derivatives+as+a+InhA+inhibitors&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Veerasamy,+R.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Kashaw,+S.&author=Mourya,+V.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2012&journal=Med.+Chem.+Res.&volume=21&pages=145%E2%80%93151)**]

18. Vaidya, A.; Jain, A.K.; Kumar, P.; Kashaw, S.K.; Agrawal, R.K. Predicting anti-cancer activity of quinoline derivatives: CoMFA and CoMSIA approach. *J. Enzyme Inhib. Med. Chem.* **2011**, *26*, 854–861. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Predicting+anti-cancer+activity+of+quinoline+derivatives:+CoMFA+and+CoMSIA+approach&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Kumar,+P.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2011&journal=J.+Enzyme+Inhib.+Med.+Chem.&volume=26&pages=854%E2%80%93861&doi=10.3109/14756366.2011.567195&pmid=21476832)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3109/14756366.2011.567195)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21476832)**]

19. Jain, A.K.; Veerasamy, R.; Vaidya, A.; Mourya, V.; Agrawal, R.K. QSAR analysis of some novel sulfonamides incorporating 1,3,5-triazine derivatives as carbonic anhydrase inhibitors. *Med. Chem. Res.* **2010**, *19*, 1191–1202. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=QSAR+analysis+of+some+novel+sulfonamides+incorporating+1,3,5-triazine+derivatives+as+carbonic+anhydrase+inhibitors&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Veerasamy,+R.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Mourya,+V.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2010&journal=Med.+Chem.+Res.&volume=19&pages=1191%E2%80%931202&doi=10.1007/s00044-009-9262-0)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-009-9262-0)**]

20. Vaidya, A.; Jain, A.K.; Kumar, B.R.P.; Sastry, G.N.; Kashaw, S.K.; Agrawal, R.K. CoMFA, CoMSIA, kNN MFA and Docking studies of 1.;2.;4-Oxadiazole derivatives as potent Caspase-3 activators. *Arab. J. Chem.* **2017**, *10*, S3936–S3946. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=CoMFA,+CoMSIA,+kNN+MFA+and+Docking+studies+of+1.;2.;4-Oxadiazole+derivatives+as+potent+Caspase-3+activators&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+A.K.&author=Kumar,+B.R.P.&author=Sastry,+G.N.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2017&journal=Arab.+J.+Chem.&volume=10&pages=S3936%E2%80%93S3946&doi=10.1016/j.arabjc.2014.05.034)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2014.05.034)**] [**Green Version ()**]

21. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Kumar, B.R.P.; Singh, S.K.; Kashaw, S.K.; Agrawal, R.K. Synthesis of 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives: Anticancer and 3D QSAR studies. *Mon. Chem.* **2020**, *151*, 385–395. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Synthesis+of+1,2,4-oxadiazole+derivatives:+Anticancer+and+3D+QSAR+studies&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Kumar,+B.R.P.&author=Singh,+S.K.&author=Kashaw,+S.K.&author=Agrawal,+R.K.&publication_year=2020&journal=Mon.+Chem.&volume=151&pages=385%E2%80%93395&doi=10.1007/s00706-020-02553-1)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00706-020-02553-1)**]

22. Vaidya, A.; Pathak, D.; Shah, K. 1,3,4-oxadiazole and its Derivatives: A Review on Recent Progress in Anticancer Activities. *Chem. Biol. Drug Des.* **2020**, *97*, 572–591. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=1,3,4-oxadiazole+and+its+Derivatives:+A+Review+on+Recent+Progress+in+Anticancer+Activities&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Pathak,+D.&author=Shah,+K.&publication_year=2020&journal=Chem.+Biol.+Drug+Des.&volume=97&pages=572%E2%80%93591&doi=10.1111/cbdd.13795&pmid=32946168)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1111/cbdd.13795)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/32946168)**]

23. Kemnitzer, W.; Kuemmerle, J.; Zhang, H.Z.; Kaisbhatla, S.; Tseng, B.; Drew, J.; Cai, S.X. Discovery of 3-aryl-5-aryl-1,2,4-oxadiazoles as a new series of apoptosis inducers. *2. Identification of more aqueous soluble analogs as potential anticancer agents. Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2009**, *19*, 4410–4415. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Discovery+of+3-aryl-5-aryl-1,2,4-oxadiazoles+as+a+new+series+of+apoptosis+inducers&author=Kemnitzer,+W.&author=Kuemmerle,+J.&author=Zhang,+H.Z.&author=Kaisbhatla,+S.&author=Tseng,+B.&author=Drew,+J.&author=Cai,+S.X.&publication_year=2009&journal=2.+Identification+of+more+aqueous+soluble+analogs+as+potential+anticancer+agents.+Bioorg.+Med.+Chem.+Lett.&volume=19&pages=4410%E2%80%934415&pmid=19500976)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19500976)**]

24. Roy, K.; Das, R.N. A review on principles, theory and practices of 2D-QSAR. *Curr. Drug. Metab.* **2014**, *15*, 346–379. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=A+review+on+principles,+theory+and+practices+of+2D-QSAR&author=Roy,+K.&author=Das,+R.N.&publication_year=2014&journal=Curr.+Drug.+Metab.&volume=15&pages=346%E2%80%93379&doi=10.2174/1389200215666140908102230&pmid=25204823)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/1389200215666140908102230)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25204823)**]

25. Adhikari, C.; Mishra, B.K. Quantitative Structure-Activity Relationships of Aquatic Narcosis: A Review. *Curr. Comput. Aided Drug Des.* **2018**, *14*, 7–28. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Quantitative+Structure-Activity+Relationships+of+Aquatic+Narcosis:+A+Review&author=Adhikari,+C.&author=Mishra,+B.K.&publication_year=2018&journal=Curr.+Comput.+Aided+Drug+Des.&volume=14&pages=7%E2%80%9328&doi=10.2174/1573409913666170711130304&pmid=28699497)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/1573409913666170711130304)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28699497)**]

26. Lewis, R.A.; Wood, D. Modern 2D QSAR for drug discovery. *Wiley Interdiscip. Rev. Comput. Mol. Sci.* **2014**, *4*, 505–522. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Modern+2D+QSAR+for+drug+discovery&author=Lewis,+R.A.&author=Wood,+D.&publication_year=2014&journal=Wiley+Interdiscip.+Rev.+Comput.+Mol.+Sci.&volume=4&pages=505%E2%80%93522&doi=10.1002/wcms.1187)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1002/wcms.1187)**]

Publisher's Note: MDPI stays neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

© 2021 by the author. Licensee MDPI, Basel, Switzerland. This article is an open access article distributed under the terms and conditions of the Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY) license (**http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/ (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)**).

Share and Cite

(mailto:?&subject=From%20MDPI%3A%20%22Discovery%20of%20Novel%201%2C2%2C4-Oxadiazole%20Derivatives%20as%20Potent%20Caspase-3%20Activator%20for%20Cancer%20Treatment"&body=https://www.mdpi.com/1024942%3A%0A%0ADiscovery%20of%20Novel%201%2C2%2C4-Oxadiazole%20Derivatives%20as%20Potent%20Caspase-3%20Activator%20for%20Cancer%20Treatment%0A%0AAbstract%3A%20In%20the%20present%20study%2C%20a%20quantitative%20structure%E2%80%93activity%20relationship%20%28QSAR%29%20and%20docking%20studies%20

were%20accomplished%20on%20a%20series%20of%201%2C2%2C4-oxadiazoles.%20The%20results%20of%20QSARs%20are%20reliable%20and%20have%20high%20predictive%20ability%20for%20both%20the%20internal%20%28q2%20%3D%200.610%29%20and%20external%20%28pred_r2%20%3D%200.553%29%20datasets%20with%20least%20standard%20error%20%28SE%3B%20i.e.%2C%200.130%29%20and%20four%20principal%20components%2C%20which%20signifies%20the%20reliability%20of%20the%20generated%20model.%20Molecular%20docking%20was%20also%20reported%20by%20the%20GOLD%20docking%20program%2C%20which%20showed%20that%20the%20hydrogen%20bonding%20may%20be%20responsible%20for%20the%20activity%2C%20and%20may%20be%20further%20increased%20upon%20adding%20high%20electronegative%20substitutions.)

(https://twitter.com/intent/tweet?text=Discovery+of+Novel+1%2C2%2C4-Oxadiazole+Derivatives+as+Potent+Caspase-3+Activator+for+Cancer+Treatment&hashtags=mdpichemistry&url=https%3A%2F%2Fwww.mdpi.com%2F1024942&via=Chemistry_MDPI) (http://www.linkedin.com/shareArticle?mini=true&url=https%3A%2F%2Fwww.mdpi.com%2F1024942&title=Discovery%20of%20Novel%201%2C2%2C4-Oxadiazole%20Derivatives%20as%20Potent%20Caspase-3%20Activator%20for%20Cancer%20Treatment%26source%3Dhttps%3A%2F%2Fwww.mdpi.com%26summary%3DIn%20the%20present%20study%2C%20a%20quantitative%20structure%E2%80%93activity%20relationship%20%28QSAR%29%20and%20docking%20studies%20were%20accomplished%20on%20a%20series%20of%201%2C2%2C4-oxadiazoles.%20The%20results%20of%20QSARs%20are%20reliable%20and%20have%20high%20predictive%20ability%20for%20both%20the%20internal%20%28q2%20%3D%200.610%29%20%5B...%5D) (https://www.facebook.com/sharer.php?u=https://www.mdpi.com/1024942) (http://www.reddit.com/submit?url=https://www.mdpi.com/1024942) (http://www.mendeley.com/import/?url=https://www.mdpi.com/1024942)

MDPI and ACS Style

Vaidya, A. Discovery of Novel 1,2,4-Oxadiazole Derivatives as Potent Caspase-3 Activator for Cancer Treatment. *Chemistry* **2021**, *3*, 373-381. https://doi.org/10.3390/chemistry3010027

AMA Style

Vaidya A. Discovery of Novel 1,2,4-Oxadiazole Derivatives as Potent Caspase-3 Activator for Cancer Treatment. *Chemistry*. 2021; 3(1):373-381. https://doi.org/10.3390/chemistry3010027

Chicago/Turabian Style

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

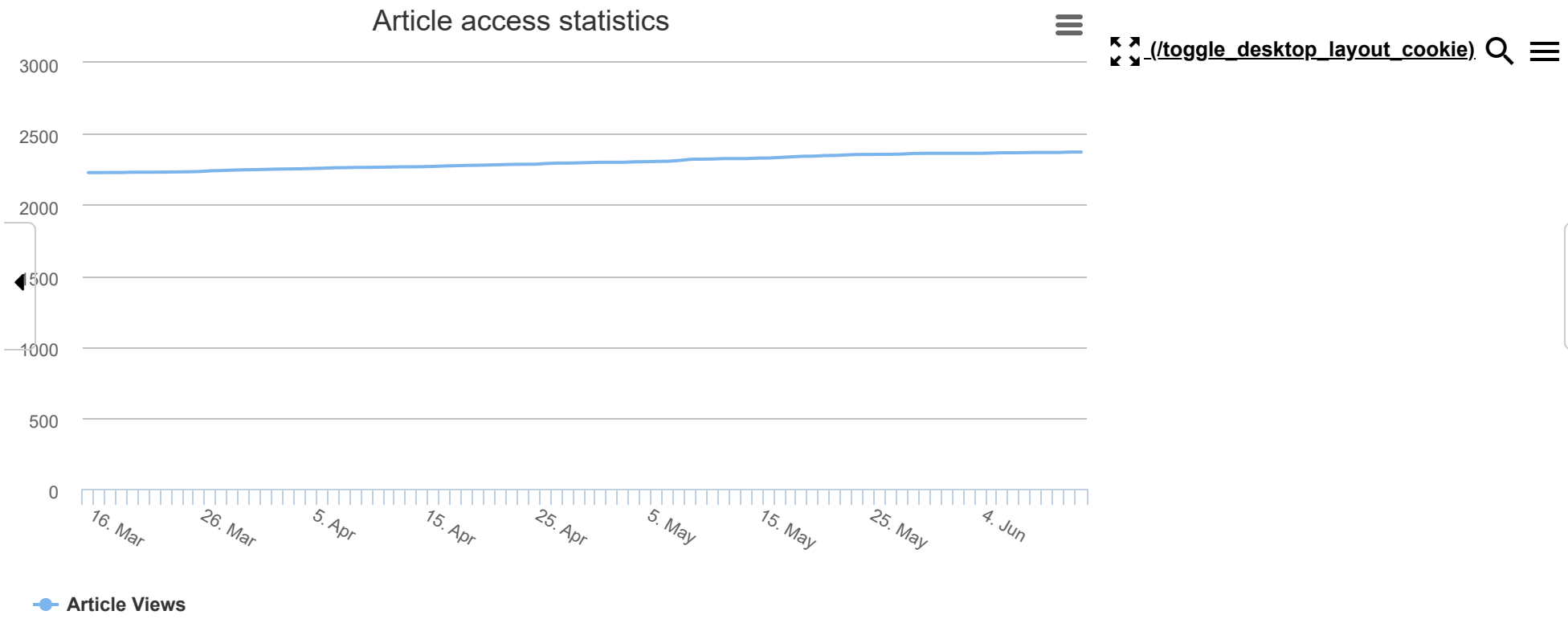
Vaidya, Ankur. 2021. "Discovery of Novel 1,2,4-Oxadiazole Derivatives as Potent Caspase-3 Activator for Cancer Treatment" *Chemistry* 3, no. 1: 373-381. https://doi.org/10.3390/chemistry3010027

Article Metrics

Citations

Crossref	Scopus	Web of Science	Google Scholar
3	3 (https://www. partnerID=HzOxMe3GWVersion=2&SrcA3+Activator+for+Car		[click to view] (htt

Article Access Statistics



For more information on the journal statistics, click **here (/journal/chemistry/stats)**.

Multiple requests from the same IP address are counted as one view.

Chemistry (/journal/chemistry), EISSN 2624-8549, Published by MDPI

RSS (/rss/journal/chemistry) **Content Alert (/journal/chemistry/toc-alert)**

Further Information

Article Processing Charges (/apc)

Pay an Invoice (/about/payment)

Open Access Policy (/openaccess)

Contact MDPI (/about/contact)
MDPI (/)
Jobs at MDPI (https://careers.mdpi.com)

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Guidelines

For Authors (/authors)
For Reviewers (/reviewers)
For Editors (/editors)
For Librarians (/librarians)
For Publishers (/publishing_services)
For Societies (/societies)
For Conference Organizers (/conference_organizers)

MDPI Initiatives

Sciforum (https://sciforum.net)
MDPI Books (https://www.mdpi.com/books)
Preprints.org (https://www.preprints.org)
Scilit (https://www.scilit.net)
SciProfiles (https://sciprofiles.com?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=bottom_menu&utm_campaign=initiative)
Encyclopedia (https://encyclopedia.pub)
JAMS (https://jams.pub)
Proceedings Series (/about/proceedings)

Follow MDPI

LinkedIn (https://www.linkedin.com/company/mdpi)
Facebook (https://www.facebook.com/MDPIOpenAccessPublishing)
Twitter (https://twitter.com/MDPIOpenAccess)

MDPI (/)

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Subscribe to receive issue release notifications and newsletters from MDPI journals

Select options

Enter your email address...

Subscribe

© 1996-2024 MDPI (Basel, Switzerland) unless otherwise stated

Disclaimer **Terms and Conditions (/about/terms-and-conditions)** **Privacy Policy (/about/privacy)**

Back

Advertisel

Chemical Biology & Drug Design / Volume 98, Issue 1 / p. 144-165

REVIEW

Caspase-3: A primary target for natural and synthetic compounds for cancer therapy

Poonam Yadav, Ramakant Yadav, Shweta Jain, Ankur Vaidya

First published: 08 May 2021
https://doi.org/10.1111/cbdd.13860
Citations: 43

Abstract

Caspases, a group of protease enzymes (cysteine proteases), exist as inactive zymogens in the cells and execute apoptosis (programmed cell death). Caspase-3, an executioner caspase, plays an imperative role in apoptosis and becomes a primary target for cancer treatment. A number of analogues of quinazoline, quinazolinone, indoloquinazolines, quinone, naphthoquinones, pyrroloiminoquinones, styrylquinolines, tetheredtetrahydroquinoline, fluoroquinolone, thiosemicarbazones, benzotriazole, pyrimidines, chalcone, and carbazoles have been reported till date, representing caspase-3 mediated apoptosis for cancer therapy. Simultaneously, plant isolates, including lysicamine, podophyllotoxin, and majoranolide, have also been claimed for caspase-3-mediated apoptosis-induced cytotoxicity. Procaspase-activating compound-1 (PAC-1) is the first FDA approved orphan drug, and its synthetic derivative WF-208 also showed fascinating caspase-3 mediated anticancer activity. Till date, a large number of compounds have been reported and patented for their

Back

CONFLICT OF INTERESTS

There is no conflict of interest.

REFERENCES

Adams, J. M., & Cory, S. (2002). Apoptosomes: Engines for caspase activation. *Current Opinion in Cell Biology*, **14**, 715–720. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0955-0674(02)00381-2

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Agrawal, R. K., Jain, A. K., Veerasamy, R., Vaidya, A., Kashaw, S., Mourya, V. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2012). QSAR analysis of B-ring-modified diaryl ether derivatives as a InhA inhibitors. *Medicinal Chemistry Research*, **21**, 145–151. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-010-9518-8

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Ahmed, N. M., Youns, M., Soltand, M. K., & Said, A. M. (2019). Design, synthesis, molecular modelling, and biological evaluation of novel substituted pyrimidine derivatives as potential anticancer agents for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Journal of Enzyme Inhibition and Medicinal Chemistry*, **34**, 1110–1120. https://doi.org/10.1080/14756366.2019.1612889

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Al-oudat, B. A., Alqudah, M. A., Audat, S. A., Al-Balas, Q. A., El-Elimat, T., Hassan, M. A., Frhat, N., & Azaizeh, M. M. (2019). Design, synthesis, and biologic evaluation of novel chrysin derivatives as cytotoxic agents and caspase-3/7 activators. *Drug Design Development and Therapy*, **13**, 423–433.

Back

Anderson, M. B., Willardsen, J. A., Weiner, W. S. et al (2010). *Preparation of 4-arylamino-quinazolines as activators of caspases and inducers of apoptosis*. US0069383.

Google Scholar

Aranha, O., Zhu, L., Alhasan, S., Wood, D. P. Jr, Kuo, T. H., & Sarkar, F. H. (2002). Role of mitochondria in ciprofloxacin induced apoptosis in bladder cancer cells. *Journal of Urology*, **167**, 1288–1294. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-5347(05)65283-4

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Ayoup, M. S., Wahby, Y., Abdel-Hamid, H., Ramadan, E. S., Teleb, M., Abu-Serie, M. M., & Noby, A. (2019). Design, synthesis and biological evaluation of novel a-acyloxy carboxamides via Passerini reaction as caspase 3/7 activators. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **168**, 340–356.

PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Bekhit, A. A., Fahmy, H. T., Rostom, S. A., & El-Din, A. B. A. (2010). Synthesis and biological evaluation of some thiazolylpyrazole derivatives as dual anti-inflammatory antimicrobial agents. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **45**, 6027–6038. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2010.10.001

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Benites, J., Valderrama, J. A., Taper, H., & Calderon, P. B. (2011). An in vitro comparative study with furyl-1,4-quinones endowed with anticancer activities. *Investigational New Drugs*, **29**, 760–767. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10637-010-9419-1

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Back

in isolation, synthesis and mechanisms of action. Natural Product [illegible], 22, 269–303. https://doi.org/10.1039/B500105M

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Bhatiya, R., Vaidya, A., Kashaw, S. K., Jain, A. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2014). QSAR analysis of furanone derivatives as potential COX-2 inhibitors: kNN MFA approach. *Journal of Saudi Chemical Society*, **18**, 977–984. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jscs.2011.12.002

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Boije, F. G., Talman, V., Aitio, O., Ekokoski, E., Finel, M., Tuominen, R. K., & Yli-Kauhaluoma, J. (2009). Design, synthesis, and biological activity of isophthalic acid derivatives targeted to the C1 domain of protein kinase C. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **52**, 3969–3981. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm900229p

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Bos, R., Hendriks, H., Scheffer, J. J. C., & Woerdenbag, H. J. (1998). Cytotoxic potential of valerian constituents and valerian tinctures. *Phytomedicine*, **57**, 219–225. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0944-7113(98)80032-9

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Chain, P., Lamerdin, J., Larimer, F., Regala, W., Lao, V., Land, M., Hauser, L., Hooper, A., Klotz, M., Norton, J., Sayavedra-Soto, L., Arciero, D., Hommes, N., Whittaker, M., & Arp, D. (2003). Complete genome sequence of the ammonia-oxidizing bacterium and obligate chemolithoautotroph Nitrosomonas. *European Journal of Bacteriology*, **185**, 2759–2773.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Chauhan, M., & Kumar, R. (2013). Medicinal attributes of pyrazolo[3,4-d] pyrimidines: A review. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry*, **21**, 5657–5668. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2013.07.027

Back

Chen, D., Wei, L., Yu, J., & Zhang, L. (2014). Regorafenib inhibits colorectal tumor growth through PUMA-mediated apoptosis. *Clinical Cancer Research*, **20**, 3472–3484. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2944

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Chen, Z. F., & Liang, H. (2010). Progresses in TCM metal-based antitumour agents. *Anticancer Agents in Medicinal Chemistry*, **10**, 412–423. https://doi.org/10.2174/1871520611009050412

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Chowdhury, I., Tharakan, B., & Bhat, G. K. (2008). Caspases - an update. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology B: Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, **151**, 10–27. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cbpb.2008.05.010

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Chuprajob, T., Changtam, C., Chokchaisiri, R., Chunglok, W., Sornkaew, N., & Suksamrarn, A. (2014). Synthesis, cytotoxicity against human oral cancer KB cells and structure–activity relationship studies of trienone analogues of curcuminoids. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, **24**, 2839–2844. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmcl.2014.04.105

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Dijoux, M. G., Schnabel, P. C., Hallock, Y. F., Boswell, J. L., Johnson, T. R., Wilson, J. A., Ireland, C. M., Van-Soest, R., Boyed, M. R., Barrows, L. R., & Cardellina, J. H. (2005). Antitumor activity and distribution of pyrroloiminoquinones in the sponge genus Zyzzy. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry*, **13**, 6035–6044.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Bioorganic Chemistry, **30**(19), 127438.

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Eldehna, W. M., Hassan, G. S., Al-Rashood, S. T., Al-Warhi, T., Altyar, A. E., Alkahtani, H. M., Almehizia, A. A., & Abdel-Aziz, H. A. (2019). Synthesis and in vitro anticancer activity of certain novel 1-(2-methyl-6-arylpyridin-3-yl)-3-phenylureas as apoptosis-inducing agents. *Journal of Enzyme Inhibition and Medicinal Chemistry*, **34**(1), 322–332.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Elmore, S. (2007). Apoptosis: A review of programmed cell death. *Toxicology Pathology*, **35**, 495–516. https://doi.org/10.1080/01926230701320337

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

El-Naggar, M., Almahli, H., Ibrahim, H. S., Eldehna, W. M., & Abdel-Aziz, H. A. (2018). Pyridine-ureas as potential anticancer agents: Synthesis and in vitro biological evaluation. *Molecules*, **23**, 1459. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules23061459

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Elsea, S. H., McGuirk, P. R., Gootz, T. D., Moynihan, M., & Osheroff, N. (1993). Drug features that contribute to the activity of quinolones against mammalian topoisomerases ii and cultured cells: Correlation between enhancement of enzyme-mediated DNA cleavage in vitro and cytotoxic potential. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, **37**, 2179–2186.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

https://doi.org/10.3109/14756366.2013.787421

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Faraj, F. L., Zahedifard, M., Paydar, M., Looi, C. Y., Majid, N. A., Ali, H. M., Ahmad, N., Gwaram, N. S., & Abdull, M. A. (2014). Synthesis, characterization and anticancer activity of new quinazoline derivatives against MCF-7 cells. *Science World Journal*, **2014**, 15.

CAS | Google Scholar

Gedawy, E. M., Kassab, A. E., & El-Malah, A. A. (2015). Synthesis and anticancer activity of novel tetrahydroquinoline and tetrahydropyrimidoquinoline derivatives. *Medicinal Chemistry Research*, **24**, 3387–3397. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-015-1388-7

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Guo, W., Yan, M., Xu, B., Chu, F., Wang, W., Zhang, C., Jia, X., Han, Y., Xiang, H., Zhang, Y., Wang, P., & Lei, H. (2016). Design, synthesis, and biological evaluation of the novel glycyrrhetinic acid-cinnamoyl hybrids as anti-tumor agents. *Chemistry Centre Journal*, **10**, 1–11. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13065-016-0222-8

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

Hanashalshahaby, E. H. A., Ünaleroğlu, C., Kcan, A. A., Özgün, A., & Garipcan, B. (2019). Design, synthesis, and antitumor evaluation of novel methylene moiety-tethered tetrahydroquinoline derivatives. *Turkish Journal of Chemistry*, **43**, 1552–1569. https://doi.org/10.3906/kim-1907-71

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Medicine, **2019**, 3464237.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Honda, G., & Tabata, M. (1979). Isolation of antifungal principle tryptanthrin, from Strobilanthes cusia O Kuntze. *Planta Medica*, **36**, 85–90. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0028-1097245

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Hsu, Y. L., Kuo, P. L., Lin, L. T., & Lin, C. C. (2005). Isoliquiritigenin inhibits cell proliferation and induces apoptosis in human hepatoma cells. *Planta Medica*, **71**, 130–134. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2005-837779

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Huang, H. E., Chen, Q., Ku, X., Meng, L., Lin, L., Wang, X., Zhu, C., Wang, Y. I., Chen, Z., Li, M., Jiang, H., Chen, K., Ding, J., & Liu, H. (2010). A series of α-heterocyclic carboxaldehyde thiosemicarbazones inhibit topoisomerase IIα catalytic activity. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **53**, 3048–3064. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm9014394

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Jain, A. K., Sharma, S., Vaidya, A., Ravichandran, V., & Agrawal, R. K. (2013). 1,3,4-Thiadiazole and Its derivatives: A review on recent progress in biological activities. *Chemical Biology and Drug Design*, **81**, 557–576. https://doi.org/10.1111/cbdd.12125

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Jain, A. K., Vaidya, A., Ravichandran, V., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2012). Recent developments and *biological activities* of thiazolidinone derivatives: A review. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry*, **20**, 3378–3395. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2012.03.069

Back

Jain, A. K., Veerasamy, R., Vaidya, A., Mourya, V., & Agrawal, R. K. (2010). QSAR analysis of some novel sulfonamides incorporating 1,3,5-triazine derivatives as carbonic anhydrase inhibitors. *Medicinal Chemistry Research*, **19**, 1191–1202. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-009-9262-0

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Jain, S., Chandra, V., Jain, P., Pathak, K., Pathak, D., & Vaidya, A. (2019). Comprehensive review on current developments of quinoline-based anticancer agents. *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*, **12**, 4920–4946. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2016.10.009

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Jain, S., Pattnaik, S., Pathak, K., Kumar, S., Pathak, D., Jain, S. K., & Vaidya, A. (2017). Anticancer potential of thiazole derivatives: A retrospective review. *Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, **18**, 640–655.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Jain, S., Vaidya, A., Jain, A. K., Agrawal, R. K., & Kashaw, S. K. (2017). Computational analysis of benzyl vinylogous derivatives as potent PDE3B inhibitors. *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*, **10**, S109–S113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2012.07.014

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Jantti, M. H., Talman, V., Rasanen, K., Tarvainen, I., Koistinen, H., & Tuominen, R. K. (2018). Anticancer activity of the protein kinase C modulator HMI-1a3 in 2D and 3D cell culture models of androgen responsive and androgen-unresponsive prostate cancer. *FEBS Open Biology*, **8**, 817–828.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Google Scholar

Johnstone, W., Ruefli, A. A., & Lowe, S. W. (2002). Apoptosis: A link between cancer genetics and chemotherapy. *Cell*, **108**, 153–164. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0092-8674(02)00625-6

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Kamal, A., Faazil, S., & Malik, M. S. (2014). Apoptosis-inducing agents: A patent review (2010–2013). *Expert Opinion on Therapeutic Patents*, **24**, 339–354. https://doi.org/10.1517/13543776.2014.877445

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Kassab, A. E., & Gedawy, E. M. (2018). Novel ciprofloxacin hybrids using biology oriented drug synthesis (BIODS) approach: Anticancer activity, effects on cell cycle profile, caspase-3 mediated apoptosis, topoisomerase II inhibition, and antibacterial activity. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **150**, 403–418. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2018.03.026

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Kassab, A. E., & Hassan, R. A. (2018). Novel benzotriazole N-acylarylhydrazone hybrids: Design, synthesis, anticancer activity, effects on cell cycle profile, caspase-3 mediated apoptosis and FAK inhibition. *Bioorganic Chemistry*, **80**, 531–544. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioorg.2018.07.008

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Kerr, J. F. F., Wylie, A. H., & Currie, A. R. (1997). Apoptosis: A basic biological Phenomenon with wide ranging implications in tissue kinetics. *British Journal of Cancer*, **26**, 239–257. https://doi.org/10.1038/bjc.1972.33

Back

Khalil, A. M. (2021). Apoptosis, guardian of the genome. *World Journal of Biology Pharmacy and Health Sciences*, **5**, 37–54.

Google Scholar

Khan, S. S., Salam, A., Haque, R. S. M. S., Majid, A. M. S. A., Majid, A. S. B. A., Asif, M., Basheer, M. K. A., & Tabana, Y. M. (2016). Synthesis, cytotoxicity, and long-term single dose anti-cancer pharmacological evaluation of dimethyltin(IV) complex of N(4)-methylthiosemicarbazone (having ONS donor ligand). *Cogent Biology*, **2**, 1154282.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

Kimoto, T., Hino, K., Koya-Miyata, S., Yamamoto, Y., Takeuchi, M., Nishizaki, Y., Micallef, M. J., Ushio, S., Iwaki, K., Ikeda, M., & Kurimoto, M. (2001). Cell differentiation and apoptosis of monocytic and promyelocytic leukemia cells (U-937 and HL-60) by tryptanthrin, an active ingredient of Polygonum tinctorium lour. *Pathology International*, **51**, 315–325.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Kumar, R. S., Almansour, A. I., Arumugam, N., Kotresha, D., Menéndez, J. C., & Kumar, R. R. (2021). Ionic liquid mediated synthesis and in vitro mechanistic exploration of polycyclic cage-like heterocyclic hybrid. *Journal of Heterocyclic Chemistry*, **58**, 580–588.

CAS Web of Science® Google Scholar

Lavrado, J., Moreira, R., & Paulo, A. (2010). Indoloquinolines as scaffolds for drug discovery. *Current Medicinal Chemistry*, **17**, 2348–2370.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Lee, Y. H., Shin, S. Y., & Lim, Y. H. (2011). *Preparation of bis(2-hydroxylbenzylamino)(pyridin-2-yl) methane as apoptosis inducer*. KR139392.

Back

Lopez, J., & Tait, S. W. G. (2015). Mitochondrial apoptosis: Killing cancer using the enemy with in. *British Journal of Cancer*, **112**, 957–962. https://doi.org/10.1038/bjc.2015.85

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Lv, J. J., Song, W. T., Li, X. M., Gao, J. M., & Yuan, Z. L. (2020). Synthesis of a new phenyl chlormethine-quinazoline derivative, a potential anti-cancer agent, induced apoptosis in hepatocellular carcinoma through mediating Sirt1/Caspase 3 signaling pathway. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*, **11**, 911. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2020.00911

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Maher, M., Kassab, A. E., Zaher, A. F., & Mahmoud, Z. (2019). Novel pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidines: Design, synthesis, anticancer activity, dual EGFR/ErbB2 receptor tyrosine kinases inhibitory activity, effects on cell cycle profile and caspase-3 mediated apoptosis. *Journal of Enzyme Inhibition and Medicinal Chemistry*, **34**, 532–546.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Mekouar, K., Mouscadet, J. F., Desmaële, D., Subra, F., Leh, H., Savouré, D., Auclair, C., & Dangelo, J. (1998). Styrylquinoline derivatives: A new class of potent HIV-1 integrase inhibitors that block HIV-1 replication in CEM cells. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, **41**, 2846–2857.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Min, H., Yin, H., Zhang, X., Chuan, L., Caihong, Y., & Shuang, C. (2013). Di- and tri-organotin (IV) complexes with 2-hydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde 5-chloro-2-hydroxybenzoylhydrazone: Synthesis, characterization and in vitro antitumor activities. *Journal of Organometallic Chemistry*, **724**, 23–31.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Web of Science® Google Scholar

Mrojek-Wilczkiewicz, A., Spaczynska, E., Malarz, K., Cieslik, W., Baron, M. R., Kryštof, V., & Musiol, R. (2015). Design, Synthesis and in vitro activity of anticancer styrylquinolines, the p53 independent mechanism of action. *PLoS One*, **10**, 142678.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

Musiol, R., Jampilek, J., Kralova, K., Richardson, D. R., Kalinowski, D., Podeszwa, B., Finstera, J., Niedbalaa, H., Palkaa, A., & Polanski, J. (2007). Investigating biological activity spectrum for novel quinoline analogues. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry*, **15**, 1280–1288. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2006.11.020

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Musiol, R., Tabak, D., Niedbala, H., Podeszwa, B., Jampilek, J., Kralova, K., Dohnal, J., Finster, J., Mencel, A., & Polanski, J. (2008). Investigating biological activity for novel quinoline analogues hydroxy quinoline carboxamides with photosynthesis inhibiting activity. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry*, **16**, 4490–4499.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Nagahara, Y., & Nagahara, K. (2017). Relationship between structure and antiproliferative activity novel 5-amino-4-cyanopyrazole-1-formaldehydehydrazono derivatives on HL-60RG human leukemia cells. *Anticancer Research*, **37**, 6329–6333.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

Nagraj, J., Chatterjee, S., Pal, T., Sakpal, A. S., Gota, V., Ramaa, C. S., & Ray, P. (2014). A novel series of di-fluorinated propanedione derivatives synergistically augment Paclitaxel mediated caspase 3 activation in ovarian cancer cells. *Journal of Cancer Research and*

Back

Nakano, D., Ishitsuka, K., Kamikawa, M., Matsuda, M., Tsuchihashi, R., Okawa, M., Okabe, H., Tamura, K., & Kinjo, J. (2013). Screening of promising chemotherapeutic candidates from plants against human adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma (III). *Journal of Natural Medicine*, **67**, 894–903. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11418-013-0747-2

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Nandy, B. C., Gupta, A. K., Mittal, A., & Vyas, V. (2014). Carbazole: it's biological activity. *Journal of Biomedical and Pharmaceutical Research*, **3**, 42–48.

CAS | Google Scholar

Nowar, R. M., Osman, E. E. A., Abou-Seri, S. M., Moghazy, S. M. E., & El- Ella, D. A. (2017). Design, synthesis and biological evaluation of some novel quinazolinone derivatives as potent apoptotic inducers. *Future Medicinal Chemistry*, **10**, 1191–1205. https://doi.org/10.4155/fmc-2017-0284

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Obeng, E. (2021). Apoptosis (programmed cell death) and its signals-A review. *Brazilian Journal of Biology*, **81**, 1133–1143. https://doi.org/10.1590/1519-6984.228437

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Pan, Y. C., Li, C. F., Ko, C. Y., Pan, M. H., Chen, P. J., & Tseng, J. T. (2010). CEBPD reverses RB/E2F1-mediated gene repression and participates in HMDB-induced apoptosis of cancer cells. *Clinical Cancer Research*, **16**, 5770–5780.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

Pereyra, C. E., Dantas, R. F., Ferreira, S. B., Gomes, L. P., & Silva-Jr, F. P. (2019). The diverse mechanisms and anticancer potential of naphthoquinones. *Cancer Cell International*, **19**, 1–20. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12935-019-0925-8

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Porter, A. G., & Jänicke, R. U. (1999). Emerging roles of caspase-3 in apoptosis. *Cell Death & Differentiation*, **6**, 99–104. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.cdd.4400476

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Putt, K. S., Chen, G. W., Pearson, J. M., Sandhorst, J. S., Hoagland, M. S., Kwon, J. T., Hwang, S. K., Jin, H., Churchwell, M. I., Cho, M. H., Doerge, D. R., Helferich, W. G., & Hergenrother, P. J. (2006). Small-molecule activation of procaspase-3 to caspase-3 as a personalized anticancer strategy. *Nature Chemical Biology*, **2**, 543–550. https://doi.org/10.1038/nchembio814

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Qin, J. L., Meng, T., Chen, Z. F., Xie, X. L., Qin, Q. P., He, X. J., Ke-Bin, H., & Liang, H. (2017). Facile total synthesis of lysicamine and the anticancer activities of the RuII, RhIII, MnII and ZnII complexes of lysicamine. *Oncotarget*, **8**, 59359. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.19584

PubMed | Google Scholar

Rafi, M. M., Rosen, R. T., Vassil, A., Ho, C. T., Zhang, H., Ghai, G., Lambert, G., & DiPaola, R. S. (2000). Modulation of bcl-2 and cytotoxicity by licochalcone-A, a novel estrogenic flavonoid. *Anticancer Research*, **20**, 2653–2658.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Sabale, P. M., Patel, P., & Kaur, P. (2013). 1, 2,3,4-Tetrahydroquinoline derivatives and its significance in medicinal chemistry. *Asian Journal of Research in Chemistry*, **6**, 599–610.

Google Scholar

Sagar, S., Esau, L., Moosa, B., Khashab, N. M., Bajic, V. B., & Kaur, M. (2014). Cytotoxicity and apoptosis induced by a plumbagin derivative in estrogen positive MCF-7 breast cancer cells. *Anticancer Agents in Medicinal Chemistry*, **14**, 170–180.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Saibu, M., Sagar, S., Green, I., Ameer, F., & Meyer, M. (2014). Evaluating the cytotoxic effects of novel quinone compounds. *Anticancer Research*, **34**, 4077–4086.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Şenkardeş, S., Türe, A., Ekrek, S., Durak, A. T., Abbak, M., Çevik, Ö., Kaşkatepe, B., Küçükgüzel, İ., & Küçükgüzel, Ş. G. (2021). Novel 2, 6-disubstituted pyridine hydrazones: Synthesis, anticancer activity, docking studies and effects on caspase-3-mediated apoptosis. *Journal of Molecular Structure*, **1223**, 128962. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molstruc.2020.128962

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Siegel, R. L., Miller, K. D., Fuchs, H. E., & Jemal, A. (2021). Cancer statistics, 2021. *CA Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, **71**, 7–33. https://doi.org/10.3322/caac.21654

Back

Solyanik, G. I. (2019). Quinazoline compounds for antitumor treatment. *Experimental Oncology*, **41**, 3–6. https://doi.org/10.32471/exp-oncology.2312-8852.vol-41-no-1.12414

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

Sung, H., Ferlay, J., Siegel, R. L., Laversanne, M., Soerjomataram, I., Jemal, A., & Bray, F. (2021). Global cancer statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer Journal of Clinician*, **71**(3), 209–249. https://doi.org/10.3322/caac.21660

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Syam, S., Abdelwahab, S. I., Al-Mamary, M. A., & Mohan, S. (2012). Synthesis of chalcones with anticancer activities. *Molecules*, **17**(6), 6179–6195. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules17066179

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Theofilas, P., Wang, C., Butler, D., Morales, D. O., Petersen, C., Chin, B., Yang, T., Khan, S., Ng, R., Kayed, R., & Karch, C. M. (2021). Caspase inhibition mitigates tau cleavage and neurotoxicity in iPSC-induced neurons with the V337M MAPT mutation. *bioRxiv*.

Google Scholar

Tian, L., Qian, B., Sun, Y., Zheng, X., Yang, M., Li, H., & Xueli, L. (2005). Synthesis, structural characterization and cytotoxic activity of diorganotin (IV) complexes of N-(5- halosalicylidene)-α-amino acid. *Applied Organometalic Chemistry*, **19**, 980–987. https://doi.org/10.1002/aoc.940

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Utaipan, T., Boonyanuphong, P., Chuprajob, T., Suksamrarn, A., & Chunglok, W. (2020). A trienone analog of curcumin, 1,7-bis(3-hydroxyphenyl) -1,4,6-heptatrien-3-one, possesses ROS- and caspase-mediated apoptosis in human oral squamous cell carcinoma cells in vitro. *Applied Biological Chemistry*, **63**, 7. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13765-020-0491-8

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, A. K., Kumar, P., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2011). Predicting anti-cancer activity of quinoline derivatives: CoMFA and CoMSIA approach. *Journal of Enzyme Inhibition and Medicinal Chemistry*, **26**, 854–861. https://doi.org/10.3109/14756366.2011.567195

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, A. K., Prashantha, K. B. R., Sastry, G. N., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2017). CoMFA, CoMSIA, kNN MFA and docking studies of 1, 2, 4-Oxadiazole derivatives as potent Caspase-3 activators. *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*, **10**, S3936–S3946. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2014.05.034

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Jain, A. K., Kashaw, S. K., Jain, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2013). Metabotropic glutamate receptors: A review on prospective and therapeutic aspects. *Mini Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, **3**, 1967–1981.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Jain, A. K., Prashanthakumar, B. R., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2015). Computational analysis of quinoline derivatives as potent topoisomerase-ii inhibitors. *Medicinal Chemistry Research*, **24**, 383–393. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00044-014-1131-9

Back

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Jain, P., Tiwari, N., Jain, R., Jain, R., Jain, A. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2016). Synthesis and biological activities of oxadiazole derivatives: A review. *Mini-Review in Medicinal Chemistry*, **16**, 825–845.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Jain, S., Jain, A. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2014). Quantitative structure-activity relationships: A novel approach of drug design and discovery. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences & Pharmacology*, **1**, 219–232. https://doi.org/10.1166/jpsp.2014.1024

Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Kumar, B. R. P., Singh, S. K., Kashaw, S. K., & Agrawal, R. K. (2020a). Synthesis of 1,2,4-oxadiazole derivatives: Anticancer and 3D QSAR studies. *Monatsh Fur Chemica*, **151**, 385–395. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00706-020-02553-1

CAS | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Jain, S., Sahu, S., Jain, P. K., Pathak, K., Pathak, D., Kumar, R., & Jain, S. K. (2020b). Anticancer agents based on vulnerable components in a signalling pathway. *Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, **20**, 886–907. https://doi.org/10.2174/1389557520666200212105417

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Vaidya, A., Pathak, D., & Shah, K. (2020). 1,3,4-oxadiazole and its derivatives: A review on recent progress in anticancer activities. *Chemical Biology & Drug Design*, **97**(3), 572–591. https://doi.org/10.1111/cbdd.13795

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Back

https://doi.org/10.2174/1871520610909040397

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Wang, F., Liu, Y., Wang, L., Yang, J., Zhao, Y., Wang, N., Cao, Q., Gong, P., & Wu, C. (2015). Targeting procaspase-3 with WF-208, a novel PAC-1 derivative causes selective cancer cell apoptosis. *Journal of Cellular and Molecular Medicine*, **19**, 1916–1928.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Wang, W., Rayburn, E. R., Velu, S. E., Nadkarni, D. H., Murugesan, S., & Zhang, R. (2009). In vitro and in vivo anticancer activity of novel synthetic makaluvamine analogues. *Clinical Cancer Research*, **15**, 3511–3519.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Yu, S. T., Chern, J. W., Chen, T. M., Chiu, Y. F., Chen, H. T., & Chen, Y. H. (2010). Cytotoxicity and reversal of multidrug resistance by tryptanthrin-derived indoloquinazolines. *Acta Pharmaceutica Scienica*, **31**, 259–264. https://doi.org/10.1038/aps.2009.198

CAS | Google Scholar

Zhang, B., Guo, R., Hu, Y., Dong, X., Lin, N., Dai, X., Wu, H., Ma, S., & Yang, B. (2017). Design, synthesis and biological evaluation of valepotriate derivatives as novel antitumor agents. *The Royal Society of Chemistry*, **7**, 31899–31906. https://doi.org/10.1039/C6RA27478A

CAS | Google Scholar

Zhang, Y., Wang, Y., Zhao, Y., Gu, W., Zhu, Y., & Wang, S. (2019). Novel camphor-based pyrimidine derivatives induced cancer cell death through a ROS-mediated mitochondrial apoptosis pathway. *Royal Society of Chemistry*, **9**, 29711–29720.

Back

Zhu, T., Shen, S., Lu, Q., Ye, X., Ding, W., Chen, R., Xie, J., Zhu, W., Xu, J., Jia, L., Wu, W., & Ma, T. (2017). Design and synthesis of novel N (4)-substituted thiosemicarbazones bearing a pyrrole unit as potential anticancer agents. *Oncology Letters*, **13**, 4493–4500. https://doi.org/10.3892/ol.2017.5995

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Zi, C. T., Gao, Y. S., Yang, L., Feng, S. Y., Huang, Y., Sun, L., Jin, Y., Xu, F. Q., Dong, F. W., Li, Y., Ding, Z. T., Zhou, J., Jiang, Z. H., Yuan, S. T., & Hu, J. M. (2019). Design, synthesis and biological evaluation of novel biotinylated podophyllotoxin derivatives as potential antitumor agents. *Frontiers in Chemistry*, **7**, 434. https://doi.org/10.3389/fchem.2019.00434

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

Zingales, S. K., & Moore, M. E. (2016). Design and synthesis of (2-(furanyl) vinyl)-1-tetralone chalcones as anticancer agents. *Der Pharma Chemica*, **8**, 40–47.

CAS | Google Scholar

Citing Literature

Download PDF

Back

About Cookies
Manage Cookies
Accessibility
Wiley Research DE&I Statement and Publishing Policies
Developing World Access

HELP & SUPPORT

Contact Us
Training and Support
DMCA & Reporting Piracy

OPPORTUNITIES

Subscription Agents
Advertisers & Corporate Partners

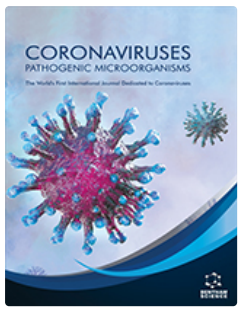
CONNECT WITH WILEY

The Wiley Network
Wiley Press Room

Copyright © 1999-2024 John Wiley & Sons, Inc or related companies. All rights reserved, including rights for text and data mining and training of artificial technologies or similar technologies.

BENTHAM SCIENCE

Search here... Login Register Cart 0



Coronaviruses

Editor-in-Chief

ISSN (Print): 2666-7967
ISSN (Online): 2666-7975

Back Journal Subscribe

Research Article

Assessment of Stress, Anxiety, and Depression Levels Among COVID-19 Positive Patients Admitted in Rural Tertiary Care Hospital

Author(s): Ramakant Yadav, Neha Dubey, Shweta Jain, Ankur Vaidya* and Raj Kumar

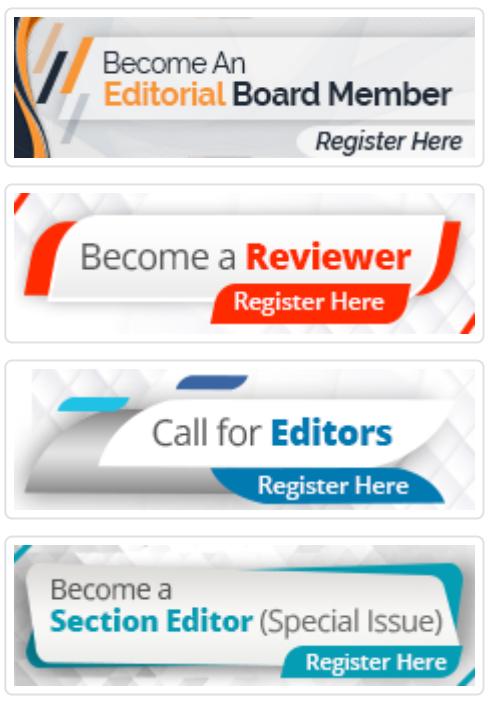
Volume 3, Issue 3, 2022

Published on: 14 March, 2022

Article ID: e190122200361 **Pages:** 5

DOI: 10.2174/2666796703666220119111046

Download Article



Abstract

Objective: The aim of the present study was to investigate the psychiatric distress, including stress, anxiety, and depression levels, among COVID-19 positive patients who were admitted between 01 July 2020 to 31 August 2020 to the COVID-19 isolation ward of the Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah India. Participants included 100 patients, with 55 males and 45 females. The majority of admitted patients (81%) were illiterate. Out of 100 patients, 83 were married, 16 were unmarried, and only 1 was a widow.

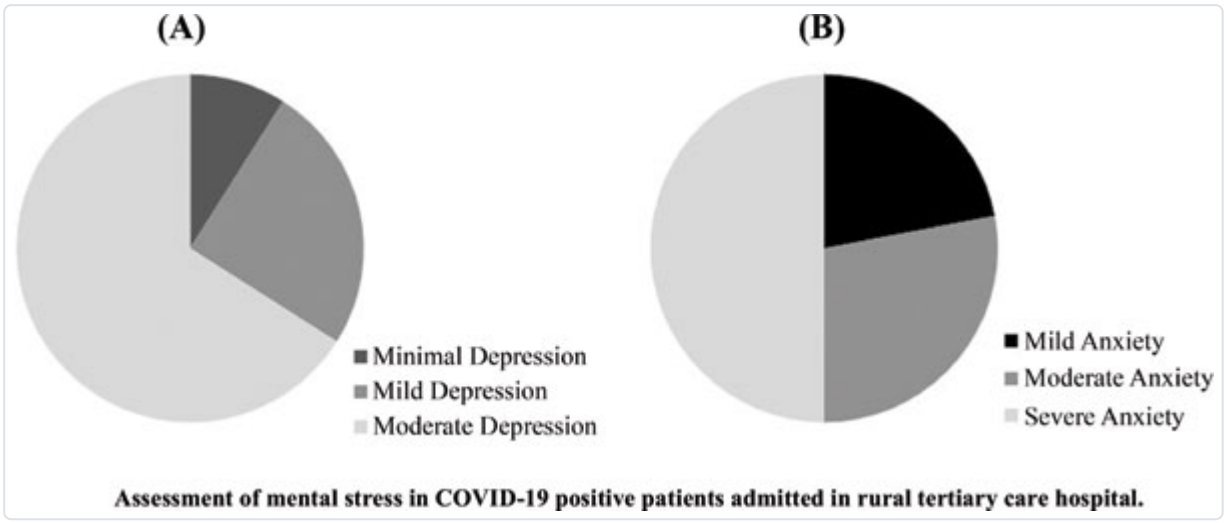
Methods: Levels of anxiety, depression, and stress level were noted in admitted patients using Generalized Anxiety Disorder-7 (GAD-7), Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ-9) depression assessment, and Perceived Stress Scale 4 (PSS-4) assessment techniques, respectively.

Results: Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ-9) depression assessment results showed minimal, mild, and moderate depression in 9, 25, and 66 patients, respectively, with a 10.6 median score of PHQ-9. Mild, moderate, and severe anxiety (GAD-7 score) was present in 22, 28, and 50 of the patients surveyed. The mean Perceived Stress Scale 4 (PSS-4) was also analyzed, and it reported 6.1 values. The results of the study demonstrated that the patients had a high label of psychiatric distress, but still, admitted patients believe that they will come out from this pandemic condition.

Conclusion: Although patients claimed psychiatric distress and mental health illness, they still denied the requirement of any mental health professionals to minimize stress levels and were satisfied with the medical facilities available in a hospital located in a rural area.

Keywords: Coronavirus (COVID-19) , generalized anxiety , depression , perceived stress , psychiatric distress , rural .

Graphical Abstract



Assessment of mental stress in COVID-19 positive patients admitted in rural tertiary care hospital.

References

Download Options Rights & Permissions Print Cite

Article Metrics

PDF

31

HTML

1

1

1 Total citation
1 Recent citation
0.82 Field Citation Ratio
n/a Relative Citation Ratio

FIND YOUR INSTITUTION

Journal Information

About Journal
Editorial Board
Current Issue
Volumes /Issues

For Authors

For Editors

For Reviewers

Explore Articles

Open Access

For Visitors

Related Articles

A Review on Structure-Activity Relationships of Glycyrrhetinic Acid Derivatives with Diverse Bioactivities
Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry

Copper-catalyzed C-N Bond Cleavage: Synthesis of N-sulfonylformamidines from N-(2-pyridinylmethyl)benzenesulfonamides
Current Organic Synthesis

Medicinal Importance, Pharmacological Activities and Analytical Aspects of a Flavonoid Glycoside 'Nicotiflorin' in the Medicine
Drug Metabolism and Bioanalysis Letters

G Protein-Coupled Receptors: Target-Based In Silico Screening
Current Pharmaceutical Design

Fluvoxamine and Amantadine: Central Nervous System Acting Drugs Repositioned for COVID-19 as Early Intervention
Current Neuropharmacology

Pharmacological Therapies for Pediatric and Neonatal ALI/ARDS: An Evidence-Based Review
Current Drug Targets

Design and Development of Signal Transduction Inhibitors for Cancer Treatment: Experience and Challenges with Kinase Targets
Current Signal Transduction Therapy

Synthesis and Biological Evaluation of Quinazoline Derivatives as Potential Anticancer Agents (II)
Anti-Cancer Agents in Medicinal Chemistry

Modulating Protein-Protein Interactions: From Structural Determinants of Binding to Druggability Prediction to Application
Current Pharmaceutical Design

Demographic, Clinical and Laboratory Profiles of HIV Infected Patients Admitted into Imam Khomeini Hospital of Tehran, Iran
Infectious Disorders - Drug Targets

Biotechnological Production of Taxol and Related Taxoids: Current State and Prospects
Anti-Cancer Agents in Medicinal Chemistry

Interactive Tools for Risk Reduction and Efficiency Improvements in Medicinal Chemistry
Combinatorial Chemistry & High Throughput Screening

Potential Genetic Therapies for Acute Lung Injury
Current Gene Therapy

Impact of Online Teaching on Students' Education and Health in India during the Pandemic of COVID-19
Coronaviruses

A Machine Learning Approach to Predict In-Hospital Mortality in COVID-19 Patients with Underlying Cardiovascular Disease using Artificial Neural Network
Current Respiratory Medicine Reviews

Small Molecule Inhibitors of Hepatitis B Virus Nucleocapsid Assembly: A New Approach to Treat Chronic HBV Infection
Current Medicinal Chemistry

Water-Soluble CdS Nanospheres Assembled from Quantum Dots

Current Nanoscience

Synthesis and Anti-HIV Evaluation of Novel 1,2,4-triazole Derivatives as Potential Non-nucleoside HIV-1 Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors

Letters in Drug Design & Discovery

Partial A1 Adenosine Receptor Agonists from a Molecular Perspective and Their Potential Use as Chronic Ventricular Rate Control Agents During Atrial Fibrillation (AF)

Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry

Elucidating the Genetic Factors Contributing Towards Susceptibility and Severity of Covid 19

Current Chinese Science

© 2024 Bentham Science Publishers | Privacy Policy

BENTHAM SCIENCE

Search here...

Login Register Cart 0

Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry

Editor-in-Chief

ISSN (Print): 1389-5575
ISSN (Online): 1875-5607

Back Journal Subscribe

Mini-Review Article

Some Scaffolds as Anti-leishmanial Agents: A Review

Author(s): Thatikayala Mahender, Wadhwa Pankaj, Singh Pankaj Kumar, Vaidya Ankur and Sahu Sanjeev Kumar*

Volume 22, Issue 5, 2022

Published on: 12 January, 2022

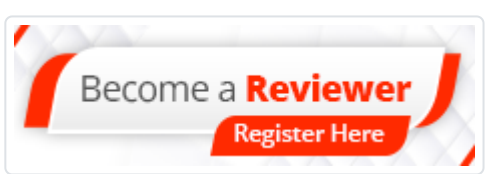
Page: [743 - 757]

Pages: 15

DOI: 10.2174/1389557521666210913115116

Price: $65

Purchase PDF



Abstract

Leishmaniasis is a parasitic infectious neglected tropical disease transmitted to humans by the parasites of Leishmania species. Mainly, three types of leishmaniases are usually observed: visceral (VL), cutaneous (CL), and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. In many western countries, almost 700,000 to 1 million people suffer from leishmaniasis, and it is estimated that around 26000 to 65000 deaths occur from leishmaniasis. Few drugs are available for its treatment; however, none of them are ideal for leishmaniasis due to long treatment, discomfort mode of administration, risk of high-level toxicity, high resistance, etc. Hence, so many patients are unable to take complete treatment due to the high drug resistance. The present

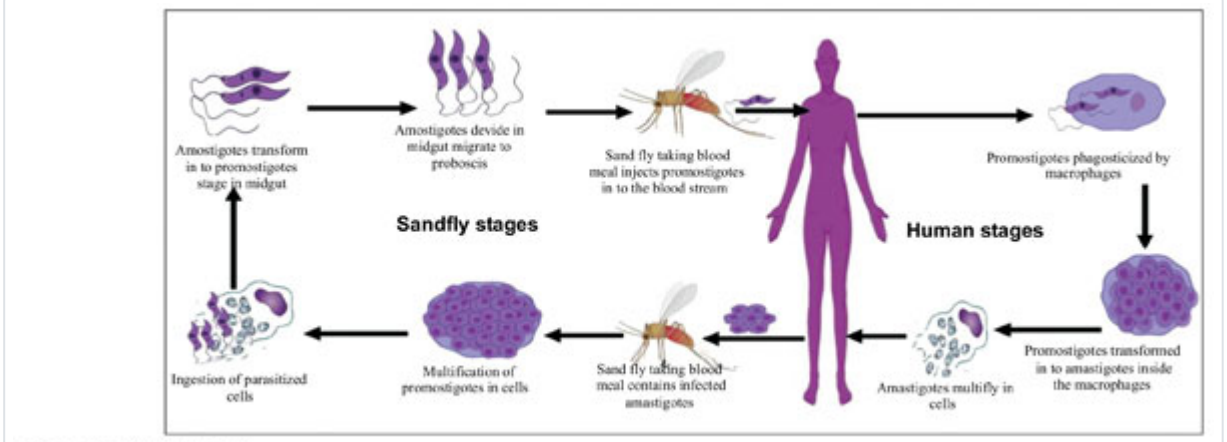
review will focus on antileishmanial activity of reported derivatives of betacarboline, chalcone, azole, quinoline, quinazoline, benzimidazole, benzadiazapine, thiaazoles, semicarbazone, and hydontoin analogues. We believe that this present study will be helpful for researchers to design new antileishmanial agents.

Keywords: Leishmaniasis, antileishmanial compounds, visceral, cutaneous, mucocutaneous, scaffolds.

« Previous

Next »

Graphical Abstract



Life cycle of leishmania

References

Mark Item Purchase PDF Rights & Permissions Print Cite

Article Metrics

PDF

42

HTML

1

5

5 Total citations
5 Recent citations

1.96 Field Citation Ratio
0.57 Relative Citation Ratio

FIND YOUR INSTITUTION

Journal Information

About Journal

Editorial Board

Current Issue

Volumes /Issues

For Authors

For Editors

For Reviewers

Explore Articles

Open Access

For Visitors

© 2024 Bentham Science Publishers | Privacy Policy

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
References

Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)

Journals (/about/journals) Topics (/topics) Information (/authors) Author Services (/authors/english) Initiatives (/about/initiatives) About (/about)

Sign In / Sign Up (/user/login)

Submit (https://susy.mdpi.com/user/manuscripts/upload?journal=coatings)

Search for Articles:
Keyword
Author / Affiliation / Email
Coatings
All Article Types
Search
Advanced Search

Journals (/about/journals) / Coatings (/journal/coatings) / Volume 11 (/2079-6412/11) / Issue 11 (/2079-6412/11/11) / 10.3390/coatings11111329 /

coatings
(/journal/coatings)

Back to TopTop

(https://susy.mdpi.com/volunteer/journals/review)
Review for this Journal
(https://susy.mdpi.com/volunteer/journals/review)
Propose a Special Issue
(/journalproposal/sendproposalspecialissue/coatings)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Submit to this Journal
(https://susy.mdpi.com/user/manuscripts/upload?form%5Bjournal_id%5D=107)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Article Menu
Article Menu
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mdpi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Academic Editor
Devis Bellucci
Endorse
Subscribe SciFeed (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/scifeed_display)
Comment
Recommended Articles
Related Info Link
More by Authors Links

Article Views 3703

Citations 9

Back to TopTop

Table of Contents
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Share
Cite
Discuss in Scilit
Scilit Profiles
Endorse
Comment
Help
Altmetric
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Open Access Review

Antiarthritic Activities of Herbal Isolates: A Comprehensive Review

by **Shweta Jain** [1] (mailto:shwetavaidya2000@gmail.com), **Ankur Vaidya** [2,*] (mailto:ankuruprims@gmail.com) (https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6693-6085), **Pawan Kumar Gupta** [3] (mailto:prenugupta@yahoo.co.in), **Jessica M. Rosenholm** [4] (mailto:jessica.rosenholm@abo.fi) (https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6085-1112) and **Kuldeep K. Bansal** [4,*] (mailto:kuldeep.bansal@abo.fi) (https://orcid.org/0000-0001-8782-6689)

1 Sir Madan Lal Institute of Pharmacy, Etawah 206310, India

2 Pharmacy College, Saifai, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai 206130, India

3 Amity Institute of Pharmacy, AUMP, Gwalior 474009, India

4 Pharmaceutical Sciences Laboratory, Faculty of Science and Engineering, Åbo Akademi University, 20520 Turku, Finland

* Authors to whom correspondence should be addressed.

Coatings **2021**, *11*(11), 1329; **https://doi.org/10.3390/coatings11111329 (https://doi.org/10.3390/coatings11111329)**

Submission received: 29 September 2021 / Revised: 22 October 2021 / Accepted: 28 October 2021 / Published: 29 October 2021

(This article belongs to the Special Issue **Advanced Antimicrobial and Bioactive Materials and Coatings (/journal/coatings/special_issues/bioactive_coatings)**)

Back to TopTop

(https://pub.mdpi-res.com/coatings/coatings-11-01329/article_deploy/html/images/coatings-11-01329-g001.png?1635836267) (https://pub.mdpi-res.com/coatings/coatings-11-01329/article_deploy/html/images/coatings-11-01329-g002.png?1635836266)

Abstract

Numerous plant species with therapeutic properties, such as antimicrobial, antiinflammatory, antiviral, antimalarial, antiarthritic (AA), antihypertensive, cardiotonic, and so forth, are reported in the literature. Usually, medicinal plants are widely used, and assumed to be safe and cheaper alternatives to chemically synthesized drugs. However, they are not regulated for potency and purity, and thus, care must be taken for their safe use. In this review, we aimed to compile all of the herbal isolates possessing AA properties, including alkaloids (mahanine, 3-acetylaconitine, sanguinarine, jatrorrhizine hydrochloride, and piperine), terpenoids (eugenol, nimbolide, bartogenic acid, cannabidiol, and curcumin), and flavonoids (quercetin, resveratrol, kaempferol, chebulanin, ellagic acid, rosmarinic acid, gallic acid, chlorogenic acid, ferulic acid, and brazilin). These isolates act through numerous pharmacological mechanisms such as inhibiting cytokines, chemokines, or matrix metalloproteinase, etc., to demonstrate AA activity. Animal models utilized for assessing the AA properties of these isolates, including adjuvant-induced arthritis mouse models, are also discussed. Furthermore, nanotechnology-based approaches to deliver these isolates are also reviewed, which have shown improved therapeutic efficacy of isolated compounds.

Keywords: arthritis (/search?q=arthritis); **herbal isolates (/search?q=herbal+isolates)**; **arthritic models (/search?q=arthritic+models)**; **alkaloids (/search?q=alkaloids)**; **terpenoids (/search?q=terpenoids)**; **flavonoids (/search?q=flavonoids)**; **nanoparticles (/search?q=nanoparticles)**

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/rebrints)
Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Natural Products Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
(toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

1. Introduction

Herbal products are of significant importance in traditional medicine. Numbers of plants and plant-based products have been utilized since ancient times. Ayurveda, Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM), Traditional Korean Medicine (TKM), Kampo, and Unani employ herbal products which have been practiced all over the world for hundreds or even thousands of years. Herbal products have their incomparable advantages, such as abundant clinical experiences, and their unique diversity of chemical structures and biological activities. Herbal products have become some of the most important resources for developing new lead compounds and scaffolds, will undergo continual use toward meeting the urgent need to develop effective drugs and will play a leading role in the discovery of drugs for treating human diseases, especially critical diseases [**1**].

Arthritis is one of the most deceptive diseases globally, with 350 million individuals are currently affected. As per a recent report, one in four adults in the USA suffer from arthritis with severe joint pain [**2**]. Arthritis leads to the breakdown of cartilage which normally protects joints. Arthritis produces an inflammatory riposte as well as hyperplasia of synovial cells. Consequently, extracellular matrix of synovial fluid in the joints develops the sheets in the synovial cells that cause inflammation at joint sites. The pathology of the disease process often indicates that it also damages the articular cartilage and alkalosis of the joints [**3**]. Antiarthritic drugs include idiopathic arthritis, reactive arthritis, psoriatic arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, septic arthritis, osteoarthritis, and gout are the commonly reported types of arthritis (**Figure 1**).

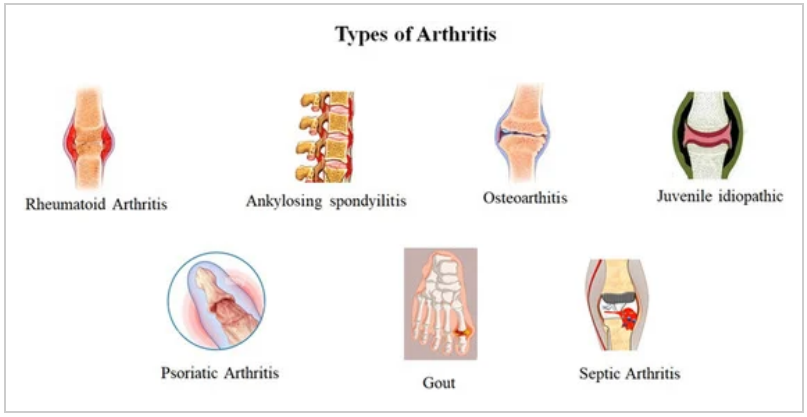


Figure 1. Common types of arthritis reported in the literatures.

Back to TopTop

Article Versions
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Cite
Help
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment

Osteoarthritis (OA) is the commonest form of arthritis, affecting approximately 302 million individuals globally. The most affected areas have been articular joints of the knees, hips, and hands [**4**]. Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is another type of arthritis affecting the synovial joints and normally produces symmetrical arthritis, leads to considerable socioeconomic impact. RA is one of the most prevalent diseases, affecting approximately 0.5–1% of the world's population. The cause of RA is not certain, but researchers believe that autoimmunity is the major cause The early detection of RA with timely treatment relieves symptoms arising from the RA condition [**5**]. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), including naproxen and aspirin, with rapid onset of action, corticosteroids (e.g., cortisone, dexamethasone etc.), biological agents (e.g., etanercept and infliximab), and disease modifying anti-rheumatic drugs (DMARDs) (e.g., methotrexate, sulfasalazine, leflunomide), either alone or in combination, are the most commonly used treatment strategies for arthritis [**6**]. DMARDs target the immune system, and thus they can also weaken the immune system's ability to fight infections. Furthermore, higher cost and negative impacts on health have limited the use of synthetic drugs in arthritic treatment. Of these synthetic medicines, herbal medicines are also gaining popularity for arthritis treatment, due to fewer side effects.

2. Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs

Herbal products have been widely used as medicine since ancient eras. These natural products have broad chemical diversity, pharmacological specificity, and molecular properties that make them potential candidates for lead structure identification [**7**,**8**]. Thousands of plant isolates possessing antiarthritic (AA) properties have been investigated and reported [**9**]. These plant isolates have been categorized into alkaloids, glycosides, terpenoids, flavonoids, etc. [**10**] In recent years, herbal products showing anti-inflammatory-mediated AA properties have been isolated [**11**,**12**]. These plants have been used either solely, or their extracts or isolates have been used for the treatment of RA or OA. Plant isolate is a pure compound obtained from a plant extract, having a defined structure which is responsible for particular biological activity, and helps to develop new potent compounds. **Table 1** represents numerous plant isolates with their structure and IUPAC names. These plant isolates act through different mechanisms, which are summarized in **Figure 2**.

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Abstract (/)
(https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

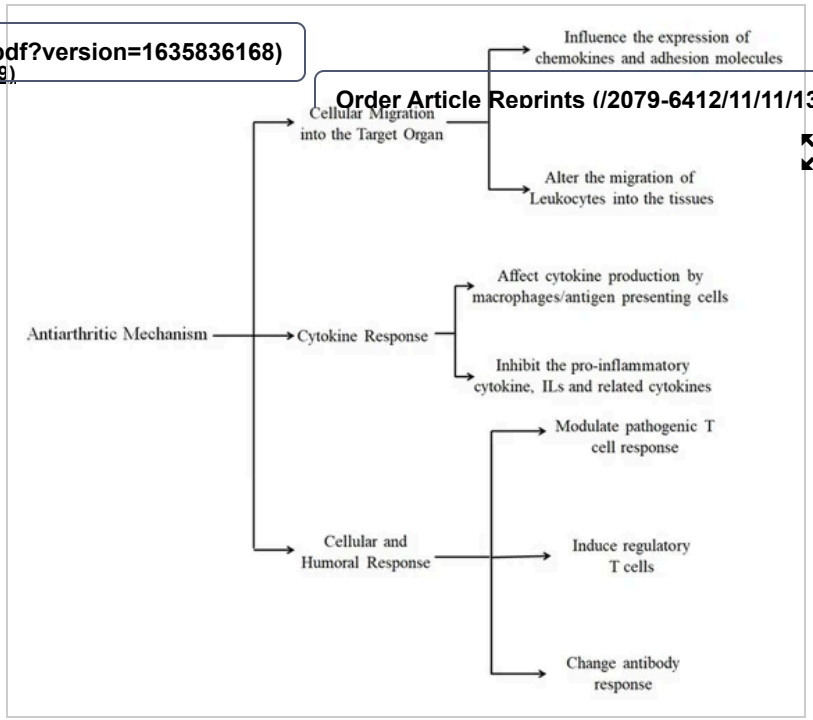


Figure 2. Mechanisms involved in the treatment of arthritis.

Table 1. List of herbal isolates with their molecular formula, structures, and IUPAC names.

2.1. Alkaloids

2.1.1. Montanine

Plants belonging to the *Amaryllidaceae* family have a long history of usage globally, and are found to be a promising therapeutic tool for several human diseases. The plants belonging to this family have long been used as an alternative

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Download PDF (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Cite
Share
Issues
Scilit Profiles
Further Stats
Open Discussion (https://www.mdpi.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

medicine in developing countries. The *Amaryllidaceae* alkaloids are secondary metabolites (alkaloids) of the *Amaryllidaceae* family. Native to Argentina, Brazil, and Uruguay [**13**]. Montanine has structural similarities to *Amaryllidaceae* alkaloids, and its pleiotropic pharmacologic activity raises the possibility of montanine possessing anti-arthritic properties [**14**].

Recently, montanine has received the considerable attention due to its strong anti-inflammatory action, which was isolated from the bulb of the plant *Rhodophiala bifida* (Herb.) through maceration in sulfuric acid 2% (*v*/*v*) [**15**]. The authors reported its significant AA activity by using in vitro effects on lymphocyte proliferation and on invasiveness of fibroblast-like synoviocytes (FLS). Later, the activity of isolate was evaluated on antigen-induced arthritis (AIA) Balb/c mice and collagen-induced arthritis (CIA) DBA/1J mice models. Study results revealed that montanine administration decreased nociception and leukocyte articular migration in the AIA model, and reduced the severity of arthritis and joint damage in CIA model. Histological results revealed considerable improvements in arthritis. The authors proposed that the inhibition of lymphocyte proliferation and decreased FLS invasion was responsible for AA activity. A median lethal dose (LD50) of montanine was reported to be 64.7 mg/kg for male mice and the occurrence of side effects as altered motor activity, decreased respiratory rate, violent body tremors, and clonic convulsions.

2.1.2. Acetylaconitine

3-Acetylaconitine (AAc) is a nitrogen-containing alkaloid, obtained from *Aconitum flavum* and *Aconitum pendulum* (*Ranunculaceae*). Tang et al. isolated AAc from the root of *Aconitum flavum*, and reported its AA activity in mouse and rat models [**16**]. An oral dose of 0.3–0.5 mg/kg of AAc impeded swelling of the hind paw in the formaldehyde-induced rat model, and inhibited the carrageenan-induced edema in the adrenalectomized rat model. Although AAc inhibited acetic acid and histamine-induced vascular permeability, it did not reduce the ascorbic acid content of the adrenal in rats, indicating that AAc did not act through stimulation of the pituitary adrenal axis.

2.1.3. Sanguinarine

Sanguinarine (SA) is a natural plant benzylisoquinoline alkaloid isolated from *Argemone mexicana, Bocconia frutescens, Bocconia frutescens, Chelidonium majus, Macleaya cordata, and Sanguinaria Canadensis*. SA is U.S.A Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved; it inhibits osteoclast formation, and is recommended for inflammation [**17**]. Ma et al. isolated SA from the roots of *Sanguinaria Canadensis,* and investigated the therapeutic effect of SA against OA [**18**]. Results revealed that SA suppressed catabolic proteases expression in in vitro, in vivo, and ex vivo models. SA suppressed NF-κB and JNK activation, which presented a high level of specificity in repressing the production of catabolic factors. Additionally, SA also

Back to Top Top

Article Versions
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in Scilit Profiles

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

inhibited IL-1β-induced expression of matrix metalloproteinase (MMPs) 1, 3, and 13. It also suppressed a metalloproteinase and thrombospondin motifs-5 in chondrocytes. These results supported the potential application of SA in OA treatment.

2.1.4. Jatrorrhizine

Jatrorrhizine hydrochloride (JH) is a protoberberine alkaloid reported in many medicinal plants, including *Berberis aristata* and *Coptis chinensis* [**19**]. Qiu and colleagues recently investigated and reported the AA potential of commercially available isolate JH in a CIA rat model [**20**]. The results revealed the suppression of RA in the CIA rat model via an anti-inflammation action, and suppression of bone destruction. Furthermore, the in vitro assay showed inhibition of production of inflammatory mediators, and inhibition of proliferation and migration in MH7A cells. JH was found to suppress tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α)-stimulated activation of nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB) and mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs), leading to suppression of proinflammatory mediators. These results suggested JH as potential compound for AA treatment.

2.1.5. Piperine

Piperine is another alkaloid obtained from black pepper (*Piper nigrum* L.), responsible for the pungent taste, and found in the members of the *Piperaceae* family. *Piper nigrum* L. contains the highest amount of piperine, i.e., from 2% to 9%. *Piper nigrum* L. has been widely used in Ayurvedic and Chinese medicine [**21**]. Bang and colleagues in 2009 reported anti-inflammatory, nociceptive, and AA activities of piperine [**22**]. The AA activity was measured in a CI arthritis model in vivo by measuring the paw volume and weight distribution ratio. The results showed significant reduction of paw volume and weight distribution ratio. The authors also evaluated the levels of IL6, MMPs, COX-2, and PGE2 by ELISA and RT-PCR. An oral dose of piperine between 20 and 100 mg/kg/day for 8 days, inhibited the IL6 and MMP13 expression and PGE2 production. Surprisingly, piperine did not inhibit the expression of NFκB, but did suppress the migration of activator protein 1 (AP-1). Ultimately, on the fourth day, piperine reduced arthritic symptoms. These results suggested the potential of piperine in arthritis treatment.

2.1.6. Capsaicin

Capsaicin is an active component of chili peppers (genus Capsicum), and is produced as a secondary metabolite. It is a chemical irritant for mammals, including humans [**23**]. Ahmed and colleagues investigated capsaicin effects on substrate P (SP) and calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP) in the ankle joints and dorsal root ganglia (L2–L6) of adult female Lewis rats [**24**].

Back to Top

Article (/2079-6412/11/11/1329)
Figures (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Review (/journal/coatings/reviews)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Cite
Discuss in Sciforum
Endorse
Comment

Subcutaneous injection of capsaicin in a dose of 200 mg/kg significantly reduced the level of substrate P (19%) and CGRP (42 %) in the ankle joint of adjuvant-induced arthritic rats. In the ankle joint, capsaicin reduced the SP level by 40%, accompanied by a 40% reduction in inflammatory response. Furthermore, the capsaicin administration reduced the up-regulated levels of sensory neuropeptides in dorsal root ganglia and ankle joints in adjuvant-induced arthritis rats. These findings suggested that capsaicin is useful in arthritis treatment.

2.1.7. Tubastrine

The alkaloid tubastrine, obtained from the marine organism *Aplidium orthium* (Ascidiacea), possesses anti-inflammatory properties [**25**]. Tubastrine isolated from the frozen specimen of *Aplidium orthium* with methanolic acid, followed by chloroform, reduced superoxide synthesis in phorbol-12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA)-stimulated neutrophils in vitro and, in an in vivo study, reduced superoxide levels in a gouty arthritis model [**26**]. Additionally, tubastrine further showed an inhibitory effect on neutrophil infiltration in an in vivo model.

2.1.8. Orthidines

The orthidines (A–F) are a group of marine alkaloids isolated from the same ascidian *Aplidium orthium.* Orthidines (A–D) are benzodioxane orthidines, orthidine E (a cyclobutane dimer of tubastrine), and orthidine F (a biosynthetically unrelated dihydroxanthine derivative) from the frozen specimen of New Zealand *ascidian Aplidium orthium* with methanolic acid, followed by chloroform, and evaluated anti-inflammatory and anti-arthritic activity in a gouty arthritis model [**26**]. Isolated orthidines (A–F) showed the in vitro production of superoxide by PMA-stimulated human neutrophils in a dose-dependent manner with IC_{50s} of 10–36 μM, and this was associated within the inhibition of superoxide production by neutrophils in vivo in a murine model of gouty inflammation.

2.2. Terpenoids

Terpenoids are plant secondary metabolites, extracted from various parts of the plant, such as stalks, fruits, flowers, leaves, and roots. They are colorless liquids with a pleasant smell, and have a high refractive index [**27**,**28**]. The pharmaceutical importance of terpenoids has been proved and well documented in its anti-inflammatory, antibacterial, antiviral, antioxidant, and anti-carcinogenic properties [**29**]. Recently, Carvalho et al., identified and reported 24 terpenoids which were effective in the treatment of inflammation and arthritis [**30**].

2.2.1. Eugenol

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endnote
Comment
Back to TopTop
(https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390/coatings11111329)
(/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)

Eugenol is a major phenolic component obtained from the clove bud (*Eugenia caryophyllata*), and constitutes 80–90% of clove oil. Chandrika et al. reported the suppressive effects of eugenol on arthritic symptoms [**31**]. A study was further carried out by Grespan et al. to estimate the AA activity of eugenol in a CIA mouse model [**32**]. The arthritic symptoms were induced with 100 µg of bovine collagen type II (CII) in male DBA1/J mice, and treated with orally administered eugenol (100 µg/mouse) from day 25 to day 40. Eugenol administration significantly decreased the levels of cytokines (i.e., TNF-α, tumor growth factor (TGF)-β, and interferon (IFN)-γ) within the ankle joints. Furthermore, the results indicated that eugenol also inhibited mononuclear cell infiltration into the knee joints of arthritic mice.

2.2. Nimbolide

Nimbolide is a triterpene, which is isolated from the leaves and flowers of the neem plant (*Azadirachta indica*), and has been widely used in treating numerous human ailments. Several bioactive compounds have been isolated from this plant species which exhibit multiple pharmacological effects. Cui et al. performed the AA activity of nimbolide on male albino rats against Freund's adjuvant-induced arthritis [**33**]. A study was carried out to access the AA activities of nimbolide using different in silico and in vivo analytical methods. AA activity of nimbolide (at a dose of 20 mg/kg per day, which was given orally) exhibited a noticeable reduction in edema formation, paw volume, organ indices, and arthritic score, along with considerable improvement in body weight. Histopathological studies revealed the protecting effects of nimbolide towards joints and inflammation. The outcomes of the study showed that nimbolide treatment inhibited inflammation by decreasing the proinflammatory cytokines (i.e., TNF-a, IL-6, IL-1b, and IL-10) manifestation in arthritic rats. Furthermore, nimbolide normalized the increased levels of iNOS, P-IkBa, Nf-kb, cox-2, and IKKa in treated rats.

2.3. Bartogenic Acid

Bartogenic acid (BA) is isolated from the fruits of the *Barringtonia racemosa* Roxb. (Lecythidaceae) plant [**34**]. A study was performed by Patil et al. in order to evaluate the AA activity of BA [**35**]. BA was isolated from the methanolic extract of fruits of *Barringtonia racemosa*. The in vivo results revealed noteworthy AA activity of BA against CFA-induced arthritis in rats by reducing serum markers, such as rheumatoid factor and C-reactive protein. BA protected against primary and secondary arthritis lesions with a dose of 2, 5, and 10 mg kg^{-1} day^{-1}. It also normalized the raised WBC counts and increased hemoglobin counts, and reduced erythrocyte sedimentation rate in arthritic conditions. The possible mechanism to improve Hb count by BA was due to increased response of the bone marrow erythropoietin. BA also protected the rats from CFA-induced radiographic changes.

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

2.2.4. Cannabidiol

Cannabidiol (CBD) are meroterpenoids, terpenophenolic compounds which are isolated from the plant *Cannabis sativa* L., belonging to the *Cannabaceae* family, and cultivated worldwide. This plant contains a number of phytoconstituents including amides, amines, phytosterols, phenolic compounds, carbohydrates, terpenes, and fatty acids and their esters, along with CBD as main active constitute [**36**].

Several reports have clarified that CBD showed anti-inflammatory activity by inhibiting proliferative responses of T lymphocytes, nitric oxide (NO) production by macrophages, and suppression of macrophage function and antigen presentation. Malfait et al. demonstrated the AA therapeutic potential of cannabidiol in murine collagen-induced arthritis [**37**]. Arthritis was developed by bovine type II collagen (CII), and immunized completely against Freund's adjuvant (CFA) in DBA/1 mice at the dose of 100 µg. Cannabidiol was found to be equipotent in both models (chronic relapsing CIA and in acute CIA), and the optimal dose of cannabidiol was found to be 5 mg/kg i.p. per day, or 25 mg/kg orally per day. Joints were protected against severe damage, and showed significant IFN-γ production and diminished CII-specific proliferation. Ex vivo results showed a decrease in TNF-α release and diminished CII-specific proliferation and IFN-g production by knee synovial cells in CBD-treated mice. A dose-dependent suppression of lymphocyte proliferation was also observed by CBD in in vitro studies. Additionally, cannabidiol suppressed the lipopolysaccharide-increased serum TNF level in C57/BL mice. These combined data showed immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory actions which mediated the A effect of CBD on CIA. A patent has also been filed describing the identification and use of CBD to treat inflammatory diseases [**38**].

2.2.5. Curcumin

Curcumin is the most active phytocomponent of *Curcuma longa* Linn, which belongs to the *Zingiberaceae* family, and is commonly cultivated in the region of south Asia. *Curcuma longa* is widely used in traditional Indian Ayurveda medicine as a popular home remedy, and its paste is applied with slaked lime for the treatment of inflammation and wounds [**39**]. Curcumin has received much interest in the scientific world due to its excellent pharmacological activities, which have been shown to target multiple signaling molecules at the cellular level. Curcumin has been known to possess AA effects in humans with OA and RA [**40**].

Huang et al. evaluated the anti-RA effect of curcumin in a CIA-induced DBA/1J mice model. A 50 mg/kg of curcumin was injected i.p. in the mice model, and the B cell-activating factor belonging to the TNF family (BAFF), IL6 and IFNγ production in serum were measured. Results revealed a decreased production of BAFF, IFNγ and IL-6 in serum. Furthermore, western blot

Article Versions (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/versions)
Notes (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/notes)
Download PDF (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

analysis was also performed to measure IFNγ-related signal transducers and activators of transcription 1 (STAT1) signaling in B. Curcumin decreased IFNγ-induced BAFF expression, STAT1 phosphorylation, and nuclear translocation after curcumin treatment [**41**]. Kuncha and colleagues reported the potentiate effect of curcumin with low dose of prednisolone against CFA-induced arthritis in a rat model [**42**].

An interesting study was performed by Yu et al., demonstrating the anti-neuroinflammatory response of curcumin in lipoteichoic acid (LTA)-stimulated BV-2 microglial cells [**43**]. Results revealed that curcumin inhibited the secretion of inflammatory cytokine NO and TNF-α, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), and also inhibited COX-2 and iNOS expression. Additionally, curcumin also suppressed LTA-induced phosphorylation of MAPK expression. In LTA-stimulated microglial cells, curcumin inhibited hemeoxygenase-1(HO-1), which reversed the inflammatory mediator release, and produced their effect against neurodegenerative disorder neuroinflammation.

2.3. *Flavonoids*

Flavonoids are polyphenolic compounds isolated from plants and found in grains, fruits, flowers, vegetables, bark, stems, and seeds. Flavonoids have been shown to possess anti-inflammatory properties, and these plant products have been widely used traditionally in the treatment of arthritis [**44**].

2.3.1. Quercetin or 3,5,7,3′,4′-Pentahydroxy Flavone

Quercetin (QTN) is a flavonoid obtained from apples, buckwheat, onions, and citrus fruits. Recently, Yuan et al. investigated and reported the mechanism of AA activity of QTN [**45**]. QTN significantly reduced ankle diameter and arthritic scores in adjuvant-induced arthritis (A42A) in a mouse model. The study revealed that QTN endorsed apoptosis of activated neutrophils, and inhibited neutrophil infiltration. Additionally, QTN inhibited ROS-mediated neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs) formation and autophagy. These findings suggested that QTN may be a potential agent for RA treatment by inhibiting neutrophil activities. QTN (30 mg/kg) oral administration showed a decrease in clinical sign of arthritis in a chronic rat (AA) model [**46**]. Gardi et al. showed a decrease in IL-1b level, monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1) level, and also restored plasma antioxidant capacity in rat adjuvant arthritis after oral administration of QTN (150 mg/kg) [**47**].

Gaikwad et al. reported anti-inflammatory activity of ethanol extract of flowers of *madhuca indica* against formaldehyde-induced inflammation, carrageenan-induced inflammation, and cotton pellet granuloma in models of rats. Results revealed a superior dose-dependent anti-inflammatory action of ethanolic extract of *m. indica*, as compared to the reference drug diclofenac sodium in a formaldehyde-induced inflammation model [**48**]. The study was further extended by Tang and colleagues

Table of Contents
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Cite
Help
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

in 2021, who isolated QTN from methanolic leaves extract of *madhuca indica*, and evaluated for AA activity against FCA-induced arthritis in rats (strain: Wistar). The in vivo results demonstrated a significant decrease in paw volume, joint diameter, and paw withdrawal threshold after QTN (10 and 20 mg/kg) treatment. The AA activity of QTN revealed reduced elevated inflammatory release (Ikβα, P2X&, COX-2 and NF-κβ), oxido-nitrosative stress, and pro-inflammatory cytokines (TNF-α and ILs) in experimental rats [**49**].

QTN was more effective alone than methotrexate, or in combination with methotrexate, to reduce joint inflammation in mice, and provided the highest protection against arthritis. The mechanisms included reduction of TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-17, and monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1) levels [**50**].

2.3.2. Resveratrol

Resveratrol (Res), a natural flavone, is widely present in medicinal plants including grape, cranberry, mulberry, pistachio, and peanut. The AA activity of Res was evaluated against a CFA-induced rat model by Chen and colleagues in 2013. Res was showed to inhibit the mRNA expression of IL-1β and TNF-α and, ultimately, IL-1β and TNF-α level after given through intragastric gavage (i.g. 10 mL/kg/day). Res stimulated synoviocytes, and the protein expression levels of p-ERK1/2 via protein kinase C (PKC) [**51**].

It has been reported that resveratrol inhibits the enzymatic activity of COX-1 and COX-2. Chen et al. investigated the AA effect of resveratrol on CFA-induced arthritis in a rat model [**52**]. The results revealed a significant paw swelling reduction with decreased arthritis scores (10 or 50 mg/kg, i.g.). Additionally, resveratrol suppressed the production of COX-2 and PGE2 inflammatory mediators. The study further revealed the histopathology improvement by resveratrol in AA rats.

Co-administration of Res and piperine significantly decreased the paw swelling and ameliorated the histopathological changes. The combined treatment highly reduced the serum TNF-a, IL-1b, thiobarbituric acid reactive substances (TBARS), and nitrate/nitrite (NOx). Moreover, a nearly negative expression of NF-κB p65 in the synovial tissue was observed by co-administration of piperine with Res. Results of the combination treatment were comparable to that of diclofenac treatment [**53**].

2.3.3. Kaempferol

Kaempferol (KAE), a natural flavanol, chemically known as 3,4′,5,7-tetrahydroxyflavone, is found in numbers of edible plants such as beans, tea, kale, broccoli, and spinach. KAE is used as a traditional medicine for numerous inflammatory disorders. Studies revealed that KAE reduces COX-2 levels in RAW 264.7 cells, and inhibits ROS production via inhibition of iNOS and TNF-α protein expression. KAE also inhibits IL-4, C-reactive protein (CRP) expression and NF-κB in liver cells

Article Versions (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/versions)
Download PDF (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Browse Figures (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/browse_figures)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles (https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

[54,55]. Yoon et al. reported that KAE produces AA activity by inhibiting the proliferation of both unstimulated and IL-1β-stimulated FLS in addition to the mRNA and protein expression of MMP-1, MMP-3, PGE2, and COX-2 induced by IL-1β **[56]**.

2.3.4. Chebulanin

Chebulanin is a natural polyphenolic compound isolated from the fruits of *Terminalia chebula retzius* (*TC*). *Terminalia chebula retzius* (*TC*) is widely used in medicine in Asian countries for its anti-microbial, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and AA properties. Zhao and colleagues investigated the chebulanin function as an AA agent in a CIA-animal model using DBA/1 mice **[57]**. Chebulanin was isolated from dry fruits of *Terminalia chebula retzius* with a 70% acetone solution (1:10, *w*/*v*) at room temperature (25 ± 2 °C). The authors measured the expression of inflammatory cytokines by immunohistochemical staining, and also performed a histopathological evaluation of the joints. Micro-CT was also performed to detect bone destruction and erosion. The results of above studies revealed the improved dose-dependent (oral dose of 40 mg/kg, 80 mg/kg or 160 mg/kg daily for 28 days) expression of IL-6, TNF-α, MMP-3, and COX-2 in joints and, ultimately, severity of arthritis. Additionally, histopathological studies revealed tissue improvement. Micro-CT results showed the dose-dependent reduction in cartilage destruction and bone erosion. These results confirm the potential role of chebulanin as a strong therapeutic agent for the treatment of RA. Recently, Liu et al. also confirmed the AA activity of chebulanin via inhibiting NF-κB and MAPK activation in a collagen-induced arthritis (CIA)mouse model **[58]**. Chebulanin significantly decreased the arthritic scores, paw swelling and IL-6 and TNF-α level in mice after being orally gavaged (80 mg/kg) daily for a total of 21 days. Moreover, chebulanin reduced the levels of excised phosphorylated (p)-p38, c-JUN, p-p65, N-terminal kinase (p-JNK), and phosphorylated NF-κB inhibitor alpha (p-IκBα), but did not alter extracellular-signal regulated kinase, which is implicated in many pathological conditions, including arthritis.

2.3.5. Ellagic Acid

Ellagic acid (EA) is a polyphenol bioactive compound richly existing in berries (strew berry, raspberry, and cloudberry), almonds, grapes, walnuts, and pomegranates **[59,60]**. Shruthi et al. isolated the ellagic acid from the methanol leaf extract of the plant *Kirganelia reticulate,* and tested its AA activity via in vitro, in vivo, and in silico assays **[61]**. The in vitro assay of EA showed maximum percentage inhibition of protein denaturation, membrane stabilization, and proteinase inhibitory action, which were observed at 250 µg/mL. The in vivo studies of EA against the formaldehyde-induced paw edema showed inhibition of cytokines and leukotriene infiltration, reduced paw edema volume, protected synovial membranes, and cartilage damage at

Back to TopTop

both 100 µg/mL and 250 µg/mL concentration. The possible proposed mechanism was inhibition of hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF-2α). Body weight, paw edema volume, and the movements of rats, were also studied, which showed a protective effect of EA similar to standard aspirin. The in silico study of EA revealed that it forms four hydrogen bonds with amino acid residues in the active pocket of Hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF-2α). The EA completely enfolded in the entire active pocket of HIF-2α, as compared to aspirin, and inhibited the activity of HIF-2α protein, thereby reducing remarkable anti-arthritic activity. The acute oral toxicity study of EA was also performed in albino rats via the OECD Organization of Economic Co-operation and Development guidelines (OECD No. 423). The results of toxicity studies revealed absence of any toxic effect up to 2500 mg/kg body weight.

Umar et al. investigated the combinatory effect of methotrexate and EA on the CIA-Wistar rat method. CIA rats were treated with solely methotrexate (1 mg/kg/week) and EA (60 mg/kg) daily, and the combination of methotrexate and EA for a period of 28 days [**62**]. Results revealed that the combination of methotrexate and EA potentiated the antiarthritic (decrease of hind paw volume and scoring) and the antioxidant effect (GSH and catalase), as well as suppression of lipid peroxidation. Combination therapy of methotrexate and EA significantly inhibited the development phase of arthritis, which is supported by histopathological and attenuation of pro inflammatory cytokines.

2.3.6. Rosmarinic Acid

Rosmarinic acid is a polyphenol, present in a number of herbs, including rosemary (*Rosmarinus officinalis* L.), mint (*Mentha arvense* L.), sage (*Salvia officinalis* L.), and basil (*Ocimum basilicum* L.). In 1958, it was first isolated and characterized by the Italian chemist Scarpatti from rosemary (*Rosmarinus officinalis*), and hence given its name rosmarinic acid [**63**]. Recently, Wei et al. isolated rosmarinic acid from *Rosmarinus officinalis* methanolic leaf extract, and reported its AA activity against CFA-induced arthritis in rats [**64**]. Oral administration of rosmarinic acid at a dose of 30 and 60 mg/kg exerts significant reduction in hind paw volume and various other arthritic symptoms, i.e., inflammation and joint stiffness. Rats treated with rosmarinic acid in a dose of 60 mg/kg, i.p improved locomotor movement from days 21 to 35. Additionally, rosmarinic acid also decreased TNF-α levels in serum in a dose-dependent manner in treated rats. Rosmarinic acid decreased the levels of inflammatory mediators TNF-α in treated animals. On the basis of these outcomes, the authors suggested rosmarinic acid as an encouraging candidate for the treatment of arthritis. Acute toxicity study of rosmarinic acid (according to OECD No. 423 guidelines) showed no sign of toxicity or onset of toxicity up to the dose of 2000 mg/kg body weight of albino rats.

2.3.7. Gallic Acid

Back to TopTop

Abstract (/)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Turmeric Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Cite
Help
Discuss in SciProfiles
Comment
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Gallic acid (GA) is a natural polyphenol, present in gall nuts, oak bark, apple peels, sumac, grapes, tea leaves, and green tea. Anti-inflammatory, anti-rheumatic, anti-tumor, and pro-apoptotic activities of GA have been well documented. Shi et al. reported that tumor-like FLSs cells could migrate to cartilage and bone, producing pannus and accelerate the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and MMPs [**65**]. GA has been found to inhibit cytokines, chemokines, and MMPs. Yoon et al. reported that GA triggers the apoptosis of FLSs cells in ≥10 μM concentration, and regulates the production of Bcl-2, Bax, p53, and pAkt in western blot analyses, and in the mRNA expressions analysis. Furthermore, GA also showed dose-dependent suppression of cytokines (IL-1, IL-6), chemokines (CCL-2/MCP-1, CCL-7/MCP3), COX-2, and MMPs-9 from RA FLS [**66**]. GA regulated apoptosis related protein expressions (i.e., fibroblast-like synoviocytes from patients with rheumatoid arthritis; RA FLS), and reduced the expression of pro-inflammatory genes in RA FLS. On the basis of these outcomes, the authors suggested that GA utilizes pro-apoptotic and anti-inflammatory therapeutic options for RA treatment. The acute toxicity of GA showed LD50 values greater than 2000 mg/kg in albino mice. However, at a higher dose (900 mg/kg) of GA up to 28 days did not alter the behavior, morphology, or histopathological parameters in mice.

2.3.8. Chlorogenic Acid

Chlorogenic Acid (CGA) is the most abundant phenolic acid, naturally occurring in tea and green coffee extracts. CGA. Chauhan and his team investigated the AA activities of CGA in an adjuvant induced-arthritis model using male Wistar rats [**67**]. At a dose of 40mg/kg, CGA controlled both total (CD3) and differentiated (CD4 and CD8) T-cell count, and effectively suppressed CD80/86, compared to ibuprofen. Flow cytometry analysis results demonstrate suppression of Th1 cytokines and elevation of Th2 cytokines by CGA. Fu and colleagues reported that CGA obstructed arthritis progression, and inhibited BAFF and TNF-α production in serum in a CIA-mice model [**68**]. Mechanistically, CGA showed constraints of TNF-α-induced BAFF expression, and reduced the DNA-binding activity of NF-κB to the BAFF promoter region in MH7A cells. These results suggested the potential of CGA as AA agent. Group of animals treated with CGA showed no abnormal behavior or mortality up to the dose of 2000 mg/kg, which showed the safety of CGA, even at high doses.

2.3.9. Ferulic Acid

Ferulic acid (FA) is the most common compound, present in numerous plants, particularly in grains, including rice and corn. FA exhibits free radical scavenger activity, and increases the expression of antioxidant proteins via the activation of NF-kB and COX-2, as well as inhibiting iNOS [**69**]. These properties of FA encouraged Zhu and colleagues to investigate FA effects in the treatment of CFA-induced arthritis in rats [**70**]. The authors also investigated whether the effect, if present, is due to the

Back to TopTop

inhibition of the JAK/ STAT pathway or not. Results revealed that at an oral dose of 25 and 50 mg/kg of FA administered to CFA-induced arthritic rats showed significant reduction in arthritic index, ESR levels, and the percentage of lymphocytes. Both rheumatoid factor (RF) and C-reactive protein (CRP) are also reversed after FA treatment, and normalized the physiological condition. FA treatment also reduces the level of TNF-α, JAK2 levels, TGF-β, STAT-3, and STAT-4 levels. These findings suggested the potential use of FA in arthritic treatment by inhibition of the JAK pathway. Oral administration of FA showed low toxicity with an acute LD50 value of 3200 mg/kg in mice, while LD50 values were 2445 mg/kg and 2113 mg/kg for male and female rats, respectively.

2.3. Brazilin

Brazilin is a naturally occurring active compound (red dye) obtained from the wood of various plants such as *Caesalpinia violacea*, *Haematoxylum brasiletto*, *Brazilin Paubrasilia echinata* and heartwood of *Caesalpinia sappan* [**71**]. Jung et al. isolated brazilin from ethyl acetate extract of the heartwood plant *Caesalpinia sappan* L., and investigated its AA activity. HPLC was utilized to purify isolated brazilin, and its confirmation was performed using mass spectrometry and $^{1}H/^{13}C$ NMR analysis [**72**]. A type II CIA mouse model was utilized for the determination of brazilin anti-rheumatoid activity. A 10 mg/kg body weight of purified brazilin and a 3 mg/kg body weight of methotrexate were administered intraperitoneally, and pro-inflammatory cytokines and stress enzyme markers were monitored. Results revealed a significant reduction in inflammatory cytokines, acute inflammatory paw edema, and arthritis index score in CIA-mice model. Additionally, the bone mineral density was improved adequately with both brazilin and methotrexate administration. The microstructural examinations showed joint prevention, bone formation, and prevention of surface erosion after brazilin administration. These results showed protective efficacy of brazilin in a CIA mouse model, and suggested that it would be useful to treat rheumatoid arthritis.

2.4. Plant Sterols

Beta-Sitosterol

Beta-sitosterol is a “plant sterol ester” found in fruits, vegetables, nuts, and seeds. It is commonly used for lowering cholesterol levels and improving symptoms of an enlarged prostate [**73**]. Liu et al. evaluated the effects of β-sitosterol of immune-regulation on macrophages and its potential role in rheumatoid arthritis (RA) [**74**]. β-sitosterol in a dose of 20 or 50 mg/kg i.p. boosts immunization of CIA in mice models. β-sitosterol-treated M1-polarized bone marrow-derived macrophages (BMDMs) reduced expression of CD86, IL-1b, iNOS, and MHCII by 87.1, 47.1, 50.2, and 31.3%, respectively. In CIA mice, β-

Back to TopTop

sitosterol inhibited the production of proinflammatory cytokines, and reduced the levels of collagen-specific antibodies (IgG and IgG1). Further, these results suggested the potential application of β-sitosterol in RA therapy.

Article Menu
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Share
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publications_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

3. Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds

Nanotechnology has been widely used for the treatment of severe diseases, with the objective of increasing efficacy and safety of active ingredients [**75**,**76**]. Nanocarriers have numerous advantages, including controlled and site-specific drug delivery, which minimizes unwanted side effects [**77**,**78**]. Nanocarriers have also gained much attention for the delivery of plant extracts and isolates. Several reports demonstrate the increment in AA activity of herbal extracts through utilizing nanotechnology by increasing their bioavailability. The details of plant isolates with their nanoformulation, method of preparation, and average particle size is given in **Table 2**.

Table 2. Plant isolates with their nano-formulation for antiarthritic or antioxidant activity.

Piperine-loaded solid lipid nanoparticle (SLN) were prepared through the melt emulsification method, and evaluated for particle size (128.80 nm), entrapment efficiency (78.71%), and zeta potential (−23.34 Mv). The prepared SLN was administered orally and topically to CFA-induced arthritic rats. An ex vivo study using Franz diffusion cells indicates that piperine from the SLN gel formulation accumulates in the skin. TNF α was significantly decreased by piperine-SLN, as compared to the arthritic control group, which may be attributed to the selective accumulation of piperine-SLN in inflamed sites thus reducing the secretion to TNF α from the activated macrophages. Histopathology studies revealed that piperine-SLN showed minimal infiltration of inflammatory cells and connective tissue proliferation, as compared to a control group, which showed moderate infiltration of inflammatory cells and connective tissue proliferation [**79**].

Sarwa and colleagues, in 2013, prepared and reported capsaicin-loaded transfersomal vesicular system for topical application in experimental arthritic rats [**80**]. Capsaicin-loaded transferosomes were prepared through the conventional thin

Back to Top Top

(https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?
(https://www.dimensions.ai/details/publication/pub.1139012...)
(https://www.mendeley.com/import/?url=https://doi.org/10.3390/coatings11111329)
(https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mdpi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

film hydration method, and evaluated for numerous physical properties including morphology, size and size distribution, zeta potential, and entrapment efficacy. The prepared transferosomes were nano sized (94 nm), with sufficient structural flexibility and negative surface charge (−14.5 mV). Furthermore, capsaicin-loaded transferosomes were compared to marketed Thermagel (standard) gel for antiarthritic activity. The results revealed enhanced permeability of transferosome formulations as compared to the marketed Thermagel formulation, and thus led to improved therapeutic concentration of the capsaicin at the desired site, ultimately improving the antiarthritic and anti-inflammatory activity of transferosome formulations over Thermagel formulation.

Jabbari and colleagues investigated the effects of encapsulated eugenol with chitosan nanoparticles on a neonatal CIA-rat model [**81**]. Eugenol-entrapped chitosan nanoparticles (Eug-CNPs) were prepared through the solvent dispersion method, and evaluated for anti-oxidative stress (malondialdehyde for assessment of lipid peroxidation) by an assay kit, FOXO3 protein as an antioxidant up-regulating by western blotting, and expression of the TGF-β and CCL2/MCP-1 genes by real-time PCR evaluation, supported by a cartilage histopathology analysis. Results revealed that Eug-CNPs significantly decreased the serum level of malondialdehyde and FOXO3 protein expression, in comparison to the control group. Additionally, Eug-CNPs decreased the expression of TGF-β and MCP-1 genes, and a significant positive correlation was observed between MCP-1 and TGF-β. Eug-CNPs also alleviated the symptoms of joint inflammation, synovial hyperplasia, and cartilage damage caused by the RA.

QTN was entrapped in cadmium telluride quantum dots (TGA-CdTe QDs) for enhancing its AA activity against adjuvant-induced arthritic in Wistar rats. Treatment with QTN-entrapped TGA-CdTe QDs (QDs-QE) reduced the expressions of lipid peroxidation, and improved antioxidant enzymes activity superoxide dismutase (SOD). Prepared QDs reduced the level of catalase (CAT), glutathione (GSH), and glutathione peroxidase (GPx) in paw tissue. Histopathology studies revealed the cartilage regeneration in arthritis-induced rats after QDs-QE treatment. These outcomes revealed QDs-QE have the potential ability to treat arthritis in rheumatic complications [**82**]. The QDs-QE complex showed improved AA activity at low concentrations via free radical quenching of QDs-QE by antioxidant enzymes, while QE showed AA potential only at the higher concentration. Furthermore, QDs, as nanocarrier of QE, exhibited enhanced AA effect even at a lower concentration of the drug. These findings suggested the utilization of QDs of QE as a nanocarrier to enhance the potential of QE for AA activity. Furthermore, Gokhale et al., developed QCT loaded nano-emulsion (NE) gel using spontaneous emulsification techniques for effective RA management [**83**]. The effect of QCT-NE on the production of inflammatory cytokines TNF-α was investigated on RAW264.7 cells. Results showed the significant inhibition of TNF-mediated inflammation, cartilage destruction, and lastly delay in arthritis progression. The inhibition of paw volume by QCT-NE gel was up to 51.13 ± 1.35 mm, as compared to the control

Back to TopTop

Article Versions (/)
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

group of 71.21 ± 0.33 mm. These results confirmed that QCT-NE gel will be a promising alternative in rheumatic complications via topical route.

Introduction

Recently, Zhang and his team members (2020) evaluated β-sitosterol-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles (SLN) against CFA-induced arthritis in rats. β-sitosterol-loaded SLNs (β -sitosterol-SLNs) were prepared through double emulsion solvent displacement and cytokine levels were measured, which showed reduced expression levels of TNF-α, IL-2, IL-6, IL-16, IL-17, but increased IL-10 and transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β) levels [**84**]. A significant reduction of paw edema and arthritic index were reported by prepared β-sitosterol-SLNs. A significantly reduced level of COX-2, PGE2, VEGF, and NF-κB were reported with β-sitosterol-loaded SLNs. These results concluded that β-sitosterol-SLNs showed a potent antiarthritic effect via suppression of NF-κB and activation of the HO-1/Nrf-2 pathway.

A mixed micellar nano-system of Res was developed using different ratios of poloxamer 188 (Pluronic® F-68) and poloxamer 407 (Pluronic® F-127) through simple thin film hydration for the localized treatment of arthritis [**85**]. The optimized formulation (MM3) composed of P188: P407 in a ratio of 2:1 attained the most compromised properties (Particle size = 52.97 ± 4.52, encapsulation efficiency = 76.20 ± 4.51 and release efficiency = 76.26 ± 6.25), and then coated with poly-lactic acid (PLA). PLA-coated MM3 showed utmost anti-arthritic activity over MM3, followed by drug suspension in CFA-induced arthritis in rats after intra-articular (i.a.) injection. This study demonstrated that intra-articular administration of the designed Res-loaded mixed micellar nano-systems reduced the severity of cartilage lesions and synovial inflammation in the experimental arthritis model, and proved the success of this site-specific restorative/anti-inflammatory treatment for combating the progress of rheumatoid arthritis.

Kaempferol (KAE), a strong antioxidant flavonoid compound, showed limited clinical application, due to its poor dissolution property. Tzeng et al. prepared kaempferol-entrapped Eudragit E100 nanoparticle (KAEN) through a nanoprecipitation technique to resolve the dissolution problem [**86**]. Prepared KAEN effectively increased the dissolution percentage by particle size reduction, high encapsulation efficiency, amorphous transformation, and hydrogen-bond formation with excipients. The antioxidant activity assays showed that the KAEN retained potent antioxidant activity after the nanoparticle engineering process, and showed better antioxidant activity than KAE dissolved in water ($p < 0.05$). These findings suggested that KAEN could be a low-dose alternative to KAE in the treatment of arthritis.

Yücel et al. prepared and reported rosmarinic acid-loaded ethosomes (ETHs) and liposomes (LPs), and evaluated their potential by determining rosmarinic acid penetration from ETHs and LPs in comparison with rosmarinic acid solution through the abdominal skin of mice [**87**]. ETHs were prepared through mechanical dispersion, while LPs were prepared through dry film

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Cite
Help
Endorse
Comment
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

hydration. Both formulations were optimized and characterized, and ex vivo permeation studies were performed mouse abdominal mucosa, which showed enhanced permeation of ETHs over rosmarinic acid solution and LP formulations. Antioxidant activities such as lipid peroxidation and 2-deoxyribose degradation directed by specific and non-specific hydroxyl radicals and the inhibitory effects of formulations on collagenase and elastase enzymes were also measured and reported, showing improved activity of rosmarinic acid loaded ETHs and LPs.

Deligiannakis et al. introduced “nano-antioxidant” with antioxidant-functionalized silica nanoparticles (SiO_2 NPs) and radical scavenging capacity (RSC) of GA [**88**]. GA was covalently grafted over well-characterized SiO_2 NPs of various sizes (8–50 nm), and verified by FTIR spectroscopy and thermogravimetric analysis. Prepared hybrid SiO_2-GA NPs claimed a first proof-of concept of engineered reused, low-cost nano-antioxidant materials capable of scavenging 2,2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl ($DPPH^{\bullet}$) radicals via fast H-atom transfer reactions are presented. The improved free radical scavenging capacity of SiO_2-GA NPs over plain GA could be utilized in antioxidant-mediated arthritic treatment.

CGA-entrapped gold nanoparticles (CGA-AuNPs) were prepared through novel green synthesis without the use of other chemicals, and their anti-inflammatory efficacy was validated both in vitro and in vivo [**89**]. The prepared CGA-AuNPs were spherical in shape, with an average diameter of 22.25 ± 4.78 nm. CGA-AuNPs inhibited pro-inflammatory cytokines and other inflammation-related genes (including MMPs and Ninj1), and exhibited enhanced anti-inflammatory effects on NF-κB-mediated inflammatory over plain CGA, indicating that functionalization or the combination of AuNPs with green reductants, which are known to have therapeutic or preventive properties, can provide a new strategy for the development of novel anti-inflammatory-mediated anti-arthritic agents. These results recommended further clinical studies to ascertain the in vivo efficacy of CGA-AuNPs for anti-inflammatory or anti-arthritic activities.

ferulic acid loaded nano-emulsion (FA-NE) based gel was prepared by Harwansh et al., using a spontaneous nano-emulsification method to enhance permeability and maximum antioxidant activity of FA against UVA-induced oxidative stress in rats [**90**]. The FA-NE was prepared by oil (isostearyl isostearate), aqueous system and Smix [surfactant (labrasol), and co-surfactant (plurol isostearique), respectively. Prepared FA-NE was characterized and evaluated for ex vivo skin permeation and in vivo UVA protection activity. The results revealed a sustained-release profile, better permeability and UVA protection activity, as compared to conventional dosage form. These results may be attributed towards increased solubility of the drug and enhanced permeability from nano-emulsion. The prepared nano-emulsion was suggested as a promising nanocarrier for topical delivery of FA, in response to better antioxidant activity in a sustained manner.

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Cite
Share
Help
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

Curcumin's solubility and stability at physiological condition hampered its potential in clinical conditions. Renewable polymer-based nano-emulsion (~234 nm) and nano-emulsion (~268 nm) was employed for increasing its solubility and stability [**91**,**92**]. Zheng and colleagues prepared curcumin-loaded nano-emulsions (CM-Ns) using a high-pressure homogenizing method for the treatment of RA. The prepared CM-Ns were evaluated for particle size and morphology, and also studied for in vitro drug release. The diameter of the prepared CM-Ns was found to be 150 nm, with well-encapsulated curcumin in the Ns, without degradation in simulated GI conditions. Prepared CM-Ns showed an augmented area under the curve (AUC) and Cmax, and decreased the level of TNF-α and interleukin-1β more firmly in both synovial fluid and blood serum, as compared to the plain drug [**93**]. The prepared CM-Ns appeared to be a promising system that allowed RA therapy with curcumin to be converted from IV to oral administration.

4. Conclusions

Herbal isolates, referred to as "secondary metabolites", have shown tremendous pharmacological activities, and thus are in use worldwide as medicines or supplements. Through knowing the molecular structures of isolate compounds, attempts could be made to synthesize the desired or more potent compounds. Herbal compound isolates, including alkaloid, terpenoids, flavonoids, and polyphenols, have been reported to possess AA activities. These plant isolates are easy to obtain, and produce remarkable AA activity. However, isolation from plants is still a challenging task, and several researchers are purchasing isolated compounds for their studies. Recently, the number of herbal-based products available in the market for the treatment of arthritis have increased; however, none of them contain pure isolates, but instead contain either mixtures of crude drugs or plant extracts. The AA activity of isolated compounds may be further aggravated by utilizing nano-formulations, possibly due to consequential enhancement in aqueous solubility/ bioavailability and the possibility for site-specific drug release.

Author Contributions

Conceptualization, A.V.; formal analysis, P.K.G.; resources, J.M.R.; writing—original draft preparation, A.V. and S.J.; writing—review and editing, K.K.B. and J.M.R.; supervision, K.K.B.; funding acquisition, K.K.B. and J.M.R. All authors have read and agreed to the published version of the manuscript.

PDF (()
(https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment

Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Funding

This work was funded by Business Finland, grant number 1609/31/2021—JASMINE PRO to K.K.B and J.M.R. The financial support from Dr Tor, Joe and Pentti Borg's Memorial Fund (2021) to K.K.B is duly acknowledged.

Institutional Review Board Statement

Not applicable.

Informed Consent Statement

Not applicable.

Data Availability Statement

Not applicable.

Acknowledgments

This work is part of the activities within the strategic research profiling area Solutions for Health at Åbo Akademi University (Academy of Finland, # 336355).

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Download PDF (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Altmetric (https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Scilit Profiles
Comment

References

1. Karimi, A.; Majlesi, M.; Rafieian-Kopaei, M. Herbal versus synthetic drugs; beliefs and facts. *J. Nephropharmacol.* **2015**, *4*, 27–30. [Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Herbal+versus+synthetic+drugs;+beliefs+and+facts&author=Karimi,+A.&author=Majlesi,+M.&author=Rafieian-Kopaei,+M.&publication_year=2015&journal=J.+Nephropharmacol.&volume=4&pages=27%E2%80%9330&pmid=28197471)] [PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28197471)]

2. Laev, S.S.; Salakhutdinov, N.F. Anti-arthritic agents: Progress and potential. *Bioorg. Med. Chem.* **2015**, *23*, 3059–3080. [Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-arthritic+agents:+Progress+and+potential&author=Laev,+S.S.&author=Salakhutdinov,+N.F.&publication_year=2015&journal=Bioorg.+Med.+Chem.&volume=23&pages=3059%E2%80%933080&doi=10.1016/j.bmc.2015.05.010)] [CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2015.05.010)]

3. Katz, J.N.; Arant, K.R.; Loeser, R.F. Diagnosis and treatment of hip and knee osteoarthritis: A review. *JAMA* **2021**, *325*, 568–578. [Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Diagnosis+and+treatment+of+hip+and+knee+osteoarthritis:+A+review&author=Katz,+J.N.&author=Arant,+K.R.&author=Loeser,+R.F.&publication_year=2021&journal=JAMA&volume=325&pages=568%E2%80%93578&doi=10.1001/jama.2020.22171&pmid=33560326)] [CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2020.22171)] [PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/33560326)]

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
(https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

4. Kolasinski, S.L.; Neogi, T.; Hochberg, M.C.; Oatis, C.; Guyatt, G.; Block, J.; Callahan, L.; Copenhaver, C.; Dodge, C.; Fam, D.; et al. 2019 American college of rheumatology/arthritis foundation guideline for the management of osteoarthritis of the hand, hip, and knee. *Arthritis Care Res.* **2020**, *72*, 149–162. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=2019-American+college+of+rheumatology/arthritis+foundation+guideline+for+the+management+of+osteoarthritis+of+the+hand,+hip,+and+knee&author=Kolasinski,+S.L.&author=Neogi,+T.&author=Hochberg,+M.C.&author=Oatis,+C.&author=Guyatt,+G.&author=Block,+J.&author=Callahan,+L.&author=Copenhaver,+C.&author=Dodge,+C.&author=Felson,+D.&publication_year=2020&journal=Arthritis+Care+Res.&volume=72&pages=149%E2%80%93162&doi=10.1002/acr.24131)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1002/acr.24131)**]

5. Bansod, M.S.; Kagathara, V.G.; Pujari, R.R.; Patel, V.B.; Ardeshna, H.H. Therapeutic effect of a polyherbal preparation on adjuvant induced arthritis in wistar rats. *Int. J. Pharm. Pharm. Sci.* **2011**, *3*, 186–192. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Therapeutic+effect+of+a+polyherbal+preparation+on+adjuvant+induced+arthritis+in+wistar+rats&author=Bansod,+M.S.&author=Kagathara,+V.G.&author=Pujari,+R.R.&author=Patel,+V.B.&author=Ardeshna,+H.H.&publication_year=2011&journal=Int.+J.+Pharm.+Pharm.+Sci.&volume=3&pages=186%E2%80%93192)**]

6. Souliotis, K.; Golna, C.; Kani, C.; Nikolaidi, S.; Boumpas, D. Real world, big data cost of pharmaceutical treatment for rheumatoid arthritis in Greece. *PLoS ONE* **2019**, *14*, e0226287. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Real+world,+big+data+cost+of+pharmaceutical+treatment+for+rheumatoid+arthritis+in+Greece&author=Souliotis,+K.&author=Golna,+C.&author=Kani,+C.&author=Nikolaidi,+S.&author=Boumpas,+D.&publication_year=2019&journal=PLoS+ONE&volume=14&pages=e0226287&doi=10.1371/journal.pone.0226287)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0226287)**]

7. Siddiqui, A.A.; Iram, F.; Siddiqui, S.; Sahu, K. Role of natural products in drug discovery process. *Int. J. Drug Dev. Res.* **2014**, *6*, 172–204. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Role+of+natural+products+in+drug+discovery+process&author=Siddiqui,+A.A.&author=Iram,+F.&author=Siddiqui,+S.&author=Sahu,+K.&publication_year=2014&journal=Int.+J.+Drug+Dev.+Res.&volume=6&pages=172%E2%80%93204)**]

Back to TopTop

6. Butt, M.S.; Sultan, M.T.; Butt, M.S.; Garlic, J.I. Nature's protection against physiological threats. *Crit. Rev. Food Sci. Nutr.* **2009**, *49*, 538–551. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Nature%E2%80%99s+protection+against+physiological+threats&author=Butt,+M.S.&author=Sultan,+M.T.&author=Butt,+M.S.&author=Garlic,+J.I.&publication_year=2009&journal=Crit.+Rev.+Food+Sci.+Nutr.&volume=49&pages=538%E2%80%93551&doi=10.1080/10408390802145344&pmid=19484634)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/10408390802145344)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19484634)**]

7. Schwager, J.; Mohajeri, M.H.; Fowler, A.; Weber, P. Challenges in discovering bioactives for the food industry. *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.* **2008**, *19*, 66–72. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Challenges+in+discovering+bioactives+for+the+food+industry&author=Schwager,+J.&author=Mohajeri,+M.H.&author=Fowler,+A.&author=Weber,+P.&publication_year=2008&journal=Curr.+Opin.+Biotechnol.&volume=19&pages=66%E2%80%9372&doi=10.1016/j.copbio.2008.02.016)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.copbio.2008.02.016)**]

10. Mohiuddin, A.K. Secondary metabolism and therapeutic efficacy of medicinal plants. *J. Pharm. Biol. Sci.* **2020**, *6*, 104–108. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Secondary+metabolism+and+therapeutic+efficacy+of+medicinal+plants&author=Mohiuddin,+A.K.&publication_year=2020&journal=J.+Pharm.+Biol.+Sci.&volume=6&pages=104%E2%80%93108&doi=10.18231/2320-1924.2018.0014)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.18231/2320-1924.2018.0014)**]

11. Raman, P.; DeWitt, D.L.; Nair, M.G. Lipid peroxidation and cyclooxygenase enzyme inhibitory activities of acidic aqueous extracts of some dietary supplements. *Phytother. Res.* **2008**, *22*, 204–212. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Lipid+peroxidation+and+cyclooxygenase+enzyme+inhibitory+activities+of+acidic+aqueous+extracts+of+some+dietary+supplements&author=Raman,+P.&author=DeWitt,+D.L.&author=Nair,+M.G.&publication_year=2008&journal=Phytother.+Res.&volume=22&pages=204%E2%80%93212&doi=10.1002/ptr.2287)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.2287)**]

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
(https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390/coatings11111329)
PDF Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment

12. Roller, M.; Clune, Y.; Collins, K.; Rechkemmer, G.; Watzl, B. Consumption of prebiotic inulin enriched with oligofructose in combination with the probiotics Lactobacillus rhamnosus and Bifidobacterium lactis has minor effects on selected immune parameters in polypectomised and colon cancer patients. *Br. J. Nutr.* **2007**, *97*, 676–684. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Consumption+of+prebiotic+inulin+enriched+with+oligofructose+in+combination+with+the+probiotics+Lactobacillus+rhamnosus+and+Bifidobacterium+lactis+has+minor+effects+on+selected+immune+parameters+in+polypectomised+and+colon+cancer+patients&author=Roller,+M.&author=Clune,+Y.&author=Collins,+K.&author=Rechkemmer,+G.&author=Watzl,+B.&publication_year=2007&journal=Br.+J.+Nutr.&volume=97&pages=676%E2%80%93684&doi=10.1017/S0007114507450292&pmid=17349080)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1017/S0007114507450292)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17349080)**] [**Green Version (https://www.cambridge.org/core/services/aop-cambridge-core/content/view/2649BEF4FC5DBF208D2A28E0D272BB38/S0007114507450292a.pdf/div-class-title-consumption-of-prebiotic-inulin-enriched-with-oligofructose-in-combination-with-the-probiotics-span-class-italic-lactobacillus-rhamnosus-span-and-span-class-italic-bifidobacterium-lactis-span-has-minor-effects-on-selected-immune-parameters-in-polypectomised-and-colon-cancer-patients-div.pdf)**]

13. Van Otterlo, W.A.L.; Green, I.R. A Review on Recent Syntheses of Amaryllidaceae Alkaloids and Isocarbostyrils (Time period mid-2016 to 2017). *Nat. Prod. Commun.* **2018**, *13*, 255–277. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=A+Review+on+Recent+Syntheses+of+Amaryllidaceae+Alkaloids+and+Isocarbostyrils+(Time+period+mid-2016+to+2017)&author=Van+Otterlo,+W.A.L.&author=Green,+I.R.&publication_year=2018&journal=Nat.+Prod.+Commun.&volume=13&pages=255%E2%80%93277&doi=10.1177/1934578X1801300305)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1177/1934578X1801300305)**] [**Green Version (https://journals.sagepub.com/doi/pdf/10.1177/1934578X1801300305)**]

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

14. Koutová, D.; Maafi, N.; Havelek, R.; Opletal, L.; Blunden, G.; Řezáčová, M.; Cahlíková, L. Chemical and biological aspects of montanine-type alkaloids isolated from plants of the amaryllidaceae family. *Molecules* **2020**, *25*, 2337. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Chemical+and+biological+aspects+of+montanine-type+alkaloids+isolated+from+plants+of+the+amaryllidaceae+family&author=Koutov%C3%A1,+D.&author=Maafi,+N.&author=Havelek,+R.&author=Opletal,+L.&author=Blunden,+G.&author=%C5%98ez%C3%A1%C4%8Dov%C3%A1,+M.&author=Cahl%C3%ADkov%C3%A1,+L.&publication_year=2020&journal=Molecules&volume=25&pages=2337&doi=10.3390/molecules25102337)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules25102337)**]

15. Parinon, M.; Clarimundoa, S.V.; Pedrazzac, G.P.R.; Gulkod, P.S.; Zuanazzic, J.A.S.; Xaviera, R.M.; de Oliveira, P.G. Disease modifying anti-rheumatic activity of the alkaloid montanine on experimental arthritis and fibroblast-like synoviocytes. *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* **2017**, *799*, 180–187. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Disease+modifying+anti-rheumatic+activity+of+the+alkaloid+montanine+on+experimental+arthritis+and+fibroblast-like+synoviocytes&author=Parinon,+M.&author=Clarimundoa,+S.V.&author=Pedrazzac,+G.P.R.&author=Gulkod,+P.S.&author=Zuanazzic,+J.A.S.&author=Xaviera,+R.M.&author=de+Oliveira,+P.G.&publication_year=2017&journal=Eur.+J.+Pharmacol.&volume=799&pages=180%E2%80%93187&doi=10.1016/j.ejphar.2017.02.013&pmid=28192100)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2017.02.013)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28192100)**]

16. Tang, X.C.; Lin, Z.G.; Cai, W.; Chen, N.; Shen, L. Anti-inflammatory effect of 3-acetylaconitine. *Acta Pharmacol. Sin.* **1984**, *5*, 85–89. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-inflammatory+effect+of+3-acetylaconitine&author=Tang,+X.C.&author=Lin,+Z.G.&author=Cai,+W.&author=Chen,+N.&author=Shen,+L.&publication_year=1984&journal=Acta+Pharmacol.+Sin.&volume=5&pages=85%E2%80%9389)**]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

17. Li, H.; Zhai, Z.; Liu, G.; Tang, T.; Lin, Z.; Zheng, M.; Qin, A.; Dai, K. Sanguinarine inhibits osteoclast formation and bone resorption via suppressing RANKL-induced activation of NF-kappaB and ERK signaling pathways. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **2013**, *430*, 951–956. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Sanguinarine+inhibits+osteoclast+formation+and+bone+resorption+via+suppressing+RANKL-induced+activation+of+NF-kappaB+and+ERK+signaling+pathways&author=Li,+H.&author=Zhai,+Z.&author=Liu,+G.&author=Tang,+T.&author=Lin,+Z.&author=Zheng,+M.&author=Qin,+A.&author=Dai,+K.&publication_year=2013&journal=Biochem.+Biophys.+Res.+Commun.&volume=430&pages=951%E2%80%93956&doi=10.1016/j.bbrc.2012.12.051&pmid=23261473)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2012.12.051)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23261473)**]

18. Ma, Y.; Sun, X.; Huang, K.; Shen, S.; Lin, X.; Xie, Z.; Wang, J.; Fan, S.; Ma, J.; Zhao, X. Sanguinarine protects against osteoarthritis by suppressing the expression of catabolic proteases. *Oncotarget* **2017**, *8*, 62900–62913. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Sanguinarine+protects+against+osteoarthritis+by+suppressing+the+expression+of+catabolic+proteases&author=Ma,+Y.&author=Sun,+X.&author=Huang,+K.&author=Shen,+S.&author=Lin,+X.&author=Xie,+Z.&author=Wang,+J.&author=Fan,+S.&author=Ma,+J.&author=Zhao,+X.&publication_year=2017&journal=Oncotarget&volume=8&pages=62900%E2%80%9362913&doi=10.18632/oncotarget.17036)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.17036)**] [**Green Version (http://www.oncotarget.com/index.php?journal=oncotarget&page=article&op=download&path%5B%5D=17036&path%5B%5D=54523)**]

19. Slobodníková, L.; Kost'Álová, D.; Labudová, D.; Kotulová, D.; Kettmann, V. Antimicrobial activity of Mahonia aquifolium crude extract and its major isolated alkaloids. *Phytother. Res.* **2004**, *18*, 674–676. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Antimicrobial+activity+of+Mahonia+aquifolium+crude+extract+and+its+major+isolated+alkaloids&author=Slobodn%C3%ADkov%C3%A1,+L.&author=Kost%E2%80%99%C3%81lov%C3%A1,+D.&author=Labudov%C3%A1,+D.&author=Kotulov%C3%A1,+D.&author=Kettmann,+V.&publication_year=2004&journal=Phytother.+Res.&volume=18&pages=674%E2%80%93676&doi=10.1002/ptr.1517)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.1517)**]

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment

20. Qiu, H.; Sun, S.; Ma, X.; Cui, C.; Chen, G.; Liu, Z.; Li, H.; Liu, M. Jatrorrhizine hydrochloride suppresses proliferation, migration, and secretion of synoviocytes in vitro and ameliorates rat models of rheumatoid arthritis in vivo. *Int. J. Mol. Sci.* **2018**, *19*, 1514. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Jatrorrhizine+hydrochloride+suppresses+proliferation,+migration,+and+secretion+of+synoviocytes+in+vitro+and+ameliorates+rat+models+of+rheumatoid+arthritis+in+vivo&author=Qiu,+H.&author=Sun,+S.&author=Ma,+X.&author=Cui,+C.&author=Chen,+G.&author=Liu,+Z.&author=Li,+H.&author=Liu,+M.&publication_year=2018&journal=Int.+J.+Mol.+Sci.&volume=19&pages=1514&doi=10.3390/ijms19051514)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19051514)**] [**Green Version (https://www.mdpi.com/1422-0067/19/5/1514/pdf)**]

21. Stojanovic-Radic, Z.; Pejčić, M.; Dimitrijević, M.; Aleksić, A.; V Anil Kumar, N.; Salehi, B.; Cho, C.W.; Sharifi-Rad, J. Piperine-A major principle of black pepper: A review of its bioactivity and studies. *Appl. Sci.* **2019**, *9*, 4270. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Piperine-A+major+principle+of+black+pepper:+A+review+of+its+bioactivity+and+studies&author=Stojanovi%C4%87-Radi%C4%87,+Z.&author=Pej%C4%8Di%C4%87,+M.&author=Dimitrijevi%C4%87,+M.&author=Aleksi%C4%87,+A.&author=V+Anil+Kumar,+N.&author=Salehi,+B.&author=Cho,+C.W.&author=Sharifi-Rad,+J.&publication_year=2019&journal=Appl.+Sci.&volume=9&pages=4270&doi=10.3390/app9204270)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3390/app9204270)**] [**Green Version (https://www.mdpi.com/2076-3417/9/20/4270/pdf)**]

22. Bang, J.S.; Oh, D.H.; Choi, H.M.; Sur, B.J.; Lim, S.J.; Kim, J.Y.; Yang, H.I.; Yoo, M.C.; Hahm, D.H.; Kim, K.S. Anti-inflammatory and antiarthritic effects of piperine in human interleukin 1beta-stimulated fibroblast-like synoviocytes and in rat arthritis models. *Arthritis Res. Ther.* **2009**, *11*, R49. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-inflammatory+and+antiarthritic+effects+of+piperine+in+human+interleukin+1beta-stimulated+fibroblast-like+synoviocytes+and+in+rat+arthritis+models&author=Bang,+J.S.&author=Oh,+D.H.&author=Choi,+H.M.&author=Sur,+B.J.&author=Lim,+S.J.&author=Kim,+J.Y.&author=Yang,+H.I.&author=Yoo,+M.C.&author=Hahm,+D.H.&author=Kim,+K.S.&publication_year=2009&journal=Arthritis+Res.+Ther.&volume=11&pages=R49&doi=10.1186/ar2662)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1186/ar2662)**] [**Green Version (https://arthritis-research.biomedcentral.com/track/pdf/10.1186/ar2662)**]

Back to TopTop

23. Gamse, R.; Leeman, S.E.; Holzer, P.; Lembeck, F. Differential effects ofeapsaicin on the content of somatostatin, substance P and neurotensin in the nervous system of the rat. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch. Pharmacol.* **1981**, *7*, 140–148. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Differential+effects+ofeapsaicin+on+the+content+of+somatostatin,+substance+P+and+neurotensin+in+the+nervous+system+of+the+rat&author=Gamse,+R.&author=Leeman,+S.E.&author=Holzer,+P.&author=Lembeck,+F.&publication_year=1981&journal=Naunyn+Schmiedebergs+Arch.+Pharmacol.&volume=7&pages=140%E2%80%93148&doi=10.1007/BF00500070&pmid=6170896)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00500070)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6170896)**]

24. Ahmed, M.; Bjurholm, A.; Srinivasan, G.R.; Lundeberg, T.; Theodorsson, E.; Schultzberg, M.; Kreicbergs, A. Capsaicin effects on substance P and CGRP in rat adjuvant arthritis. *Regul. Pept.* **1995**, *55*, 85–102. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Capsaicin+effects+on+substance+P+and+CGRP+in+rat+adjuvant+arthritis&author=Ahmed,+M.&author=Bjurholm,+A.&author=Srinivasan,+G.R.&author=Lundeberg,+T.&author=Theodorsson,+E.&author=Schultzberg,+M.&author=Kreicbergs,+A.&publication_year=1995&journal=Regul.+Pept.&volume=55&pages=85%E2%80%93102&doi=10.1016/0167-0115(94)00095-F)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/0167-0115(94)00095-F)**]

25. Ryuichi, S.; Tubastrine, H.T. A new guanidinostyrene from the coral tubastrea aurea. *Chem. Lett.* **1987**, *16*, 127–128. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=A+new+guanidinostyrene+from+the+coral+tubastrea+aurea&author=Ryuichi,+S.&author=Tubastrine,+H.T.&publication_year=1987&journal=Chem.+Lett.&volume=16&pages=127%E2%80%93128)**]

Back to TopTop

26. Pearce, N.; Chia, E.W.; Berridge, M.; Maas, E.W.; Page, M.J.; Harper, J.L.; Webb, V.L.; Copp, B. Orthidines A–E, tubastrine, 3,4-dimethoxyphenethyl-β-guanidine, and 1,14-sperminedihomovanillamide: Potential anti-inflammatory alkaloids isolated from the New Zealand ascidian Aplidium orthium that act as inhibitors of neutrophil respiratory burst. *Tetrahedron* **2008**, *64*, 5748–5755. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Orthidines+A%E2%80%93E,+tubastrine,+3,4-dimethoxyphenethyl-%CE%B2-guanidine,+and+1,14-sperminedihomovanillamide:+Potential+anti-inflammatory+alkaloids+isolated+from+the+New+Zealand+ascidian+Aplidium+orthium+that+act+as+inhibitors+of+neutrophil+respiratory+burst&author=Pearce,+N.&author=Chia,+E.W.&author=Berridge,+M.&author=Maas,+E.W.&author=Page,+M.J.&author=Harper,+J.L.&author=Webb,+V.L.&author=Copp,+B.&publication_year=2008&journal=Tetrahedron&volume=64&pages=5748%E2%80%935755&doi=10.1016/j.tet.2008.04.012)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2008.04.012)**]

27. Ali, B.; Al-Wabel, N.A.; Shams, S.; Ahamad, A.; Khan, S.A.; Anwar, F. Essential oils used in aromatherapy: A systemic review. *Asian Pac. J. Trop. Biomed.* **2015**, *5*, 601–611. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Essential+oils+used+in+aromatherapy:+A+systemic+review&author=Ali,+B.&author=Al-Wabel,+N.A.&author=Shams,+S.&author=Ahamad,+A.&author=Khan,+S.A.&author=Anwar,+F.&publication_year=2015&journal=Asian+Pac.+J.+Trop.+Biomed.&volume=5&pages=601%E2%80%93611&doi=10.1016/j.apjtb.2015.05.007)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apjtb.2015.05.007)**] [**Green Version ()**]

28. Sharifi-Rad, J.; Sureda, A.; Tenore, G.C.; Daglia, M.; Sharifi-Rad, M.; Valussi, M.; Tundis, R.; Sharifi-Rad, M.; Loizzo, M.R.; Ademiluyi, A.O.; et al. Biological activities of essential oils: From plant chemoecology to traditional healing systems. *Molecules* **2017**, *22*, 70. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Biological+activities+of+essential+oils:+From+plant+chemoecology+to+traditional+healing+systems&author=Sharifi-Rad,+J.&author=Sureda,+A.&author=Tenore,+G.C.&author=Daglia,+M.&author=Sharifi-Rad,+M.&author=Valussi,+M.&author=Tundis,+R.&author=Sharifi-Rad,+M.&author=Loizzo,+M.R.&author=Ademiluyi,+A.O.&publication_year=2017&journal=Molecules&volume=22&pages=70&doi=10.3390/molecules22010070)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules22010070)**]

Back to TopTop

30. Osuntokun, O.T.; Ogunleye, A.J. Prospects of essential oils in drug discovery. *ACP* **2017**, *2*, 17–19. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Prospects+of+essential+oils+in+drug+discovery&author=Osuntokun,+O.T.&author=Ogunleye,+A.J.&publication_year=2017&journal=ACP&volume=2&pages=17%E2%80%9319&doi=10.15406/acp.2017.02.00010)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.15406/acp.2017.02.00010)**] [**Green Version (https://medcraveonline.com/ACP/ACP-02-00010.pdf)**]

31. Carvalho, A.M.; Heimfarth, L.; Santos, K.A.; Guimarães, A.G.; Picot, L.; Almeida, J.R.; Quintans, J.S.; Quintans-Júnior, L.J. Terpenes as possible drugs for the mitigation of arthritic symptoms—A systematic review. *Phytomedicine* **2019**, *57*, 137–144. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Terpenes+as+possible+drugs+for+the+mitigation+of+arthritic+symptoms%E2%80%94A+systematic+review&author=Carvalho,+A.M.&author=Heimfarth,+L.&author=Santos,+K.A.&author=Guimar%C3%A3es,+A.G.&author=Picot,+L.&author=Almeida,+J.R.&author=Quintans,+J.S.&author=Quintans-J%C3%BAnior,+L.J.&publication_year=2019&journal=Phytomedicine&volume=57&pages=137%E2%80%93147&doi=10.1016/j.phymed.2018.10.028)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phymed.2018.10.028)**]

31. Sharma, J.N.; Srivastava, K.C.; Gan, E.K. Suppressive effects of eugenol and ginger oil on arthritic rats. *Pharmacology* **1994**, *49*, 314–318. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Suppressive+effects+of+eugenol+and+ginger+oil+on+arthritic+rats&author=Sharma,+J.N.&author=Srivastava,+K.C.&author=Gan,+E.K.&publication_year=1994&journal=Pharmacology&volume=49&pages=314%E2%80%93318&doi=10.1159/000139248)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1159/000139248)**]

PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
PDF (https://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

32. Grespan, R.; Paludo, M.; Lemos, H.D.P.; Barbosa, C.P.; Bersani-Amado, C.A.; Dalalio, M.M.D.O.; Cuman, R. Anti-arthritic effect of eugenol on collagen-induced arthritis experimental model. *Biol. Pharm. Bull.* **2012**, *35*, 1818–1820. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-arthritic+effect+of+eugenol+on+collagen-induced+arthritis+experimental+model&author=Grespan,+R.&author=Paludo,+M.&author=Lemos,+H.D.P.&author=Barbosa,+C.P.&author=Bersani-Amado,+C.A.&author=Dalalio,+M.M.D.O.&author=Cuman,+R.&publication_year=2012&journal=Biol.+Pharm.+Bull.&volume=35&pages=1818%E2%80%931820&doi=10.1248/bpb.b12-00128)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1248/bpb.b12-00128)**] [**Green Version (https://www.jstage.jst.go.jp/article/bpb/35/10/35_b12-00128/_pdf)**]

33. Cui, X.; Wang, R.; Bian, P.; Wu, Q.; Seshadri, V.D.D.; Liu, L. Evaluation of antiarthritic activity of nimbolide against Freund's adjuvant induced arthritis in rats. *Artif. Cells Nanomed. Biotechnol.* **2019**, *47*, 3391–3398. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Evaluation+of+antiarthritic+activity+of+nimbolide+against+Freund%E2%80%99s+adjuvant+induced+arthritis+in+rats&author=Cui,+X.&author=Wang,+R.&author=Bian,+P.&author=Wu,+Q.&author=Seshadri,+V.D.D.&author=Liu,+L.&publication_year=2019&journal=Artif.+Cells+Nanomed.+Biotechnol.&volume=47&pages=3391%E2%80%933398&doi=10.1080/21691401.2019.1649269)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/21691401.2019.1649269)**] [**Green Version (https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/21691401.2019.1649269?needAccess=true)**]

34. Dubey, V.K.; Budhauliya, A.; Jaggi, M.; Singh, A.T.; Rajput, S.K. Tumor-suppressing effect of bartogenic acid in ovarian (SKOV-3) xenograft mouse model. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch. Pharmacol.* **2021**, *394*, 1815–1826. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Tumor-suppressing+effect+of+bartogenic+acid+in+ovarian+(SKOV-3)+xenograft+mouse+model&author=Dubey,+V.K.&author=Budhauliya,+A.&author=Jaggi,+M.&author=Singh,+A.T.&author=Rajput,+S.K.&publication_year=2021&journal=Naunyn+Schmiedebergs+Arch.+Pharmacol.&volume=394&pages=1815%E2%80%931826&doi=10.1007/s00210-021-02088-0)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s00210-021-02088-0)**]

Back to TopTop

35. Patil, K.R.; Patil, C.R.; Jadhav, R.B.; Mahajan, V.K.; Patil, P.R.; Gaikwad, P.S. Anti-Arthritic Activity of Bartogenic Acid Isolated from Fruits of barringtonia racemose roxb. (Lecythidaceae). *Evid.-Based Complement. Altern. Med.* **2011**, *2011*, 785245. [Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-Arthritic+Activity+of+Bartogenic+Acid+Isolated+from+Fruits+of+barringtonia+racemose+roxb.+(Lecythidaceae)&author=Patil,+K.R.&author=Patil,+C.R.&author=Jadhav,+R.B.&author=Mahajan,+V.K.&author=Patil,+P.R.&author=Gaikwad,+P.S.&publication_year=2011&journal=Evid.-Based+Complement.+Altern.+Med.&volume=2011&pages=785245&doi=10.1093/ecam/nep148)] [CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1093/ecam/nep148)] [Green Version (http://downloads.hindawi.com/journals/ecam/2011/785245.pdf)]

36. Pellati, F.; Borgonetti, V.; Brighenti, V.; Biagi, M.; Benvenuti, S.; Corsi, L. Cannabis sativa L. and nonpsychoactive cannabinoids: Their chemistry and role against oxidative stress, inflammation, and cancer. *BioMed Res. Int.* **2018**, *2018*, 1691428. [Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Cannabis+sativa+L.+and+nonpsychoactive+cannabinoids:+Their+chemistry+and+role+against+oxidative+stress,+inflammation,+and+cancer&author=Pellati,+F.&author=Borgonetti,+V.&author=Brighenti,+V.&author=Biagi,+M.&author=Benvenuti,+S.&author=Corsi,+L.&publication_year=2018&journal=BioMed+Res.+Int.&volume=2018&pages=1691428&doi=10.1155/2018/1691428&pmid=30627539)] [CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/1691428)] [PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/30627539)] [Green Version (http://downloads.hindawi.com/journals/bmri/2018/1691428.pdf)]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

37. Malfait, A.-M.; Gallily, R.; Sumariwalla, P.F.; Malik, A.S.; Andreakos, E.; Mechoulam, R.; Feldmann, M. The nonpsychoactive cannabis constituent cannabidiol is an oral anti-arthritic therapeutic in murine collagen-induced arthritis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **2000**, *97*, 9561–9566. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=The+nonpsychoactive+cannabis+constituent+cannabidiol+is+an+oral+anti-arthritic+therapeutic+in+murine+collagen-induced+arthritis&author=Malfait,+A.-M.&author=Gallily,+R.&author=Sumariwalla,+P.F.&author=Malik,+A.S.&author=Andreakos,+E.&author=Mechoulam,+R.&author=Feldmann,+M.&publication_year=2000&journal=Proc.+Natl.+Acad.+Sci.+USA&volume=97&pages=9561%E2%80%939566&doi=10.1073/pnas.160105897&pmid=10920191)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.160105897)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10920191)**] [**Green Version (http://www.pnas.org/content/97/17/9561.full.pdf)**]

38. Feldmann, M.; Malfait, A.M.; Gallily, R.; Mechoulam, R. Use of cannabinoids as anti-inflammatory agents. U.S. Patent 6,410,588 B1, 25 June 2002. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Use+of+cannabinoids+as+anti-inflammatory+agents&author=Feldmann,+M.&author=Malfait,+A.M.&author=Gallily,+R.&author=Mechoulam,+R.&publication_year=2002)**]

39. Jacob, A.; Wu, R.; Zhou, M.; Wang, P. Mechanism of the anti-inflammatory effect of curcumin: PPAR-γ activation. *PPAR Res.* **2007**, *2007*, 89369. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Mechanism+of+the+anti-inflammatory+effect+of+curcumin:+PPAR-%CE%B3+activation&author=Jacob,+A.&author=Wu,+R.&author=Zhou,+M.&author=Wang,+P.&publication_year=2007&journal=PPAR+Res.&volume=2007&pages=89369&doi=10.1155/2007/89369&pmid=18274631)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1155/2007/89369)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18274631)**] [**Green Version (http://downloads.hindawi.com/journals/ppar/2007/089369.pdf)**]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in Sci Profiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

40. Hewlings, S.J.; Kalman, D.S. Curcumin: A review of its' effects on human health. *Foods* **2017**, *6*, 92. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Curcumin:+A+review+of+its%E2%80%99+effects+on+human+health&author=Hewlings,+S.J.&author=Kalman,+D.S.&publication_year=2017&journal=Foods&volume=6&pages=92&doi=10.3390/foods6100092&pmid=29065496)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3390/foods6100092)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29065496)**]

41. Huang, G.; Xu, Z.; Huang, Y.; Duan, X.; Gong, W.; Zhang, Y.; Fan, J.; He, F. Curcumin protects against collagen-induced arthritis via suppression of BAFF production. *J. Clin. Immunol.* **2012**, *33*, 550–557. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Curcumin+protects+against+collagen-induced+arthritis+via+suppression+of+BAFF+production&author=Huang,+G.&author=Xu,+Z.&author=Huang,+Y.&author=Duan,+X.&author=Gong,+W.&author=Zhang,+Y.&author=Fan,+J.&author=He,+F.&publication_year=2012&journal=J.+Clin.+Immunol.&volume=33&pages=550%E2%80%93557&doi=10.1007/s10875-012-9839-0)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s10875-012-9839-0)**]

42. Kuncha, M.; Naidu, V.G.; Sahu, B.D.; Gadepalli, S.G.; Sistla, R. Curcumin potentiates the anti-arthritic effect of prednisolone in Freund's complete adjuvant-induced arthritic rats. *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **2014**, *66*, 133–144. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Curcumin+potentiates+the+anti-arthritic+effect+of+prednisolone+in+Freund%E2%80%99s+complete+adjuvant-induced+arthritic+rats&author=Kuncha,+M.&author=Naidu,+V.G.&author=Sahu,+B.D.&author=Gadepalli,+S.G.&author=Sistla,+R.&publication_year=2014&journal=J.+Pharm.+Pharmacol.&volume=66&pages=133%E2%80%93144&doi=10.1111/jphp.12156)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1111/jphp.12156)**]

43. Yu, Y.; Shen, Q.; Lai, Y.; Park, S.Y.; Ou, X.; Lin, D.; Jin, M.; Zhang, W. Anti-inflammatory effects of curcumin in microglial cells. *Front. Pharmacol.* **2018**, *9*, 386. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-inflammatory+effects+of+curcumin+in+microglial+cells&author=Yu,+Y.&author=Shen,+Q.&author=Lai,+Y.&author=Park,+S.Y.&author=Ou,+X.&author=Lin,+D.&author=Jin,+M.&author=Zhang,+W.&publication_year=2018&journal=Front.+Pharmacol.&volume=9&pages=386&doi=10.3389/fphar.2018.00386&pmid=29731715)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2018.00386)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29731715)**] [**Green Version (https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fphar.2018.00386/pdf)**]

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

44. Elisha, I.L.; Dzoyem, J.-P.; McGaw, L.J.; Botha, F.S.; Eloff, J.N. The anti-arthritic, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant activity and relationships with total phenolics and total flavonoids of nine South African plants used traditionally to treat arthritis. *BMC. Complement. Altern. Med.* **2016**, *16*, 307. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=The+anti-arthritic,+anti-inflammatory,+antioxidant+activity+and+relationships+with+total+phenolics+and+total+flavonoids+of+nine+South+African+plants+used+traditionally+to+treat+arthritis&author=Elisha,+I.L.&author=Dzoyem,+J.-P.&author=McGaw,+L.J.&author=Botha,+F.S.&author=Eloff,+J.N.&publication_year=2016&journal=BMC+Complement.+Altern.+Med.&volume=16&pages=307&doi=10.1186/s12906-016-1301-z)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1186/s12906-016-1301-z)**] [**Green Version ()**]

45. Yuan, K.; Zhu, Q.; Lu, Q.; Jiang, H.; Zhu, M.; Li, X.; Huang, G.; Xu, A. Quercetin alleviates rheumatoid arthritis by inhibiting neutrophil inflammatory activities. *J. Nutr. Biochem.* **2020**, *84*, 108454. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Quercetin+alleviates+rheumatoid+arthritis+by+inhibiting+neutrophil+inflammatory+activities&author=Yuan,+K.&author=Zhu,+Q.&author=Lu,+Q.&author=Jiang,+H.&author=Zhu,+M.&author=Li,+X.&author=Huang,+G.&author=Xu,+A.&publication_year=2020&journal=J.+Nutr.+Biochem.&volume=84&pages=108454&doi=10.1016/j.jnutbio.2020.108454&pmid=32679549)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jnutbio.2020.108454)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/32679549)**]

46. Mamani-Matsuda, M.; Kauss, T.; Al-Kharrat, A.; Rambert, J.; Fawaz, F.; Thiolat, D.; Moynet, D.; Coves, S.; Malvy, D.; Mossalayi, M.D. Therapeutic and preventive 340 properties of quercetin in experimental arthritis correlate with decreased 341 macrophage inflammatory mediators. *Ochem. Pharmacol.* **2006**, *72*, 1304–1310. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Therapeutic+and+preventive+340+properties+of+quercetin+in+experimental+arthritis+correlate+with+decreased+341+macrophage+inflammatory+mediators&author=Mamani-Matsuda,+M.&author=Kauss,+T.&author=Al-Kharrat,+A.&author=Rambert,+J.&author=Fawaz,+F.&author=Thiolat,+D.&author=Moynet,+D.&author=Coves,+S.&author=Malvy,+D.&author=Mossalayi,+M.D.&publication_year=2006&journal=Ochem.+Pharmacol.&volume=72&pages=1304%E2%80%931310)**]

Back to TopTop

47. Gardi, K.; Bauerova, B.; Stringa, V.; Kuncirova, L.; Slovak, S.; Ponist, F.; Dra, L.; Bezakova, I.; Tedesco, A.; Acquaviva, S. Quercetin reduced inflammation and increased antioxidant defense in rat adjuvant arthritis. *Biochem. Biophys.* **2015**, *583*, 150–157. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Quercetin+reduced+inflammation+and+increased+antioxidant+defense+in+rat+adjuvant+arthritis&author=Gardi,+K.&author=Bauerova,+B.&author=Stringa,+V.&author=Kuncirova,+L.&author=Slovak,+S.&author=Ponist,+F.&author=Dra,+L.&author=Bezakova,+I.&author=Tedesco,+A.&author=Acquaviva,+S.&publication_year=2015&journal=Biochem.+Biophys.&volume=583&pages=150%E2%80%93157&doi=10.1016/j.abb.2015.08.008)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.abb.2015.08.008)**]

48. Gaikwad, R.D.; Ahmed, M.L.; Khalid, M.S.; Swamy, P. Anti-infammatory activity of madhuca longifolia seed saponin mixture. *Pharm. Biol.* **2009**, *47*, 592–597. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-inflammatory+activity+of+madhuca+longifolia+seed+saponin+mixture&author=Gaikwad,+R.D.&author=Ahmed,+M.L.&author=Khalid,+M.S.&author=Swamy,+P.&publication_year=2009&journal=Pharm.+Biol.&volume=47&pages=592%E2%80%93597&doi=10.1080/13880200902902513)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/13880200902902513)**]

49. Tang, Y.; Xie, D.; Gong, W.; Wu, H.; Qiang, Y. Pentahydroxy flavonoid isolated from Madhuca indica ameliorated adjuvant-induced arthritis via modulation of inflammatory pathways. *Sci. Rep.* **2021**, *11*, 17971. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Pentahydroxy+flavonoid+isolated+from+Madhuca+indica+ameliorated+adjuvant-induced+arthritis+via+modulation+of+inflammatory+pathways&author=Tang,+Y.&author=Xie,+D.&author=Gong,+W.&author=Wu,+H.&author=Qiang,+Y.&publication_year=2021&journal=Sci.+Rep.&volume=11&pages=17971&doi=10.1038/s41598-021-97474-2&pmid=34504248)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-021-97474-2)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/34504248)**]

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sci Profiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

50. Haleagrahara, N.; Miranda-Hernandez, S.; Alim, A.; Hayes, L.; Bird, G.; Ketheesan, N. Therapeutic effect of quercetin in collagen-induced arthritis. *Biomed. Pharmacother.* **2017**, *90*, 38–46. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Therapeutic+effect+of+quercetin+in+collagen-induced+arthritis&author=Haleagrahara,+N.&author=Miranda-Hernandez,+S.&author=Alim,+A.&author=Hayes,+L.&author=Bird,+G.&author=Ketheesan,+N.&publication_year=2017&journal=Biomed.+Pharmacother.&volume=90&pages=38%E2%80%9346&doi=10.1016/j.biopha.2017.03.026&pmid=28342364)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopha.2017.03.026)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28342364)**]

51. Chen, X.-Y.; Wang, Z.-C.; Li, J.; Liu, X.-L.; Sun, Y.-H. Regulation of synoviocyte activity by resveratrol in rats with adjuvant arthritis. *Exp. Ther. Med.* **2013**, *6*, 172–176. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Regulation+of+synoviocyte+activity+by+resveratrol+in+rats+with+adjuvant+arthritis&author=Chen,+X.-Y.&author=Wang,+Z.-C.&author=Li,+J.&author=Liu,+X.-L.&author=Sun,+Y.-H.&publication_year=2013&journal=Exp.+Ther.+Med.&volume=6&pages=172%E2%80%93176&doi=10.3892/etm.2013.1078)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2013.1078)**] [**Green Version (http://europepmc.org/articles/pmc3786715?pdf=render)**]

52. Chen, X.; Lu, J.; An, M.; Ma, Z.; Zong, H.; Yang, J. Anti-inflammatory effect of resveratrol on adjuvant arthritis rats with abnormal immunological function via the reduction of cyclooxygenase-2 and prostaglandin E2. *Mol. Med. Rep.* **2014**, *9*, 2592–2598. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-inflammatory+effect+of+resveratrol+on+adjuvant+arthritis+rats+with+abnormal+immunological+function+via+the+reduction+of+cyclooxygenase-2+and+prostaglandin+E2&author=Chen,+X.&author=Lu,+J.&author=An,+M.&author=Ma,+Z.&author=Zong,+H.&author=Yang,+J.&publication_year=2014&journal=Mol.+Med.+Rep.&volume=9&pages=2592%E2%80%932598&doi=10.3892/mmr.2014.2070&pmid=24676467)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3892/mmr.2014.2070)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24676467)**] [**Green Version (http://www.spandidos-publications.com/mmr/9/6/2592/download)**]

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

53. El-Ghazaly, M.A.; Fadel, N.A.; Abdel-Naby, D.H.; El-Rehim, H.A.A.; Zaki, H.F.; Kenawy, S.A. Potential anti-inflammatory action of resveratrol and piperine in adjuvant-induced arthritis: Effect on pro-inflammatory cytokines and oxidative stress biomarkers. *Egypt. Rheumatol.* **2020**, *42*, 71–77. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Potential+anti-inflammatory+action+of+resveratrol+and+piperine+in+adjuvant-induced+arthritis:+Effect+on+pro-inflammatory+cytokines+and+oxidative+stress+biomarkers&author=El-Ghazaly,+M.A.&author=Fadel,+N.A.&author=Abdel-Naby,+D.H.&author=El-Rehim,+H.A.A.&author=Zaki,+H.F.&author=Kenawy,+S.A.&publication_year=2020&journal=Egypt.+Rheumatol.&volume=42&pages=71%E2%80%9377&doi=10.1016/j.ejr.2019.08.003)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejr.2019.08.003)**]

54. Cortes, J.R.; Perez-G, M.; Rivas, M.D.; Zamorano, J. Kaempferol inhibits IL 4 induced STAT6 activation by specifically targeting JAK3. *J. Immunol.* **2007**, *179*, 3881–3887. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Kaempferol+inhibits+IL+4+induced+STAT6+activation+by+specifically+targeting+JAK3&author=Cortes,+J.R.&author=Perez-G,+M.&author=Rivas,+M.D.&author=Zamorano,+J.&publication_year=2007&journal=J.+Immunol.&volume=179&pages=3881%E2%80%933887&doi=10.4049/jimmunol.179.6.3881)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.179.6.3881)**] [**Green Version (http://www.jimmunol.org/content/179/6/3881.full.pdf)**]

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment

- Introduction
- Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
- Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
- Conclusions
- Author Contributions
- Funding
- Institutional Review Board Statement
- Informed Consent Statement
- Data Availability Statement
- Acknowledgments
- Conflicts of Interest
- References

García-Mediavilla, M.V.; Crespo, I.; Collado, P.S.; Esteller, A.; Sánchez-Campos, S.; Tuñón, M.J.; González-Gallego, J. The anti-inflammatory flavones quercetin and kaempferol cause inhibition of inducible nitric oxide synthase, cyclooxygenase-2 and reactive C-protein, and down-regulation of the nuclear factor kappaB pathway in chang liver cells. *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* **2007**, *557*, 221–229. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=The+anti-inflammatory+flavones+quercetin+and+kaempferol+cause+inhibition+of+inducible+nitric+oxide+synthase,+cyclooxygenase-2+and+reactive+C-protein,+and+down-regulation+of+the+nuclear+factor+kappaB+pathway+in+chang+liver+cells&author=Garc%C3%ADa-Mediavilla,+M.V.&author=Crespo,+I.&author=Collado,+P.S.&author=Esteller,+A.&author=S%C3%A1nchez-Campos,+S.&author=Tu%C3%B1%C3%B3n,+M.J.&author=Gonz%C3%A1lez-Gallego,+J.&publication_year=2007&journal=Eur.+J.+Pharmacol.&volume=557&pages=221%E2%80%93229&doi=10.1016/j.ejphar.2006.11.014)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2006.11.014)**]

Yoon, C.-H.; Chung, S.-J.; Lee, S.-W.; Park, Y.-B.; Lee, S.-K.; Park, M.-C. Gallic acid, a natural polyphenolic acid, induces apoptosis and inhibits proinflammatory gene expressions in rheumatoid arthritis fibroblast-like synoviocytes. *Jt. Bone Spine* **2013**, *80*, 274–279. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Gallic+acid,+a+natural+polyphenolic+acid,+induces+apoptosis+and+inhibits+proinflammatory+gene+expressions+in+rheumatoid+arthritis+fibroblast-like+synoviocytes&author=Yoon,+C.-H.&author=Chung,+S.-J.&author=Lee,+S.-W.&author=Park,+Y.-B.&author=Lee,+S.-K.&author=Park,+M.-C.&publication_year=2013&journal=Jt.+Bone+Spine&volume=80&pages=274%E2%80%93279&doi=10.1016/j.jbspin.2012.08.010&pmid=23058179)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbspin.2012.08.010)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23058179)**]

57. Zhao, Y.; Liu, F.; Liu, Y.; Zhou, D.; Dai, Q.; Liu, S. Anti-arthritic effect of chebulanin on collagen-induced arthritis in mice. *PLoS ONE* **2015**, *10*, e0139052. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-arthritic+effect+of+chebulanin+on+collagen-induced+arthritis+in+mice&author=Zhao,+Y.&author=Liu,+F.&author=Liu,+Y.&author=Zhou,+D.&author=Dai,+Q.&author=Liu,+S.&publication_year=2015&journal=PLoS+ONE&volume=10&pages=e0139052&doi=10.1371/journal.pone.0139052)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0139052)**]

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

58. Liu, F.; Liu, Y.; Zhan, S.; Lv, J.; Sun, F.; Weng, B.; Liu, S.; Xia, P. Chebulanin exerts its anti-inflammatory and anti-arthritic effects via inhibiting NF-κB and MAPK activation in collagen-induced arthritis mice. *Int. Immunopharmacol.* **2020**, *88*, 106823. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Chebulanin+exerts+its+anti-inflammatory+and+anti-arthritic+effects+via+inhibiting+NF-%CE%BAB+and+MAPK+activation+in+collagen-induced+arthritis+mice&author=Liu,+F.&author=Liu,+Y.&author=Zhan,+S.&author=Lv,+J.&author=Sun,+F.&author=Weng,+B.&author=Liu,+S.&author=Xia,+P.&publication_year=2020&journal=Int.+Immunopharmacol.&volume=88&pages=106823&doi=10.1016/j.intimp.2020.106823)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intimp.2020.106823)**]

59. Bansal, N.; Kumar, M. Evaluation of neuroprotective properties of ellagic acid and caffeic acid phenethylester. *Ann. Short Rep.* **2018**, *1*, 1029. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Evaluation+of+neuroprotective+properties+of+ellagic+acid+and+caffeic+acid+phenethylester&author=Bansal,+N.&author=Kumar,+M.&publication_year=2018&journal=Ann.+Short+Rep.&volume=1&pages=1029)**]

60. Sepúlveda, L.; Ascacio, A.; Rodriguez-Herrera, R.; Aguilera-Carbo, A.; Aguilar, C.N. ChemInform abstract: Ellagic acid: Biological properties and biotechnological development for production processes. *Afr. J. Biotechnol.* **2012**, *43*, 4518–4523. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=ChemInform+abstract:+Ellagic+acid:+Biological+properties+and+biotechnological+development+for+production+processes&author=Sep%C3%BAlveda,+L.&author=Ascacio,+A.&author=Rodriguez-Herrera,+R.&author=Aguilera-Carbo,+A.&author=Aguilar,+C.N.&publication_year=2012&journal=Afr.+J.+Biotechnol.&volume=43&pages=4518%E2%80%934523&doi=10.1002/chin.201250260)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1002/chin.201250260)**]

61. Shruthi, S.D.; Ganapathy, S.P.S.; Kumar, R.; Kumara, S.; Dharshan, J.C.; Ramachandra, Y.L. In vivo, in vitro anti-arthritic studies of ellagic acid from kirganelia reticulata baill and its molecular docking. *J. App. Pharm. Sci.* **2014**, *4*, 024–031. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=In+vivo,+in+vitro+anti-arthritic+studies+of+ellagic+acid+from+kirganelia+reticulata+baill+and+its+molecular+docking&author=Shruthi,+S.D.&author=Ganapathy,+S.P.S.&author=Kumar,+R.&author=Kumara,+S.&author=Dharshan,+J.C.&author=Ramachandra,+Y.L.&publication_year=2014&journal=J.+App.+Pharm.+Sci.&volume=4&pages=024%E2%80%93031)**]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment

63. Umar, S.; Ahmad, S.; Katiyar, C.K.; Khan, H.A. Combination therapy of methotrexate with ellagic acid attenuates the over expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines and modulates antioxidant status in collagen induced arthritis. *Front. Immunol.* **2013**, *15*, 22–27. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Combination+therapy+of+methotrexate+with+ellagic+acid+attenuates+the+over+expression+of+pro-inflammatory+cytokines+and+modulates+antioxidant+status+in+collagen+induced+arthritis&author=Umar,+S.&author=Ahmad,+S.&author=Katiyar,+C.K.&author=Khan,+H.A.&publication_year=2013&journal=Front.+Immunol.&volume=15&pages=22%E2%80%9327)**]

64. Scarpati, M.; Oriente, G. Chicoric acid (dicaffeyltartic acid): Its isolation from chicory (Chicorium intybus) and synthesis. *Tetrahedron* **1958**, *4*, 43–48. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Chicoric+acid+(dicaffeyltartic+acid):+Its+isolation+from+chicory+(Chicorium+intybus)+and+synthesis&author=Scarpati,+M.&author=Oriente,+G.&publication_year=1958&journal=Tetrahedron&volume=4&pages=43%E2%80%9348&doi=10.1016/0040-4020(58)88005-9)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/0040-4020(58)88005-9)**]

64. Wei, T.; Liu, Y.; Li, M. Anti-inflammatory and anti-arthritic activity of rosmarinic acid isolated from rosmarinus officinalis in an experimental model of arthritis. *Indian J. Pharm. Educ. Res.* **2021**, *55*, 507–516. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-inflammatory+and+anti-arthritic+activity+of+rosmarinic+acid+isolated+from+rosmarinus+officinalis+in+an+experimental+model+of+arthritis&author=Wei,+T.&author=Liu,+Y.&author=Li,+M.&publication_year=2021&journal=Indian+J.+Pharm.+Educ.+Res.&volume=55&pages=507%E2%80%93516&doi=10.5530/ijper.55.2.89)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.5530/ijper.55.2.89)**]

Back to TopTop

PDF (http://www.altmetric.com/details.php?domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390/coatings11111329) Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168) Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints) (/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Altmetric Share Help Cite Discuss in Sci Profiles Endorse Comment

65. Shi, M.; Wang, J.; Xiao, Y.; Wang, C.; Qiu, Q.; Lao, M.; Yu, Y.; Li, Z.; Zhang, H.; Ye, Y.; et al. glycogen metabolism and rheumatoid arthritis: The role of glycogen synthase 1 in regulation of synovial inflammation via blocking AMP-activated protein kinase activation. *Front. Immunol.* **2018**, *9*, 1714. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=glycogen+metabolism+and+rheumatoid+arthritis:+The+role+of+glycogen+synthase+1+in+regulation+of+synovial+inflammation+via+blocking+AMP-activated+protein+kinase+activation&author=Shi,+M.&author=Wang,+J.&author=Xiao,+Y.&author=Wang,+C.&author=Qiu,+Q.&author=Lao,+M.&author=Yu,+Y.&author=Li,+Z.&author=Zhang,+H.&author=Ye,+Y.&publication_year=2018&journal=Front.+Immunol.&volume=9&pages=1714&doi=10.3389/fimmu.2018.01714)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2018.01714)**]

66. Yoon, H.-Y.; Lee, E.-G.; Lee, H.; Cho, I.J.; Choi, Y.J.; Sung, M.-S.; Yoo, H.-G.; Yoo, W.-H. Kaempferol inhibits IL-1β-induced proliferation of rheumatoid arthritis synovial fibroblasts and the production of COX-2, PGE2 and MMPs. *Int. J. Mol. Med.* **2013**, *32*, 971–977. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Kaempferol+inhibits+IL-1%CE%B2-induced+proliferation+of+rheumatoid+arthritis+synovial+fibroblasts+and+the+production+of+COX-2,+PGE2+and+MMPs&author=Yoon,+H.-Y.&author=Lee,+E.-G.&author=Lee,+H.&author=Cho,+I.J.&author=Choi,+Y.J.&author=Sung,+M.-S.&author=Yoo,+H.-G.&author=Yoo,+W.-H.&publication_year=2013&journal=Int.+J.+Mol.+Med.&volume=32&pages=971%E2%80%93977&doi=10.3892/ijmm.2013.1468&pmid=23934131)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3892/ijmm.2013.1468)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23934131)**] [**Green Version (http://www.spandidos-publications.com/ijmm/32/4/971/download)**]

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

67. Chauhan, P.S.; Satti, N.K.; Sharma, P.; Sharma, V.K.; Suri, K.A.; Bani, S. Differential effects of chlorogenic acid on various immunological parameters relevant to rheumatoid arthritis. *Phytother. Res.* **2012**, *26*, 1156–1165. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Differential+effects+of+chlorogenic+acid+on+various+immunological+parameters+relevant+to+rheumatoid+arthritis&author=Chauhan,+P.S.&author=Satti,+N.K.&author=Sharma,+P.&author=Sharma,+V.K.&author=Suri,+K.A.&author=Bani,+S.&publication_year=2012&journal=Phytother.+Res.&volume=26&pages=1156%E2%80%931165&doi=10.1002/ptr.3684)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.3684)**]

68. Fu, X.; Lyu, X.; Liu, H.; Zhong, D.; Xu, Z.; He, F.; Huang, G. Chlorogenic acid inhibits baff expression in collagen-induced arthritis and human synoviocyte mh7a cells by modulating the activation of the nf-κb signaling pathway. *J. Immunol. Res.* **2019**, *22*, 8042097. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Chlorogenic+acid+inhibits+baff+expression+in+collagen-induced+arthritis+and+human+synoviocyte+mh7a+cells+by+modulating+the+activation+of+the+nf-κB+signaling+pathway&author=Fu,+X.&author=Lyu,+X.&author=Liu,+H.&author=Zhong,+D.&author=Xu,+Z.&author=He,+F.&author=Huang,+G.&publication_year=2019&journal=J.+Immunol.+Res.&volume=22&pages=8042097&doi=10.1155/2019/8042097&pmid=31240234)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1155/2019/8042097)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/31240234)**] [**Green Version (http://downloads.hindawi.com/journals/jir/2019/8042097.pdf)**]

69. Zhang, L.; Al-Suwayeh, S.A.; Hsiehc, P.; Fang, J. A comparison of skin delivery of ferulic acid and its derivatives: Evaluation of their efcacy and safety. *Int. J. Pharm.* **2010**, *399*, 44–51. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=A+comparison+of+skin+delivery+of+ferulic+acid+and+its+derivatives:+Evaluation+of+their+efcacy+and+safety&author=Zhang,+L.&author=Al-Suwayeh,+S.A.&author=Hsiehc,+P.&author=Fang,+J.&publication_year=2010&journal=Int.+J.+Pharm.&volume=399&pages=44%E2%80%9351&doi=10.1016/j.ijpharm.2010.07.054)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2010.07.054)**]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sci Profiles
Endorse
Comment
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

70. Zhu, L.; Zhang, Z.; Xia, N.; Zhang, W.; Wei, Y.; Huang, J.; Ren, Z.; Meng, F.; Yang, L. Anti-arthritic activity of ferulic acid in complete Freund's adjuvant (CFA)-induced arthritis in rats: JAK2 inhibition. *Inflammopharmacology* **2019**, *28*, 463–473. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-arthritic+activity+of+ferulic+acid+in+complete+Freund%E2%80%99s+adjuvant+(CFA)-induced+arthritis+in+rats:+JAK2+inhibition&author=Zhu,+L.&author=Zhang,+Z.&author=Xia,+N.&author=Zhang,+W.&author=Wei,+Y.&author=Huang,+J.&author=Ren,+Z.&author=Meng,+F.&author=Yang,+L.&publication_year=2019&journal=Inflammopharmacology&volume=28&pages=463%E2%80%93473&doi=10.1007/s10787-019-00642-0)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s10787-019-00642-0)**]

71. Nirmal, N.P.; Rajput, M.S.; Prasad, R.G.S.V.; Ahmad, M. Brazilin from caesalpinia sappan heartwood and its pharmacological activities: A review. *Asian Pac. J. Trop. Med.* **2015**, *8*, 421–430. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Brazilin+from+caesalpinia+sappan+heartwood+and+its+pharmacological+activities:+A+review&author=Nirmal,+N.P.&author=Rajput,+M.S.&author=Prasad,+R.G.S.V.&author=Ahmad,+M.&publication_year=2015&journal=Asian+Pac.+J.+Trop.+Med.&volume=8&pages=421%E2%80%93430&doi=10.1016/j.apjtm.2015.05.014)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apjtm.2015.05.014)**] [**Green Version ()**]

72. Jung, E.-G.; Han, K.-I.; Hwang, S.G.; Kwon, H.-J.; Patnaik, B.B.; Kim, Y.H.; Han, M.-D. Brazilin isolated from caesalpinia sappan L. inhibits rheumatoid arthritis activity in a type-II collagen induced arthritis mouse model. *BMC Complement. Altern. Med.* **2015**, *15*, 124. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Brazilin+isolated+from+caesalpinia+sappan+L.+inhibits+rheumatoid+arthritis+activity+in+a+type-II+collagen+induced+arthritis+mouse+model&author=Jung,+E.-G.&author=Han,+K.-I.&author=Hwang,+S.G.&author=Kwon,+H.-J.&author=Patnaik,+B.B.&author=Kim,+Y.H.&author=Han,+M.-D.&publication_year=2015&journal=BMC+Complement.+Altern.+Med.&volume=15&pages=124&doi=10.1186/s12906-015-0648-x)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1186/s12906-015-0648-x)**] [**Green Version (https://bmccomplementalternmed.biomedcentral.com/track/pdf/10.1186/s12906-015-0648-x)**]

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

73. Wang, K.; Senthil-Kumar, M.; Ryu, C.-M.; Kang, L.; Mysore, K.S. Phytosterols play a key role in plant innate immunity against bacterial pathogens by regulating nutrient efflux into the apoplast. *Plant Physiol.* **2012**, *158*, 1789–1802. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Phytosterols+play+a+key+role+in+plant+innate+immunity+against+bacterial+pathogens+by+regulating+nutrient+efflux+into+the+apoplast&author=Wang,+K.&author=Senthil-Kumar,+M.&author=Ryu,+C.-M.&author=Kang,+L.&author=Mysore,+K.S.&publication_year=2012&journal=Plant+Physiol.&volume=158&pages=1789%E2%80%931802&doi=10.1104/pp.111.189217&pmid=22298683)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1104/pp.111.189217)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22298683)**] [**Green Version (http://www.plantphysiol.org/content/plantphysiol/158/4/1789.full.pdf)**]

74. Liu, R.; Hao, D.; Xu, W.; Li, J.; Li, X.; Shen, D.; Sheng, K.; Zhao, L.; Xu, W.; Gao, Z.; et al. β-Sitosterol modulates macrophage polarization and attenuates rheumatoid inflammation in mice. *Pharm. Biol.* **2019**, *57*, 161–168. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=%CE%B2-Sitosterol+modulates+macrophage+polarization+and+attenuates+rheumatoid+inflammation+in+mice&author=Liu,+R.&author=Hao,+D.&author=Xu,+W.&author=Li,+J.&author=Li,+X.&author=Shen,+D.&author=Sheng,+K.&author=Zhao,+L.&author=Xu,+W.&author=Gao,+Z.&publication_year=2019&journal=Pharm.+Biol.&volume=57&pages=161%E2%80%93168&doi=10.1080/13880209.2019.1577461)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/13880209.2019.1577461)**] [**Green Version (https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/13880209.2019.1577461?needAccess=true)**]

75. Khan, T.; Vaidya, A.; Jain, R. Meropenem loaded pectin microspheres for colon delivery. *Asian J. Biomater. Res.* **2018**, *4*, 8–20. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Meropenem+loaded+pectin+microspheres+for+colon+delivery&author=Khan,+T.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+R.&publication_year=2018&journal=Asian+J.+Biomater.+Res.&volume=4&pages=8%E2%80%9320)**]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

76. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Pathak, K.; Pathak, D. Dendrimers: Nanosized multifunctional platform for drug delivery. *Drug Deliv. Lett.* **2018**, *8*, 13–19. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Dendrimers:+Nanosized+multifunctional+platform+for+drug+delivery&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Pathak,+K.&author=Pathak,+D.&publication_year=2018&journal=Drug+Deliv.+Lett.&volume=8&pages=13%E2%80%9319&doi=10.2174/2210303107666171109112523)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2174/2210303107666171109112523)**]

77. Jain, P.; Vaidya, A.; Jain, R.; Shrivastava, S.; Khan, T.; Jain, A. Ethyl cellulose coated chitosan microspheres of metronidazole as potential anti-amoebic agent. *J. Bionanosci.* **2017**, *11*, 599–607. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Ethyl+cellulose+coated+chitosan+microspheres+of+metronidazole+as+potential+anti-amoebic+agent&author=Jain,+P.&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+R.&author=Shrivastava,+S.&author=Khan,+T.&author=Jain,+A.&publication_year=2017&journal=J.+Bionanosci.&volume=11&pages=599%E2%80%93607&doi=10.1166/jbns.2017.1483)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1166/jbns.2017.1483)**]

78. Vaidya, A.; Jain, S.; Jain, A.; Jain, A. Simvastatin-loaded PEGylated solid lipid nanoparticles: Lipid functionalization to improve blood circulation. *Bionanoscience* **2020**, *10*, 773–782. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Simvastatin-loaded+PEGylated+solid+lipid+nanoparticles:+Lipid+functionalization+to+improve+blood+circulation&author=Vaidya,+A.&author=Jain,+S.&author=Jain,+A.&author=Jain,+A.&publication_year=2020&journal=Bionanoscience&volume=10&pages=773%E2%80%93782&doi=10.1007/s12668-020-00770-w)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s12668-020-00770-w)**]

79. Bhalekar, M.R.; Madgulkar, A.R.; Desale, P.S.; Marium, G. Formulation of piperine solid lipid nanoparticles (SLN) for treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Drug Dev. Ind. Pharm.* **2017**, *43*, 1003–1010. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Formulation+of+piperine+solid+lipid+nanoparticles+(SLN)+for+treatment+of+rheumatoid+arthritis&author=Bhalekar,+M.R.&author=Madgulkar,+A.R.&author=Desale,+P.S.&author=Marium,+G.&publication_year=2017&journal=Drug+Dev.+Ind.+Pharm.&volume=43&pages=1003%E2%80%931010&doi=10.1080/03639045.2017.1291666&pmid=28161984)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/03639045.2017.1291666)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28161984)**]

Back to TopTop

80. Sarwa, K.K.; Mazumder, B.; Rudrapal, M.; Verma, V.K. Potential of capsaicin-loaded transfersomes in arthritic rats. *Drug Deliv.* **2015**, *22*, 638–646. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Potential+of+capsaicin-loaded+transfersomes+in+arthritic+rats&author=Sarwa,+K.K.&author=Mazumder,+B.&author=Rudrapal,+M.&author=Verma,+V.K.&publication_year=2015&journal=Drug+Deliv.&volume=22&pages=638%E2%80%93646&doi=10.3109/10717544.2013.871601&pmid=24471764)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.3109/10717544.2013.871601)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24471764)**]

81. Jabbari, N.; Eftekhari, Z.; Roodbari, N.H.; Parivar, K. Evaluation of encapsulated eugenol by chitosan nanoparticles on the aggressive model of rheumatoid arthritis. *Int. Immunopharmacol.* **2020**, *85*, 106554. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Evaluation+of+encapsulated+eugenol+by+chitosan+nanoparticles+on+the+aggressive+model+of+rheumatoid+arthritis&author=Jabbari,+N.&author=Eftekhari,+Z.&author=Roodbari,+N.H.&author=Parivar,+K.&publication_year=2020&journal=Int.+Immunopharmacol.&volume=85&pages=106554&doi=10.1016/j.intimp.2020.106554&pmid=32447218)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intimp.2020.106554)**] [**PubMed (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/32447218)**]

82. Jeyadevi, R.; Sivasudha, T.; Rameshkumar, A.; Ananth, D.A.; Aseervatham, G.S.B.; Kumaresan, K.; Kumar, L.D.; Jagadeeswari, S.; Renganathan, R. Enhancement of antiarthritic effect of quercetin using thioglycolic acid-capped cadmium telluride quantum dots as nanocarrier in adjuvant induced arthritic Wistar rats. *Colloids Surf. B Biointerfaces* **2013**, *112*, 255–263. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Enhancement+of+antiarthritic+effect+of+quercetin+using+thioglycolic+acid-capped+cadmium+telluride+quantum+dots+as+nanocarrier+in+adjuvant+induced+arthritic+Wistar+rats&author=Jeyadevi,+R.&author=Sivasudha,+T.&author=Rameshkumar,+A.&author=Ananth,+D.A.&author=Aseervatham,+G.S.B.&author=Kumaresan,+K.&author=Kumar,+L.D.&author=Jagadeeswari,+S.&author=Renganathan,+R.&publication_year=2013&journal=Colloids+Surf.+B+Biointerfaces&volume=112&pages=255%E2%80%93263&doi=10.1016/j.colsurfb.2013.07.065)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.colsurfb.2013.07.065)**]

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Endorse
Comment

83. Gokhale, J.P.; Mahajan, H.S.; Surana, S.J. Quercetin loaded nanoemulsion-based gel for rheumatoid arthritis: In vivo and in vitro studies. *Biomed. Pharmacother.* **2019**, *112*, 108622. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Quercetin+loaded+nanoemulsion-based+gel+for+rheumatoid+arthritis:+In+vivo+and+in+vitro+studies&author=Gokhale,+J.P.&author=Mahajan,+H.S.&author=Surana,+S.J.&publication_year=2019&journal=Biomed.+Pharmacother.&volume=112&pages=108622&doi=10.1016/j.biopha.2019.108622)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopha.2019.108622)**]

84. Zhang, F.; Liu, Z.; He, X.; Li, Z.; Shi, B.; Cai, F. β-Sitosterol-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles ameliorate complete Freund's adjuvant-induced arthritis in rats: Involvement of NF-κB and HO-1/Nrf-2 pathway. *Drug Deliv.* **2020**, *27*, 1329–1341. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=%CE%B2-Sitosterol-loaded+solid+lipid+nanoparticles+ameliorate+complete+Freund%E2%80%99s+adjuvant-induced+arthritis+in+rats:+Involvement+of+NF-%D0%BAB+and+HO-1/Nrf-2+pathway&author=Zhang,+F.&author=Liu,+Z.&author=He,+X.&author=Li,+Z.&author=Shi,+B.&author=Cai,+F.&publication_year=2020&journal=Drug+Deliv.&volume=27&pages=1329%E2%80%931341&doi=10.1080/10717544.2020.1818883)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/10717544.2020.1818883)**]

85. Kamel, R.; Abbas, H.; Shaffie, N.M. Development and evaluation of PLA-coated co-micellar nanosystem of resveratrol for the intra-articular treatment of arthritis. *Int. J. Pharm.* **2019**, *569*, 118560. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Development+and+evaluation+of+PLA-coated+co-micellar+nanosystem+of+resveratrol+for+the+intra-articular+treatment+of+arthritis&author=Kamel,+R.&author=Abbas,+H.&author=Shaffie,+N.M.&publication_year=2019&journal=Int.+J.+Pharm.&volume=569&pages=118560&doi=10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.118560)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2019.118560)**]

Back to TopTop

86. Tzeng, C.-W.; Yen, F.-L.; Wu, T.-H.; Ko, H.-H.; Lee, C.-W.; Tzeng, W.-S.; Lin, C.-C. Enhancement of dissolution and antioxidant activity of kaempferol using a nanoparticle engineering process. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2011**, *59*, 5073–5080. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Enhancement+of+dissolution+and+antioxidant+activity+of+kaempferol+using+a+nanoparticle+engineering+process&author=Tzeng,+C.-W.&author=Yen,+F.-L.&author=Wu,+T.-H.&author=Ko,+H.-H.&author=Lee,+C.-W.&author=Tzeng,+W.-S.&author=Lin,+C.-C.&publication_year=2011&journal=J.+Agric.+Food+Chem.&volume=59&pages=5073%E2%80%935080&doi=10.1021/jf200354y)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1021/jf200354y)**]

87. Yücel, Ç.; Şeker, K.G.; Değim, İ.T. Anti-aging formulation of rosmarinic acid-loaded ethosomes and liposomes. *J. Microencapsul.* **2019**, *36*, 180–191. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Anti-aging+formulation+of+rosmarinic+acid-loaded+ethosomes+and+liposomes&author=Y%C3%BCcel,+%C3%87.&author=%C5%9Eeker,+K.G.&author=Değim,+%C4%B0.T.&publication_year=2019&journal=J.+Microencapsul.&volume=36&pages=180%E2%80%93191&doi=10.1080/02652048.2019.1617363)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1080/02652048.2019.1617363)**]

88. Deligiannakis, Y.; Sotiriou, G.A.; Pratsinis, S.E. Antioxidant and antiradical SiO_2 nanoparticles covalently functionalized with gallic acid. *ACS Appl. Mater. Interfaces* **2012**, *4*, 6609–6617. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Antioxidant+and+antiradical+SiO2+nanoparticles+covalently+functionalized+with+gallic+acid&author=Deligiannakis,+Y.&author=Sotiriou,+G.A.&author=Pratsinis,+S.E.&publication_year=2012&journal=ACS+Appl.+Mater.+Interfaces&volume=4&pages=6609%E2%80%936617&doi=10.1021/am301751s&pmid=23121088)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1021/am301751s)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23121088)**]

Back to TopTop

Article Menu
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment
Back to TopTop

89. Hwang, S.J.; Jun, S.H.; Park, Y.; Cha, S.-H.; Yoon, M.; Cho, S.; Lee, H.-J.; Park, Y. Green synthesis of gold nanoparticles using chlorogenic acid and their enhanced performance for inflammation. *Nanomed. Nanotechnol. Biol. Med.* **2015**, *11*, 1677–1688. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Green+synthesis+of+gold+nanoparticles+using+chlorogenic+acid+and+their+enhanced+performance+for+inflammation&author=Hwang,+S.J.&author=Jun,+S.H.&author=Park,+Y.&author=Cha,+S.-H.&author=Yoon,+M.&author=Cho,+S.&author=Lee,+H.-J.&author=Park,+Y.&publication_year=2015&journal=Nanomed.+Nanotechnol.+Biol.+Med.&volume=11&pages=1677%E2%80%931688&doi=10.1016/j.nano.2015.05.002)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nano.2015.05.002)**]

90. Harwansh, R.K.; Mukherjee, P.K.; Bahadur, S.; Biswas, R. Enhanced permeability of ferulic acid loaded nanoemulsion based gel through skin against UVA mediated oxidative stress. *Life Sci.* **2015**, *141*, 202–211. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Enhanced+permeability+of+ferulic+acid+loaded+nanoemulsion+based+gel+through+skin+against+UVA+mediated+oxidative+stress&author=Harwansh,+R.K.&author=Mukherjee,+P.K.&author=Bahadur,+S.&author=Biswas,+R.&publication_year=2015&journal=Life+Sci.&volume=141&pages=202%E2%80%93211&doi=10.1016/j.lfs.2015.10.001&pmid=26437269)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lfs.2015.10.001)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26437269)**]

91. Bansal, K.K.; Gupta, J.; Rosling, A.; Rosenholm, J.M. Renewable poly(δ-decalactone) based block copolymer micelles as drug delivery vehicle: In vitro and in vivo evaluation. *Saudi Pharm. J.* **2018**, *26*, 358–368. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Renewable+poly(%CE%B4-decalactone)+based+block+copolymer+micelles+as+drug+delivery+vehicle:+In+vitro+and+in+vivo+evaluation&author=Bansal,+K.K.&author=Gupta,+J.&author=Rosling,+A.&author=Rosenholm,+J.M.&publication_year=2018&journal=Saudi+Pharm.+J.&volume=26&pages=358%E2%80%93368&doi=10.1016/j.jsps.2018.01.006&pmid=29556127)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsps.2018.01.006)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29556127)**]

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
PDF
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Altmetric
Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in Sciprofiles
Endorse
Comment

92. Wik, J.; Bansal, K.K.; Assmuth, T.; Rosling, A.; Rosenholm, J.M. Facile methodology of nanoemulsion preparation using oily polymer for the delivery of poorly soluble drugs. *Drug Deliv. Transl. Res.* **2020**, *10*, 1228–1240. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=Facile+methodology+of+nanoemulsion+preparation+using+oily+polymer+for+the+delivery+of+poorly+soluble+drugs&author=Wik,+J.&author=Bansal,+K.K.&author=Assmuth,+T.&author=Rosling,+A.&author=Rosenholm,+J.M.&publication_year=2020&journal=Drug+Deliv.+Transl.+Res.&volume=10&pages=1228%E2%80%931240&doi=10.1007/s13346-019-00703-5&pmid=31858441)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.1007/s13346-019-00703-5)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/31858441)**] [**Green Version (https://link.springer.com/content/pdf/10.1007/s13346-019-00703-5.pdf)**]

93. Cai, H.; Zheng, Z.; Sun, Y.; Liu, Z.; Zhang, M.; Li, C. The effect of curcumin and its nanoformulation on adjuvant-induced arthritis in rats. *Drug Des. Dev. Ther.* **2015**, *9*, 4931–4942. [**Google Scholar (https://scholar.google.com/scholar_lookup?title=The+effect+of+curcumin+and+its+nanoformulation+on+adjuvant-induced+arthritis+in+rats&author=Cai,+H.&author=Zheng,+Z.&author=Sun,+Y.&author=Liu,+Z.&author=Zhang,+M.&author=Li,+C.&publication_year=2015&journal=Drug+Des.+Dev.+Ther.&volume=9&pages=4931%E2%80%934942&doi=10.2147/DDDT.S90147&pmid=26345159)**] [**CrossRef (https://doi.org/10.2147/DDDT.S90147)**] [**PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26345159)**] [**Green Version (https://www.dovepress.com/getfile.php?fileID=26753)**]

Publisher's Note: MDPI stays neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

© 2021 by the authors. Licensee MDPI, Basel, Switzerland. This article is an open access article distributed under the terms and conditions of the Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY) license (**https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/ (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)**).

Back to TopTop

Share and Cite

MDPI (/)

Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)

Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)

Abstract (#)

Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs

Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds

Conclusions

Author Contributions

Funding

Institutional Review Board Statement

Informed Consent Statement

Data Availability Statement

Acknowledgments

Conflicts of Interest

References

Share

Discuss in SciProfiles

Endorse

Comment

Back to TopTop

erous%20plant%20isolates%20with%20therapeutic%20properties%2C%20such%20as%20antimicrobial%2C%20antiinf
lammatory%2C%20antimalarial%2C%20antiarthritic%20%28AA%29%2C%20hepatoprotective%2C%20
cardiotonic%2C%20and%20so%20forth%2C%20are%20reported%20in%20the%20literature.%20Usually%2C%20medic
inal%20plants%20are%20%5B...%5D) (https://www.facebook.com/sharer.php?u=https://www.mdpi.com/1336324)
(http://www.reddit.com/submit?url=https://www.mdpi.com/1336324) (http://www.mendeley.com/import/?
url=https://www.mdpi.com/1336324)

Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nanoformulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles (https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)
Endorse
Comment

MDPI and ACS Style

Jain, S.; Vaidya, A.; Gupta, P.K.; Rosenholm, J.M.; Bansal, K.K. Antiarthritic Activities of Herbal Isolates: A Comprehensive Review. *Coatings* **2021**, *11*, 1329. https://doi.org/10.3390/coatings11111329

AMA Style

Jain S, Vaidya A, Gupta PK, Rosenholm JM, Bansal KK. Antiarthritic Activities of Herbal Isolates: A Comprehensive Review. *Coatings*. 2021; 11(11):1329. https://doi.org/10.3390/coatings11111329

Chicago/Turabian Style

Jain, Shweta, Ankur Vaidya, Pawan Kumar Gupta, Jessica M. Rosenholm, and Kuldeep K. Bansal. 2021. "Antiarthritic Activities of Herbal Isolates: A Comprehensive Review" *Coatings* 11, no. 11: 1329. https://doi.org/10.3390/coatings11111329

Note that from the first issue of 2016, this journal uses article numbers instead of page numbers. See further details **here (https://www.mdpi.com/about/announcements/784)**.

Article Metrics

Citations

Crossref	Scopus	Web of Science	Google Scholar

- Abstract (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329#abstract)
- Introduction (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329#sec1-coatings-11-01329)
- Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs (https://www.mdpi.com/2079-6412/11/11/1329#sec2-coatings-11-01329)
- Nano-Formulation of Isolated

PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)

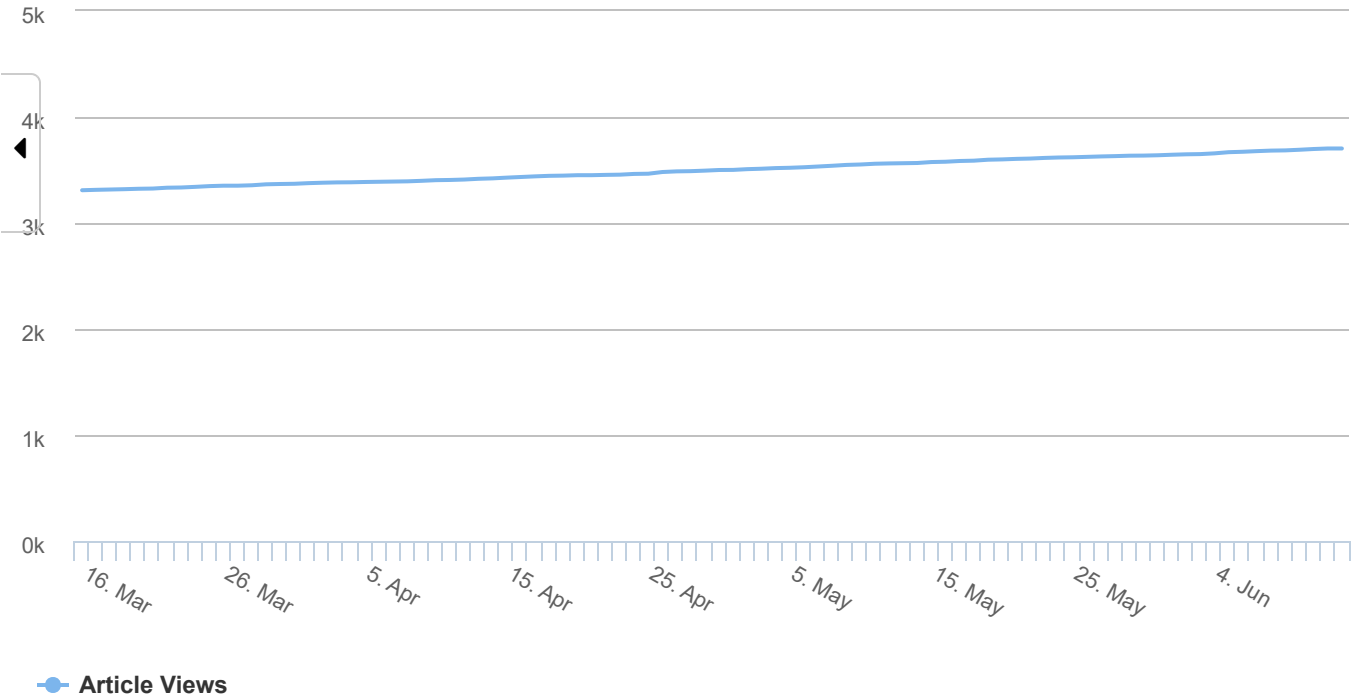
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)

Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)

(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

Article Access Statistics

Article access statistics



iles)

For more information on the journal statistics, click **here (/journal/coatings/stats)**.

Comment

Multiple requests from the same IP address are counted as one view.

Coatings (/journal/coatings), EISSN 2079-6412, Published by MDPI

RSS (/rss/journal/coatings) **Content Alert (/journal/coatings/toc-alert)**

Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References
Permissions (/openurl.asp?genre=journal&eissn=2079-6412&volume=11&issue=11&spage=1329&date=2021&domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Print Export (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles
Comment
Endorse
Comment
Article Processing Charges (/apc)
Pay an Invoice (/about/payment)
Open Access Policy (/openaccess)
Contact MDPI (/about/contact)
Jobs at MDPI (https://careers.mdpi.com)
Guidelines
For Authors (/authors)
For Reviewers (/reviewers)
For Editors (/editors)
For Librarians (/librarians)
For Publishers (/publishing_services)
For Societies (/societies)
For Conference Organizers (/conference_organizers)
MDPI Initiatives
Sciforum (https://sciforum.net)
MDPI Books (https://www.mdpi.com/books)
Preprints.org (https://www.preprints.org)
Scilit (https://www.scilit.net)
SciProfiles (https://sciprofiles.com?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=bottom_menu&utm_campaign=initiative)
Encyclopedia (https://encyclopedia.pub)
JAMS (https://jams.pub)
Proceedings Series (/about/proceedings)
Back to TopTop

Abstract
Introduction
Herbal Antiarthritic Drugs
Nano-Formulation of Isolated Compounds
Conclusions
Author Contributions
Funding
Institutional Review Board Statement
Informed Consent Statement
Data Availability Statement
Acknowledgments
Conflicts of Interest
References

Share
Help
Cite
Discuss in SciProfiles

Select options

Subscribe

Enjoy

Comment

Back to TopTop

Print (#)
Save (/)
Export Citation (https://www.mdpi.com/action/openurlmetric?type=1&domain=www.mdpi.com&doi=10.3390%2Fcoatings11111329)
Download PDF (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/pdf?version=1635836168)
Order Article Reprints (/2079-6412/11/11/1329/reprints)
(/toggle_desktop_layout_cookie)

LinkedIn (https://www.linkedin.com/company/mdpi)
Facebook (https://www.facebook.com/MDPIOpenAccessPublishing)
Twitter (https://twitter.com/MDPIOpenAccess)

Subscribe to receive issue release notifications and newsletters from MDPI journals

(https://sciprofiles.com/discussion-groups/public/10.3390/coatings11111329?utm_source=mpdi.com&utm_medium=publication&utm_campaign=discuss_in_sciprofiles)

© 1996-2024 MDPI (Basel, Switzerland) unless otherwise stated

Disclaimer Terms and Conditions (/about/terms-and-conditions) Privacy Policy (/about/privacy)

Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science Vol. 11(03), pp 001-021, March, 2021
Available online at http://www.japsonline.com
DOI: 10.7324/JAPS.2021.110301
ISSN 2231-3354

Nanocarriers for Alzheimer's disease: Research and patent update

Kamla Pathak[1*], Shashi Kiran Mishra[2], Amit Porwal[1], Shiv Bahadur[3]

[1]Faculty of Pharmacy, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, Uttar Pradesh, India.
[2]University Institute of Pharmacy, CSJM University, Kanpur, Uttar Pradesh, India.
[3]Institute of Pharmaceutical Research, GLA University, Mathura, India.

ARTICLE INFO

Received on: 17/10/2020
Accepted on: 22/12/2020
Available online: 05/03/2021

Key words:
Alzheimer's disease, amyloid β, blood–brain barrier, targeted delivery, intranasal delivery, nanoformulations.

ABSTRACT

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is one of the most progressive neurodegenerative disorders resulting in cognitive and behavioral impairment in individuals beyond 65 years of age. It is distinguished by deposits of extracellular amyloidal protein intracellular and neurofibrillary tangles resulting in senile plaques. Significant advancement has been made in AD therapeutics; however, most of the treatment approaches are based on attenuating symptoms, implying that AD is still an insolvable neurodegenerative illness. Though an enormous number of drug moieties were already screened for different molecular targets of AD, only few of them (N-methyl D-aspartate receptor antagonists and acetylcholinesterase inhibitors) are currently implied for efficacious clinical treatment. Though these medications slow down the development of the disorder and give symptomatic relief; yet they are unsuccessful in achieving a proven cure. Nonetheless, targeted drug delivery of these medications to the Central nervous system (CNS) manifested various restrictions like meager solubility, lower bioavailability along with diminished effectiveness because of the blood–brain barrier. Recent developments in nanotechnology present chances to overcome such limitations in targeting. Various nanocarriers have been researched that offer promising targeting capabilities. This review aims to provide an update on various dosage forms based on nanotechnology aimed for AD therapeutics, the patents on nanocarriers for AD and clinical trials on AD drugs.

INTRODUCTION

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is one of the most progressive neurodegenerative disorders in individuals beyond 65 years of age resulting in loss of neurons, and eventually dementia. It is an untreatable disorder with progressive and longer duration (Goedert and Spillantini, 2006) and represents over 80% cases of dementia in the world in elderly individuals. It results in progressive loss of behavioral, mental, functional decline, and other intellectual abilities (Anand *et al*., 2019). Age is the most considerable risk factor; as in 2010, 38% of individuals beyond 85 years of age were troubled with AD which is anticipated to escalate to 51% by 2050 (Herbert *et al*., 2013). Various cardiovascular risk factors, for example, atherogenic dyslipidemia, hypertension, obesity, and diabetes are also associated with AD (Oesterling *et al*., 2014). Because of its constantly expanding rate and societal aging factor, AD has garnered enormous research interest.

Pathophysiology

AD can be distinguished by significant atrophy of the cerebral cortex as well as loss of cortical and subcortical neurons. The neurotic signs of this disorder are senile plaques that are spheric aggregations of the protein beta-amyloid along with declining activities of neurons (also referred to as cerebral amyloid angiopathy) and neurofibrillary tangles (NFTs), consisting of paired helical filaments and other proteins (Braak and Braak, 1994). Neuronal loss as well as pathology might be observed especially in the amygdala, hippocampus, entorhinal cortex and the cortical associated regions of the frontal, temporal, and parietal cortices, and also subcortical nuclei. The tangles deposition occurs in a specific pattern, beginning from the trans-entorhinal cortex; followed by the entorhinal cortex, the CA1 part of the hippocampus and then the cortical associated regions, where frontal, parietal, and temporal lobes are especially influenced. The

*Corresponding Author
Kamla Pathak, Faculty of Pharmacy, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, Uttar Pradesh, India.
E-mail: kamlapathak5 @ gmail.com

© 2021 Kamla Pathak *et al*. This is an open access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

degree and position of tangle arrangement associates well with the seriousness of dementia, significantly more than quantities of amyloid plaques (Kumar *et al*., 2015; Thakur *et al*., 2018).

Advanced AD is characterized by large number of senile plaques and NFTs mostly in the hippocampus and related areas of the cortex, while regions like the visual and motor cortices are moderately spared. This relates to the clinical characteristics of noticeable disability of memory and theoretical thinking, with conservation of vision and movement. Parameters responsible for the particular susceptibility of specific cortical neurons to the pathological outcomes of AD are still unknown (Hardman *et al*., 2006).

The accumulation of tau proteins correlates intimately with intellectual decay and atrophy of brain along with hippocampus. The neuronal pathology of AD involves neuronal loss and temporofrontal cortex atrophy, leading to inflammation, deposition of amyloid plaques, and unusual accumulation of fragments of protein and tangled bundles of filaments. This results in a rise in macrophages and monocytes in the cerebral cortex, and activation of the microglial cells in the parenchyma (Thakur *et al*., 2018). The pathophysiology of AD is exceptionally intricate and relies upon various pathological processes, which have been summed up in Figure 1 and are described in the preceding text.

MANAGEMENT OF AD

The overall management of AD includes pharmacological as well as non-pharmacological treatments. Non-pharmacological approach basically addresses different causes of cognitive impairment and behavioral disturbances. Pharmacological approach, which is described as symptomatic or neuroprotective is based on modulation of disease-related neurotransmitter alterations. At present, approved symptomatic treatment includes cholinesterase inhibitors (ChEIs) and N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonists, (Kumar *et al*., 2015) that depends on their ability to retard the clinical development of symptoms across intellectual, behavioral, and functional areas. Currently approved some of the disease modifying therapeutic drug targets are highlighted in Table 1.

Initially, pharmacological approach for AD was aimed to increase cholinergic transmission in the brain (cholinergic hypothesis). Among the various approaches utilized to raise synaptic levels of acetylcholine (ACh), hindering the disintegration of ACh by acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibition was proved to be successful. Inhibition of butyrylcholinesterase (BuChE) enzyme, which is present in lower amounts in normal brain, is present in greater amount in AD brain may also enhance

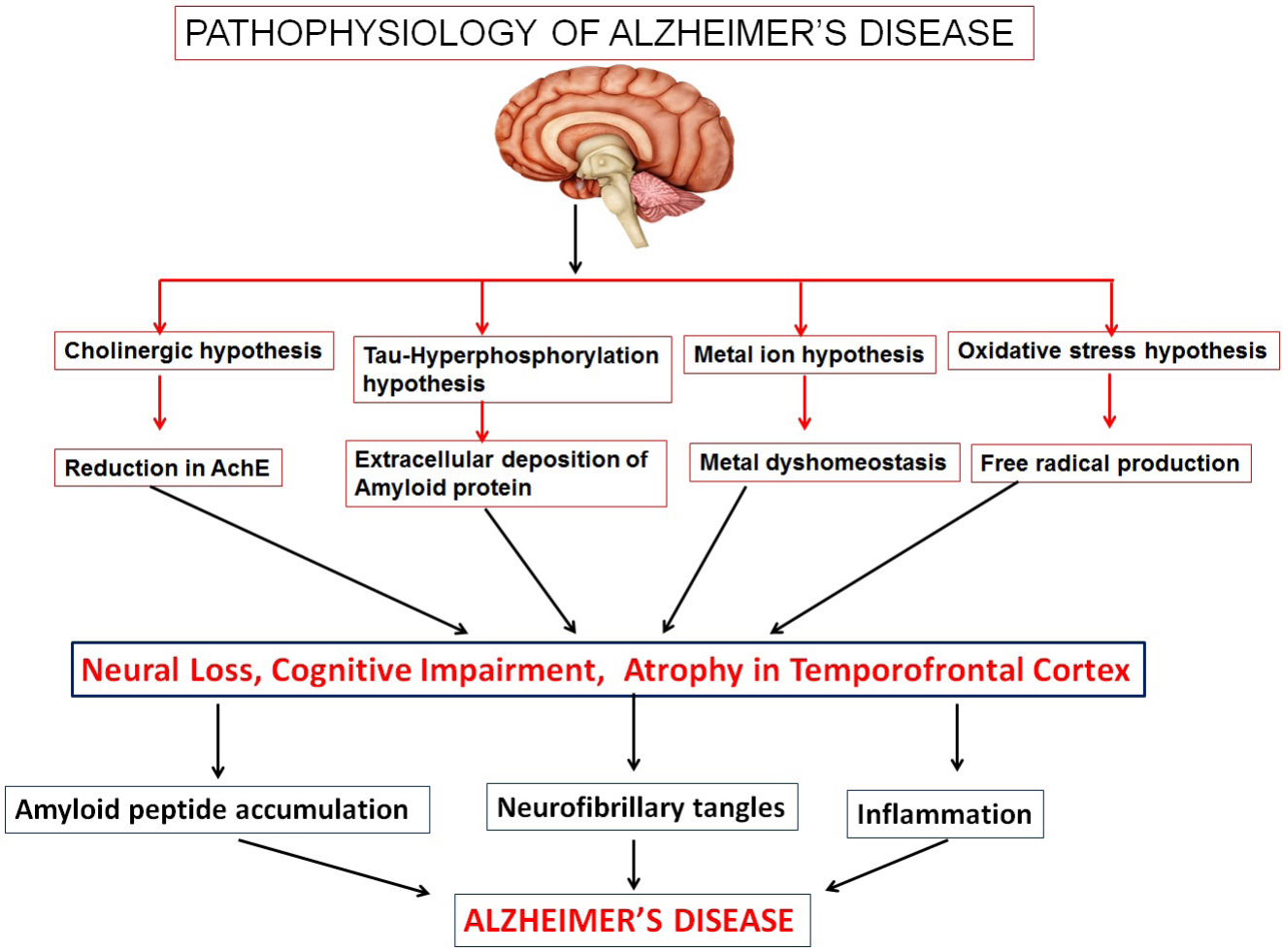


Figure 1. Hypothesis for pathophysiology of Alzheimer's disease.

cholinergic transmission (Thakur *et al*., 2018). Novel approaches of targeting the Aβ and tau-based therapeutics can be significant keys to cater the disease (Anand *et al*., 2014).

Non-pharmacological treatments can enhance the quality of life of individuals with AD (Olazaran *et al*., 2010). A moderate quantity of well-organized randomized controlled trials has evidenced the advantages of different non-pharmacological strategies, such as intellectual training, intellectual rehabilitation, and intellectual stimulation treatment in AD patients (Ballard *et al*., 2011). Various non-pharmacological approaches were reported in Table 1.

The biomarkers manifest significant importance in drug development for AD for choosing the ideal drug candidate for large and high-cost phase-III clinical trials. Biomarkers are also significant in confirming the drug influence on the basic pathophysiology of the disease, which may be required to designate the drug as a disease-modifier (Thakur *et al*., 2018). Generally used biomarkers for AD are compiled in Figure 2.

Table 1. Pharmacological and non-pharmacological therapy for AD.

Pharmacological therapy for AD	
Therapeutic drug targets In AD	**Approach for targeting**
Targeting Aβ protein (anti-amyloid approach)	Targeting amyloid transport
	Modulation of secretase enzymes
	Targeting amyloid aggregation
	Targeting amyloid clearance
	Amyloid based vaccination therapy
Targeting tau protein	Inhibition of tau phosphorylation
	Targeting microtubule stabilization
	Blocking tau oligomerization
	Enhancing tau degradation
	Tau-based vaccination therapy
Targeting intracellular signaling cascades	
Modulating levels of neurotransmitter	Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (AChEIs)
	Modulation of GABAergic neurons
	NMDA receptor antagonism
	Modulation of serotonin receptor
	Histaminergic modulators
	Modulation of adenosine receptor
Targeting mitochondrial dysfunction	
Targeting oxidative stress	
Anti-inflammatory therapy	
Other pharmacotherapeutic strategies	Cholesterol lowering drugs
	Neuroprotective gonadotropin hormones
	Neurogenesis
	Epigenesis
	Caspase inhibitors
	Modulators of Nitric oxide synthase (NOS)
	Nucleic acid drugs
	Multi-target directed ligands
Non-pharmacological therapy for AD	
Sleep	Music therapy
Physical activity	

POTENTIAL RISK FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH AD

A few studies have exhibited that hypertension, sedentary lifestyles, and lifestyle-related disorders like type 2 diabetes mellitus and obesity can enhance possibility of AD (Jayaraman and Pike, 2014). Several genetic factors are also responsible for its outbreak and their contribution in its pathogenesis. However, there are no incidences recommending a considerable effect of occupational exposures on AD. Various physiological and other risks associated with AD are encapsulated in Table 2.

APPROVED DRUGS FOR THE TREATMENT OF AD—CURRENT STATUS

ChEIs and NMDA receptor antagonists are the drugs which are used most frequently for the treatment of AD. Donepezil, rivastigmine, galantamine, and memantine are the generally used four FDA-approved drugs; however, combination of donepezil and memantine is also used for AD therapeutics. They improve the quality of life by controlling the intellectual loss and thus motor regulation (Harilal *et al*., 2019). Three of these drugs including donepezil, galantamine, and rivastigmine act on CNS cholinergic pathways. All these have anticholinesterase activity, and galantamine which is a natural-product alkaloid also acts as an allosteric modulator at nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. These drugs are frequently prescribed for individuals in early predementia stage having considerable continuous memory impairment depending on intellectual testing reports (Graham *et al*., 2017). AChE inhibitors may cause g.i. adverse effects such as vomiting and nausea that may be reason for discontinuation of treatment (Santos *et al*., 2015).

Rivastigmine co-inhibits acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase and is specific for the G1 rather than G4 form of the enzyme. As compared to other approved drugs, it does not metabolize in liver and, subsequently, does not cause adverse drug reactions of other drugs generally given to elderly individuals with AD. Galantamine shows lower AChE selectivity; vomiting and nausea are its most frequent adverse effects, which are usually self-limiting (Atri, 2019; National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2011).

In contrast to all other drugs listed above, donepezil has significant effect in AD therapeutics and is given as 5–10 mg tablets once in a day before bed, because of its longer half-life. It selectively inhibits AChE, leading to well response from AD patients with enhancement in intellectual, behavior, and general function. These may be the reason for its more frequent use as compared to other drugs mentioned above (Atri, 2019).

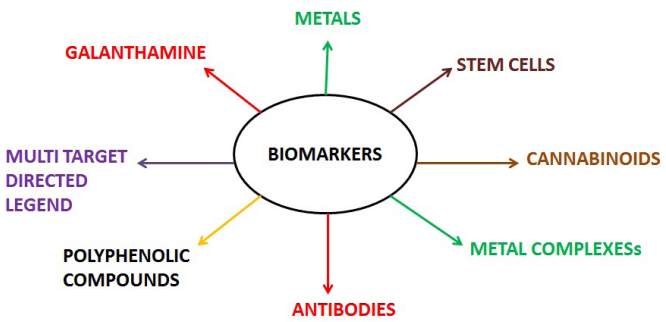


Figure 2. Biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease.

Table 2. Risk factors associated with Alzheimer's disease.

Risk factors associated with Alzheimer's disease	Characteristic features
Obesity	Several reports indicated that obesity during mid-life and underweight during late-life can be the risk factors for dementia and AD may be because of unhealthy regulation of adipokine leading to various health problems e.g. insulin resistance, chronic inflammation, hypertension and hypercholesterolaemia. Hippocampal neurogenesis in adults is also affected by recognized adipokine dysregulation (Atti *et al*., 2008; Beydoun *et al*., 2008).
Hypertension	This factor depends upon the age of the patient, and probably high blood pressure results in increased neuritic plaques and NFTs in the brain causing brain atrophy due to neurodegeneration and hippocampal shrinkage (Hoffman *et al*., 2009).
Physical activity	Although the mechanism is not known, brain activity can be increased and cognitive risks can be reduced by increasing physical activity including yoga and meditation (Gard *et al*., 2014; Streeter *et al*., 2007)
Inflammatory biomarkers	Increased concentration of inflammatory markers in blood like interleukin-6, interleukin-1b, C-reactive protein, lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A2, fibrinogen and alpha-1-antichymotrypsin are reported to cause vascular inflammation and vascular dementia which can be a factor for risk of AD. (Irizarry, 2004; Mrak and Griffin, 2005)
Diabetes mellitus	Diabetes and its complications which are generally responsible for development of vascular diseases play a major role in the pathogenesis along with further development of AD and dementia. Further, elevated insulin resistance also results in hippocampal shrinkage and brain atrophy due to neurodegeneration, again contributing to AD (Breteler, 2000; Stampfer, 2006)
Neurotoxic metals	Metal-based nanoparticles, several pesticides and the most important neurotoxic metals like arsenic, aluminium, mercury, lead and cadmium can alos result in AD because of their capability to raise Aβ peptide and Tau protein phosphorylation, leading to NFTs and senile/amyloid plaques in the brain, indicative of AD (Chin-Chan *et al*., 2015).
Elevated plasma total homocysteine levels	Homocysteine lowers the nitric oxide activity in the brain cells, enhances oxidative pressure and also stimulates the formation of Aβ plaques, which further results in neurotoxicity and neurodegeneration consequently promotes the pathogenesis and advancement of AD (Pacheco-Quinto *et al*., 2006; Selley, 2004).

Table 3. Drugs approved by FDA for treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

Drug (brand Name)	Half-life (h)	tmax (h)	Bioavailability (%)	Protein binding (%)	Type	Stage of AD approved
Rivastigmine (Exelon)	2	0.8–1.7	40	40	Acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase inhibitor	Mild to moderate
Galantamine (Razadyne)	5–7	0.5-1.5	85–100	18	Acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase inhibitor	Mild to moderate
Donepezil (Aricept)	60–90	3–5	100	96	Selective acetylcholinesterase inhibitor	All stages
Memantine (Namenda)	60–80	3–7	100	45	NMDA Receptor Antagonist	Moderate to severe

Memantine, a recently approved drug for AD, aims to target the NMDA receptors and glutaminergic pathways. Application of memantine in chronic treatment decreases the concentration of Aβ both in aged animals and in AD models. This results in decreased Aβ production. However, in 2005, USFDA refused to extend the application of memantine for mild AD; because of significant adverse effects, e.g. confusion, dizziness, headache, and constipation (Carvalho *et al*., 2015). Riluzole, a glutamate release inhibitor and post synaptic glutamate receptor signaling, is under phase II trial in mild AD patients (Thakur *et al*., 2018).

The combination of memantine and donepezil has also been permitted by USFDA for treating moderate-to-severe AD in individuals who were on 10 mg of donepezil hydrochloride treatment. When memantine is given along with stable cholinesterase inhibitor therapy in patients with AD, a good safety profile was found (Ito *et al*., 2017). Table 3 compiles an overview of pharmacokinetics of drugs used in AD.

DRAWBACKS OF CONVENTIONAL THERAPY

Conventional drug delivery systems including tablet, capsules, powder, or liquid dosage forms have critical restrictions, namely requirement of high-dose, rapid/extensive first pass metabolism, and unfavorable pharmacokinetics leading to low/poor bioavailability (Mudshinge *et al*., 2011). In treatment of AD, drugs administered orally are expected to cross various gastrointestinal barriers, undergo effective absorption, sustain the drug in the systemic circulation, and successfully transport the drug into the blood–brain barrier (BBB), to reach the target site (Stegemann *et al*., 2007). Breakdown of the drug moiety in the gastrointestinal tract accelerates drug elimination, reduces half-life, and reduces bioavailability, thus mitigating the predicted beneficial effects. Additionally, sustained interaction or unpremeditated activation of drug substances at non-specific target sites resulting in several side effects, namely nausea, vomiting, gastric problems, etc. (Sainsbury *et al*., 2014). Few examples are memantine causes dizziness, confusion, constipation, and vomiting (Kornhuber *et al*., 2007). Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors are associated with vomiting and nausea which frequently leads to discontinuance of therapy (Raina *et al*., 2008). Owing to a short half-life of 0.5–3 hours, tacrine needs four administrations in a day (Watkins *et al*., 1994). Furthermore, the physicochemical properties of the drug molecule including the solubility, molecular weight, polarity, partition coefficient, and dissociation constant play an important part in therapeutic effect or drug failure (Alyautdin *et al*., 2014; Sainsbury *et al*., 2014). Furthermore, several bioactive substances like proteins, peptides, and other biological macromolecules have poor solubility and are poorly absorbed in the g.i.t, which is responsible for their lower therapeutic effectiveness and hence clinical trials (Munin and Edwards-Levy, 2011).

NANOCARRIERS IN AD THERAPEUTICS

The primary reasons for frequent therapy failure can be correlated to the adverse pharmacodynamics and

pharmacokinetics of drugs, gastrointestinal instability of drugs, and toxicity (hepato-, neuro-, or renal toxicity) to the tissues (Arias, 2015; Suri *et al*., 2015). Currently approved drugs for AD therapeutics are based on improving neurotransmission or enzyme modulation. The drugs conventionally used to target CNS suffer from the primary constraints of the inability to cross the "BBB" or the "B-CSF barrier" efficiently; and higher drug efflux because of P-glycoprotein activity. Nanotechnology, in conjugation with therapeutics, can be used to control various obstacles faced by drug molecules in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. Nanotechnology based dosage forms radically regulate these characteristics of the drug molecules and enhance the therapeutic potential applying various functional aid by utilizing nanotechnology-based dosage forms (Brambilla *et al*., 2011; Nazem and Mansoori, 2008). Nanoformulations not only result in the improvement of pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of drugs, they also have potential to minimize toxicity (Orive *et al*., 2003; Parveen and Sahoo, 2006). Nanoformulations overcome the obstacles by safely carrying the drug through the biological environment with enhanced permeability, thus providing maximum efficiency at a comparatively lower dose. An essential feature of nanoformulations is the controlled drug release at the target site (Safari and Zarnegar, 2014).

Substantial research reports have evidenced the capability of nanoformulations to circumvent oral and intestinal absorption barriers and carry drugs to the site of action (Ensign *et al*., 2012; Lundquist and Artursson, 2016). This is achievable owing to their small size (1–1,000 nm), surface charge, high surface to volume ratio (Singh and Lillard, 2009). In CNS delivery, the BBB barrier presents a great obstacle for the nanoformulations targeting neuronal systems (Misra *et al*., 2003). Altering the surface characteristics of nanformulations enables crossing the BBB by avoiding phagocytic opsonization, thus enhancing the drug levels in the brain (Gidwani and Singh, 2014). The nanosized dosage forms can be classified on the basis of nature of the carrier material as (i) inorganic (gold, carbon, and silica) and (ii) organic (solid-lipid NPs, dendrimers, emulsions, liposomes, and polymers).

Various nanotechnology-based strategies such as polymeric nanocarriers, carbon nanotubes, lipidic nanocarriers, liposomes, nanoemulsions, dendrimers, and metal-based nanocarriers have been evolved over the past decade, focusing on both arresting neurogeneration and neuroprotective for the treatment of AD. Herein, we discuss emerging nanodrug delivery systems for AD therapeutics.

ACROSS THE BLOOD–BRAIN BARRIER

Newly discovered drugs that might be efficacious for the AD treatment may face various hindrances that other drugs used for non-CNS systems may not confront, one of which is the –BBB. The BBB is a highly complex and specialized structure that permits only those substances which are essential for brain activity (Banks, 2012). It is made up of tight junctions in the endothelial membrane that permits just certain molecules to pass through. The tight intersections of BBB are at high transendothelial electrical resistance in comparison to other tissues. There are specialized mechanisms such as specific enzyme systems, protein receptors, and glucose transporters for transporting substances across the BBB. The BBB obstructs undesirable substances from crossing by utilizing tight intersections between cells, extra degradative enzymes, and pumps to eliminate undesirable substances that do pass. Receptors and transporters permit nutrients required for normal functioning to move through to the brain parenchyma (Oesterling *et al*., 2014). The BBB does not have transporters for conventional drugs and so they are generally not able to pass or are actively pumped back out after crossing. This turns into a significant issue for the therapy of neurodegenerative disorders (Edwards, 2001).

Although conventional methods are suitable for treatment of neurodegenerative disorders, they do not have optimum efficacy. This necessitates for the development of therapeutic alternatives for AD. Various approaches can be prodrug formation and the utilization of carrier-mediated transport systems, for example, carbohydrates, peptides, antibodies, gene delivery vectors, nanoparticles, micelles, and liposomes. The mechanisms by which nanocarriers can improve BBB penetration are efflux transport inhibition, nanocarrier cationization, paracellular transport enhancement pharmacologically, or using the hyperosmotic strategy and olfactory delivery of nanocarriers (Shah *et al*., 2013). To cross the BBB, various nanotherapeutic approaches have been adapted (Fig. 3). The approaches include

(i) The affinity and binding of lipophilic nanocarriers for endothelial cells improve the transportation of drug molecule via lipophilic transcellular pathways or endocytosis;

(ii) The adsorptive property of nanocarriers towards blood vessels provided a sustained drug release in the systemic circulation with increased possibility for transport of drug across BBB;

(iii) Additionally, functionalized nanocarriers trigger receptor mediated transcytosis and carrier protein mediated transport of drug candidates across BBB (Saraiva *et al*., 2016).

NANOPARTICLES IN DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEM AND ITS IMPORTANCE

Nanoparticulate drug delivery system is an advanced technology that could be applied to deliver drug substances directly into the brain and has been shown to be extremely efficacious against some CNS disorders. Nanosized systems have garnered considerable interest owing to their favorable features, namely capability to prevent chemical and enzymatic drug degradation, improve drug solubility, and facilitate its transport across the biological membranes. Targeted systems carry the drug straight to the site of action, reduce adverse reactions of the drug, and improve the therapeutic index (Mehmood *et al*., 2015). Various nanoparticulate systems like polymeric nanoparticles, nanoemulsions, liposomes, antibody tethered nanocarriers, dendrimers, etc., are used for drug delivery and some of them are depicted in Figure 4.

While nanoformulations have been investigated for efficacious drug delivery through various routes such as oral, parenteral, topical, vaginal, rectal, etc., they can also play an important part in diagnosis, and imaging. Nanocarriers are also amenable for nasal mucosal vaccination and nasal drug delivery. The nanocarrier systems allow the effective antigen recognition;

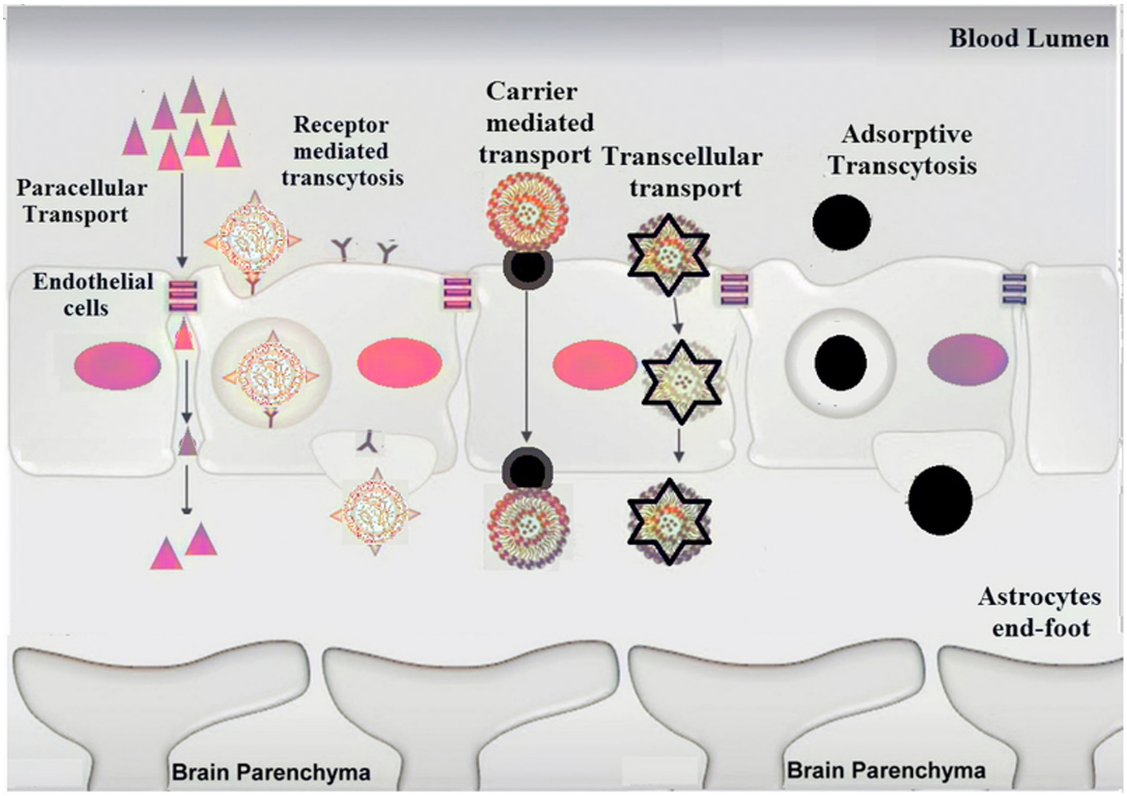


Figure 3. Schematic representation of potential pathways involved in nanocarrier-mediated drug trafficking across BBB associated with AD-nanotherapeutics.

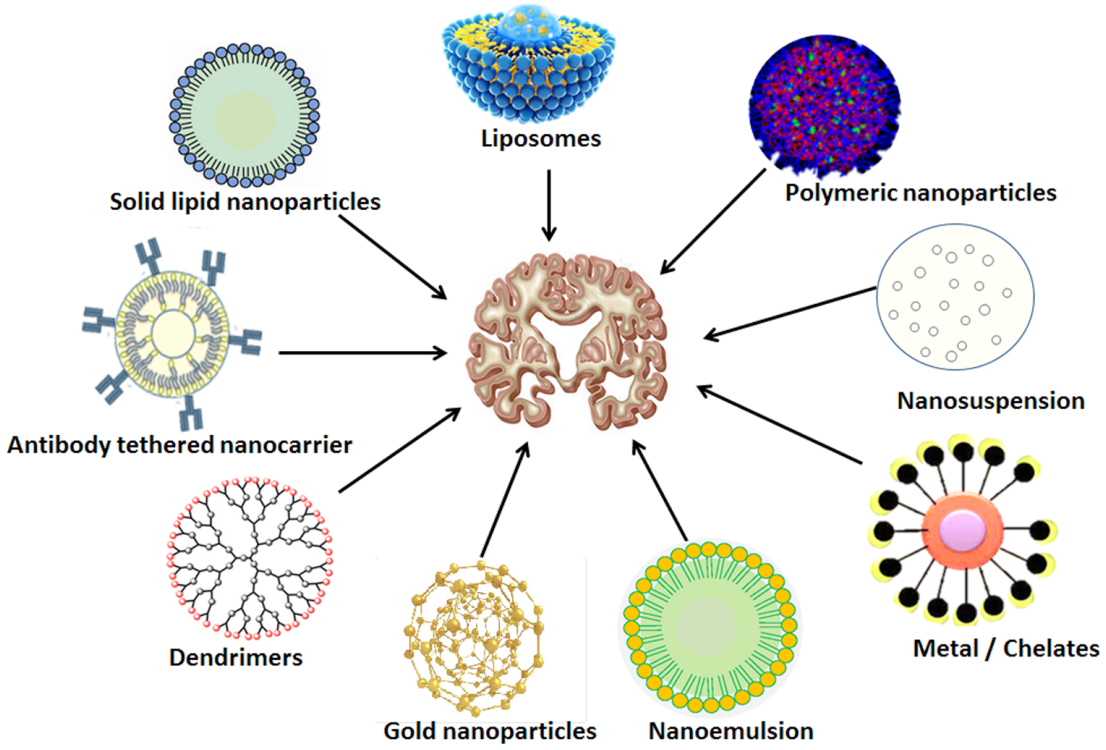


Figure 4. Versatile nanocarriers adopted for mitigation of Alzheimer's disease.

especially nanocarriers based on the lipid and polymer are used for nasal delivery of antigen (Le *et al*., 2019). Nanomedicines played a vital role in the nose to brain delivery. For treating the brain related pathologies, the main focus is on the drug's ability to cross the BBB. The nanoparticulate systems are considered efficient in to achieve brain targeting as they exhibit better penetration of the drugs in the brain. While the need for devices that can allow deposition of the dosage form to the upper part of nose is essential for nose to brain delivery, surface modification of the nanocarrier can act as a strategic approach for perfect nose to brain targeting. Several reports account for targeting of drugs to brain via different nanoparticulates. Of the various nanocarrier systems investigated for brain therapeutics and theranostics in recent years, are either polymeric or lipidic in nature. Polymeric nanoformulations include polymeric nanoparticles, polymeric micelles, and carbon based nanovehicles. Lipidic nanoformulations are liposomes, niosomes, transferosomes, solid lipid nanoparticles, and nanostructured lipid carriers. Nanogels and nanoemulsions have also garnered considerable attention of researchers for transendothelial delivery of neuropharmaceuticals (Oesterling *et al*., 2014).

The BBB is enriched with various transport systems which can transport substances in and out of the brain. The prominent ones are receptor-mediated transport system, transporter-mediated system, adsorptive-mediated transport system, active efflux-mediated transport system, and peptide-mediated transport approach. Mostly, molecules use either of these transport systems to enter and leave the brain with the exception of certain small lipid soluble molecules that cross the BBB transcellularly. These transport systems could serve as efficient routes for the transport of drugs to the brain by improving its permeability (Sweeney *et al*., 2018).

Biological therapeutic agents such as nucleic acids, peptides, proteins, and monoclonal antibodies are being aggressively researched since they have potential to restore the damaged cells and decelerate the progression of AD (Sharma *et al*., 2012). Researchers have developed vaccines for AD and some of them are under clinical trial. Most of the vaccines act on the tau protein in the AD which prevents the functional damage in the brain. Of lately, nano-vaccines (antigen loaded in the nanoparticles as vehicles) have emerged that confer protection to the antigen and result in enhanced efficacy (Wisniewski *et al*., 2016). The drug delivery systems mediated by nanotechnology are primarily based on the brain's transportation of therapeutic agents. Currently the focus is on both specific and non-specific processes for mechanisms to target research of brain locations.

Polymeric nanoparticles

Nanoparticles of 10–1,000 nm can easily cross through various biological and physiological barriers to facilitate rapid transport of drug molecules. The NPs can entrap hydrophilic as well as hydrophobic drugs, and also due to excellent release profile they serve as optimistic drug delivery systems (Kamaly *et al*., 2016). In context to brain delivery, owing to smaller size, NPs can be delivered to cerebellum via olfactory bulb to olfactory cortex and cerebral hemisphere has a caudal pole which carries to the cerebrum. The low efficiency of BBB transportation can be overcome by surface modification of these NPs with antibodies, surfactant, or transferrin (Ghalamfarsa *et al*., 2016).

Muntimadugu *et al*. (2016) investigated encapsulation of the drug tarenflurbil, and recommended for the treatment of AD but failed in the phase III clinical trial due to very low drug permeability in the brain. Tarenflurbil was enclosed in two different nanocarriers, namely solid lipid nanoparticles and poly (lactide-co-glycolic) nanoparticles. A particle dimension of less than 200 nm assured transcellular transport along the olfactory axons (diameter ~ 200 nm) and then paving a direct transport to brain. This was confirmed by pharmacokinetic studies in male Sprague Dawley rats that proved prolonged circulation of the nanoparticles, and the absolute bioavailabilities of intranasally administered poly (lactide-co-glycolytic) nanoparticles was highest followed by solid lipid nanoparticles and drug solution. Similar pattern was recorded for drug targeting efficiency (DTE) and drug transport percentage (DTP). The poly (lactide-co-glycolytic) nanoparticles showed higher DTE (287.24) and DTP (65.18) than solid lipid nanoparticles (% DTE: 183.15 and DTP: 45.41) among all other tested groups. These results confirmed direct transport of tarenflurbil in therapeutic concentration, to brain through olfactory pathway after intranasal administration of lipidic and polymeric NPs.

Elnaggar *et al*. (2015) elaborated intranasal chitosan NPs for targeting piperine into the brain. The oral delivery of neuroprotective piperine suffers due its pre-systemic metabolism and hydrophobicity. The optimized drug loaded chitosan nanoparticles significantly improved the intellectual functions as efficiently as donepezil injection (standard) with additional benefits of dual mechanism (AChE inhibition and antioxidant effect). The nanoparticles alleviated piperine associated nasal irritation, and was devoid of brain toxicity. The authors claimed 20-fold decreases in oral dose of the drug for AD therapeutics.

Likewise rivastigmine, an AChE as well as BuChE enzyme inhibitor, can be given for AD treatment. Nonetheless, the drug has limited entry into the brain because of its hydrophilicity, thus repeated dosing becomes necessary. So, rivastigmine loaded chitosan nanoparticles were prepared by ionic gelation method to improve the uptake of RHT to the brain through intranasal delivery and enhance the bioavailability (Fazil *et al*., 2012). The intranasally administrated drug loaded chitosan NPs generated stronger fluorescent signals in brain as compared to intravenously injected NPs. The brain/blood ratio of rivastigmine for intranasally administered chitosan NPs at 10–480 minutes was 1.35–2.16, higher than that of intranasally administered rivastigmine solution or intravenously injected NPs. The DTE of 355% and DTP of 71.8% suggested better brain targeting efficiency of the developed system.

Amyloid peptides (A beta) (amyloid plaques) are recognized as targets for developing the biomarkers for AD diagnosis. For the sake of developing efficacious in vivo probes, polymeric n-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate (PBCA) NPs were formulated and enclosed with the radiolabeled I125-clioquinol to enhance its delivery to the brain and retention in the amyloid plaque. The nanocarrier was preferentially taken up by AD brain sections compared to cortical control sections. Furthermore, the I125-clioquinol PBCA nanoparticles crossed the BBB in wild type mouse, verifying an increased brain uptake measured in terms of percent injected dose/g compared to I125-clioquinol. I125-clioquinol PBCA nanoparticles demonstrated enhanced brain retention in the

AD transgenic mice against wild type controls. The study exhibited specificity of I125-clioquinol PBCA nanoparticles for A beta plaques both in vitro and in vivo, thus offering a promising delivery vehicle for amyloid imaging (Kulkarni *et al*., 2010).

Lipidic nanoparticles

The nanocarriers, SLNs can also encapsulate both hydrophilic and hydrophobic pharmaceutical drugs (Chen *et al*., 2001). Being in the dimensions ranging from 120 to 200 nm, SLNs are not quickly captured by RES cells and, therefore, are cleared by liver and spleen filtration. Moreover, by adding a specific ligand on their surface, their drug-targeting ability can be improved. In fact, many pharmaceutical molecules, other than those intended for AD therapeutics, have been delivered to the brain via receptor-mediated transcytosis mechanism (Grumezescu AM *et al*., 2016; Mozafari M, 2020).

These lipidic systems are efficient nanocarriers that can competently upload versatile therapeutics and bioactive agents. The system quite resembles with lipid emulsion, liposomes, and polymeric nanoparticles. Literature envisaged that SLNs behave as low-density lipoproteins, and, therefore, get interacted with LDL receptors present on blood–brain barrier (Ghasemiyeh and Mohammadi-Samani, 2018). The created network of SLNs and receptors let entry of SLNs inside BBB (Fig. 5).

These formulations are feasible to fabricate without use of organic solvents, are cost effective, have reproducibility, and offer several advantages over other nanocarriers, i.e., controlled release (for weeks), site specific drug delivery (neurons, cancer cells), stability (~ 3 years), etc. Nanoscaled size range (50–200 nm) enables these particles to circumvent liver/spleen filtration, assists to escape from RES (reticuloendothelial system), and facilitates to cross tight junctions of BBB (Mukherjee *et al*., 2009). Table 4 summarizes few research reports on SLNs for AD targeting.

Magnetic nanoparticles

In the recent years, magnetic NPs have been extensively explored and are applied for both diagnosis and therapeutic reasons. Their inert nature associated with low toxicity suggests implications in brain pathologies including AD. Kong *et al*. (2012) in an experiment in a mouse model suggested that magnetic NPs can permeate the normal BBB when an external magnetic field is applied. On systemic administration, an applied strategic external magnetic field navigates the magnetic nanoparticles to cross the BBB and aggregate in a perivascular zone of the brain parenchyma. Internalization by endothelial cells was suggestive of transcellular trafficking as the BBB crossing mechanism. Furthermore, remote radio frequency magnetic field can be utilized to release drug from silica coated magnetic nanocapsules. In conjunction, the results

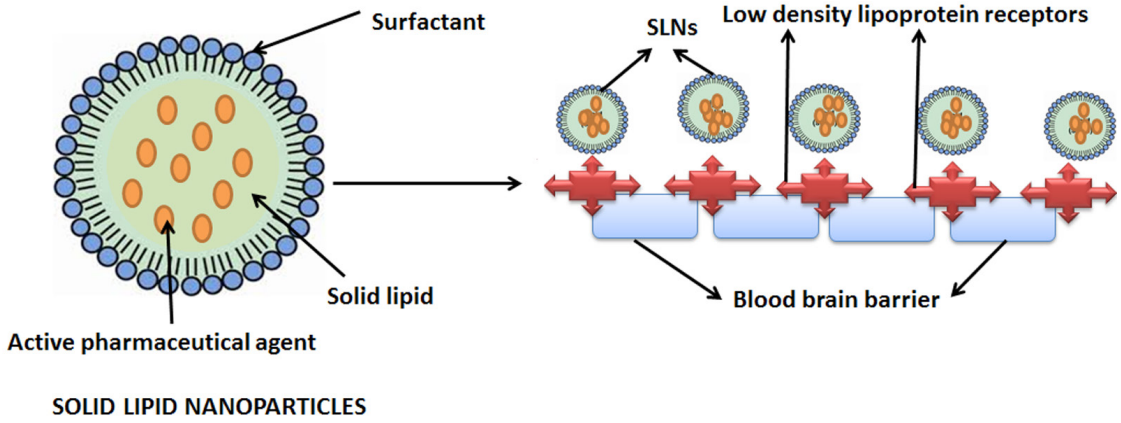


Figure 5. Schematic illustration of composition of SLN and its interaction with LDL receptors.

Table 4. SLNs for the treatment of AD.

SLN approach	Research outcome	Reference
Resveratrol SLN functionalized with antitransferrtin receptor monoclonal antibody for inravenous administration	Developed antibody conjugated SLNs to be taken up through brain endothelial cells. They were able to cross BBB, hence have attribute for the treatment of AD.	Loureiro *et al*., 2017
Transferrin modified quercetin SLNs for neuroprotective activity	Developed SLNs for ease of passage across BBB via transferrin receptor available on brain cells. A experimental study revealed suppression of amyloid peptide aggregation and fibril formation by developed transferrin functionalized quercetin SLNs.	Pinheiro *et al*., 2020
Erythropoeitin loaded SLNs for better BBB permeation and neuroprotective efficacy	Morris water maze test on rats investigated improved restoration of cognitive cells in AD affected rats. Prepared erythropoeitin-SLNs diminished oxidative stress and plaque deposition in hippocampus region.	Dara *et al*., 2019
Phosphotidylserin functionalized nicotinamide loaded SLNs for	Intraperitonially administered phosphotidylserin-nicotinamide SLNs exhibited augmented cognitive neuronal activity, preserved memory cells and reduced deposition of tau hyperphosphorylation in AD affected rat model.	Vakilinezhad *et al*., 2018
Piperine loaded SLNs for reduction in oxidative stress and cholinergic degradation in brain cells	Piperine SLNs were coated with polysorbate 80 for brain specific targeting. Histopathological study exhibited reduction in plaque and tangle phenomenon in 2 mg/kg dose equivalent.	Yusuf *et al*., 2012

suggest a meticulous approach for manipulating the biodistribution of MNPs in the brain via an external magnetic field.

In a strategic approach, an electromagnetic actuator was designed for guiding magnetite containing drugs (Do *et al*., 2016). These magnetic nanoparticles were capable to cross BBB after applying external electromagnetic fields [28 mT (0.43 T/m)]. Additionally, the brain uptake and transport rates of magnetic nanoparticles were considerably improved by applying a pulsed magnetic field. The localization of NPs monitored using fluorescent magnetic nanoparticles demonstrated the feasibility of the magnetic nanocontainers as valuable targeting system for AD diagnosis and therapy.

Nanoparticle conjugates

Functionally integrating proteins, peptides, antibody, DNA, and other nucleic acids with NPs have developed a large variety of composite nanomaterials which in many cases, display augmented properties because of synergistic effect of both components. These capabilities are drawing increased attentiveness from researchers searching of new nanosize options for diverse applications that include therapeutics, cellular delivery, and diagnostics (Jeong *et al*., 2018). Table 5 compiles few promising approaches containing nanoconjugates to combat neurological disorders.

Xiong *et al*. (2017) developed peptide-gold NPs comprising two inhibitory peptide sequences (VVIA and LPFFD) for amyloid-β aggregation. The system was targeted to inhibit accumulation of Aβ proteins. The two peptide sequences were conjugated onto the gold NP surfaces and ordered/oriented in optimal conformation to effectively inhibit amyloid-β protein accumulation. Using the two different peptides on a single NP was greatly synergistic, prohibiting amyloid-β proteins accumulation more strongly with less cytotoxicity, compared to the free peptides.

AD is distinguished by the cerebral aggregation of extracellular amyloid plaques and can target on a dual-functional nanoparticle (TQNP) to deliver biotechnological drugs, namely the H102 peptide, a β-sheet breaker, to AD lesions precisely. A spherical, dual-function, drug delivery system loaded with H102 (TQNP/H102) was designed by Zheng *et al*. (2017). Two targeting peptides, TGN and QSH, were linked to the surfaces of NPs to allow BBB transport and Ab42 targeting, respectively. The study revealed that TQNP could be taken up via various routes, including caveolae-mediated endocytosis, indicating that some of TQNP could cross the BBB intact.

A hybrid system for amyloid plaques targeting siRNA delivery was developed using PEGylated Poly (2-(N, N-dimethylamino) ethyl methacrylate) (PEG-PDMAEMA) joined with two d-peptides, a CGN for brain penetration, and a QSH for β-amyloid binding. The hybrid complex composed of 25% QSH-PEG-PDMAEMA, 50% CGN-PEG-PDMAEMA, and 25% MPEG-PDMAEMA encapsulating siRNA showed negligible cytotoxicity and conferred protection to siRNA from enzymatic degradation. It was determined that the complex was taken up by neuron cells suggesting that the complex was capable of escaping from lysosomes, releasing siRNA in the cytoplasm, and, therefore, establishing effective gene silence (down-regulated protein level to 18.5%). Post i.v. injection, the intact hybrid complex penetrated into the brain and was localized around the amyloid plaques in transgenic AD mice. The precise delivery leads to increased therapeutic activities, which was affirmed by the poor yield of enzyme-digested products sAPPβ (−42.6%), the strong mRNA (36.4%) knockdown of BACE1 (a therapeutic target of AD), as well as the better neuronal protection than the single component complexes. The results are suggestive of an efficient and precise nanocarrier for delivery of siRNA to the AD lesion that may be future candidate for gene therapy for AD (Zheng *et al*., 2017).

Cubosomes

These are liquid crystalline nanostructured particles consisting of biocompatible carriers. A cubosome is comprised of a three dimensionally organized bicontinuous curved lipid bilayer separated by two aqueous channels within which the bioactive ingredients and proteins come into contact (Fig. 6) Their distinguishing characteristics are that they can encapsulate

Table 5. Research highlights of few nano-conjugates developed for treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

Strategy	Research highlights	Reference
Intranasal delivery of nanoparticles conjugated with *S. tuberosum* lectin (STL) modified basic fibroblast growth factor by the virtue of selective binding of STL to nasal epithelial N-glucosamine.	The developed intranasal system exhibited approximately five times greater drug distribution at the affected area of brain comparable to injectable NPs.	Zhang *et al*., 2014
Surface modified positive allosteric modulaters (PAM)	The developed system enhanced binding affinity of Ach to the muscarinic receptors thus improves bioavailability in brain. The prepared conjugate reported better efficacy at low dose when co-administered with AChE inhibitors	Kumar *et al*., 2017
Nanoconjugate of tacrine with 1,2,4-thiadiazole derivatives	Prepared tacrine conjugates were stable and showed greater BBB permeability. They have potential for inhibition of butylcholinesterase enzyme (BCHE). These conjugates were free radicle scavengers that checked amyloid deposition in brain.	Makhaeva *et al*., 2020
Impressive regimen containing chitosan-based simvastatin-citicolin conjugate nanoparticles (~ 300 nm) with minimum undesirable side effects.	Co-administered simvastatin and citicolin therapeutics from the chitosan conjugate system proved effective tool for the management of Alzheimer's disease with lessened side effects.	Mozafar *et al*., 2020
Multifaceted 3-phenylcoumarin lipoic acid conjugate for treatment of Alzheimer's disease	Developed conjugates were evaluated for neuroprotective activity against H_2O_2 induced cell death. The system displayed potent AchE inhibition, antioxidant and metal chelating activity.	Jalili- Baleh *et al*., 2018
Dihydrolipoic acid(DHLA)/ CdSe-ZnS/ Amyloid beta conjugated QDs for inhibition of Aβ-fibrillation	Nanoscaled DHLA capped conjuagated QDs of approximately 2.5nm were prepared that contained CdSe/ZnS conjuage. The system aimed to reduce amyloid fibrillation process in brain tissues. This QD conjugate adhered over Amyloid peptide in aqueous phase. Significant fibril morphology alteration and lessening in fibrillation process were observed.	Thakur *et al*., 2011

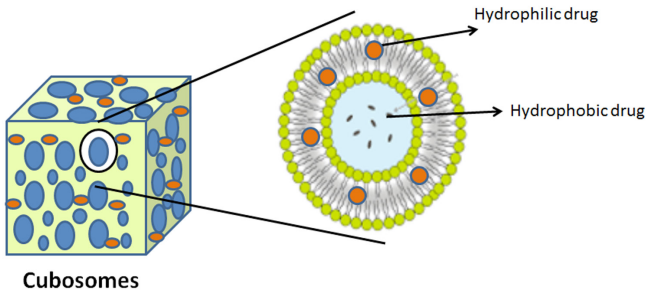


Figure 6. Composition of cubosome drug delivery system.

substances that are hydrophobic, hydrophilic, and amphiphilic, maintain controlled release of the drug and bioadhesion, are thermodynamically stable, and are promising vehicles for various drug administration routes (Karami and Hamidi, 2016).

Wu *et al*. (2012) developed lectin modified non-immunogenic odorranalectin (small peptide) cubosomes. The system was conjugated with streptavidin through incorporating maleimide PEG oleate and aimed for effective nose to brain drug delivery. The relative uptake of odorranalectin cubosomes was 3.46 times higher compared to the bare cubosomes in brain tissues. Pharmacodynamic study on rats after intranasal administration revealed enhanced efficacy of streptavidin conjugated odorranalectin cubosomes for the mitigation of Alzheimer's disorder that suggested a potential non-invasive peptide and protein delivery approach in brain tissues.

Piperine, a memory enhancing natural alkaloid, was used for developing novel oral cubosomal delivery system by Elnaggar *et al*. (2015) for the treatment of neurological AD. Various bioactive surfactants (Tween, cremophore, and poloxamer) modified crystalline cubosomes were evaluated for pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics assessments. Among them, Tween 80 modified piperine cubosomes exhibited effective anti-apoptosis and prominent anti-inflammatory activity performed through Caspase-3 assay. Nanoscaled dimension (~167 nm), low polydispersity index (0.18), and optimum zeta potential of developed cubosomes exhibited high entrapment efficiency (~88.7%) and superior stability. Developed novel oral cubosomes depicted potential for inhibition of AD progression.

Inorganic nanoparticles

Gold and silica nanoparticles are designated for the impressive management of AD owing to their exclusive transcytosis movement through endothelial cells of brain without surface modification. These positive charged nanoparticles are self-sufficient for the carriage of bioactive agents across targeted brain tissues. A lot of inorganic NPs are reported that successfully crossed BBB, designed for nose to brain delivery without surface modifications. Intranasal silicon coated NPs (mean particle size 200 nm) were developed for effective brain targeting (Masserini, 2013).

PEG coated iron oxide NPs were demonstrated by Wadghiri *et al*. (2013) for improved BBB permeation. Although inorganic nanoparticles are highly concerned with immunotoxicity, inorganic NPs (silicon oxide) have been extensively explored for brain targeting owing to their biocompatibility and minimal cytotoxicity. In this context, silicon quantum dots (QDs) are widely explored as theranostic system that serves both as therapeutic and diagnostic agent for the management of neurological diseases. QDs proficiently cater drug delivery at the target sites, monitor cellular uptake with less cytotoxicity. Moreover, the fluorescent silicon QDs have been utilized for cellular imaging and diagnosis of the neuronal diseases (Sivasankarapillai *et al*., 2019).

Silica nanoparticles (SiNPs) were designed as novel drug delivery systems for BBB targeting due to their profound cellular uptake efficiency and localization in the cytoplasm. These NPs were significantly deposited in the intracellular amyloid cells (Aβ1-42), thus facilitating alleviation of AD (Yang *et al*., 2014). Developed SiNPs have potential to reduce cellular apoptosis and reactive oxygen in the intracellular region in dose dependent manner. Amyloid peptide deposition and increased tau phosphorylation are the two distinct pathological hallmarks of AD. Both were notified for the activity of silica nanoparticles to check their efficiency for diminishing Aβ (1–42) plaque formation and hyperphosphorylation. However, cellular uptake study performed in mouse neuroblastoma cells and human brain model (SK-N-SH) revealed neurotoxicity after administration of 10 µg/ml SiNPs for 24 hours. The developed system got deposited in the cytoplasm, reduced cell viability, and increased pathogenesis of AD.

Gold nanoparticles (Au NPs) have been extensively used to mitigate neurological disorders owing to their efficiency to cross BBB that project important role in retrieval of depreciated behavioral aspects of brain cells in AD. Developed AuNPs significantly suppressed amyloidosis, checked aggregation of oligomers, and avoided fibril formation within 72 hours (Chiang *et al*., 2020). Sanati *et al*. (2019) worked for the development of Au NPs and investigated their impact on memory cells. The outcomes revealed improvement in acquisition and retention in AD. The study was conducted in rat animal model (Morris water maze) to investigate restoration of memory cells after intraperitoneal and intrahippocampal injections of developed AuNPs. The results showed reduction in retention time of memory and spatial learning cells by AuNPs in rats, i.e., ~25.7 seconds compared to non-treated memory cells (39.6 seconds). Moreover, other brain derived factors such as Brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), cAMP response element binding protein (CREB), and neural survival rates were also modified interpreting improved neural behavior. The developed system displayed promising efficiency for AD outbreak.

Antibody-tethered nanoparticles

Of lately, researchers from University of Cambridge have disclosed a methodology that demonstrates designing of an antibody that can recognize and quantify toxic particles (amyloid beta oligomers) associated with destruction of human healthy brain tissues/cells. Antibodies are proteinaceous molecules that identify and neutralize pathogens/microbes by the virtue of their affinity towards oligomers (Fig. 7). This innovation in healthcare sector would pave of management strategy against the AD (Francesco *et al*., 2020).

Antibody conjugated novel delivery approach is considered as promising clinical strategy for mitigation of AD. These antibody tethered systems reduce amyloid protein/plaque deposition at the presynaptic phase of the neurological disorder and hence facilitate retrieval of diminished memory cells of brain.

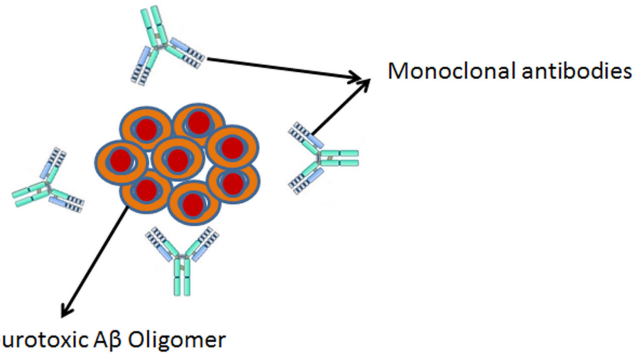


Figure 7. Monoclonal antibody-oligomer interaction to neutralize amyloid plaque.

In this context, monoclonal antibodies (MAb) have displayed satisfactory capability to target amyloid β peptides in AD affected transgenic mice and human brain tissues. Numerous MAbs, i.e., solanezumab, bapineuzumab, and crenezumab have been explored for the evolution of brain drug delivery systems (Watt *et al*., 2014).

MAbs sweep away undesirable amyloid protein either by passive immunization or through complement activation and check neurodegeneration process. Although, solanezumab and bapinezumab were reported to non-specifically target the amyloid protein and delayed the AD treatment time comparative to crenezumab monoclonal antibody (Prins *et al*., 2015).

Rosse (2017) presented a series of conjugates composed of antibody-drug to combat wide range of inflammatory diseases, namely, AD, atherosclerosis, Parkinson's disease, rheumatoid arthritis, etc. These conjugates were fabricated through phosphate-based linkers associating immunoglobulin proteins (CD74/CD163) and therapeutics as steroids (Rosse, 2017).

Another, antibody tethered PBD-C06 formulation (anti-pGlu3-Aβantibody) has been developed through grafting murine antigens on light and heavy chains of antibody. This immunotherapeutic approach was designed to target pGlu3-Aβepitope to mitigate the pathology of AD. Developed PBD-C06 has affinity for oligomers, monomers, fibrils, and clustered Aβpeptide that efficiently targeted neurotoxic peptides at site. Significant reduction of inflammation in the intracellular cells was reported that suggested potential clinical application in vasogenic edema (Hettman *et al*., 2020).

Nanocomposites

In AD, most of the therapy and therapeutics are focused on amyloid Aβ peptide as it hinders functions of memory cells and causes dementia. In this perspective, tau pathway is extensively correlated with AD symptoms, pathology, and clinical development.

Methylene blue, an inhibitor of tau aggregation, was loaded on CeNC-IONC-MSN-T807 to make nanocomposite. Developed system exhibited profound affinity towards tau and checks AD pathogenesis. Moreover, the designed system depicted symptomatic relief through hindering process of hyperphosphorylation and alleviating mitochondrial oxidative stress. A significant reduction in neuronal cells was observed that rescued destruction of memory cells in AD affected rats (Chen *et al*., 2018).

Karaboga *et al*. (2020) developed nanocomposite biosensor comprising of reduced graphene oxide and gold nanoparticles. The surface of nanocomposite was functionalized with 11-mercaptoundeconoic acid to target tau-441 protein accountable for degeneration of memory cells. Developed functionalized nanocomposite has potential to capture tau-441 proteins at a concentration 0.091 pg/ml that offered targeting proteins present in serum and cerebrospinal fluid.

Quercetin, a flavonoid is reported to inhibit Aβ plaque deposition owing to its antioxidant property. However, poor water solubility and extensive first pass metabolism restrict the usage of quercetin in the management of neurological disorders. Selenium nanocomposite containing quercetin and sodium selenite was synthesized and modified with polysorbate 80. The developed template possessed high aqueous solubility and capacity to cross BBB efficiently in comparison to plain quercetin. The outcomes suggested improved inhibition of Aβ fibrillation and antioxidant activity (Qi *et al*., 2020).

Zhao *et al*. (2019) demonstrated novel synthesis of nanocomposites to eliminate Aβ induced neurotoxicity in AD affected mice. Nanodimensional clusters containing cross linked KLVFF proteinaceous body were developed through in situ polymerization. The prepared bioactive system altered the morphology of amyloid peptide aggregates and reduced the population of pathological oligomers at the infected site. The nanocarriers system lessened neuronal injuries caused by amyloid aggregation and plaque deposition. Thus, nanoscaled composites presented feasible approach for protection of AD affected hippocampal neurons and enabled fast recovery of endocranial microglia efficiency (Zhao Y).

Nanoemulsions

Thermodynamically stable nanosized emulsions have been explored for effective import of bioactive agents across BBB owing to their advanced pharmaceutical designing. Innovative surfactants and co-surfactants enable nanoemulsion as potential drug delivery approach for the management of neuronic disorders. Their small particle size (50–500 nm) let uniform dispersion and higher payload of therapeutics for the site specific delivery.

Memantine embedded nanoemulsion has been reported for impressive intranasal drug delivery. This approach bypassed BBB and was found to be effective for AD therapeutics. Formulated nanoemulsion depicted mean globular size of approximately 11 nm, with 80% drug release in simulated nasal fluid. On intranasal administration, memantine loaded nanoemulsion exhibited amplified antioxidant efficiency and superior cellular uptake in brain cells of experimental rats (Kaur *et al*., 2020a). The oil in water donepezil hydrochloride loaded nanoemulsion was prepared utilizing 10% each of labrasol and glycerol. Nanoscaled, uniform, and stable particles of nanoemulsion impacted the AD infected brain cells. Cytotoxicity behavior investigated on Sprague Dawley rats through nasal route revealed dose dependent efficacy without disturbing the morphology of cells. The antioxidant and radical scavenging efficacy revealed promising potential of donepezil hydrochloride nanoemulsion for treating neurological diseases. Outcomes of scintigram defined maximum cellular uptake by brain cells (Kaur *et al*., 2020b).

Recently, selective AChE inhibitor, Huperzina A, was explored for nose to brain delivery to mitigate AD. Extensive researches on conventional dosage of Huperzina A demonstrated its noticeable adverse effects in the peripheral cholinergic region and gastrointestinal tract. Huperzina A nanoemulsion modified with lactoferrin (Lf-HupA-NE) was investigated against in vitro brain model (Hcmec/D3 cells). Lactoferrin, an iron binding glycoprotein, is widely expressed in brain endothelial cells and highly utilized in the treatment of age related neurodisorders. Thus developed nanoemulsion on intranasal administration was targeted to brain cells and tissues. The results notified impressive drug release in the brain parenchyma and suggested brain targeted drug delivery systems (Jiang *et al*., 2019).

Md *et al*. (2018) revealed neuroprotective property of naringenin bioflavonoid. Its restricted permeation coefficient across biological membrane limits its pharmaceutical applications. Naringenin loaded nanoemulsion was investigated against amyloid peptide induced toxicity in the brain cells (SH-SY5Y). The outcomes defined alleviation of amyloid induced reactive oxygen species and exhibited neuroprotective action in SH-SY5Y neuroblastoma cells in the brain. Designed nanoemulsion depicted promising approach for reducing phosphorylated tau level and amyloidogenesis related to AD.

Liposomes

Liposomes are self-aggregating lipid nanosystems that amalgamate and supply the CNS with lipophilic drugs, hydrophilic drugs, protein-based drugs, and nucleic acid components (Pashirova *et al*., 2018). The lipophilic characteristics of liposomes assist the transportation of drugs across the endothelial membrane of brain cells and provide them with outstanding brain uptake characteristics. Drug diffusion and liposome endocytosis are the two prominent mechanisms engaged in drug release from liposomes (Wei *et al*., 2014). Although, vesicle size and lipid composition do affect their transmission in the systemic circulation and in cellular uptake in brain cells (Montesinos, 2017). Liposomes offer high pay loads both for hydrophilic and hydrophobic therapeutics (Fig. 8).

Research on liposomes demonstrates its versatile pharmacological actions, i.e., neuroprotective, anti-ischemic, anti-epileptics, and antimicrobials. These formulations have been explored as cargo for import of therapeutics across BBB through active targeting. Austen *et al*. (2008) carried out a study based on inhibition of Aβ aggregation and toxins in the fibrils on brain cells. They developed stable retro-inverso peptides capable to crossing BBB. The system was modified with fluorescein labeled inversion to amplified anti-amyloid aggregation property. In vivo study on transgenic mice (TG2576) after peripheral injection revealed protection of memory cells of brain.

Behl *et al*. (1994) formulated curcumin loaded liposomes for the impressive management of AD. Antioxidative curcumin liposomes offered anti-amyloid effects. The outcomes demonstrated neuroprotective efficacy against amyloid toxins released in brain endothelial region. Adorned phenolic group in curcumin therapeutic got bound with amyloid proteins, diminished plaque deposition, and facilitated aggregation free environment around brain cells.

Arumugam *et al*. (2008) demonstrated treatment of AD through rivastigmine loaded liposomes administered intranasally. The delivery system sustained the drug release effect that could reduce frequency of drug administration and ultimately patient compliance. Augmented half-life and higher concentration of rivastigmine in brain cells were reported after oral and intranasal administration.

Zheng *et al*. (2015) encapsulated H102, a novel peptide (βsheet breaker) in liposomes to avoid degradation and enhance brain penetration through intranasal drug delivery for AD therapeutics. The formulated liposomes had ability to penetrate Calu-3 cell monolayers consistently. After drug administration through nasal route, H102 was effectively delivered to the brain and produced the three times greater effect in the brain. The delivery produced excellent spatial memory. The liposomal intranasal brain delivery approach for H102 was stable, effective, and safe.

Donepezil encounters hurdles in crossing BBB, hence is not preferred in conventional dosage formulations. To avoid this problem, donepezil was loaded in liposomes and intranasally administered which reduced the risk of first-pass metabolism, unwanted side effects, and persisted rapid drug delivery to the CNS. Pharmacokinetic study of both donepezil loaded liposomes and free donepezil administered through oral and intranasal routes revealed improved bioavailability of the former owing to its better absorption via intranasal administration. A twofold increase in the AUC of donepezil liposomes administered intranasally was observed compared to oral route. Microphotographs of brain and olfactory bulb revealed no morphological changes in the visceral tissues after intranasal administration of liposomes after intranasal administration in rats. Donepezil loaded liposomes given through intranasal route showed improved bioavailability in brain, enhanced cellular uptake, and reduced cellular toxicity (Al-Asmari *et al*., 2016).

Dendrimers

The three dimensional, spherical, branched architectural entities (dendrimers) are emerging pharmaceutical nanocarriers,

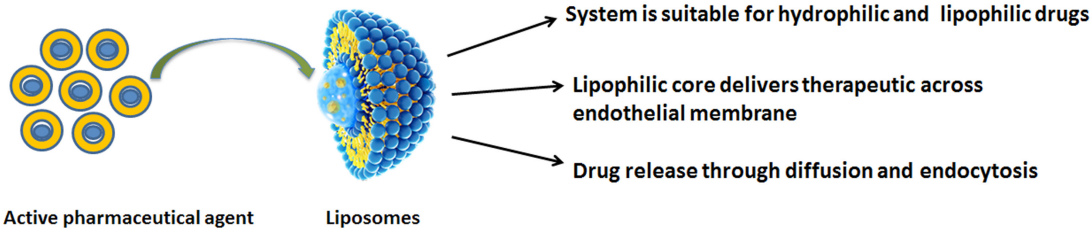


Figure 8. Nanocarrier: liposomes and its salient features.

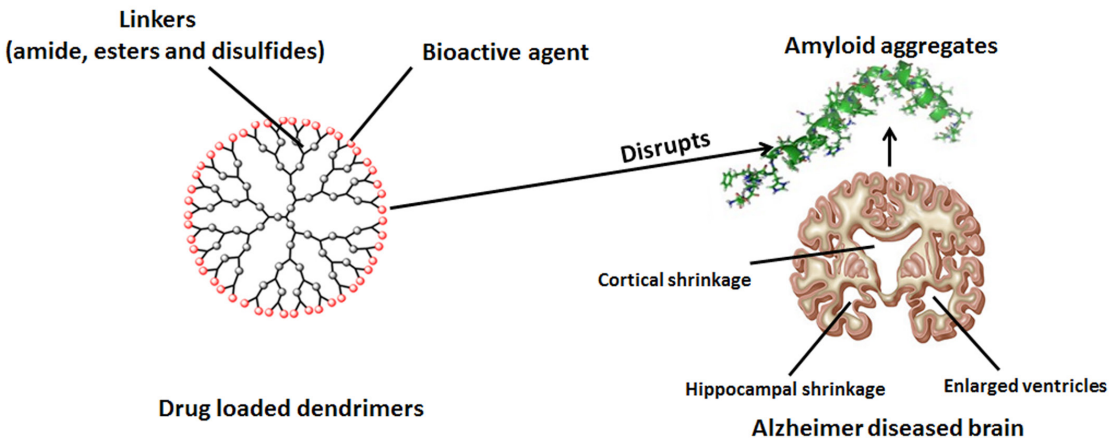


Figure 9. Drug loaded dendrimers for treatment of AD.

widely worked out for designing numerous targeted drug delivery system owing to their versatile properties, i.e., nanosize, low polydispersity index, high payload efficiency, improved solubility, less viscosity, biocompatibility, non-immunogenicity, and stability. The morphology of dendrimers is comprised of functional groups containing linkers attached with therapeutic agents on their periphery (Fig. 9). Their specific structure facilitates site specific drug delivery. For the effective treatment of neurogenerative disorders, extensive research and formulations based on dendrimers are reported. Presence of multiple functional groups or polyvalent recognition sites enable high pay load of therapeutics (Abbasi *et al*., 2014).

In AD, several molecular mechanisms are involved such as apoptosis, inflammation, and oxidative stress. These processes should be targeted through designing nanoengineered dendrimers. Numerous bioactive agents, i.e. peptides/protein, nucleic acids, genes, and biosensors are frequently loaded in dendrimers for brain delivery (Aliev *et al*., 2019).

Katare *et al*. (2015) stated that drug delivery to the brain is challenging because of the low aqueous solubility and bioavailability. The haloperidol dendrimer was delivered to the brain through the nasal route of administration. The developed preparation showed hundred times high aqueous solubility. Cataleptic and locomotor studies were evaluated after intraperitoneal injection administration of haloperidol dendrimers. Haloperidol response given through nasal and intraperitoneal route was compared. It was mentioned that 6.7 times less dose was required for nasal delivery to obtain same behavioral response compared to intraperitoneal route. The study suggested improvement in aqueous solubility of poorly soluble drug through dendrimers for the amplified locomotors action in AD cases. The study confirmed that the dendrimers given via nasal route is suitable delivery for targeting brain for poorly aqueous soluble drugs.

Nazem and Mansoori (2011) described various biomedical applications of dendrimers due to their shape and size. The anti-myeloid strategy was recommended for the dendrimers. The strategy was designed in such a way that the peptide monomer was attached to the end of fibrils which resulted in the prevention of cytotoxic effects. The most frequently researched dendrimers for the therapy of brain diseases are polyamidoamine (PAMAM) dendrimers. The effect of PAMAM dendrimers on prion peptide PrP185-208 and Alzheimer's peptide Aβ1-28 was assessed using thioflavin T dye. Outcomes of the fluorescence and electron microscopy revealed high degree of amyloid aggregation and signs of fibril disruption. The interaction of globular and branched dendrimers with amyloid proteins showed inhibition of fibril formation in AD (Klajnert *et al*., 2006).

Another anti-inflammatory and antioxidant therapeutic N-acetyl-l-cysteine was explored for the synthesis of poly (amidoamine) (PAMAM) dendrimers. The synthesized system was capable of intracellular drug delivery at the site of inflammation. Presence of detachable disulfide bonds in the integrity of dendrimers enabled linking with intracellular glutathione and microglial cells. Higher payload facilitated desirable amount of drug release at local cells and exhibited improved antioxidant activity (Navath *et al*., 2006).

Klementieva (2019) discussed exclusive brain cell protective activity of poly propyl imine (PPI) dendrimers functionalized with maltose in transgenic mice. PPI dendrimers modified with maltose got bound with amyloid proteins, hindered their aggregation and checked fibril deposition at brain cells. The study revealed that unmodified PPI dendrimers cause cellular toxicity, whereas maltose modified dendrimers did not show intrinsic toxicity. The research highlighted that polysaccharide coated dendrimers were non-toxic to the neuroblastoma cells. Dendrimers containing cationic PAMAM and phosphorous have been fabricated through polymerization technique to investigate efficacy against deposited amyloid peptides over neuroblastoma cells. The intrinsic toxicity due to positive charge of PAMAM restricted the performance of dendrimers. Biocompatible sugar coated glycodendrimers have also been reported. The modified dendrimers were capable of interacting with amyloid proteins with minimum cell toxicity. The developed sugar coated glycodendrimers were taken account for symptomatic relief in AD owing to their high surface group density over protofibrils G4 of brain cells (Benseny-Cases *et al*., 2012).

Nanosuspensions

Pharmaceutical nanoscaled biphasic suspensions are acceptable drug delivery systems for hydrophobic drug

therapeutics owing to their stable and well dispersed appearance. Availability of a series of natural/synthetic surfactants and the ease of preparation methodologies enable nanosuspensions for targeted drug delivery through oral, parenteral, pulmonary, ocular, and topical routes (Yadollahi *et al*., 2015).

Donepezil nanosuspensions prepared through ionic crosslinking method with chitosan were investigated in Sprague Dawley rats for olfactory pathway following nose to brain administration. Fine nanoscaled particles (mean size 200 nm) and low polydispersity index (0.341) provided better absorbance and bioavailability in brain. The animal study revealed effective donepezil responses to the brain cells (C_{max} 7.2 ng/ml) and plasma (82.2 ng/ml) by developed nanosuspension. The formulation was safe as no animal loss or distinct change in cell morphology or intrinsic toxicity was observed in experimental animals. The formulation served as a novel approach for drug administration to combat symptomatic relief from AD (Bhavna *et al*., 2014).

Li *et al*. (2018) developed meloxicam nanosuspensions for reduction in brain that efficiently reduced inflammation in brain cells. Meloxicam embedded bovine serum albumin suspension was formulated through acid/base neutralization method. Uniformly dispersed biphasic suspension consisted fine particles of mean size 78.67 nm that were physically stable with 6 months shelf-life. Spherical, smooth, and regular surface coating of bovine-serum albumin over drug particles (mean particle size = 78.67 ± 0.22 nm) was revealed by transmission electron microscopy. The pharmacokinetic parameters, half-life, mean residence time, and AUC0-∞ got improved by 169.8%, 150.1%, and 148.8% after intravenous administration. Though the authors did not prove its utility in AD therapeutics, they claimed its usefulness for symptomatic relief in neurodegenerative disorders. The concentration of meloxicam was found to be higher in inflamed brain tissues after injecting a nanosuspension in Sprague Dawley rats left and right paws. The graph plotted between concentration of drug in endothelial cells and time exhibited higher meloxicam concentration (~450 ng/ml) from nanosuspension compared to meloxicam solution (225 ng/ml) after 2 hours. The results exhibited novel application of bovine-serum albumin coated meloxicam for alleviation of inflammation in brain neurons.

RECENT UPDATES ON PATENTS AND CLINICAL TRIALS ON ALZHEIMER'S TREATMENT

Nanotechnology based dosage forms are being the most explored area for efficient delivery of the drugs for AD. The USFDA has recently approved Tauvid (flortaucipir F18) for i.v. injection, the first drug used to help image a distinctive characteristic of AD in the brain called tau pathology. Tauvid is a radioactive diagnostic agent for adult patients with intellectual impairment and is being evaluated for AD. Tauvid is suggested for positron emission tomography imaging of the brain to determine the distribution and density of aggregated tau NFTs, a primary marker of AD (USFDA, 2020). Luthman *et al*. (2019) patented methods for bringing down clinical reduction in an individual having early AD, methods of converting an amyloid positive individual during initial stages to amyloid negative, methods for lowering brain amyloid level in an individual, and methods of preventing AD, the methods comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of at least one anti-Aβ protofibril antibody. Gelmont *et al*. (2019) have been assigned a patent which provides, among other aspects, methods for the treating AD in individuals in need thereof, the method including administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a pooled human immunoglobulin G (IgG) and/or an anti-beta amyloid monoclonal antibody composition to an individual having moderately severe AD.

Various patents have been granted/published in this field depending on the nanocarrier systems, including multiple dosage forms, liposomes, nanoparticles, solid lipid nanoparticles, nano-emulsion, etc., (Patel *et al*., 2017) which are compiled in Table 6. Castor *et al*. (2019) got patented an AD drug candidate, APH-1104, a potent analog of Bryostatin-1, and is neuroprotective by α-secretase activation via novel protein kinase C (PKC) isoforms, down-regulation of pro-inflammatory and angiogenic processes, and the substitution of β-amyloid for its soluble and harmless relative, sAPP-α at concentrations which are orders of magnitude lower than conventional APP modulators. These nanoparticles protect Bryostatin-1 in its transit to the stomach, are resistant to stomach acids, and increase residence time and efficacy once transported to the circulation system in the duodenum. Castor (2020) has been assigned a patent for the combination therapeutic consisting of nanospheres co-encapsulating Bryostatin-1 and a Retinoid to improve synergistically α-secretase production and reduce β-amyloid plaque generation. Bryostatin-1 stimulates the production of some isoforms of PKC which enhances the production of α-secretase resulting in soluble amyloid precursor protein, and inhibits the formation of β amyloid plaques. Retinoids such as all-trans retinoic acid (ATRA, retinoic acid) enhance α-secretase activity via increased levels of expressed ADAM10 protein.

Improvement in therapeutic mediation for treating individuals with AD is of prime importance for both clinicians and pharmaceutical industries. Hence collection and investigation of clinical information is required for designing new protocols and/or the advancement of upgraded therapeutics for treating the disorder. Table 7 presents a compilation of the drugs that are in phase III clinical trials, while the drugs utilized in phase II clinical trials are summarized in Table 8 (Romano, 2018).

FUTURE PERSPECTIVE

Nanocarriers seem to offer a novel way of facilitating research attempts by explicitly regulating various pathways in focused areas. An interesting target for the development of better AD therapeutics can be mitochondrial dysfunction. Magnetic NPs are a productive area for research and have numerous existing as well as potential technological applications. Dendrimers and nanoemulsions are also two classifications of nanoparticulate systems which ought to be investigated additionally for transport of CNS drug. A few issues are required to be resolved before nanomedicines for AD comes to clinical setting. They are (i) the general and the biggest hurdle is low targeting efficiency, which may restrict the therapeutic effect and cause harm to other organs and (ii) another concern is the distribution of nanomaterials into the brain. To attain specific targeting in the brain, sequentially targeted nanomaterials require consideration. Objective should be to target not only BBB, but to also target the diseased site, to prevent distribution in whole brain.

Various in vitro investigations have reported the potential adequacy of nanocarriers; however, future in vivo

Table 6. Patents on drug delivery systems based on nanotechnology for treatment of AD.

Patent number	Country of filling	Active ingredient/ Composition		Center point/ Main out come	Publication year/granted	Ref.
CA 02203513	Canada	Selegilin	Selegilin liposome for improved targeting via parenteral route and enhanced permeation in case of Transdermal delivery for AD treatment	2001	Mezei *et al*., 2001	
US 2006 0018839A1	USA	Cholinesterase inhibitors	Delivery of ChEIs through various delivery systems, through nasal and ophthalmic route to enhance targeting in AD and ocular disorders	2006	Ieni and Pratt, 2006	
267/KOLNP/2007	India	Glatiramer acetate (GA)	Nano-emulsion and Proteosomes for GA via parenteral route and nasal route for improving neuroinflammation in AD	2007	Maron *et al*., 2007	
US 2009 0252796 A1	USA	Nutritional supplement	Nutritional mixtures and food supplements prepared using microfluidizers for enhancing the status of AD patient.	2009	Mazed and Mazed, 2009	
WO 2009 150686A1	WIPO	Model drug	Liposomes with specific lipid contents having high binding capacity to decrease Aβ plaques in AD	2009	Masserini *et al*., 2009	
EP 2332570 A1	Europe	Glatiramer acetate (GA)	Nano-emulsion and Proteosomes for GA via parenteral route and nasal route for improving neuroinflammation in AD	2011	Frenkel *et al*., 2011	
US 2011 0045050A1	USA	Multiple therapeutic agent	Bioavailability of various therapeutic agents can be improved by prepared nano-emulsion	2011	Elbayoumi *et al*., 2011	
US 2013 8349293B2	USA	Metallic ions	Metal-based nanoparticles for diagnosis of AD by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).	2013	Corot, 2013	
WO 2014 076709A1	WIPO	Model drug	Peptide conjugated liposomes for targeting in AD	2014	Allon *et al*., 2014	
US 2014 8877207B2	USA	Cerium oxide	Cerium oxide loaded polymeric nanoparticles containing antibody specific for Aβ embedded to provide improved targeting in AD.	2014	Cimini *et al*., 2014	
EP 2550020 B1	Europe	Metal ions and lipids	Reverse micellar system for enhanced targeting utilizing metal ions and various lipids	2015	Maurel, 2015	
US 2015 9192644B2	USA	Curcuminoid	The formulation contains curcuminoid SLN which are stable at basic pH and enhances the concentration in AD patient brain	2015	Frautschy and Gregory, 2015	
US 2015 0017235A1	USA	Model drug	Liposomes with specific lipids that can decrease Aβ plaques in AD	2015	Masserini *et al*., 2015	
US 2015 0086616A1	USA	NSAIDS	Intranasal NSAIDS for enhanced neuroprotection in AD using various nano-dosage forms	2015	Lehrer, 2015	
US10662226B2	USA	Synthetic beta-amyloid peptides	The synthesized Aβ peptides can form stable, soluble oligomers that are useful for the advancement of knowledge, diagnosis, and management of AD. Related antibodies (specific to oligomeric Aβ) and their developmental techniques are discussed.	2016	Nowick *et al*., 2016	
WO 2018 081460A1	WIPO	An anti-abeta protofibril antibody and a beta-secretase bace1 inhibitor	The novel antibody composition (at a dose ranging from 2.5 mg/kg to 10 mg/kg) is used for treating, preventing, and/or delaying the onset and/or development of AD.	2018	Satlin and Fukushima, 2018	
WO 2018 197383A1	WIPO	Idalopirdine, Baclofen and Acamprosate	Novel combined therapeutic, their salts and prodrugs were invented for the management of AD.	2018	Cohen *et al*., 2018	
WO 2018 148821A1	WIPO	Ginseng and ginsenosides	Active combination of ginseng and ginsenosides for improved cognition behaviour and bioavailability in brain cells.	2018	Kay and Maclellan, 2018	
10485766	USA	Nanoparticles	In this invention, Bryostatin-1 oral nanoparticles were developed claiming rapid restoration of cognitive performance in Alzheimer's transgenic mice.	2019	Castor *et al*., 2019	
EP2994160 (B1)	Europe	IgG and/ or anti-beta amyloid monochlonal antibody	Present study claims treatment of AD (subject carrying ApEO4 allele) with therapeutically effective amount of pooled immunoglobulin G and/or anti-beta amyloid monochlonal antibody for the period of two weeks.	2019	Gelmont *et al*., 2019	
WO 2020 023530A3	WIPO	Anti-Aβ protofibril antibody	The invention claims effective administration of a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of anti-Aβ protofibril antibody for the treatment of AD. The focus of invention is to convert amyloid positive subjects to negative in early Alzheimer case.	2019	Luthman *et al*., 2019	
10,828,276	USA	Bryostatin-1 and Retinoic acid	Nanospheres co-encapsulating a Bryoid and a Retinoid to improve synergistically alpha-secretase production and reduce beta-amyloid plaque generation.	2020	Castor, 2020	

studies of these nanocarriers can possibly disclose a long-term systemic efficacy or potential toxicity in biological systems which can be correlated with *in vitro* systems. Despite the fact that the registration of patents related to nanotechnology-based systems is presently rising, clinical studies are required to assess their clinical efficacy and potential toxicological effects in humans. A detailed focus on the stability and safety in terms of biological retention, exposure time, nanocarrier size, dose, and metabolites of various polymers of the nanocarriers is also required. Subsequently, an assessment of the safety and adequacy of appropriate nanocarriers by conducting clinical studies in humans can result in encouraging cost-effective AD therapeutics.

Table 7. Drugs used in phase III clinical studies for the treatment of AD patients.

Title of the study and/or Name of the therapeutic agent	Identifier no. of ClinicalTrials.gov	Therapeutic agent's biological classification	Patient group enrolled in the clinical trial	Current status of the clinical trial and results of previous trials, if applicable.
BHV-4157	NCT03605667	Small molecule designed for neuroprotection	Patients with mild to moderate AD	Active and not recruiting
BIIB092	NCT03352557	It is an anti-tau monoclonal antibody	Patients with early AD	Active and not recruiting
Exercise combined with Losartan, Amlodipine and Atorvastatin	NCT02913664	Physical activity along with small drugs to control high B.P. and hyperlipidemia	Senior adults at high risk for vascular dementia and/or AD	Active and not recruiting
Methylphenidate	NCT02346201	Small molecule designed to reduce neuropsychiatric symptoms related to apathy	Patients with Alzheimer's disease	Active and not recruiting
ALZT-OP1a / ALZT-OP1b	NCT02547818	ALZT-OP1a is anti-inflammatory and anti-amyloid. ALZT-OP1b is anti-inflammatory. Both of these are small molecules.	Patients with early AD	Active and not recruiting
Nabilone	NCT02351882	This small molecule is a cannabinoid designed to control neuropsychiatric symptoms and calm agitation.	Patients with moderate to severe AD	Completed

Table 8. Drugs used in phase II clinical studies for the treatment of AD patients.

Title of the study and/or Name of the therapeutic agent	Identifier no. of ClinicalTrials.gov	Therapeutic agent's biological classification	Patient group enrolled in the clinical trial	Current status of the clinical trial and outcomes of previous trials, if applicable
COR388	NCT03823404	Anti-inflammatory	Patients with mild to moderate AD-related dementia	Recruiting
AMX0035	NCT03533257	Neuroprotective small molecule designed to inhibit mitochondrial and endoplasmic reticulum stress	Patients with AD-related early dementia, or late mild cognitive impairment	Active and not recruiting
AstroStem	NCT03117738	Mesenchymal stem cells derived from autologous adipose tissues	Patients having mild-to-moderate AD	Completed
Cilostazol	NCT02491268	Small molecule designed to act as an anti-platelet agent by inhibiting phosphodiesterase-3 (PDE-3). It is a neuroprotective factor that reduces the accumulation of amyloid deposits and the phosphorylation of tau protein	Patients with AD and with mild cognitive impairment	Active and not recruiting
S47445	NCT02626572	Neurotransmitter	Patients with AD, who are affected by mild to moderate depressive symptoms.	Completed.

CONCLUSION

Significant advancement has been achieved in AD therapeutics, but the entire currently available approaches target on mitigating symptoms instead of curing, implying that AD can still be considered as an unresolvable neurodegenerative disorder and needs interim advancement. Nanotechnological applications offer a lucrative efficient strategy for the AD treatment. A plethora of nanocarriers have been developed that have ability to cater to the limitations of conventional therapy, can assist in preliminary diagnosis, enhance therapeutic efficacy and bioavailability, offer negligible cytotoxicity in animal models, and present newer possibilities for development of superior formulations of potent drugs intended for AD therapeutics.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

All authors made substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; took part in drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; agreed to submit to the current journal; gave final approval of the version to be published; and agree to be accountable for all aspects of the work. All the authors are eligible to be an author as per the international committee of medical journal editors (ICMJE) requirements/guidelines.

FUNDING

There is no funding to report.

CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

The authors report no financial or any other conflicts of interest in this work.

ETHICAL APPROVALS

Not applicable.

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

This journal remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published institutional affiliation.

REFERENCES

Abbasi E, Aval SF, Akbarzadeh A, Milani M, Nasrabadi HT, Joo SW, Hanifehpour Y, Nejati-Koshki K, Pashaei-Asl R. Dendrimers: synthesis, applications, and properties. Nanoscale Res Lett, 2014; 9:Article number 247.

Al-Asmari AK, Ullah Z, Tariq M, Fatani A. Preparation, characterization, and *in vivo* evaluation of intranasally administered liposomal formulation of donepezil. Drug Des Devel Ther, 2016; 10:205–15.

Aliev G, Ashraf GM, Tarasov VV, Chubarev VN, Leszek J, Gasiorowski K, Makhmutova A, Baeesa SS, Avila-Rodriguez M,

Ustyugov AA, Bachurin SO. Alzheimer's disease—future therapy based on dendrimers. Curr Neuropharmacol, 2019; 17:288–94.

Allon N, Gavish M, Veenman JA. Liposomes for in vivo delivery. WO Patent No 2014/ 0776709 A1, 2014.

Alyautdin R, Khalin I, Nafeeza MI, Haron MH, Kuznetsov D. Nanoscale drug delivery systems and the blood–brain barrier. Int J Nanomed, 2014; 9:795–811.

Anand A, Arya M, Kaithwas G, Singh G, Saraf SA. Sucrose stearate as a biosurfactant for development of rivastigmine containing nanostructured lipid carriers and assessment of its activity against dementia in C. elegans model. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol, 2019; 49:219–26.

Anand R, Gill KD, Mahdi AA. Therapeutics of Alzheimer's disease: past, present and future. Neuropharmacology, 2014; 76:27–50.

Arias JL, Key aspects in nanotechnology and drug delivery. In: Nanotechnology and drug delivery. Vol. 1: Nanoplatforms in drug delivery. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp 1–27, 2015.

Arumugam K, Subramanian GS, Mallayasamy SR, Averineni RK, Reddy MS, Udupa N. A study of rivastigmine liposomes for delivery into the brain through intranasal route. Acta Pharm, 2008; 58:287–97.

Atri A. Current and future treatments in Alzheimer's disease. Semin Neurol, 2019; 39:227–40.

Atti AR, Palmer K, Volpato S, Winblad B, Ronchi DD, Fratiglioni L. Late-life body mass index and dementia incidence: nine year follow-up data from the Kungsholmen Project. J Am Geriatr Soc, 2008; 56:111–6.

Austen BM, Paleologou KE, Ali SA, Qureshi MM, Allsop D, El-Agnaf OM. Designing peptide inhibitors for oligomerization and toxicity of Alzheimer's β-amyloid peptide. Biochemistry, 2008; 47:1984–92.

Ballard C, Khan Z, Clack H, Corbett A. Nonpharmacological treatment of Alzheimer disease. Can J Psychiatry, 2011; 56:589–95.

Banks WA. Drug delivery to the brain in Alzheimer's disease: consideration of the blood-brain barrier. Adv Drug Deliv Rev, 2012; 64(7):629–39.

Behl C, Davis JB, Lesley R, Schubert D. Hydrogen peroxide mediates amyloid beta protein toxicity. Cell, 1994; 77:817–27.

Benseny-Cases N, Klementieva O, Cladera J. Dendrimers antiamyloidogenic potential in neurodegenerative diseases. New J Chem, 2012; 36:211–6.

Beydoun MA Wang Y, Forno GD, Zonderman AB. Association of adiposity status and changes in early to mid-adulthood with incidence of Alzheimer's disease. Am J Epidemiol, 2008; 168:1179–89.

Bhavna, Md S, Ali M, Ali R, Bhatnagar A, Baboota S, Ali J. Donepezil nanosuspension intended for nose to brain targeting: In vitro and in vivo safety evaluation. Int J Biol Macromol, 2014; 67:418–25.

Braak H, and Braak E. Pathology of Alzheimer's disease. In: Neurodegenerative Diseases. (Calne, D.B., ed.) Saunders, Philadelphia; 1994:585-614.

Brambilla D, Le Droumaguet B, Nicolas J, Hashemi SH, Wu LP, Moghimi SM, Couvreur P, Andrieux K. Nanotechnologies for Alzheimer's disease: diagnosis, therapy, and safety issues. Nanomedicine, 2011; 7: 521–40.

Breteler MM. Vascular involvement in cognitive decline and dementia: epidemiologic evidence from the Rotterdam Study and the Rotterdam Scan Study. Ann N Y Acad Sci, 2000; 903:457–65.

Carvalho KM, Winter E, Antunes AMDS. Analysis of technological developments in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease through patent documents. Intell Inf Manag, 2015; 7:268–72.

Castor TP, Alexander JS, Purdum G, Rios JD, Schrott LM, Tyler TA, Vizcaino MI. Drug delivery system and method for the treatment of neuro-degenerative disease. US patent No 10,485,766, 2019.

Castor TP. Combination therapeutics and methods for the treatment of neurodegenerative and other diseases. US patent No 10,828,276, 2020.

Chen DB, Tian Y, Lu WL, Zhang Q. In vivo study of two types of long-circulating solid lipid nanoparticles containing paclitaxel. Chem Pharm Bull, 2001; 49:1444–7.

Chen Q, Du Y, Zhang K, Liang Z, Li J, Yu H, Ren R, Feng J, Jin Z, Li F, Sun J, Zhou M, He Q, Sun X, Zhang H, Tian M, Ling D. Tau-targeted multifunctional nanocomposite for combinational therapy of Alzheimer's disease. ACS Nano, 2018; 12:1321–38.

Chiang MC, Nicol CJB, Cheng YC, Yen C, Lin CH, Chen SJ, Huang RN. Nanogold neuroprotection in human neural stem cells against amyloid-beta-induced mitochondrial dysfunction. Neuroscience, 2020; 435:44–57.

Chin-Chan M, Navarro–Yepes J, Quintanilla–Vega B. Environmental pollutants as risk factors for neurodegenerative disorders: Alzheimer and Parkinson diseases. Front Cell Neurosci, 2015; 9:124–30.

Cimini A, D'angelo B, Das S, Seal S. Nanoparticles of cerium oxide targeted to an amyloid-beta antigen of Alzheimer's disease and associated methods. US Patent No 2014/ 8877207 B2, 2014.

Claudio P, Reatul K, Brigitte E, Geraldine P. Drug-delivery nanocarriers to cross the blood-brain barrier. In: Nanobiomaterials in drug delivery, Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 2016; doi:10.1016/B978-0-323-42866-8.00010-1.

Cohen D, Nabirochkin S, HAJJ R, Brureau A. Idalopirdine-based combinatorial therapies of alzheimer's disease. WO Patent No 2018/197383A1, 2018.

Corot C. Use of metal nanoparticles in the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. US Patent No 2013/8349293 B2, 2013.

Dara T, Vatarnara A, Sharifzadesh M, Khani S, Vakilnezhad MA, Vakhshiteh F, Meybodi MN, Malvajerd SS, Hassani S, Mosaddegh MH. Improvement of memory deficits in the rat model of Alzheimer's disease by erythropoietin-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles. Neurobiol Learn Mem, 2019; 166:107082.

Do TD, Ul Amin F, Noh Y, Kim MO, Yoon J. Guidance of magnetic nanocontainers for treating Alzheimer's disease using an electromagnetic, targeted drug-delivery actuator. J Biomed Nanotechnol, 2016; 12:569–74.

Edwards RH. Drug delivery via the blood-brain barrier. Nat Neurosci, 2001; 4:221–2.

Elbayoumi T, Kuo F, Markatos P, Faucher K. Nanoemulsion formulations for direct delivery. US Patent No 2011/0045050 A1, 2011.

Elnaggar SRY, Etman SM, Abdelmonsif DA. Intranasal piperine-loaded chitosan nanoparticles as brain-targeted therapy in Alzheimer's disease: optimization, biological efficacy, and potential toxicity, J Pharm Sci, 2015; 104:3544–56.

Ensign LM, Cone R, Hanes J. Oral drug delivery with polymeric nanoparticles: the gastrointestinal mucus barriers. Adv Drug Deliv Rev, 2012; 64:557–70.

Fazil M, Md S, Haque S, Kumar M, Baboota S, Kaur J, Ali J. Development and evaluation of rivastigmine loaded chitosan nanoparticles for brain targeting. Eur J Pharm Sci, 2012; 47:6–15.

Francesco A, Sormanni P, Podpolny M, Chhangur S, Needham LM, Ruggeri FS, Perni M, Limbocker R, Heller GT, Sneideris T, Scheidt T, Mannini B, Habchi J, Lee SF, Salinas PC, Knowles TPJ, Dobson CM, Vendruscolo M. Rational design of a conformation-specific antibody for the quantification of Aβ oligomers. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA, 2020; 117: 13509–18.

Frautschy S, Gregory C. Bioavailable curcuminoid formulations for treating Alzheimer's disease and other age-related disorders. US Patent No 2015/9192644 B2, 2015.

Frenkel D, Maron R, Burt D, Weiner HL. Compositions and methods for treating neurological disorders. Europe Patent No 2332570 A1, 2011.

Gard T, Taquet M, Dixit R, Brach N, Lazar SW. Fluid intelligence and brain functional organization in aging yoga and meditation practitioners. Front Aging Neurosci, 2014; 6:76.

Gelmont DM, Singer J, Fritsch S, Schwarz HP. Treatment of Alzheimer's disease Subpopulations with Pooled Immunoglobulin G. Europe Patent No 2994160 B1, 2019.

Ghalamfarsa G, Hojjat-Farsangi M, Mohammadnia-Afrouzi M, Anvari E, Farhadi S, Yousefi M, Jadidi-Niaragh F. Application of

nanomedicine for crossing the blood-brain barrier: Theranostic opportunities in multiple sclerosis. J Immunotoxicol, 2016; 13:603–19.

Ghasemiyeh P, Mohammadi-Samani S. Solid lipid nanoparticles and nanostructured lipid carriers as novel drug delivery systems: applications, advantages and disadvantages. Res Pharm Sci, 2018; 13:288–303.

Gidwani M, Singh AV. Nanoparticle enabled drug delivery across the blood brain barrier: in vivo and in vitro models, opportunities and challenges. Curr Pharm Biotechnol, 2014; 14:1201–12.

Goedert M, Spillantini MG. A century of Alzheimer's disease. Science, 2006; 314:777–81.

Graham WV, Bonito–Oliva A, Sakmar TP. Update on Alzheimer's disease therapy and prevention strategies. Annu Rev Med, 2017; 68:413–30.

Hardman JG, Limbird LE, Goodman GH. The Pharmacological basis of therapeutics. 11th edition. McGraw Hill Publications, New York, pp 253–54, 2006.

Harilal S, Jose J, Parambi DGT, Kumar R, Mathew GE, Uddin MS, Kim H, Mathew B. Advancements in nanotherapeutics for Alzheimer's disease: current perspectives. J Pharm Pharmacol, 2019; 71:1370–83.

Hettmann T, Gillies SD, Kleinschmidt M, Piechotta A, Makioka K, Lemere CA, Schilling S, Rahfeld J, Lues I. Development of the clinical candidate PBD-C06, a humanized pGlu3-Aβ-specific antibody against Alzheimer's disease with reduced complement activation. Sci Rep, 2020; 10:3294.

Hoffman LB, Lesser GT, Beeri MS, Purohit DP. Less Alzheimer disease neuropathology in medicated hypertensive than nonhypertensive persons. Neurology, 2009; 72:1720–6.

Ieni J, Pratt R. Methods and compositions using cholinesterase inhibitors. US Patent No 2006/0018839 A1, 2006.

Irizarry MC. Biomarkers of Alzheimer disease in plasma. NeuroRx, 2004; 1:226–34.

Ito K, Tatebe T, Suzuki K. Memantine reduces the production of amyloid–beta peptides through modulation of amyloid precursor protein trafficking. Eur J Pharmacol. 2017;798:16–25.

Jalili-Baleh L, Nadri H, Forootanfar H, Samzadeh-Kermani A, Küçükkılınç TT, Ayazgok B, Rahimifard M, Baeeri M, Doostmohammadi M, Firoozpour L, Bukhari SNA, Abdollahi M, Ganjali MR, Emami S, Khoobi M, Foroumadi A. Novel 3-phenylcoumarin-lipoic acid conjugates as multi-functional agents for potential treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Bioorg Chem, 2018; 79:223–34.

Jayaraman A, Pike CJ. Alzheimer's disease and type 2 diabetes: multiple mechanisms contribute to interactions. Curr Diab Rep, 2014; 14:476–82.

Jeong WJ, Bu J, Kubiatowicz LJ, Chen SS, Kim Y, Hong S. Peptide-nanoparticle conjugates: a next generation of diagnostic and therapeutic platforms? Nano Converg, 2018; 5:Article number 38.

Jiang Y, Liu C, Zhai W, Zhuang N, Han T, Ding Z. The optimization design of lactoferrin loaded HupA nanoemulsion for targeted drug transport via intranasal route. Int J Nanomed, 2019; 14:9217–34.

Kamaly N, Yameen B, Wu J, Farokhzad OC, Degradable controlled-release polymers and polymeric nanoparticles: mechanisms of controlling drug release, Chem Rev, 2016; 116:2602–63.

Karaboga S, Nur M, Kemal SM. Analysis of Tau-441 protein in clinical samples using rGO/AuNP nanocomposite-supported disposable impedimetric neuro-biosensing platform: towards Alzheimer's disease detection. Talanta, 2020; 219:121257.

Karami Z, Hamidi M. Cubosomes: remarkable drug delivery potential. Drug Discov Today, 2016; 21(5):789–801.

Katare YK, Daya RP, Gray CS, Luckham RE, Bhandari J, Chauhan AS, Mishra RK. Brain targeting of a water insoluble antipsychotic drug haloperidol via the intranasal route using PAMAM dendrimer. Mol Pharm, 2015; 12:3380–8.

Kaur A, Kuldeep N, Srivastava S, Tyagi A, Dang S. Memantine nanoemulsion: A new approach to treat Alzheimer's disease. J Microencapsul, 2020a; 37:1–30.

Kaur A, Nigam K, Bhatnagar I, Sukhpal H, Awasthy S, Shankar S, Tyagi A, Dang S. Treatment of Alzheimer's diseases using donepezil nanoemulsion: an intranasal approach. Drug Deliv Transl Res, 2020b. doi: 10.1007/s13346-020-00754-z.

Kay DG, Maclellan A. Composition and method for improving cognitive function and brain bioavailability of ginseng and ginsenosides and treating neurodegenerative disease and neurological disorders. WO Patent No 2018/148821A1, 2018.

Klajnert B, Cortijo-Arellano M, Cladera J, Bryszewska M. Influence of dendrimer's structure on its activity against amyloid fibril formation. Biochem Biophys Res Commun, 2006; 345:21–8.

Klementieva O. Glycodendrimers as potential multitalented therapeutics in Alzheimer's disease. InTech, London, UK, 2019; doi:10.5772/intechopen.88974.

Kong SD, Lee J, Ramachandran S, Eliceiri BP, Shubayev VI, Lal R, Jin S. Magnetic targeting of nanoparticles across the intact blood-brain barrier. J Control Release, 2012; 164:49–57.

Kornhuber J, Kennepohl EM, Bleich S, Wiltfang J, Kraus T, Reulbach U, Meineke I. Memantine pharmacotherapy: a naturalistic study using a population pharmacokinetic approach. Clin Pharmacokinet, 2007; 46:599–612.

Kulkarni PV, Roney CA, Antich PP, Frederick J Bonte, Anjanapura V Raghu, Tejraj M Aminabhavi Quinoline-n-butylcyanoacrylate-based nanoparticles for brain targeting for the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. Nanomed Nanobiotechnol, 2010; 2:35–47.

Kumar A, Singh A, Ekavali. A review on Alzheimer's disease pathophysiology and its management: an update. Pharmacol Rep, 2015; 67:195–203.

Le MQ, Carpentier R, Lantier I, Ducournau C, Fasquelle F, Dimier-Poisson I, Betder D. Protein delivery by porous cationic maltodextrin-based nanoparticles into nasal mucosal cells: Comparison with cationic or anionic nanoparticle. Int J Pharm: X, 2019; 1:100001.

Lehrer S. Method for the prevention and treatment of Alzheimer's disease. US Patent No 2015/0086616 A1, 2015.

Li Q, Chen F, Liu Y, Yu S, Gai X, Ye M, Yang X, Pan W. A novel albumin wrapped nanosuspension of meloxicam to improve inflammation-targeting effects. Int J Nanomed, 2018; 13:4711–25.

Loureiro JA, Andrade S, Duarte A, Neves AR, Queiroz JF, Nunes C, Sevin E, Fenart L, Gosselet F, Coelho MA, Pereira MC. Resveratrol and grape extract-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Molecules, 2017; 13:277.

Lundquist P, Artursson P. Oral absorption of peptides and nanoparticles across the human intestine: opportunities, limitations and studies in human tissues. Adv Drug Deliv Rev, 2016; 106:256–76.

Luthman J, Swanson CJ, Zhang Y, Dhadda S, Wang J. Methods of treatment and prevention of alzheimer's disease. WO Patent No 2019/023530A3.

Makhaeva GF, Nadezhda VK, Natalia PB, Sofya VL, Elena VR, Tatyana SS, Alexey AT, Igor VS, Alexey NP, Eugene VR, Vladimir AP, Sergey OB, Rudy JR. Conjugates of tacrine and 1,2,4-thiadiazole derivatives as new potential multifunctional agents for Alzheimer's disease treatment: Synthesis, quantum-chemical characterization, molecular docking, and biological evaluation. Bioorg Chem, 2020; 94:103387.

Maron R, Frenkel D, Weiner HL, Burt D. Novel composition in the form of a medicament for neurological disorders. Indian Patent No. 257811, 2007.

Masserini M, Re F, Sancini G, Forloni G, Salmona M. Liposomes active *in vivo* on neurodegenerative diseases. US Patent No 2015/0017235 A1, 2015.

Masserini M, Re F, Sesana MS. Liposomes capable of effectively binding the beta amyloid peptide. WO Patent No 2009/150686 A1, 2009.

Masserini M. Nanoparticles for Brain Drug Delivery. Int Sch Res Notices, 2013; 2013:238428.

Maurel JC. Reverse micelle microemulsion comprising metal ions and use thereof. Europe Patent No 2550020 B1, 2015.

Mazed M, Mazed S. 2009. Nutritional supplement for the prevention of cardiovascular disease, Alzheimer's disease, diabetes, and regulation and reduction of blood sugar and insulin resistance. US Patent No 2009/0252796 A1.

Md S, Gan SY, Haw YH, Ho CL, Wong S, Choudhury H. In vitro neuroprotective effects of naringenin nanoemulsion against β-amyloid toxicity through the regulation of amyloidogenesis and tau phosphorylation. Int J Biol Macromol, 2018; 118(Pt A):1211–9.

Mehmood Y. Brain targeting drug delivery system: a review. Int J Basic Med Sci Pharm, 2015; 5:32–9.

Mezei M, Turi A, Gaal J, Szekacs G, Szebeni G, Marmarosi T, Magyar K, Lengyel J, Szatmari I. Liposome composition containing selegilin. Canada Patent No 02203513, 2001.

Misra A, Ganesh S, Shahiwala A, Shah SP. Drug delivery to the central nervous system: a review. J Pharm Pharm Sci, 2003; 6:252–73.

Montesinos RN. Liposomal drug delivery to the central nervous system. Intechopen, London, UK, 2017; doi:10.5772/intechopen.70055,.

Mozafari N, Farjadian F, Mohammadi Samani S, Azadi S, Azadi A. Simvastatin-chitosan-citicoline conjugates nanoparticles as the co-delivery system in Alzheimer susceptible patients. Int J Biol Macromol, 2020; 156:1396–407.

Mrak RE, Griffin W. Potential inflammatory biomarkers in Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis, 2005; 8:369–75.

Mudshinge SR, Deore AB, Patil S, Bhalgat CM. Nanoparticles: emerging carriers for drug delivery. Saudi Pharm J, 2011; 19:129–41.

Mukherjee S, Ray S, Thakur RS. Solid lipid nanoparticles: a modern formulation approach in drug delivery system. Indian J Pharm Sci, 2009; 71:349–58.

Munin A, Edwards-Levy F. Encapsulation of natural polyphenolic compounds: a review. Pharmaceutics, 2011; 3:793–829.

Muntimadugu E, Dhommati R, Jain A, Challa VGS, Shaheen, M, Khan W. Intranasal delivery of nanoparticle encapsulated tarenflurbil: A potential brain targeting strategy for Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Pharm Sci, 2016; 92:224–34.

National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (Great Britain). Donepezil, Galantamine, Rivastigmine and Memantine for the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease: Review of NICE Technology Appraisal Guidance 111. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2011.

Navath RS, Kurtoglu YE, Wang B, Kannan S, Romero R, Kannan RM. Dendrimer-drug conjugates for tailored intracellular drug release based on glutathione levels. Bioconjug Chem, 2008; 19:2446–55.

Nazem A, Mansoori GA. Nanotechnology solutions for Alzheimer's disease: advances in research tools, diagnostic methods and therapeutic agents. J Alzheimers Dis, 2008; 13:199–223.

Nazem A. Mansoori GA. Nanotechnology for Alzheimer's disease detection and treatment. Insciences, 2011; 1:169–93.

Nowick JS, Kreutzer AG, Spencer RK, Salveson PJ. Synthetic beta-amyloid peptides capable of forming stable antigenic oligomers. US Patent No 10662226, 2016.

Oesterling BM, Gulati A, Joshi MD. Nanocarrier-based approaches for treatment and detection of Alzheimer's disease. J Nanosci Nanotechnol, 2014; 14:137–56.

Olazaran J, Reisberg B, Clare L. Nonpharmacological therapies in Alzheimer's disease: a systematic review of efficacy. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord, 2010; 30:161–78.

Orive G, Hernández RM, Rodríguez Gascón A, Domínguez-Gil A, Pedraz JL. Drug delivery in biotechnology: present and future. Curr Opin Biotechnol, 2003; 14:659–64.

Pacheco-Quinto J, Pappolla MA Sambamurti K. Hyperhomocysteinemic Alzheimer's mouse model of amyloidosis shows increased brain amyloid b peptide levels. Neurobiol Dis, 2006; 22:651–6.

Parveen S, Sahoo S. Nanomedicine: clinical applications of polyethylene glycol conjugated proteins and drugs. Clin Pharmacokinet, 2006; 45:965–88.

Pashirova TN, Zueva IV, Petrov KA, Lukashenko SS. Mixed cationic liposomes for brain delivery of drugs by the intranasal route: the acetylcholinesterase reactivator 2-PAM as encapsulated drug model. Colloid Surf B, 2018; 171:358–67.

Patel RB, Thakore SD, Patel MR. Patents survey: treatment of alzheimer's disease through nanotechnology-based drug delivery system. In: Nanotechnology applied to pharmaceutical technology. Springer International Publishing AG, Cham, Switzerland, pp 335–58, 2017.

Pinheiro RGR, Granja A, Loureiro JA, Pereira MC, Pinheiro M, Neves AR, Reis S. Quercetin lipid nanoparticles functionalized with transferrin for Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Pharm Sci, 2020; 148:105314.

Prins ND, Scheltens, P. Treating Alzheimer's disease with monoclonal antibodies: current status and outlook for the future. Alz Res Ther, 2013; 5:56.

Qi Y, Guo L, Jiang Y, Shi Y, Sui H, Zhao L. Brain delivery of quercetin-loaded exosomes improved cognitive function in AD mice by inhibiting phosphorylated tau-mediated neurofibrillary tangles. Drug Deliv, 2020; 27:745–55.

Raina P, Santaguida P, Ismaila A, Patterson C, Cowan D, Levine M, Booker L, Oremus M. Effectiveness of cholinesterase inhibitors and memantine for treating dementia: evidence review for a clinical practice guideline. Ann Intern Med, 2008; 148:379–97.

Romano G. Alzheimer's disease—clinical trials. Mater Methods, 2018; 8:2675.

Rosse G. Antibody–Drug conjugates for the treatment of inflammation. ACS Med Chem Lett, 2017; 8:992–4.

Safari J, Zarnegar Z. Advanced drug delivery systems: Nanotechnology of health design: a review. J Saudi Chem Soc, 2014; 18:85–99.

Sainsbury F, Zeng B, Middelberg APJ. Towards designer nanoemulsions for precision delivery of therapeutics. Curr Opin Chem Eng, 2014; 4:11–7.

Sanati M, Khodagholi F, Aminyavari S, Ghasemi F, Gholami M, Kebriaeezadeh A, Sabzevari O, Hajipour MJ, Imani M, Mahmoudi M, Sharifzadeh M. Impact of gold nanoparticles on amyloid β-induced Alzheimer's disease in a rat animal model: Involvement of STIM Proteins. ACS Chem Neurosci, 2019; 10:2299–309.

Santos BF, Daflon MP, Chorilli GM. Nanotechnology-based drug delivery systems for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Int J Nanomed, 2015; 10: 4981–5003.

Saraiva C, Praca C, Ferreira R, Santo T, Ferriera L Bernardino L. Nanoparticle-mediated brain drug delivery: overcoming blood–brain barrier to treat neurodegenerative diseases. J Control Release, 2016; 235:34–47.

Satlin A, Fukushima T. Composition comprising an anti-abeta protofibril antibody and a beta-secretase bace1 inhibitor for the treatment of alzheimer's disease. WO Patent No 2018 /081460A1, 2018.

Selley ML. Increased homocysteine and decreased adenosine formation in Alzheimer's disease. Neurol Res, 2004; 26:554–7.

L. Shah, S. Yadav, and M. Amiji. Nanotechnology for CNS delivery of bio-therapeutic agents. Drug Deliv Transl Res, 2013; 3:336–51.

Sharma HS, Castellani RJ, Smith MA, Sharma A. The blood-brain barrier in Alzheimer's disease: Novel therapeutic targets and nanodrug delivery. Int Rev Neurobiol, 2012; 102:47–90.

Singh R, Lillard JW. Nanoparticle-based targeted drug delivery. Exp Mol Pathol, 2009; 86:215–23.

Sivasankarapillai VS, Jose J, Shanavas MS, Marathakam A, Uddin MS, Mathew B. Silicon quantum dots: Promising theranostic probes for the future. Curr Drug Targets, 2019; 20:1255-1263.

Stampfer MJ. Cardiovascular disease and Alzheimer's disease: common links. J Intern Med, 2006; 260:211–23.

Stegemann S, Leveiller F, Franchi D, Jong H, Linden H. When poor solubility becomes an issue: from early stage to proof of concept. Eur J Pharm Sci, 2007; 31:249–61.

Streeter CC Jensen JE, Cabral HJ, Renshaw PF. Yoga Asana sessions increase brain GABA levels: a pilot study. J Altern Complement Med, 2007; 13:419–26.

Suri K, Wolfram J, Shen H, Ferrari M. Advances in nanotechnology-based drug delivery platforms and novel drug delivery systems. In: Singh M, Salnikova M (eds.). Novel approaches and strategies for biologics, vaccines and cancer therapies. Academic Press, San Diego, CA, pp 41–58, 2015.

Sweeney M, Sagare A, Zlokovic B. Blood–brain barrier breakdown in Alzheimer disease and other neurodegenerative disorders. Nat Rev Neurol, 2018; 14:133–50.

Thakur AK, Kamboj P, Goswami K, Ahuja K. Pathophysiology and management of alzheimer's disease: an overview. J Anal Pharm Res, 2018; 7:226–35.

Thakur G, Micic M, Yang Y,Li W, Movia D, Giordani S, Zhang H, Leblane R. Conjugated Quantum dots inhibit the amyloid β (1-42) fibrillation process. Int J Alz Dis, 2011; 2011:502386.

USFDA. FDA Approves First Drug to Image Tau Pathology in Patients Being Evaluated for Alzheimer's Disease, 2020. Available via: https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-approves-first-drug-image-tau-pathology-patients-being-evaluated-alzheimers-diseas.

Vakilinezhad MA, Amini A, Javar AH, Bahaaddini B, Zarandi BF, Montaseri H, Dinarvand R. Nicotinamide loaded functionalized solid lipid nanoparticles improves cognition in Alzheimer's disease animal model by reducing Tau hyperphosphorylation. DARU, 2018; 2:165–77.

Varghesea NM, Venkatachalam S. Potential nanocarriers for the delivery of drugs to the brain. Chapter 19, In: Nanoengineered biomaterials for advanced drug delivery. Woodhead Publishing Series in Biomaterials, Sawston, UK, pp 449–72, 2020.

Wadghiri YZ, Li J, Wang J, Hoang DM, Sun Y, Xu H, Tsui W, Li Y, Boutajangout A, Wang A, De- Leon M, Wisniewski T. Detection of amyloid plaques targeted by bifunctional USPIO in Alzheimer's disease transgenic mice using magnetic resonance microimaging. PLos One, 2013; 8: e57097.

Watkins PB, Zimmerman HJ, Knapp MJ, Gracon SI, Lewis KW. Hepatotoxic effects of tacrine administration in patients with Alzheimer's disease. JAMA, 1994; 271:992–8.

Watt AD, Crespi GA, Down RA, Ascher DB, Gunn A, Perez KA, McLean CA, Villemagne VL, Parker MW, Barnham KJ, Miles LA. Do current therapeutic anti-Aβ antibodies for Alzheimer's disease engage the target? Acta Neuropathol, 2014; 127:803–10.

Wei X, Chen X, Ying M, Lu W. Brain tumor-targeted drug delivery strategies. Acta Pharmacol Sin, 2014; 4:193–201.

Wisniewski T, Drummond E. Developing therapeutic vaccines against Alzheimer's disease. Expert Rev Vaccines, 2016; 15:401–15.

Wu H, Li J, Zhang Q, Yan X, Guo L, Gao X, Qiu M, Jiang X, Lai R, Chen H. A novel small Odorranalectin-bearing cubosomes: preparation, brain delivery and pharmacodynamic study on amyloid-β_{25-35}-treated rats following intranasal administration. Eur J Pharm Biopharm, 2012; 80s:368–78.

Xiong N, Zhao YJ, Dong XY, Zheng J, Sun Y. Design of a molecular hybrid of dual peptide inhibitors coupled on AuNPs for enhanced inhibition of amyloid beta-protein aggregation and cytotoxicity. Small, 2017; 13:13–20.

Yadollahi R, Vasilev K, Simovic S. Nanosuspension technologies for delivery of poorly soluble drugs. J Nanomater, 2015; 2015:216375.

Yang X, He C, Li J, Chen H, Ma Q, Sui X, Tian S, Ying M, Zhang Q, Luo Y, Zhuang Z, Liu J. Uptake of silica nanoparticles: neurotoxicity and Alzheimer-like pathology in human SK-N-SH and mouse neuro2a neuroblastoma cells. Toxicol Lett, 2014; 229:240–9.

Yusuf M, Khan M, Khan R, Ahmad B. Preparation, characterization, in vivo and biochemical evaluation of brain targeted piperine solid lipid nanoparticles in an experimentally induced Alzheimer's disease model. J Drug Target, 2012; 3:300–11.

Zhang C, Chen J, Feng C, Shao X, Liu Q, Zhang Q, Pang Z, Jiang X. Intranasal nanoparticles of basic fibroblast growth factor for brain delivery to treat Alzheimer's disease. Int J Pharm, 2014a; 461(1–2):192–202.

Zhang C, Zheng X, Wan X, Shao X, Liu Q, Zhang Z, Zhang Q. The potential use of H102 peptide-loaded dual-functional nanoparticles in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. J Control Release, 2014b; 192:317–24.

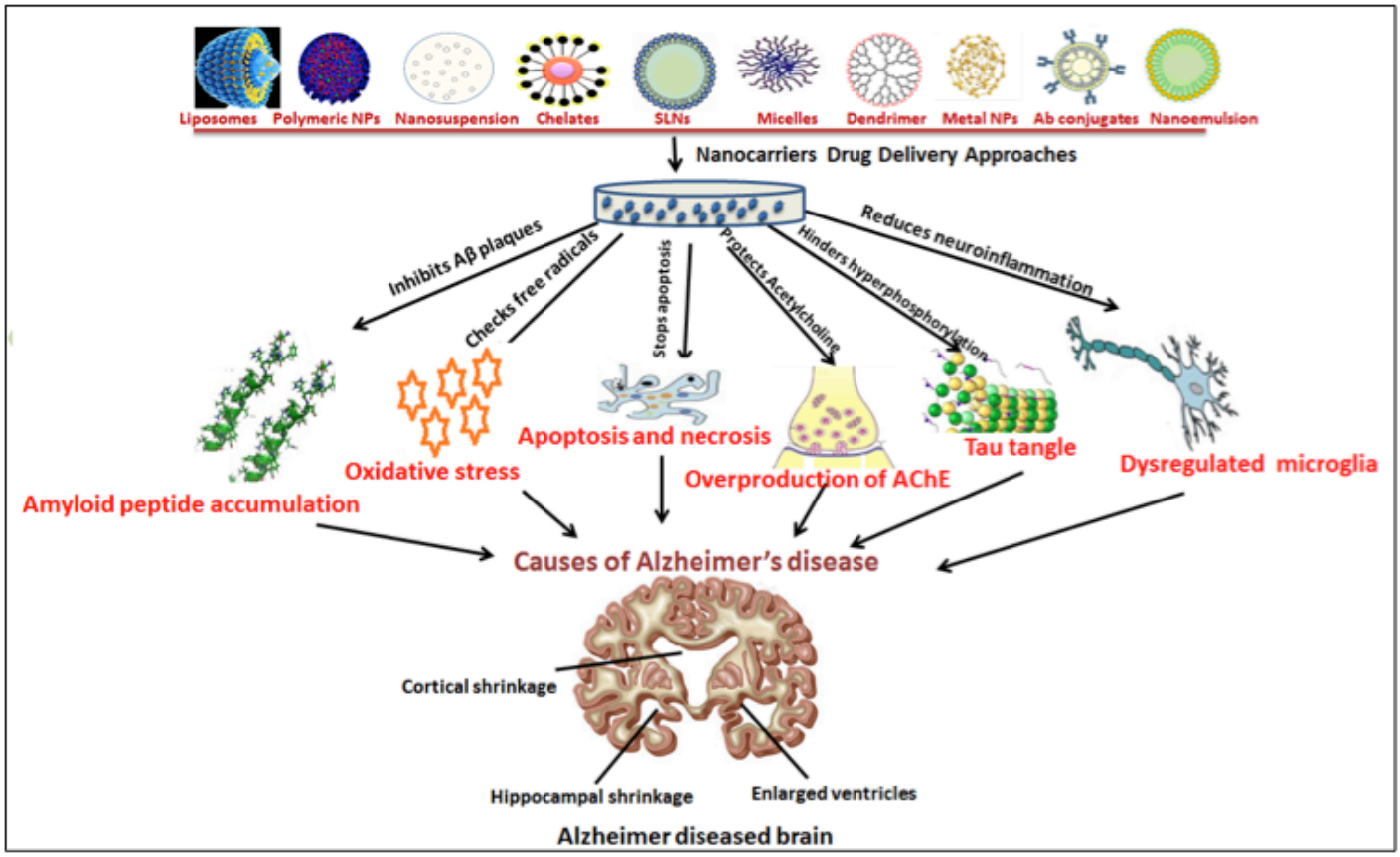
Zhao Y, Cai J, Liu Z, Li Y, Zheng C, Zheng Y, Chen Q, Chen H, Ma F, An Y, Xiao L, Jiang C, Shi L, Kang C, Liu Y. Nanocomposites inhibit the formation, mitigate the neurotoxicity, and facilitate the removal of β-amyloid aggregates in Alzheimer's disease mice. Nano Lett, 2019; 19:674–83.

Zheng X, Pang X, Yang P, Wan X, Wei Y, Guo Q, Zhang Q, Jiang X. A hybrid siRNA delivery complex for enhanced brain penetration and precise amyloid plaque targeting in Alzheimer's disease mice. Acta Biomater, 2017; 49:388–401.

Zheng X, Shao X, Zhang C, Tan Y, Liu Q, Wan X, Zhang Q, Xu S, Jiang X. Intranasal H102 peptide-loaded liposomes for brain delivery to treat Alzheimer's disease. Pharm Res, 2015; 32:3837–49.

How to cite this article:
Pathak K, Mishra SK, Porwal A, Bahad S. Nanocarriers for Alzheimer's disease: Research and patent update. J Appl Pharm Sci, 2021; 11(03):001–021.

GRAPHICAL ABSTRACT



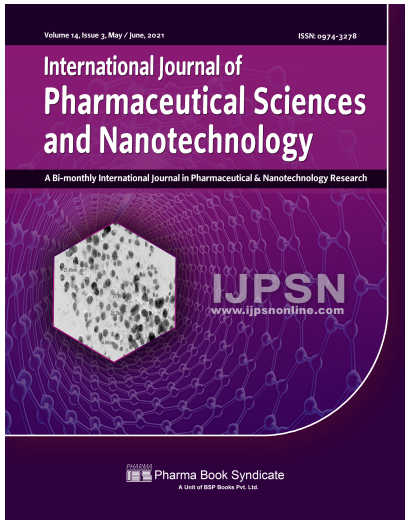
Clinical Management Updates for Novel Corona Virus (COVID-19)

DOI: https://doi.org/10.37285/ijpsn.2021.14.3.1

Yogesh Chand yadav

Ramakant Yadav

Sushant Kumar



ABSTRACT

The SARS-CoV-2 virus was first detected in Wuhan, China in December 2019 and was known to produce acute severe respiratory illness in humans which rapidly spread almost throughout the world within a few months. This human coronavirus has seven strains and they commonly produce illness in the nervous system, respiratory system and hepato- intestinal systems. This present review is an attempt to illustrate recent reports

pertaining to the management of SARS-CoV-2. Further, it also highlights the diagnosis and clinical management of COVID-19. Various search engines like Scopus, Pubmed and WHO databases were accessed and literature on current advances about COVID-19 including structural features, replication, possible pathogenic, symptoms, diagnosis, prognosis, methods of prevention and possible therapeutic agents used for treatment of patients was reviewed. Current studies indicate that COVID-19 is very infectious with droplet transmission potential. The key modalities to prevent the infection is by keeping social distancing, respiratory/hand hygiene, detection of infection and subsequent quarantine of the infected persons. Presently, either no vaccine for prevention or specific treatments available, however, COVID-19 patients may be managed by using some repositioned drugs and symptomatic treatment.

DOWNLOADS

PDF

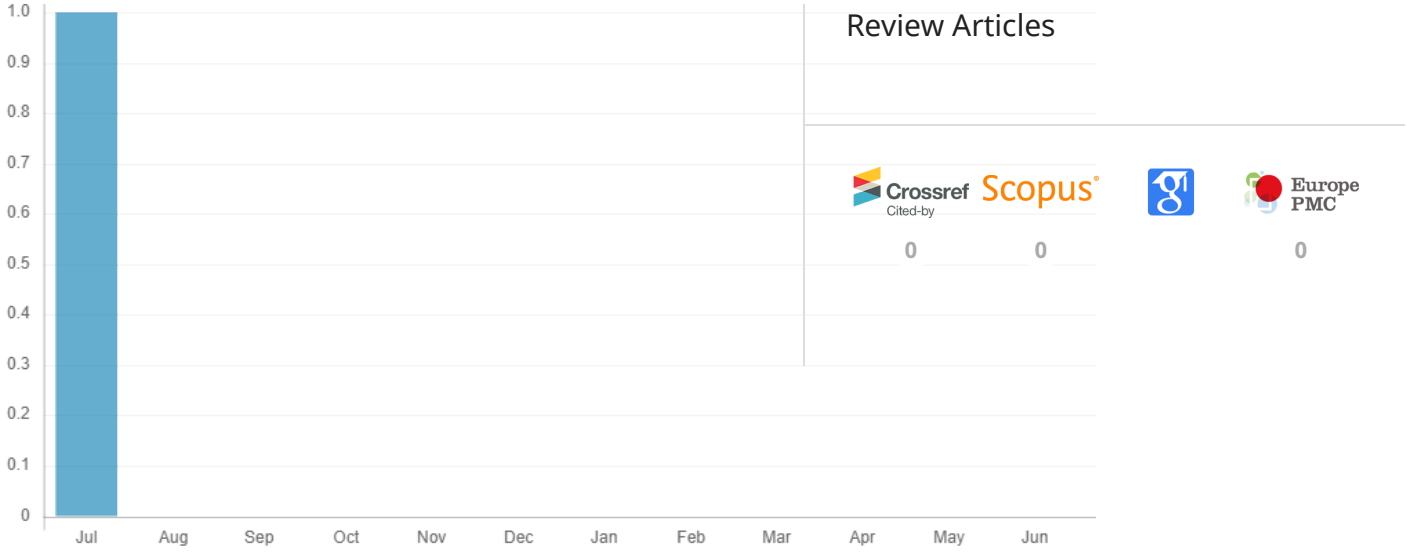
Published
2021-05-09

How to Cite
yadav YC, Yadav R, Kumar S. Clinical Management Updates for Novel Corona Virus (COVID-19). Scopus Indexed [Internet]. 2021 May 9 [cited 2024 Jun. 12];14(3):5449-56. Available from: https://www.ijpsnonline.com/index.php/ijpsn/article/view/2110

More Citation Formats

Issue
Vol. 14 No. 3 (2021): May-June 2021

Section



METRICS

PDF views 6

KEYWORDS: COVID-19, Symptoms, Diagnosis, Prevention, Cure, Clinical Management

References

bovine coronavirus spike protein and identification of the internal proteolytic cleavage site. Virology.176: 296-301.

Al Sulayyim HJ, Khorshid SM and Al Moummar SH (2020). Demographic, clinical and outcomes of confirmed cases of Middle East Respiratory Syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) in Najran, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (KSA); A retrospective record-based study. J Infect Public Health S1876-0341(20); 30444-5.

Al-Bari MAA (2017). Targeting endosomal acidification by chloroquine analogs as a promising strategy for the treatment of emerging viral diseases. Pharmacol Res Perspect 5(1): e00293.

Battegay M, Kuehl R, Tschudin-Sutter S, Hirsch HH, Widmer AF and Neher RA (2020) 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV): Estimating the case fatality rate - A word of caution. Swiss. Med Wkly 150: w20203.

Beigel JH, Voell J, Kumar P, Raviprakash K, Wu H and Jiao JA (2018). Safety and tolerability of a novel, polyclonal human anti-MERS coronavirus antibody produced from transchromosomic cattle: a phase 1 randomised, double-blind, single-dose-escalation study. Lancet Infect Dis 18(4): 410-418.

Beniac DR andonov A and Grudeski E (2006). Architecture of the SARS coronavirus prefusion spike. Nat Struct Mol Biol 13: 751-752.

Bos EC, Luytjes W and van der Meulen HV (1996). The production of recombinant infectious DI-particles of a murine coronavirus in the absence of helper virus. Virology 218: 52-60.

Bosch BJ, van der Zee R and de Haan CA (2003). The coronavirus spike protein is a class I virus fusion protein: structural and functional characterization of the fusion core complex. J Virol 77: 8801-811.

Chan JF, Yuan S, Kok KH, To KK, Chu H and Yang J (2020). A familial cluster of pneumonia associated with the 2019 novel corona virus indicating person-to-person transmission: a study of a family cluster. Lancet 30154-9.

Chang CK, Hou MH, Chang CF, Hsiao CD and Huang TH (2014). The SARS coronavirus nucleocapsid protein forms and functions. Antiviral Research. 103: 39-50.

Chang CK, Sue SC and Yu TH (2006). Modular organization of SARS corona virus nucleocapsid protein. J Biomed Sci 13: 59-72.

Cheng PK, Wong DA and Tong LK (2004). Viral shedding patterns of coronavirus in patients with probable severe acute respiratory syndrome. Lancet 363:1699-170.

Chibo D and Birch C (2006). Analysis of human coronavirus 229E spike and nucleoprotein genes demonstrates genetic drift between chronologically distinct strains. J Gen Virol 87: 1203-1208.

Chu CM, Cheng VC, Hung IF, Wong MM, Chan KH and Chan KS (2004). Role of lopinavir/ritonavir in the treatment of SARS: initial virological and clinical findings. Thorax 59(3): 252-6.

Collins AR, Knobler RL and Powell H (1982), Monoclonal antibodies to murine hepatitis virus-4 (strain JHM) define the viral glycoprotein responsible for attachment and cell–cell fusion. Virology 119: 358-371.

De Backer D and Dorman T (2017). Surviving Sepsis Guidelines: a continuous move toward better care of patients with sepsis". JAMA 317(8):807-808.

De Diego ML, Alvarez E and Almazan F (2007). A severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus that lacks the E gene is attenuated in vitro and in vivo. J Virol 81: 1701-713.

Delmas B and Laude H (1990). Assembly of coronavirus spike protein into trimers and its role in epitope expression. J Virol 64: 5367-375.

Drosten C, Gunther S, Preiser W, Van der Werf S and Brodt (2003). Identification of a novel coronavirus in patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome. N Engl J Med 15; 348(20): 1967-76.

Eckerle, Lu, Sperry, Choi and Denison (2007). High fidelity of murine hepatitis virus replication is decreased in nsp14 exoribonuclease mutants. J Virol 81:12135-12144.

Elfiky AA (2020). Anti-HCV, nucleotide inhibitors, repurposing against COVID-19. Life Sci 248:117477-6.

Emery SL, Erdman DD and Bowen MD (2004). Real-time reverse transcription- polymerase chain reaction assay for SARS- associated coronavirus. Emerg Infect Dis 10: 311-316.

Falsey AR, McCann RM, Hall WJ, et al (1997). The “common cold” in frail older persons: impact of rhinovirus and coronavirus in a senior daycarecenter. J Am Geriatr Soc45:706-711.

Falsey AR, Walsh EE and Hayden FG (2002). Rhinovirus and coronavirus infection-associated hospitalizations among older adults. J Infect Dis 185:1338-1341.

Fehr AR and Perlman S (2015). Corona viruses: an overview of their replication and pathogenesis. Methods Mol Biol 1282:1-23.

Fehr AR, Perlman S, Maier HJ, Bickerton E and Britton P (2015). An Overview of Their Replication and Pathogenesis; Section 2 Genomic Organization". Methods in Molecular Biology. Springer 1282: 1-23.

Ferrey AJ, Choi G, Hanna RM, Chang Y, Tantisattamo E and Ivaturi K (2020). A Case of Novel Coronavirus Disease 19 in a Chronic Haemodialysis Patient Presenting with Gastroenteritis and Developing Severe Pulmonary Disease. Am J Nehru 28: 1-6.

Frank Esper, Carla Weibel, David Ferguson, Marie L. Landry, Jeffrey and Kahn S (2006). Coronavirus HKU1 Infection in the United States. Emerging Infectious Diseases 12(5): 775-779.

Gaunt ER, Hardie A and Claas EC (2010). Epidemiology and clinical presentations of the four human coronaviruses 229E, HKU1, NL63 and OC43 detected over 3 years using a novel multiplex real-time PCR method. J Clin Microbiol 48: 2940-2947.

Godet M, LHaridon R and Vautherot JF (1992). TGEV corona virus ORF4 encodes a membrane protein that is incorporated into virions. Virology 188: 666-675

Goldsmith CS, Tatti KM, Ksiazek TG, Rollin PE, Comer JA and Lee WW (2004). Ultrastructural characterization of SARS coronavirus". Emerging Infectious Diseases 10(2): 320-326.

Graham RL, Donaldson EF and Baric RS (2013). A decade after SARS: Strategies for controlling emerging coronaviruses. Nat Rev Microbiol.11: 836-482.

Guan Y, Zheng BJ, He YQ, Liu XL, Zhuang ZX, Cheung CL, Luo SW and Li PH (2003) Isolation and characterization of viruses related to the SARS coronavirus from animals in southern China. Science 302: 276-278.

Guangyu Z and Qi Z (2020). Perspectives on therapeutic neutralizing antibodies against the novel Coronavirus SARS-CoV-2. Int J Biol Sci.16(10):1718-1723.

Guo J, Xie H, Liang M and Wu H (2020), COVID-19 a novel coronavirus and a novel challenge for oral healthcare. Clin Oral Investig 10: 1007/s00784.

Hamre D and ProcknowJJ (1966). A new virus isolated from the human respiratory tract. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 121:190-193.

Hamzah ZF, EmmaD, ShazaadA, NicholasM, MalcolmG and Andrew Turner J (2020). Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV)- Surveillance and testing in North England from 2012 to 2019. International Journal of Infectious Diseases 93: 237-244.

Hurst KR, Koetzner CA and Masters PS (2009). Identification of in vivo-interacting domains of the murine coronavirus nucleocapsid protein. J. Virol 83: 7221-7234.

Ip VHY, Sondekoppam RV, Ozelsel TJP and Tsui BCH (2020). Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic: International variation of personal protective equipment (PPE) and infection prevention and control (IPC) guidelines. AnesthAnalg 10 (1213): 1-6

James H McMahon AndrewUdy and Anton YP (2020). Remdesivir for the Treatment of Covid-19 - Preliminary Report. N Engl J Med 10; 383:10.1056.

Jan H, Faisal S, Khan A, Khan S, Usman H, Liaqat R and Shah SA (2020). COVID-19: Review of Epidemiology and Potential Treatments Against 2019 Novel Coronavirus. Discoveries (Craiova) 26; 8(2): e108.

Kahn JS and McIntosh K (2005). History and recent advances in coronavirus discovery. Pediatr Infect Dis J 24 (11Suppl): S223-7.

Kubo H, Yamada YK and Taguchi F (1994). Localization of neutralizing epitopes and the receptor-binding site within the amino-terminal 330 amino acids of the murine coronavirus spike protein. J Virol 68: 5403-410.

Lai MM and Cavanagh D (2019). The molecular biology of coronaviruses. Advances in Virus Research 48: 1-100.

Lau SK, Woo PC, Li KS, Huang Y, Tsoi HW, Wong BH, Wong SS, Leung SY, Chan KH and Yuen KY (2005). Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-like virus in Chinese horseshoe bats. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America 102(39):14040-14045.

LeeN, Allen Chan KC, Hui DS, Ng EK, Wu A and Chiu RW (2004). Effects of early corticosteroid treatment on plasma SARS-associated Coronavirus RNA concentrations in adult patients. J Clin Virol 31(4): 304-9.

Li F, Li W, Farzan M and Harrison SC (2005). Structure of SARS coronavirus spike receptor-binding domain complexed with receptor. Science 309 (5742): 1864-1868.

Li W, Moore MJ and Vasilieva N (2003). Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 is a functional receptor for the SARS coronavirus. Nature 426: 450-454.

Li W, Shi Z, Yu M, Ren W, Smith C, Epstein JH, Wang H, Crameri G, Hu Z, Zhang H and Zhang J (2005). Bats are natural reservoirs of SARS-like coronaviruses. Science 310(5748): 676-679.

Liu C, Zhou Q, Li Y, Linda V. Garner L V and Watkins SP (2020). Research and Development on Therapeutic Agents and Vaccines for COVID-19 and Related Human Coronavirus Diseases". ACS Cent. Sci 6(3): 315-331.

LuytjesW, Sturman LS and Bredenbeek PJ (1987). Primary structure of the glycoprotein E2 of coronavirus MHV-A59 and identification of the trypsin cleavage site. Virology 161: 479-487.

McIntosh K, Becker WB and Chanock RM (1967). Growth in suckling-mouse brain of "IBV-like" viruses from patients with upper respiratory tract disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A58: 2268-273.

McIntosh K, Ellis EF, Hoffman LS, Lybass TG, Eller JJ and Fulginiti VA (1973). Association of viral and bacterial respiratory infection with exacerbations of wheezing in young asthmatic children. Chest 63(suppl): 43S.

Meo S.A., Klonoff D.C. and Akram J (2020). Efficacy of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine in the treatment of COVID-19. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 24 (8): 4539-4547.

Molenkamp R and Span WJ (1997). Identification of a specific interaction between the coronavirus mouse hepatitis virus A59 nucleocapsid protein and packaging signal. Virology 239: 78-86.

Neuman BW, Adair BD, Yoshioka C, Quispe JD, Orca G and Kuhn P (2006). Supramolecular architecture of severe acute respiratory syndrome corona virus revealed by electron cryomicroscopy. Journal of Virology 80 (16): 7918-7928.

Neuman BW, Kiss G, Kunding AH, Bhella D, Baksh MF and Connelly S (2011). A structural analysis of M protein in coronavirus assembly and morphology. Journal of Structural Biology 174(1): 11-22.

Nieto-Torres JL, Dediego ML and Verdia- Baguena C (2014). Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus envelope protein ion channel activity promotes virus fitness and pathogenesis. PLoSPathog 10(5): e1004077.

QunLi, Xuhua Guan and Peng Wu (2020). Early Transmission Dynamics in Wuhan, China, of Novel Coronavirus–Infected Pneumonia. N Engl J Med 382(13): 1199-1207.

Romette JL (2018). The European Virus Archive goes global: A growing resource for research. Antiviral Res 158:127-134.

Rota P, Oberste S and Monroe S (2003). Characterization of a Novel Coronavirus Associated with Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Science 300(5624): 1394-9.

Sahar AR and Burtram CF (2010). Understanding Human Coronavirus HCoV-NL63. Open Virol J 4: 76-84.

Schoeman D and Fielding BC (2019). Coronavirus envelope protein: current knowledge. Virol J 16(69): 1-22

Sethna PB, Hofmann MA and Brian DA (1991). Minus-strand copies of replicating coronavirus mRNAs contain antileaders. J Virol 65: 320-325.

Sexton NR, Smith EC, Blanc H, Vignuzzi M, Peersen OB and Denison MR (2016). Homology-Based Identification of a Mutation in the Coronavirus RNA-Dependent RNA polymerase that Confers Resistance to Multiple Mutagens. Journal of Virology 90(16): 7415-7428.

Sheahan TP, Sims AC, Leist SR, Schäfer A, Won J and Brown AJ (2020). Comparative therapeutic efficacy of remdesivir and combination lopinavir, ritonavir and interferon beta against MERS-CoV. Nat Commun 11(222):13940-6.

Shio-Shin Jean and Ping-Ing Lee PH (2020). Treatment options for COVID-19: The reality and challenges. J Microbiol Immunol Infect 53(3):436-443.

Simmons G, Zmora P, Gierer S, Heurich A and Pohlmann S (2013). Proteolytic activation of the SARS-coronavirus spike protein: cutting enzymes at the cutting edge of antiviral research. Antiviral Research 100 (3): 605-614.

Siu YL, Teoh KT and Lo J (2008). The M, E and N structural proteins of the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus are required for efficient assembly, trafficking and release of virus-like particles. J Virol 82:11318-11330.

Smith, Case, Blanc, Isakov, Shomron, Vignuzzi and Denison N (2015). Mutations in coronavirus nonstructural protein 10 decrease virus replication fidelity. J Virol 89: 6418-6426.

Stohlman SA, Baric RS and Nelson GN (1988). Specific interaction between coronavirus leader RNA and nucleocapsid protein. J Virol 62: 4288-4295.

Van der Hoek L, Pyrc K and Jebbink MF (2004). Identification of a new human coronavirus. Nat Med 1004: 10: 368-373.

Van der Hoek L, Sure K and Ihorst G (2005). Croup is associated with the novel coronavirus NL63. PLoS Med. 2: e240.

Vijgen L, Keyaerts E and Lemey P (2005). Circulation of genetically distinct contemporary human coronavirus OC43 strains. Virology 337: 85-92.

Wang M (2020). Clinical diagnosis of 8274 samples with 2019-novel coronavirus in Wuhan. medRxiv preprint: 1: 1-18.

Wang M, Cao R, Zhang L, Yang X, Liu J, Xu M, Shi Z, Hu Z, Zhong W and Xiao G (2020). Remdesivir and chloroquine effectively inhibit the recently emerged novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) in vitro.

Cell Res 30(3): 269-271.

WHO Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19). WHO; 2020. Health topic/Coronavirus.

Woo PC, Lau SK and Chu CM (2005). Characterization and complete genome sequence of a novel coronavirus, coronavirus HKU1, from patients with pneumonia. J Virol 79: 884-889.

Yang R and Yu H (2004). The Spike Protein of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) Is Cleaved in Vírus Infected Vero-E6 cells, China. Cell Research. 14(5): 400-406.

Yang Y, Peng F, Wang R, Guan K, Jiang T, Xu G, Sun J and Chang C (2020). The deadly coronaviruses: The 2003 SARS pandemic and the 2020 novel coronavirus epidemic in China. J Autoimmun 109:102434.

Young BE, Ong SWX, Kalimuddin S, Low JG, Tan SY and Loh J (2020). Epidemiologic Features and Clinical Course of Patients Infected With SARS-CoV-2 in Singapore. JAMA 3: 10. 1001.

Yount, Denison, Weiss and Baric (2002). Systematic assembly of a full-length infectious cDNA of mouse hepatitis virus strain A59. J Virol 76:11065-11078.

Zheng BJ and He YQ (2003). Isolation and characterization of viruses related to the SARS coronavirus from animals in southern China. Science 302: 276-278.

Zhou F, Yu T, Du R, Fan G, Liu Y, Liu Z, Xiang J and Wang Y (2020). Clinical course and risk factors for mortality of adult in patients with COVID-19 in Wuhan, China: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet 395(10229):1054-1062.

Most read articles by the same author(s)

Sushant Kumar, Satheesh Madhav N V, Anurag Verma, Kamla Pathak, An Innovative Approach for Development and Evaluation of Nanosized Lamotrigine Loaded Bionanoparticles Using Biopolymer

from Fragaria × ananassa Fruit , International Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Nanotechnology(IJPSN); Vol. 13 No. 4 (2020); July-August 2020

Registered Address :

Pharma Book Syndicate
Ansuya Bhavan
Opp. Central Bank , Bank Street,
Hyderabad-500095, India

Marketing/Sales Office Address :

Pharma Book Syndicate, A Unit of BSP Books Pvt. Ltd.
Journal Subscription Division, 4-4-309, Giriraj Lane, Sultan Bazar,
Hyderabad - 500 095 - Telangana., India
journal@bspbooks.net

Publishers's Website

https://bspbooks.net/main.php

For Article Status /Queries

Send whatsapp message with
Manuscript No. only to mobile no.9999201152
Email id : ijpsnpgi@gmail.com

For Journal Subscription

Mr Naresh
Mobile Number 9849945062
Email id : production@bspbooks.net
Mr Nikunjesh
Mobile Number 8374105220
Email id : nikunjesh.shah@bspbooks.net

BioMed Research International / Volume 2021, Issue 1 / 6068952

Review Article | Open Access

An Update on Assessment, Therapeutic Management, and Patents on Insomnia

Amit Porwal, Yogesh Chand Yadav, Kamla Pathak, Ramakant Yadav

First published: 18 October 2021
https://doi.org/10.1155/2021/6068952
Citations: 12

Academic Editor: Renata Ferreira

Abstract

Insomnia is an ordinary situation related to noticeable disability in function and quality of life, mental and actual sickness, and mishappenings. It represents more than 5.5 million appointments to family doctors every year. Nonetheless, the ratio of insomniacs who are treated keeps on being low, demonstrating the requirement for proceeding with advancement and dispersal of effective treatments. Accordingly, it becomes significant to provide a compelling treatment for clinical practice. It indicates a need for the determination of various critical viewpoints for the evaluation of insomnia along with various accessible alternatives for treatment. These alternatives incorporate both nonpharmacological therapy, specifically cognitive behavioural therapy for insomnia, and a number of pharmacological treatments like orexin antagonists, “z-drugs,” benzodiazepines, selective histamine H1 antagonists, nonselective antihistamines, melatonin receptor agonists, antipsychotics, antidepressants, and anticonvulsants. Besides in individuals whose insomnia is due to restless leg syndrome, depression/mood disorder, or/and circadian disturbance, there is insignificant proof favouring the effectiveness of different prescriptions for the treatment of insomnia though they are widely used. Other pharmacological agents producing sedation should be prescribed with care for insomnia therapy because of greater risk of next-day sleepiness along with known adverse effects and toxicities. This review is also aimed at providing an update on various patents on dosage forms containing drugs for insomnia therapy.

1. Introduction

Insomnia is one of the most widely recognized issues experienced by the medical practitioners, accounting for more than 5.5 million prescriptions yearly [1]. Insomnia has been defined by the American Academy of Sleep Medicine to be the individual observation of trouble related to onset of sleep, time span, consolidation, or quality that come about regardless of sufficient time for sleep and that outcomes in some type of mental and physical unfitness during daytime [2–5]. Insomnia is a typical circumstance with prevalence point of approximately 10% in general population [6–9]. It is related to at least one of the following symptoms: trouble in sleep initiation (initial insomnia or sleep-onset insomnia), trouble in maintaining sleep (middle insomnia or sleep-maintenance insomnia), and early-morning arousing along with problem to get back to sleep (late insomnia) [4, 10].

There is a tremendous rise in the number of patients visiting physicians for insomnia from 5.3 million in 1999 to 208 million in 2010 [1]. The possibility of females experiencing insomnia is greater as compared to males, and they are two times as liable to be diagnosed with sleep disorders [8, 11]. In case of females, the hormonal changes, generally in the third trimester of pregnancy and postmenopausal changes, are also responsible for increasing the frequency of insomnia [8]. Though insomnia is especially common in elderly individuals, with indications found in almost 65% of people 65 years or older, it can occur at any age [12, 13]. Patients with concomitant diseases like respiratory problems, cardiovascular diseases, painful conditions, and neurological illness are at greater risk [14]. Population studies propose that it is highly predominant in individuals who are separated, unemployed, have encountered the demise of a family member, widowed, divorced, or of lower financial status [15–17]. It is also highly reported in individuals withdrawing from narcotics or alcohol.

In most of the instances, insomnia occurs concomitantly with physical or psychiatric problems. The relation between insomnia and the above conditions are complicated and at times bidirectional [18–21]. Indeed, insomnia can be a risk factor for nervousness, major depression, diabetes, hypertension, substance use disorders, and suicidal tendencies [22–28]. In addition to these factors along with the fact that insomnia results in decrement in life quality and a greater risk for falls and accidents, it is suggested the therapy should be specific for treating the insomnia once diagnosed, even if it occurs along with psychiatric or physical conditions [29, 30]. More than 80% of adults are affected every year by occurrence of short-term or acute insomnia. Chronic insomnia (more than 3 months of time span) is characterized by trouble in onset of sleep, inadequate sleep, or nonrestorative sleep resulting in complaints of daytime sleepiness, irritability, exhaustion, or problem in focusing and carrying out day-to-day work [31]. For individuals meeting the symptomatic basis for insomnia, various scientific therapies can be

approached including nonpharmacological as well as pharmacological therapies [32–34]. The suggested first-line treatment for insomnia is nonpharmacologic, like sleep restriction, relaxation training, and stimulus control. Drugs used for the treatment of insomnia are categorized as sedatives, hypnotics, drugs inducing sedation as a side effect, the drugs used in the treatment of insomnia-inducing sleep diagnoses like restless leg syndrome (RLS), and medicines regulating the sleep-associated circadian neuroendocrine system [35–37]. The impact of this disorder on public health with regard to frequency, morbidness, and effects on health and quality of life strictly requires its effective diagnosis and treatment in the clinical practice. This objective of this article is to review the diagnosis and treatment strategies for insomnia [34].

2. Pathophysiology of Insomnia

Various factors usually responsible for insomnia are psychological, physical, biological, environmental, and their interactions. Insomnia is frequently believed to be a disease related to hyperarousal [38], or enhanced cognitive, somatic, and cortical activation [39]. Patients with insomnia may encounter physiologic hyperarousal in both peripheral and central nervous systems. Hyperarousal can also be indicated as emotional and cognitive processes, with few theories recommending that affective and cognitive hyperarousal at sleep time may result in both acute and chronic insomnia [40]. Hyperarousal can be determined by measuring EEG, variability in heart rate, raised cortisol, or even self-report.

2.1. Genetics Involved in Sleep and Insomnia

Sleep and wake attributes, for example, sleeping time and duration, are hereditary [41] and controlled by various genes [42]. Involvement of genetic mechanisms in the etiology of insomnia is also implicated in animal and human investigations. Volunteer's gene assessment has recognized gene variants that might be engaged in the pathophysiology of insomnia, such as $PER3^{4/4}$ [43], homozygous Clock gene 3111C/C Clock [44], Apoε^4 [45], short (s-) allele of the 5-HTTLPR [46], and HLA DQB1∗0602 [47]. A study based on genomes revealed various single-nucleotide polymorphisms considerably related to insomnia symptoms [48]. The most considerable single-nucleotide polymorphisms found within genes are associated with stress reactivity (e.g., STK39, USP25, and MARP10), neuroplasticity (e.g., ROR1, PLCB1, EPHA4, and CACNA1A), mental health (e.g., NPAS3), and neuronal excitability (e.g., GABRB1 and DLG2) [48].

As a whole, the abovementioned evidences suggest considerable heritability and involvement of multiple gene in the pathophysiology of insomnia. Genes most consistently found to be related to insomnia are genes linked to sleep-wake

processes, arousal regulation, and brain functioning. The unpredictable interplay of these genes is responsible, at least to a limited extent, for the heterogeneity discovered in insomnia indications and outcomes. Future hereditary investigations with thorough evaluation of health and sleep history of individuals with chronic insomnia problem may additionally refine our comprehension of hereditary components associated in the characteristics and development of insomnia.

2.2. Molecular Mechanisms of Sleep and Insomnia

Various substances regulating sleep are connected to sleep regulation and circadian rhythmicity. In spite of perceiving the oversimplification [49], it is contended that endogenous substances are classified mainly as wake-suppressing/sleep-promoting (such as *γ*-aminobutyric acid [GABA], prostaglandin D2, serotonin, adenosine, and melatonin) and sleep-suppressing/wake-promoting substances (like orexin, catecholamines, and histamine). A smaller number of molecular investigations were performed on insomnia, and only a few molecules have been focused (e.g., cortisol and GABA) [50]. Results are mixed across investigations, without any steady pattern for a particular kind of molecule (wake versus sleep-inducing) has arisen. In spite of conflicting evidence, findings have mainly been deciphered with reference to hyperarousal model. For instance, raised [51] and decreased [52] levels of GABA in the occipital cortex of individuals with insomnia were found to be compatible with the hyperarousal hypothesis of insomnia. Nevertheless, sleep regulatory molecules link with one another unpredictably, and large number of their impacts are reliant upon the milieu of the brain state, i.e., they are state-dependent. The abovementioned parameters make it unpredictable that all instances of insomnia can be described by changes in any one kind of molecule (e.g., hyperarousal-related). Further refined conceptualization states that chronic insomnia develops from fragmentation of the alternating rhythms of sleep-regulatory and wake-promoting molecules in the brain [53].

Humans respond with different patterns in body temperature alterations, feeding, sleeping, and other biological functions to cycles of light and dark. The light signals received by the retina are translated by the pineal gland into a language understandable to the rest of the body, for example, via the synthesis of the hormone melatonin generally produced and released at night and thus regulating the metabolic activity of the body during sleep. The synthesis of melatonin and its release in the pineal gland are also regulated by another hormone norepinephrine. Norepinephrine functions by binding to its receptors in cell membranes. Earlier, it was thought that all these norepinephrine receptors acted independently of other proteins. However, in the recent investigations, it was found that this is not the case. Actually, these receptors collude with other dopamine receptors to form “heteromers.” Now, if dopamine binds with its receptors, it results in inhibition of norepinephrine effects, i.e., a reduction in the production of melatonin and its release. Incidentally, it was found that these

dopamine receptors become visible only in the pineal gland near to the end of the night, as the dark phase diminishes. Thus, it was concluded by the researchers that the heteromer formation is an effective mechanism to halt melatonin production as the day starts and to "wake up" the brain. "These findings are fascinating as they revealed a mechanism by which dopamine, generally raised at times of stimulation, can directly hinder production and release of a hormone, melatonin, responsible for inducing drowsiness and prepares the body for sleep" [54].

3. Classification of Sleep Disorders

The primary classification of sleep disorders, the Diagnostic Classification of Sleep and Arousal Disorders, published in 1979 [55], classified sleep disorders into symptomatic classes forming the ground for the current classification systems. The International Classification of Sleep Disorders (ICSD) was first published in 1990. The ICSD classification, prepared mainly for epidemiologic, diagnostic, and at the point, research intention, has been broadly utilized by researchers and has permitted greater international correspondence in research related to sleep disorders [56]. The ICSD underwent minor updates and alterations leading to version 2 (ICSD-2) in 2005. The ICSD-2 classified the 81 major sleep disorders in eight significant classes. On the same basic outline as the ICSD-2, ICSD-3 was prepared, identifying seven major categories as follows [57]:

(1) Insomnia

(2) Sleep-associated breathing disorders

(3) Central disorders of hypersomnolence

(4) Circadian rhythm sleep/wake disorders

(5) Parasomnia

(6) Sleep-associated movement disorders

(7) Other sleep disorders

The disease insomnia can be classified as primary and secondary insomnia. Though the etiology of primary insomnia includes both intrinsic and extrinsic factors associated, yet they are not viewed as being secondary to another problem. Secondary

insomnia mainly occurs due to manifestations of a psychiatric or medical disease, another sleep problem, or drug addiction [58]. Though primary insomnia can appear in any individual, chronic insomnia mainly develops in a subgroup of people having fundamental inclination to insomnia [59]. Chronic insomnia is distinguished by indications that appear at least 3 times in a week for at least 3 months. Insomnias that remain for less than 3 months are termed as short-term insomnia. In few instances, individuals may display insomnia indications not fulfilling the basis for short-term insomnia and so require different kinds of therapy and is termed as other insomnia [60].

Though insomnia can be distinguished by various methods, most diagnoses can be classified as one of two categories [61]:

(1) Sleep-onset insomnia is associated with problem in getting asleep. It mainly appears in individuals who have a hard time relaxing in bed, and also individuals whose circadian rhythm disturbs because of factors like jet lag or unpredictable work schedules

(2) Sleep maintenance insomnia is associated with problem in continuing asleep after initial sleep onset. It mainly occurs in elderly people, along with persons who intake caffeine, tobacco, or alcohol before bed. Some diseases like sleep apnoea and RLS can also result in sleep maintenance insomnia

Few patients may have blended insomnia including both sleep-onset and sleep maintenance problem, and persons with chronic insomnia may feel that these indications shift over time.

4. Diagnosis

Insomnia is a sleep disorder in which a person is not able to complete his sleep due to various reasons which differ from person to person [62, 63]. The most common symptom generally witnessed is lack of concentration, loss of memory, decreased occupational, and social performance, aggression, irritation nature, and fatigue, etc. [4, 5, 35]. It is diagnosed on the basis of the trouble in falling sleeping, disturbance in continuing sleep, or awakening in early morning [5].

4.1. Diagnostic Tests for Insomnia

4.1.1. Sleep Diary

A sleep diary is a patient's sleeping and awaking time record with concerned information, usually over a period of several weeks. It is made by person and physician to record the sleeping arising time [64, 65]. This is an important tool for diagnosis of insomnia by using sleep diary which helps in suitable treatment to the patients.

4.1.2. Epworth Sleepiness Scale

The daytime sleepiness is measured by using Epworth sleepiness scale (ESS) with the help of short questionnaires. The possibility of falling asleep from 0 to 3 for eight different conditions is estimated by help of ESS. The scores for all the eight questions are calculated to obtain a single value. A score which lies in the range of 0–9 range is considered to be normal; while a score lying between 10–24 indicates sleep disorders [66].

4.1.3. Actigraphy

It is used for recording human nonfunctional and functional activity cycles [67]. Actigraphy has a small altigraph part called a sensor of actimetry. It is used to measure gross motor action for a week or more. It is a wristwatch-like unit worn on the wrist [68].

4.1.4. Athens Insomnia Scale (ASI)

It is most commonly used for diagnosing insomnia. It has 8 parameters in which 1 to 5 are related to nocturnal sleep, and 6, 7, and 8 parameters are associated with daytime dysfunction. ASI parameters include sleep promotion, awakening during the night, final awakening, total sleep duration, sleep quality, wellbeing during the day, functioning capacity during the day, and sleepiness during the day [69, 70] (as shown in Table 1).

Table 1. Athens insomnia scale.

Assessment parameters	**Sleep difficulty experienced at least three times per week**			
	0	**1**	**2**	**3**
Sleep induction	No difficulty	Moderately delayed	Remarkably delayed	Extremely delayed or did not sleep at all

Assessment parameters	Sleep difficulty experienced at least three times per week			
	0	1	2	3
Arousals during night-time	No difficulty	Insignificant difficulty	Considerable difficulty	Serious difficulty or did not sleep at all
Final arousal before scheduled time	Not before	Little earlier	Remarkably earlier	Very insufficient
Overall quality of sleep	Satisfactory	Slightly satisfactory	Markedly satisfactory	Very unsatisfactory
Sense of well-being during daytime	Regular	Moderately declined	Remarkably declined	Extremely declined
Sleepiness during daytime	None	Moderate	Remarkable	Extreme

4.1.5. Laboratory-Based Polysomnography (PSG)

It is used for the diagnosis of obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome (OSAS). It can be used for diagnosing various sleep disorders like periodic limb movement disorder, chronic insomnia, narcolepsy, and REM sleep behaviour disorder [71].

4.1.6. ICSD-3 Technique

It is most commonly used classification system for sleep disorders, with diagnostic criteria for insomnia disorder summarised [61, 65, 66]. Individuals with chronic insomnia frequently suffer from concomitant mental disorders which do not get easily diagnosed [72].

4.1.7. Multiple Sleep Latency Test (MSLT)

It is an insomnia diagnostic tool which is determined as the time elapsed from the start of a daytime nap period to the first signs of sleep called sleep latency. It is used to discriminate between physical tiredness and really extreme daytime sleepiness.

Its focus is to find the mode of falling asleep in relation to REM sleep and other brain patterns. It is also used to recognize and distinguish among numerous sleep complications [73].

4.2. Clinical Assessment of Insomnia

4.2.1. Chief Complaint

Insomnia is caused by various variables factor. These complaints can be completely separated into nighttime and daytime. The chief complaint of patient should be assessed about initiation as well as maintaining sleep, early daytime arousal, or just unrefreshing sleep is the chief complaint associated with insomnia [74].

4.2.2. Examination of Medical Patient History

Patient medical history related to insomnia with short sleep period has been related to various diseases like type II diabetes, hypertension, and more terrible neurocognitive dysfunction. Consumption of alcohol is a usual maladaptive self-treatment approach by individuals having insomnia and can even contribute during sleep-maintenance problems. Therefore, alcohol consumption is being measured or evaluated and considered during treatment planning. Many times some drug interaction can also lead to insomnia so it must be evaluated in patient medical history in order to know whether the patient is suffering from any other disease (Table 2) [57].

Table 2. Diagnostic management of insomnia.

Medical history and examination	1. Whether patient suffered with any neurological disorder such as amnesia, dementia, and epilepsy 2. Previous and current somatic disorder 3. Medication, alcohol, and caffeine 4. Circadian makers
Psychiatric psychological history	1. Previous and current mental disorder 2. Current and previous work condition

	3.	Personality confliction
Sleep history	1.	Circadian clock
	2.	Sleep disorder history

4.2.3. Sleeping History

The sleeping history incorporates sleep and awakening schedule, bedtime schedule, night-time behaviour, and dysfunctioning during day. It is very important to determine the previous and current sleep history of patient. It is very useful for the treatment of insomnia patient. There are several questions which may help to determine sleeping history as follows [75].

(1) Sleep and Wake Schedule. It must be determined in work, school days, and weekends or vacations. A detailed note on schedule to bed, time to sleep, recurrence of night arousals, time to get back to sleep, time awakening in the morning, and time to get out of bed [76].

(2) Bedtime Routine. To confirm the clinical assessment of insomnia, it should be ensured that deficient sleep is not because of poor sleep environment. A detailed study on the bedtime routine is main part used during the treatment phase of insomnia [70].

(3) Nocturnal Behaviour. The many questions arise about nocturnal behaviour such as what the patient is doing while not sleeping at night? Are there other behaviours during night, like leg kicking or snoring which necessitates alternative or collateral diagnosis? Also, contribution from a bed partner can be useful. An individual who reported to be awakened the whole night, his bed partner will regularly notice longer duration of sleep, recommending there might be some sleep state misconception [77].

(4) Daytime Functioning. The daytime functioning can induce insomnia because person becomes tired, heaviness head, headache, and feel uncomfortable in daily routing. Hence, daytime function must be considered in clinical assessment of insomnia [78].

5. Management of Insomnia

Once a person is determined to be suffering from insomnia, and treatment might be started with one of various accessible mediations. They can be mainly classified into nonmedicated therapies and pharmacological treatment along with fewer herbal treatments [34].

5.1. Nonmedicated Therapies

Various nonmedication treatment regimens are available which have been tried and executed for the treatment of insomnia. In this section, the components assisting the nonpharmacological therapy having the greatest experiential background and most extensive use, i.e., cognitive behavioural therapy for insomnia (CBT-I) are reviewed [34].

5.1.1. Sleep Hygiene and Cognitive Behavioural Therapies

Any patient suffering from insomnia should be asked for his sleep behaviours because sleep hygiene along with CBT-I can be used to treat insomnia without medications. Utilized in a number of patterns, CBT-I has been discovered to be successful in bringing down insomnia and improvement in sleep in a broad range of clinical populations [79–85]. Thus, the American College of Physicians has suggested this therapy to be the primary treatment for patients with insomnia [83] as this can avoid probable side effects and toxicities due to medicines and found to have long-lasting resolution in treatment of chronic insomnia that might give superior results as acquired from drug therapies [86]. Sleep hygiene signifies absence of required sleep accelerating approaches, drugs, dietary components, and environmental factors that can cause insomnia. Various drugs inducing insomnia are activating agents of prescription and abuse, weight loss preparations, nicotine, and caffeine.

Sleep hygiene can improve sleep by affecting sleep latency and time awake after sleep onset, total sleep time, and slow wave sleep; and influencing REM sleep. Some of the sleep hygiene recommendations are exercise, limiting caffeine, avoiding alcohol, food and liquid intake, bedroom environment, etc. The various advantages of exercise can decrease in sleep latencies and time awake after sleep onset; increase in total sleep time and slow wave sleep; and a slight delay, and minimal reductions, in REM sleep [87].

Caffeine intake before bedtime results in prolonged sleep latency, reduced total sleep time, and decrease in slow wave sleep; usually in a dose–response manner [88]. Alcohol being a sedative can be an appealing hypnotic [89]. Ebrahim and colleagues

[90] reviewed that though alcohol intake can reduce sleep onset latency and a more consolidated first half sleep, it is also related to an increase in disturbed and fragmented sleep in the second half of sleep. Furthermore, though low and moderate doses show little effect on REM sleep, high doses can remarkably reduce REM, mainly in the first half of the night.

Sleeping hungry or eating a heavy meal before sleep is generally not recommended, and also, liquid intake should be minimized in the evening (2–3 h before bedtime). Obviously, it suggests that trying to sleep can become more challenging if a person is digesting a heavy meal, particularly if it contains high levels of fat or spice. Moreover, sleeping hungry may sometimes result in decrease in blood sugar in the night, keeping the individual awake. Excess amount of liquid during the evening may result in increased urination resulting in increased nocturnal awakenings [91].

The sleep environment should be quiet, dark, cool, and comfortable, and more recently, free from electronics. In a study on Europeans, it was recommended that a hot bedroom or an uncomfortable bed can result in nonrestorative sleep [92]. Environmental modifications such as eye masks, blackout blinds, earplugs, use of suitable sleepwear, and bedding and new mattresses are encouraged under this recommendation. Both excessively hot and colder environments in the bedroom can negatively influence sleep. An ideal sleep temperature between 60°F/15.6°C and 67°F/19.4°C is suggested by the National Sleep Foundation [93]. Lights in the bedroom may prevent a person from sleeping or make him awake earlier than desired because of its influence on the circadian system and the melatonin suppression. Bedroom noise has been the most studied bedroom environmental factors [94]. The findings are clear in that excessive noise disrupts sleep and subsequent daytime performance, even if the person does not recall awakening during the night [94]. The WHO suggests night-time noise should be below 40 dB [95, 96].

CBT incorporates sleep hygiene in the utilization of sleep facilitating cognitive and behavioural approaches for the treatment of insomnia [97]. When CBT is provided by trained personnel for several extended appointments, it proved its usefulness in the treatment of chronic insomnia [98]. Though insomnia therapy can be restricted to the use of CBT and hygiene, yet this approach has some clear constraints. But these behavioural approaches are not recommended for treatment of acute and short-term insomnia with restricted value in treatment of insomnia with comorbidities. CBT-I needs patient interest and their efforts, but as a clinical approach, it may not be available to all affected persons because of both expense and constraints in provider availability [99]. Even if judiciously used, it may not provide relief to every patient [100]. CBT is generally given for about 4-7 sessions. However, still it is not clear that how many sessions are required for optimal benefit, it was found that less than four sessions will not provide the desired response [80, 101].

(1) Educational Components of CBT-I. Though most of the patients of insomnia are well known regarding the various behaviours that are included under the category of sleep hygiene, it is still necessary to educate them regarding the suitable conditions. These are the significance of providing a favourable sleep environment by maintaining darkness, peace, and coolness in the bedroom. Patients need to remember to avoid consuming sleep-disturbing substances, like alcohol, nicotine, and caffeine, especially before bedtime. Similarly, strenuous exercise should not be done at least three to four hours before bedtime. In addition, a relaxing schedule can be useful in preparing an individual for sleep including preventing arousing activities like exposing to bright light (like laptop screen), which can have negative impact on someone's circadian rhythm [34].

(2) Behavioural Components of CBT-I.

Stimulus Control. Awakening due to some conditions is one of the major parameter involved in the pathogenesis of insomnia. Vicious circle of the bedroom/bed and episodes of physiologic awakening, fright, nervousness, and irritation prompts the bed serving as the known indication or conditioned stimulus for awakening, which is not compatible with sleep onset and maintenance. To get out of this conditioned stimulus, individuals are advised to keep themselves away from the bedroom and bed if not feeling sleepy and sit quietly somewhere until the sensation of sleepiness returns. Also, at sleep time, the patients are advised to avoid going to bed till they feel sleepy. The bedroom and bed should be strictly used for sleeping and sex, i.e., the patients should not do any other activities in bedroom, like reading or watching television. At last, patients are advised to get up at the same time every morning, seven days/week, and leave the bed within 10 to 15 min after arousing [34].

Sleep Restriction. Tendency of the patients to remain in bed for some more time duration is the other common reason responsible for the evolution and preservation of insomnia. In support of this, a reasonable answer has been given that the patients want to "get" sleep at whatever point they can. But again, this excess duration in bed brings about conditioned arousal and interrupted sleep. To adequately do this procedure, patients should be given sleep diaries for at least one week (however, 2 weeks are favoured), thereby reducing the patient's time in bed to the total sleep hours. For example, if a patient's diary reported six hours of average total sleep time however a period of nine hours in bed (bedtime 9 pm and awakening time 6 am), then a new sleep timetable should give a time of six hours in bed (bedtime 12 pm and awakening time 6 am) [102].

Particularly, patients are advised not to go for sleep until the newly recommended sleep time and only when sleepy. The patient's chronotype should be taken into account while finalising his sleep opportunity window. A minimum time of 5 hours in bed has been mentioned in the literature because of safety reasons related to sleep restriction (for example, somnolent driving

and cognitive deficits) [102]. Also, sleep restriction may intensify comorbidities. For example, sleep restriction has been found to precipitate mania in individuals with bipolar disorder, lower seizure thresholds, and increase pain sensitivity [100, 103, 104].

Sleep diaries should be filled by the patients throughout the therapy. Their schedules regarding timings in bed must be evaluated in all successive CBT sessions, and each session should be scheduled after every one to two weeks. The physicians can determine patients' average sleep efficiency from the sleep diaries, calculated as the percentage of time a patient is asleep given his/her time in bed. An average sleep efficiency of 85% or more is preferred as a measurement for "good" sleep quality and an edge to be reached before modifying the time in bed proposal. Whenever it is confirmed that the sleep efficiency of patient is acceptably significant, the physician can increase the time in bed, especially by modifying the recommended bedtime by 15 min after each session and following the patient's improvement in subjective sleep quality and daytime sleepiness.

Sleep restriction is the part of CBT-I that mainly suffers due to patient's refusal. If a patient is not willing or unable to complete the recommended time in bed, sleep compression may be utilized. This approach comprises of gradual decrease in time in bed over time so that the original recommended time in bed can be met and might be more compatible with patients, especially those with higher nervousness about losing further sleep opportunity.

Relaxation and Paradoxical Intention. These behavioural approaches supplement sleep restriction and stimulus control by furnishing the patient with techniques to decrease arousal before bedtime and in case of awakenings during nighttime. Relaxation techniques vary, however, it includes the tensing and relaxing of muscle groups, diaphragmatic breathing, and potentially visual symbolism. Paradoxical approach is based on the concept that sleep onset is suppressed due to nervousness about getting asleep. Utilizing this approach, patients are advised to remain awake as long as possible, resulting in faster onset of sleep due to reduced nervousness.

(3) Cognitive Components of CBT-I. Abnormal thoughts and assumptions regarding sleep are especially considered throughout the therapy. Sleep-related concerns should be significantly attended by the clinician, as they will induce unsuitable behaviours that extend insomnia. These sleep-related worries include unrealistic assumptions regarding sleep and cataclysmic thoughts about the effects of sleep loss. One way for combating cataclysmic thinking is by assessing evidences from the experiences of patient. For example, if a patient thinks that a low sleep time during night will make him/her incapable to perform effectively in his/her work, then, a physician should ask the patient recognizing cases when he/she was able to perform adequately in spite of a poor sleep during the night. Moreover, equipping patients with techniques to decrease stress at bedtime can be useful.

Second approach, known as a constructive worry exercise, in which patients are required to make a list of at least three problems in the early evening which they think will make them awakened at night. The patients should mention a solution for every problem. The diary should be closed and kept away, and, now if patients wake up at night, they are advised to remind themselves that they have already resolved that issue at their "problem-solving best" (i.e., not in the midnight) [34].

5.2. Pharmacological Therapies

Irrespective of the kind of treatment given, the therapy of chronic insomnia has two key goals: improving quantity and quality of sleep and decreasing daytime impairments. Initial treatment strategies generally involve at least one behavioural mediation, like relaxation therapy or stimulus control therapy. In case pharmacotherapy becomes necessary, a particular medication within a class should be chosen as per the following directions: (1) pattern of symptoms, (2) objectives of therapy, (3) previous therapy responses, (4) cost, (5) patient compliance, (6) contraindications, (7) the accessibility of other medicines, (8) comorbidities, (9) possible adverse effects, and (10) simultaneous medication interactions [10].

This section reviewed the characteristics of all of these pharmacological agents (orexin antagonists, "z-drugs," benzodiazepines, selective histamine H1 antagonists, nonselective antihistamines, melatonin receptor agonists, antipsychotics, antidepressants, and anticonvulsants) (Table 3) and compiled the available evidences related to their efficiency and safety on the basis of which clinical decision can be made.

Table 3. Comparison of commonly prescribed medications for the treatment of Insomnia.

Class of drugs	Dosage (mg)	Approximate $t_{1/2}$ (h)	Approximate T_{max} (h)	Primary indication
Z-drugs				
Zolpidem, sublingual (Intermezzo)	1.75 or 3.5	2.5	1	Awakening in night
Zolpidem (Ambien)	5 to 10	2.6	1.6	Onset and maintenance of sleep

Class of drugs	Dosage (mg)	Approximate $t_{1/2}$ (h)	Approximate T_{max} (h)	Primary indication
Zolpidem, extended release (Ambien CR)	6.25 to 12.5	2.8	1.5	Onset and maintenance of sleep
Eszopiclone (Lunesta)	1 to 3	6	1	Onset and maintenance of sleep
Zaleplon (Sonata)	5 to 10	1	1	Onset of sleep
Benzodiazepines				
Triazolam	0.125 to 0.25	1.5 to 5.5	2	Onset of sleep
Estazolam	0.5 to 2	10 to 24	2	Maintenance of sleep
Quazepam (Doral)	7.5 to 15	25 to 84	2	Maintenance of sleep

5.2.1. Benzodiazepines

These drugs act by modulating the *γ*-aminobutyric acid (GABA) type A receptors in neurons causing activation of chloride channels that produces Cl^- ion influx and cell hyperpolarization [105]. GABA works as an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the CNS, diminishing neuronal excitability. By stimulating the GABA receptors, benzodiazepines cause sedation, diminished nervousness, retrograde amnesia, and muscle relaxation [18, 106]. Though various benzodiazepines are utilized in insomnia treatment, only five (triazolam, flurazepam, temazepam, quazepam, and estazolam) are authorized by the U.S. FDA for insomnia. A few significant differences should be considered while a benzodiazepine is being prescribed for insomnia, like onset, duration of action, and metabolism. Rate of metabolism is especially significant in individuals with compromised kidney and/or liver function or elderly patients as these drugs may cause bioaccumulation, leading to adverse effects like daytime sleepiness, loss of coordination, and memory impairment. In addition to these effects, long-term use of benzodiazepine will disrupt the sleep quality by deforming the sleep architecture and declining deep sleep duration, thereby justifying the point that patients taking benzodiazepines for long term reported much more tiredness than self-reported good sleepers [2].

There is a high risk of emerging physical dependence to benzodiazepines [107]; extreme withdrawal indications after cessation has been reported by 15% to 40% of chronic users [108]. Even there are cases, when patients often reported increased nervousness and rebound insomnia after only a few weeks of benzodiazepine treatment [109]. These drugs have shown contraindications during breastfeeding and pregnancy. Benzodiazepines should be avoided in persons having chronic pulmonary disease and/or sleep apnoea as they may cause suppression of respiratory drive. Benzodiazepines are categorized as schedule IV drugs, due to their abuse potential.

5.2.2. "Z-Drugs"

Zolpidem (Ambien), zaleplon (Sonata), and eszopiclone (Lunesta) are the most generally recommended category of medicines for insomnia, known as the z-drugs [110]. The efficacy of these drugs has been demonstrated in various trials including meta-analysis revealing that the sleep latency has been decreased by a mean value of 42 min versus 20 min for placebo [111]. The z-drugs bind in a similar manner as of benzodiazepines to the GABA-A receptor, resulting in cell hyperpolarization. But, the z-drugs as opposed to benzodiazepines bind with more specificity to particular subunits of the GABA-A receptor, basically focusing on the sedative effect of the receptor rather than the anxiolytic effect [112]. Various adverse effects of z-drugs especially in higher doses include gastrointestinal upset, dizziness, hallucinations, memory loss, and noninhibition. Sometimes, complex sleep-associated behaviours (for example, sleep eating, sleep driving) were found in persons using z-drugs in high doses; the patients should be informed regarding this risk initially while prescribing z-drugs [113–115]. The physician should also be known to the addictive potentials of these drugs as they may result in euphoria, anxiolysis, and stimulation in certain individuals, especially at higher doses [116]. These drugs have been utilized in the treatment of a wide range of sleep disorders without affecting sleep efficiency [107].

Zolpidem, an imidazopyridine used in the treatment of insomnia associated with problem of sleep latency and sleep maintenance, has also been used in the treatment of high-altitude insomnia and misalignment of circadian rhythm [117, 118]. Eszopiclone, a cyclopyrrolone drug due to its long half-life, has been utilized for the improvement of sleep latency, and it especially suits well for sleep maintenance [119]. But the only unfavourable aspect of eszopiclone is its unpleasant taste that influences almost 33% of patients at the maximum advised dose. A pyrazolopyrimidine drug, zaleplon, having very short half-life is recommended for the improvement of sleep latency but not sleep maintenance. All these drugs show a moderately distinct pharmacological profile, symptoms, efficacy, and adverse effects. These drugs can be prescribed during pregnancy just

if the advantages are more than the risks associated. Zolpidem, eszopiclone, and zaleplon are categorized as schedule IV drugs due to their abuse potential.

5.2.3. Melatonin Receptor Agonists

Melatonin is a hormone and is generally, secreted during the dark period of the day by the pineal gland. It plays a major role in maintaining the sleep-wake cycle, and disturbance in the melatonin release timings or diminished melatonin formation may result in insomnia and thus it is prescribed to many patients having insomnia. The issue becomes especially noticeable during shift work or when changing time zones. Production of melatonin also dwindles with age and might be partly accountable for the sleep problems encountered by elderly people [120]. Ramelteon (Rozerem) is a melatonin agonist authorized by the FDA for the treatment of sleep latency. Its efficacy is satisfactory with little adverse effects and the advantage of not habit forming [107]. A small investigation revealed that the drug has diminished the risk of hospital-related hysteria in elderly patients, bringing the rate from 32% to 3% in comparison to placebo [121]. This drug can be prescribed during pregnancy only if the advantages are more than the risks associated. For insomnia therapy, a sustained-release melatonin is considerably less costly and may be more efficacious as compared to ramelteon. A meta-analysis in 2013 revealed that melatonin in the dose range of 0.1 mg to 5 mg declined sleep latency by 7.1 min, enhanced total sleep duration by 8.3 min, enhanced overall sleep quality, and had a favourable adverse effect profile [122]. Since it is not governed by the FDA and purity fluctuates broadly among products, it is necessary to review product evaluations by third-party to assess the quality of the product.

The most widely recognized unfavourable effects of melatonin are headache, increase in reaction time, and may cause sedation during the day. It can be given to abuse-prone individuals with insomnia due to their nonabuse potential. Moreover, when given in high doses, it cans theoretical affect fertility as it is a hormone that controls reproductive function. Thus, ramelteon is not advised to those who are trying to conceive [123, 124]. It has a moderately benign adverse effect profile, among which the most generally revealed are nausea, fatigue, headache, and sedation. Because of its greater safety profile, it can be recommended for patients having problem in sleep onset only.

5.2.4. Selective H1 Antagonists

Doxepin in the dose range of 3-6 mg is the exclusively very selective histamine H1 receptor antagonist that has been consistently investigated [30]. Though the major potent pharmacological effect of doxepin is H1 antagonism, it originally

emerged as an antidepressant in the dose range of 75-150 mg/day [125]. Thus, with a decrease in the dosage, doxepin becomes a highly selective H1 antagonist [125]. Sedation during daytime is the most usual adverse effect disclosed in younger adults. On the other hand, elderly patients did not report any adverse effects with 3 mg of doxepin. And so, elderly patients with early morning arousal can be an especially appropriate group for treating with this drug. Due to its potent H1 antagonism, it can be recommended for patients having insomnia with allergy indications. Due to its nonabuse potential, doxepin can be given to individuals having difficulty in sleep maintenance and who are prone to addiction.

5.2.5. Orexin Receptor Antagonists

"Orexins" was the title given to two peptides that were comparatively recently found to emerge from the neurons of the lateral hypothalamus and to provoke arousal/wakefulness [126–128]. Orexin receptor antagonists are the agents that promote sleep because of its potential to obstruct the wakefulness provoked by the orexins. The first orexin receptor antagonist that got the approval for insomnia treatment is suvorexant (Belsomra). It causes blockages of both kinds of orexin receptors (orexin A and B). Sedation during daytime is the most usual adverse effect of suvorexant. Prior investigations revealed that some abuse potential is associated with this drug that is somewhat comparable to that of zolpidem. So, in patients predisposed to abuse, it is better to be avoided. It is an exclusive drug with therapeutic effects in the last third of the night without considerably enhancing morning sedation leading to strong therapeutic effect on sleep onset. Thus, suvorexant can be prescribed to those individuals having both difficulty in onset of sleep and arousal in early morning. However, it is not advised as a first-line therapy for insomnia due to its higher cost and abuse potential. Table 4 compiles significant orexin receptor antagonists that were developed/abandoned or are in developmental pipeline.

Table 4. Orexin receptor antagonists that were developed/abandoned/are in developmental pipeline.

Drug	Mechanism of action	Remark	Ref
Almorexant	An orexin antagonist that functions as a competitive receptor antagonist of the OX_1 and OX_2 orexin receptors	Development of the drug was abandoned in January 2011	[129

Drug	Mechanism of action	Remark	Ref
Lemborexant	Dual orexin receptor antagonist (DORA) of the orexin OX_1 and OX_2 receptors	Approved by the FDA in December 2019 and released on June 1, 2020, by Merck.	[130
Filorexant	DORA	Was under development by Merck for the insomnia treatment. As of May 2015, filorexant is no longer listed on Merck's online development pipeline.	[131
Nemorexant	DORA	In April 2020, first phase III clinical trial for daridorexant has been approved for insomnia treatment.	[132
SB-334,867	First nonpeptide antagonist emerged and is selective for the orexin receptor OX_1, having about 50 times more selectivity over OX_2 receptors	Studies in animals have shown sedative and anorectic effects.	[133
SB-408,124	Is a nonpeptide antagonist selective for the orexin receptor OX_1, having about 70 times more selectivity over OX_2 receptors.	Enhanced oral bioavailability in comparison to the older OX_1 antagonist SB-334,867.	[134

5.2.6. Antidepressants

There are some drugs initially used for the major depression therapy are now also utilized for the insomnia treatment. This category of drugs also produces improvement in sleep by obstructing the receptors for neurotransmitters that cause arousal, e.g., acetylcholine, serotonin, histamine, and norepinephrine [30]. The most commonly recommended antidepressants for treatment of insomnia are 15 mg of mirtazapine, 10-75 mg of doxepin, 50-150 mg of trazodone, and 10-100 mg of amitriptyline [30]. The adverse effects caused by antidepressants for treating insomnia may vary. Daytime sedation is commonly caused by all, while some may cause orthostatic hypotension. The major adverse effects of mirtazapine are enhanced appetite/weight gain and sedation. The amitriptyline and doxepin (25-50 mg) may cause cognitive impairment, blurred vision, dry mouth, arrhythmias, constipation, increased appetite/weight gain, and urinary retention [30]. Trazodone is responsible for causing adverse effects such as sedation and orthostatic hypotension and may induce priapism [30].

Due to their nonaddictive potential, all these drugs can be given to patients with an inclination to drug abuse. These drugs can also be prescribed to patients in whom the commonly used therapy failed or have associated conditions like nervousness, mood, and pain difficulties, due to their wide pharmacological outcomes [30]. Patients suffering from glaucoma, urinary obstruction, and cognitive impairment should be given doxepin and amitriptyline cautiously. All these drugs are troublesome in individuals with bipolar depression, due to the fear of accelerating mania [138].

5.2.7. Nonselective Antihistamines

Doxylamine and diphenhydramine are the two major nonselective antihistamines that are usually recommended for insomnia therapy. However, these are prescribed only for the therapy of pregnancy-related sleeplessness. Both of these drugs show clinically relevant M1 muscarinic cholinergic antagonism in addition to H1 antagonism. The major adverse effects of these drugs are dizziness, sedation, blurred vision, cognitive impairment, psychomotor impairment, dry mouth, weight gain, urinary retention, and constipation. More uncommon side effects of doxylamine reported are coma and rhabdomyolysis, whereas that of diphenhydramine is agitation and insomnia [139].

Due to their insignificant addictive potential, these drugs can be recommended for using in drug abuse-prone insomnia patients. These are also suitable for insomnia patients having upper respiratory infections or allergic symptoms. These medications should not be given to patients with urinary retention, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, asthma, reduced gastrointestinal motility, and closed-angle glaucoma.

5.2.8. Antipsychotics

These are the category of drugs mainly used for treating the psychotic states that are occasionally also utilized for the treatment of insomnia, but at a dose lower than that usually used in the treatment of psychotic patients [30]. These drugs produce sleep-improving effects owing to their broad antagonistic effect on arousal-provoking neurotransmitter receptors, like serotonin, histamine, dopamine, adrenergic, and cholinergic receptors. The antipsychotic drugs that are recommended in the treatment of insomnia in clinical practice are risperidone 0.25-6 mg, olanzapine 2.5-20 mg, and quetiapine 25-250 mg. The major adverse effects of these drugs include agitation, sedation, tachycardia, orthostatic hypotension, dizziness, increased appetite/weight gain, dry mouth, akathisia, and constipation. Really concerning, however, undeniably more uncommon, is the

fear of tardive dyskinesia. In patients suffering from dementia, the high possibility of cerebrovascular episodes must also be considered.

Because of their nonaddictive potential, these drugs can be recommended to patients with an inclination to drug abuse. However, these drugs are most appropriate for insomnia arising in persons suffering from bipolar or psychosis diseases. Precautions must be taken, while using these medications in patients with closed-angle glaucoma, urinary retention, dementia, constipation, and hypotension or at risk for myocardial infarction.

5.2.9. Anticonvulsants

There are some drugs initially developed for the seizure therapy that are now also used for the insomnia management. Examples are pregabalin and gabapentin, and they produce therapeutic effects in insomnia by decreasing the discharge of norepinephrine and glutamate by acting on the alpha-2-delta subunit of N-type voltage-gated calcium channels [140, 141]. A clinical trial study in patients suffering from occasional sleep disturbance revealed that gabapentin in a dose of 250 mg at bedtime enhanced total sleep duration by 64 min on 1st day and 46 min on 28th day of the trial [142]. Pregabalin and gabapentin also showed therapeutic effects on sleep disturbance in patients suffering from generalized anxiety disorder, pain, epilepsy, and restless legs syndrome [143–145].

The major adverse effects of pregabalin are dry mouth, dizziness, sedation, appetite increase, and cognitive impairment whereas for gabapentin includes ataxia, dizziness, sedation, and diplopia. Gabapentin does not have any abuse potential, whereas pregabalin showed some significant addictive potential [146]. These drugs can be recommended to insomnia patients also suffering from pain, RLS, or partial seizures. Pregabalin can also be used in patients with alcohol use disorder for the treatment of insomnia [147, 148]. In case of patients with impaired renal function, both these drugs should be avoided.

6. Treatment Considerations for Specific Populations

6.1. Circadian System Disturbances

Sleep disorders associated with circadian rhythm are due to an imbalance between about 24 h endogenous circadian rhythm and the “normal” 24 h day/night cycle. In patients with circadian disturbance, melatonin may work as a hypnotic and can be a beneficial supplement in the therapy [149]. Ramelteon, a synthetic analog of melatonin, is available for prescription. Light

exposure and melatonin have been proved to be particularly effective for the treatment of Delayed Sleep Phase Syndrome (DSPS) mostly occurring in young adults and adolescents [149]. Patients with this condition have problem getting sleep at the desired bedtime and have delayed sleep between 2 am and 6 am and afterwards if their way of living allows, sleeping roughly for about 8 h, waking up in between 10 am and 2 pm. Patients suffering from DSPS frequently experiences long-term deficient sleep duration with all its daytime effects. Therapy includes bright light exposure at the right time in the circadian phase response graph.

Therapy includes providing 10,000 lx of light for half an hour on arousal and timely administration of melatonin in the early evening 3–6 h before sleep time (prior to dim light melatonin onset (DLMO)). Advanced sleep phase syndrome (ASPS) is the mirror image of DSPS in individuals having onset of sleep and arousal both few hours before time than required with the total sleep duration remaining almost usual. ASPS is more uncommon as compared to DSPS and mostly occurring in middle-aged to elderly patients. Similar therapy as that for DSPS has been applied with the timing of therapy intended to retard rather than forward the circadian rhythm. Persons working in shift are recommended melatonin for shifting the circadian rhythm of the workers as desired. If given prior to bedtime, it can improve the sleep quality in the early morning [150, 151].

6.2. Restless Legs Syndrome (RLS) and Periodic Leg Movement Disorder

RLS is a typical neurological condition distinguished by the desire to move, especially the legs, occurring mainly at rest in the evening or bedtime. The fundamental characteristics for diagnosing RLS are as follows:

(1) Desire to move the legs, generally followed by awkward and uncomfortable sensations in the legs

(2) Desire to move or uncomfortable sensations start or deteriorate with rest or inactiveness

(3) The desire to move or uncomfortable sensations are somewhat or completely relieved by movement

(4) The desire to move or uncomfortable sensations are unacceptable in the evening [152]

About 3/4 of the patients with RLS suffer from sleep disturbance and grievances of diminished life quality [153]. Most of the RLS patients suffer from recurrent periodic limb movements (PLMD) on polysomnogram. The PLMD/RLS has a hereditary basis and rises with age so that over 30% of individuals having age more than 80 years may fulfil the diagnosis criteria. PLMD/RLS is also

commonly found in patients with low serum ferritin levels (<50), children with AD/HD, in patients on medications like antihistamines, antiemetics and antidepressants, and in patients having renal failure [154]. The therapy of the sleep disturbance, basically onset of sleep, depends primarily on therapy of RLS instead of treatment of resultant insomnia. The primary initial medications for RLS treatment belong to dopaminergic agonists. Both ropinirole and pramipexole have been approved by FDA for RLS but in low doses as compared to that required in Parkinson's disease. Ropinirole is given in the range of 0.25 to 4 mg and pramipexole at 0.125 to 2 mg. Pramipexole may initiate remarkable drowsiness along with sleep attacks in certain patients [155]. Earlier, benzodiazepines like clonazepam have been used, but also temazepam.

6.3. Insomnia Associated with Sleep Apnoea and Its Therapy

A significant percentage of population has been affected with obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA) that causes daytime sleepiness. Both the severity of apnoea and the degree of daytime sleepiness influencing waking capacity can be adversely influenced by using sedatives concomitantly—especially ethanol and opiates [156]. In a subgroup of OSA patients, breathing disturbance results in intermittent sleep and insomnia. The therapy of OSA with positive airway pressure (PAP) can enhance quality of sleep for these patients [157]. But, for some other individuals, PAP therapy may intensify sleeplessness (especially in patients with co-morbid PTSD) [158].

6.4. Comorbid Psychiatric Disorders

Major depression, psychotic disorders, anxiety disorders, bipolar mood disorder, and Alzheimer's disease are the various psychiatric disorders generally comorbid with insomnia. A range of 50–75% of incidences of insomnia with these diagnoses was estimated [159]. The diagnosis of depression in which depression and insomnia have a bidirectional or circular correlation is the most well-known psychiatric association [160]. Several investigations revealed the risk of developing depression in insomnia patients. A wide investigation on young volunteers for a time span of 20 years predicted that 14 days of insomnia or prolonged further will cause major depressive episodes and disorders [109]. Reoccurring insomnia are the indications that an individual in remission from his depression can be at risk of a relapse [161]. Long-term insomnia issues can result in the continuance of depression. The problem is of specific significance in light of the considerable rate of residual sleep disruption in patients who were otherwise effectively treated for depression [111]. The relation between depression and insomnia will get complicated by the certainty that most of the commonly used antidepressants, particularly the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRI's), can result in sleep disruption [162]. Individuals diagnosed with a psychiatric disorder and insomnia, therapy includes those also

prescribed for primary insomnia, either cognitive behaviour treatment (behavioural and psychological), pharmacologic treatment, or a blend of both.

Eszopiclone along with fluoxetine has been investigated in persons with major depression [163]. The combination was well tolerated and showed quick improvement in sleep along with a faster and greater antidepressant response. This does not propose an antidepressant effect of eszopiclone yet rather recommends that improvement in sleep has a favourable effect on depression. These findings provide support for the comorbid strategy for the therapy with two drug moieties as opposed to the conventional strategy of waiting for insomnia to recover because of treatment of depression. Combined therapy involving antidepressants and CBT for insomnia also suggested that the combined therapy is better than the antidepressants alone both in regards of depression outcome and insomnia outcome [164].

6.5. Comorbid Pain

Most of the patients have poor sleep due to chronic pain [165]. Pain can be a major symptom of most of clinical diseases however most frequently rheumatologic disorders, headache, and cancer. Chronic pain and sleep disturbance develop a cycle of pain resulting in inadequate sleep which further resulted in greater pain [166]. Comorbid pain can be managed by diagnosing the sleep problem, maintaining the sleep hygiene, and applying CBT approach followed by use of pharmacological agents for both insomnia and pain [98]. In case of rheumatologic diseases, treating sleeplessness with hypnotics or sedative antidepressants not only enhances sleep but also improves pain tolerance.

6.6. Other Comorbid Medical Conditions

Patients having respiratory disorders frequently have disturbed sleep. COPD patients often have interrupted sleep [167]. This can be improved by providing oxygen if hypoxia is the reason for the issue. Though OSA generally causes daytime sleepiness, it can also cause disturbance in sleep too [168]. Approximately one-third of asthma patients who are ineffectively treated have asthma attacks during night that may interrupt their sleep resulting in daytime sleepiness. Individuals with gastroesophageal reflux frequently get their sleep disturbed due to the reflux. Also, reflux can precipitate asthma attacks in weak patients. Individuals having last-stage renal disorders experience a number of sleep problems like sleep apnea, insomnia, and a high occurrence of secondary RLS with a high predominance [169]. Menopause can be related with sleeplessness which can be treated with hormones but also requires a hypnotic [170]. Parkinson's disease is related with crucial insomnia, as in case of

gastrointestinal disorders causing reflux and/or pain, enuresis and nocturia, and various sleep-related issues such as narcolepsy [3].

7. Herbal Treatments

7.1. Valerian

Since ancient Greek and Roman times, Valerian, a herbal product comprised of the roots of *Valeriana officinalis*, has been utilized for the insomnia therapy [171]. It works by interacting with GABA-ergic neurotransmission, resulting in sedation [172]. Though few investigations have reported that valerian is valuable for the insomnia therapy, others have not [173–175]. Evaluation of the accessible clinical results are complicated by utilization of variable amounts and different sources of valerian, small sample sizes, different results obtained, and due to high rate of withdrawal [171]. As a whole, the evidences for valerian as an alternative for insomnia therapy remains uncertain, and it is not advised to use in insomnia patients [114].

7.2. Kava

Kava, a herbal product obtained from a shrub (*Piper methysticum*) and cultivated in the Pacific islands, works by acting on both BZD and GABA binding sites, producing antispasmodic, anticonvulsive, central muscular-relaxant, and sedative impacts [176]. Kava-containing medications are utilized as alternative treatment for restlessness, stress, and nervousness—significant reasons for long-term insomnia [176]. Notwithstanding, like various herbal products, kava is not suggested for the chronic insomnia therapy due to absence of clinical efficacy and safety data [114]. Kava-containing products were found to cause severe liver injury as warned by the FDA in 2002 [177].

8. Approaches to the Patient

For the insomnia treatment, behavioural interventions can be the best approach. In case, pharmacological mediation becomes essential, a customized approach depending on the insomnia type is recommended. In case, the first approach is not effective, an alternate drug from a similar category or a different category can be used. However, few patients can tolerate various sedative drugs, including a z-drug and sedating tricyclic antidepressant, utmost care must be taken while recommending such combinations. Due to the fear of respiratory depression, individuals having possibility of nocturnal hypoxia or sleep apnoea

because of lung disorders must be examined by a sleep expert prior to prescribing sedatives. Benzodiazepines due to greater potential for abuse are usually not suggested. Even though benzodiazepines are to be used, they should be prescribed at the lowest possible dose for the shortest possible duration. Benzodiazepines, tricyclic antidepressants (except nortriptyline and low-dose doxepin), atypical antipsychotics, and z-drugs should not be given to patients with long-term nocturnal hypoxia, individuals with untreated sleep apnoea, and in older adults. Herbal drugs were also not proved to be very efficacious for the insomnia treatment [114].

9. Recent Updates and Patents on Insomnia Therapeutics

Lemborexant, a DORA that got approval in December 2019 for treating insomnia, was distinguished by trouble with onset of sleep and/or maintenance of sleep in insomniacs [178, 179]. The drug with a half-life of about 17-19 h diminishes sleeplessness and advances non-REM sleep without affecting REM sleep [180]. The drug was investigated in the SUNRISE trials [181] and reported a significant improvement in sleep onset and sleep maintenance in comparison to placebo. The commonly reported adverse effect in the SUNRISE trials was sleepiness [182, 183] without any respiratory issues. Volunteers with minor OSA did not encounter aggravating sleep apnoea, as determined by variations in peripheral oxygen saturation or apnea-hypopnea index [184]. Other orexin inhibitors in phase III clinical trials are seltorexant and nemorexant (daridorexant). Nemorexant is a DORA having 6 h of half-life. The commonly reported adverse effects were somnolence, diarrhoea, fatigue, and headache [185, 186].

Seltorexant is a selective orexin-2 receptor antagonist with 2-3 h of half-life. The exceptional mode of action produces hypnotic effects and also preserves normal sleep pattern along with decreased possibility of cataplexy [187]. In the phase II clinical studies, the drug was found to enhance sleep initiation and prolonged sleeping time. The drug is also under investigation for treating hyperarousal-associated insomnia in individuals with depression. Commonly reported adverse effects were dizziness, somnolence, and headache [188–190].

Various patents have been granted/published in this field including solid dosage forms, intranasal solutions, buccal aerosol sprays, and toothpaste, for the treatment of insomnia which are compiled in Table 5.

Table 5. Patents granted/published for various dosage forms for treatment of Insomnia.

Patent no.	Country of filing	Composition/active ingredient	Major outcome	Publication/grant year	Ref.
8926991	USA	Botulinum toxin	For treating primary disorders of mood and affect with a neurotoxin, including depression, nervousness, and sleep disorders.	2015	[191]
US 8252809B2	USA	Zolpidem	Solid dosage form for treating midnight insomnia by administration of low doses (5 mg or less) of zolpidem or a salt thereof.	2012	[192]
US 8242131B2	USA	Zolpidem	Methods and compositions for treatment of midnight insomnia by administration of low doses (5 mg or less) of zolpidem or a salt thereof.	2012	[193]
US 8148393B2	USA	Zolpidem	A modified release zolpidem tablet is designed as a tablet-in-tablet dosage form.	2012	[194]
US 8034371 B2	USA	Zolpidem	Intranasal solutions of zolpidem for the prevention/treatment of insomnia or the therapy of neurological diseases.	2011	[195]
US 7914826	USA	Combination containing melatonin and other herbal supplements	Supplemental compositions and methods for inducing a restful night's sleep by rapidly inducing a person to fall asleep and to maintain sleep.	2011	[196]
US 7906154	USA	Combination containing melatonin and other	Supplemental compositions and methods for inducing a restful night's sleep by rapidly inducing a person to	2011	[197]

10. Conclusion

Insomnia is a typical and frequently crippling disease and is known to have remarkable adverse outcomes for physical health and well-being. For the treatment of this condition, fortunately, both behavioural and pharmacological therapies are available. Various treatments have been reviewed in this article to provide a resource for physicians, with the expectation that this would enhance the clinical management of insomnia. Currently, there is little customization of the most often utilized hypnotics depending on individual insomnia symptoms and comorbidities. Choice of therapy depending on the patient's particular symptoms and clinical either with dose titrations or by utilizing combination of drugs (within or outside the DORA class) may provide a type of customized insomnia treatment that until now has not been underlined. Significantly, since drugs in this category appears to have less addiction and minor rebound insomnia, the DORAS can be interestingly combined with CBT-I, which is generally viewed as an effective and enduring non pharmacological therapy for both primary and comorbid insomnia. With wide availability of novel modalities for CBT-I, like individual and group teletherapy, via web-based applications, and others, the role of customizable, titratable hypnotics might be exceptionally complementary. Nowadays when personalized clinical treatment is turning out to be progressively realistic, such advances may assist in keeping insomnia to bed.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors report no conflicts of interest.

References

1 Ford E. S., Wheaton A. G., Cunningham T. J., Giles W. H., Chapman D. P., and Croft J. B., Trends in outpatient visits for insomnia, sleep apnea, and prescriptions for sleep medications among US adults: findings from the National Ambulatory Medical Care survey 1999-2010, *Sleep*. (2014) **37**, no. 8, 1283–1293, **https://doi.org/10.5665/sleep.3914**, 2-s2.0-84905220350, **25083008**.

PubMed | **Web of Science®** | **Google Scholar**

2 American Academy of Sleep Medicine, *The International Classification of Sleep Disorders: Diagnostic and Coding Manual*, 2005, 2nd edition, American Academy of Sleep Medicine, Westchester, IL, USA.

Google Scholar

3 Sateia M. J., Buysse D. J., Krystal A. D., Neubauer D. N., and Heald J. L., Clinical practice guideline for the pharmacologic treatment of chronic insomnia in adults: an American Academy of sleep medicine clinical practice guideline, *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*. (2017) **13**, no. 2, 307–349, https://doi.org/10.5664/jcsm.6470, 2-s2.0-85015987598, 27998379.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

4 American Psychiatric Association, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 2013, 5th edition, American Psychiatric Association, Arlington, VA, USA, https://doi.org/10.1176/appi.books.9780890425596.dsm12.

Google Scholar

5 American Academy of Sleep Medicine, *International Classification of Sleep Disorders*, 2014, 3rd edition, American Academy of Sleep Medicine.

Google Scholar

6 Ohayon M. M. and Reynolds C. F., Epidemiological and clinical relevance of insomnia diagnosis algorithms according to the DSM-IV and the International Classification of Sleep Disorders (ICSD), *Sleep Medicine*. (2009) **10**, no. 9, 952–960, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2009.07.008, 2-s2.0-69949144253, 19748312.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

7 Roth T., Coulouvrat C., Hajak G., Lakoma M. D., Sampson N. A., Shahly V., Shillington A. C., Stephenson J. J., Walsh J. K., and Kessler R. C., Prevalence and perceived health associated with insomnia based on DSM-IV-TR; international statistical classification of diseases and related health problems, tenth revision; and research diagnostic criteria/international classification of sleep disorders, *Biological Psychiatry*. (2011) **69**, no. 6, 592–600, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsych.2010.10.023, 2-s2.0-79952040579, 21195389.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

8 Ohayon M. M., Epidemiology of insomnia: what we know and what we still need to learn, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2002) **6**, no. 2, 97–111, https://doi.org/10.1053/smrv.2002.0186, 2-s2.0-0036526075, 12531146.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

9 Morin C. M., LeBlanc M., Bélanger L., Ivers H., Mérette C., and Savard J., Prevalence of insomnia and its treatment in Canada, *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*. (2011) **56**, no. 9, 540–548, https://doi.org/10.1177/070674371105600905, 2-s2.0-80053461195, 21959029.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

10 Lie J. D., Tu K. N., Shen D. D., and Wong B. M., Pharmacological treatment of insomnia, *Pharmacy and Therapeutics*. (2015) **40**, no. 11, 759–771, 26609210.

PubMed | Google Scholar

11 Masters P. A., Insomnia, *Annals of Internal Medicine*. (2014) **161**, no. 7, ITC1–15; quiz ITC16, https://doi.org/10.7326/0003-4819-161-7-201410070-01004, 2-s2.0-84925545906, 25285559.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

12 Morphy H., Dunn K. M., Lewis M., Boardman H. F., and Croft P. R., Epidemiology of insomnia: a longitudinal study in a UK population, *Sleep*. (2007) **30**, no. 3, 274–280, 17425223.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

13 Foley D. J., Monjan A. A., Brown S. L., Simonsick E. M., Wallace R. B., and Blazer D. G., Sleep complaints among elderly persons: an epidemiologic study of three communities, *Sleep*. (1995) **18**, no. 6, 425–432, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/18.6.425, 2-s2.0-0029146022, 7481413.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

14 Taylor D. J., Mallory L. J., Lichstein K. L., Durrence H. H., Riedel B. W., and Bush A. J., Comorbidity of chronic insomnia with medical problems, *Sleep*. (2007) **30**, no. 2, 213–218, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/30.2.213, 2-s2.0-33846953890, 17326547.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

15 Gellis L. A., Lichstein K. L., Scarinci I. C., Durrence H. H., Taylor D. J., Bush A. J., and Riedel B. W., Socioeconomic status and insomnia, *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*. (2005) **114**, no. 1, 111–118, https://doi.org/10.1037/0021-843X.114.1.111, 2-s2.0-13844312696, 15709817.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

16 Paine S. J., Gander P. H., Harris R., and Reid P., Who reports insomnia? Relationships with age, sex, ethnicity, and socioeconomic deprivation, *Sleep*. (2004) **27**, no. 6, 1163–1169, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/27.6.1163, 2-s2.0-4944261468, 15532211.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

17 Matheson E. and Hainer B. L., Insomnia: pharmacologic therapy, *American family physician*. (2017) **96**, no. 1, 29–35.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

18 Pearson N. J., Johnson L. L., and Nahin R. L., Insomnia, trouble sleeping, and complementary and alternative medicine, *Archives of Internal Medicine*. (2006) **166**, no. 16, 1775–1782, https://doi.org/10.1001/archinte.166.16.1775, 2-s2.0-33748808671, 16983058.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

19 Roth T., Jaeger S., Jin R., Kalsekar A., Stang P. E., and Kessler R. C., Sleep problems, comorbid mental disorders, and role functioning in the national comorbidity survey replication, *Biological Psychiatry*. (2006) **60**, no. 12, 1364–1371, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsych.2006.05.039, 2-s2.0-33751548687, 16952333.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

20 Sarsour K., Morin C. M., Foley K., Kalsekar A., and Walsh J. K., Association of insomnia severity and comorbid medical and psychiatric disorders in a health plan-based sample: insomnia severity and comorbidities, *Sleep Medicine*. (2010) **11**, no. 1, 69–74, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2009.02.008, 2-s2.0-73149089199, 19410512.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

21 Budhiraja R., Roth T., Hudgel D. W., Budhiraja P., and Drake C. L., Prevalence and polysomnographic correlates of insomnia comorbid with medical disorders, *Sleep*. (2011) **34**, no. 7, 859–867, https://doi.org/10.5665/SLEEP.1114, 2-s2.0-79959932276, 21731135.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

22 Baglioni C., Battagliese G., Feige B., Spiegelhalder K., Nissen C., Voderholzer U., Lombardo C., and Riemann D., Insomnia as a predictor of depression: a meta-analytic evaluation of longitudinal epidemiological studies, *Journal of Affective Disorders*. (2011) **135**, no. 1-3, 10–19, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jad.2011.01.011, 2-s2.0-80053525479, 21300408.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

23 Drake C. L., Pillai V., and Roth T., Stress and sleep reactivity: a prospective investigation of the stress-diathesis model of insomnia, *Sleep*. (2014) **37**, no. 8, 1295–1304, https://doi.org/10.5665/sleep.3916, 2-s2.0-84905248354, 25083009.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

24 Pigeon W. R., Pinquart M., and Conner K., Meta-analysis of sleep disturbance and suicidal thoughts and behaviours, *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*. (2012) **73**, 1160–1167.

PubMed | Google Scholar

25 Vgontzas A. N., Liao D., Bixler E. O., Chrousos G. P., and Vela-Bueno A., Insomnia with objective short sleep duration is associated with a high risk for hypertension, *Sleep*. (2009) **32**, no. 4, 491–497, **https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/32.4.491**, 2-s2.0-65249147131, **19413143**.

PubMed **Web of Science®** **Google Scholar**

26 Parthasarathy S., Vasquez M. M., Halonen M., Bootzin R., Quan S. F., Martinez F. D., and Guerra S., Persistent insomnia is associated with mortality risk, *The American Journal of Medicine*. (2015) **128**, no. 3, 268–275.e2, **https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjmed.2014.10.015**, 2-s2.0-84924208308, **25447616**.

PubMed **Web of Science®** **Google Scholar**

27 Kessler R. C., Berglund P. A., Coulouvrat C., Fitzgerald T., Hajak G., Roth T., Shahly V., Shillington A. C., Stephenson J. J., and Walsh J. K., Insomnia, comorbidity, and risk of injury among insured Americans: results from the America Insomnia Survey, *Sleep*. (2012) **35**, no. 6, 825–834, **https://doi.org/10.5665/sleep.1884**, 2-s2.0-84861906538, **22654202**.

PubMed **Web of Science®** **Google Scholar**

28 Stone K. L., Blackwell T. L., Ancoli-Israel S., Cauley J. A., Redline S., Marshall L. M., Ensrud K. E., and for the Osteoporotic Fractures in Men Study Group, Sleep disturbances and risk of falls in older community-dwelling men: the outcomes of Sleep Disorders in Older Men (MrOS Sleep) study, *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. (2014) **62**, no. 2, 299–305, **https://doi.org/10.1111/jgs.12649**, 2-s2.0-84894094939, **24428306**.

PubMed **Web of Science®** **Google Scholar**

29 National Institutes of Health, National Institutes of Health state of the science conference statement on manifestations and management of chronic insomnia in adults, *Sleep*. (2005) **28**, 1049–1057.

PubMed **Web of Science®** **Google Scholar**

30 Krystal A. D., A compendium of placebo-controlled trials of the risks/benefits of pharmacological treatments for insomnia: the empirical basis for U.S. clinical practice, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2009) **13**, no. 4, 265–274, **https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2008.08.001**, 2-s2.0-67549122376, **19153052**.

PubMed | **Web of Science®** | **Google Scholar**

31 Hauri P., *The International Classification of Sleep Disorders -Diagnostic and Coding Manual (ICD-11)*, 2005, American Academy of sleep medicine.

Google Scholar

32 Miller C. B., Espie C. A., Epstein D. R., Friedman L., Morin C. M., Pigeon W. R., Spielman A. J., and Kyle S. D., The evidence base of sleep restriction therapy for treating insomnia disorder, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2014) **18**, no. 5, 415–424, **https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2014.01.006**, 2-s2.0-84926161703, **24629826**.

PubMed | **Web of Science®** | **Google Scholar**

33 Morin C. M., Bootzin R. R., Buysse D. J., Edinger J. D., Espie C. A., and Lichstein K. L., Psychological and behavioral treatment of insomnia: update of the recent evidence (1998–2004), *Sleep*. (2006) **29**, no. 11, 1398–1414, **https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/29.11.1398**, 2-s2.0-33751083841, **17162986**.

PubMed | **Web of Science®** | **Google Scholar**

34 Krystal A. D., Prather A. A., and Ashbrook L. H., The assessment and management of insomnia: an update, *World Psychiatry*. (2019) **18**, no. 3, 337–352, **https://doi.org/10.1002/wps.20674**, 2-s2.0-85072118753, **31496087**.

PubMed | **Web of Science®** | **Google Scholar**

35 Bhat A., Shafi F., and Sohl A., Pharmacotherapy of insomnia, *Expert Opinion on Pharmacotherapy*. (2008) **9**, no. 3, 351–362, https://doi.org/10.1517/14656566.9.3.351, 2-s2.0-39049124764.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

36 Curry D. T., Eisenstein R. D., and Walsh J. K., Pharmacologic Management of Insomnia: Past, Present, and Future, *Psychiatric clinics of North America*. (2006) **29**, no. 4, 871–893, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psc.2006.09.006, 2-s2.0-33751014541.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

37 Pagel J. F., Pandi-Perumal S. R., and Monti J. M., Treating insomnia with medications, *Sleep Science and Practice*. (2018) **2**, no. 1, 1–12, https://doi.org/10.1186/s41606-018-0025-z.

Google Scholar

38 Riemann D., Spiegelhalder K., Feige B., Voderholzer U., Berger M., Perlis M., and Nissen C., The hyperarousal model of insomnia: a review of the concept and its evidence, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2010) **14**, no. 1, 19–31, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2009.04.002, 2-s2.0-72649106192, 19481481.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

39 Bonnet M. H. and Arand D. L., Hyperarousal and insomnia: state of the science, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2010) **14**, no. 1, 9–15, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2009.05.002, 2-s2.0-72649089287, 19640748.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

40 Espie C. A., Insomnia: conceptual issues in the development, persistence, and treatment of sleep disorder in adults, *Annual Review of Psychology*. (2002) **53**, no. 1, 215–243, https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.psych.53.100901.135243, 2-s2.0-0036404758.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

41 Partinen M., Kaprio J., Koskenvuo M., Putkonen P., and Langinvainio H., Genetic and environmental determination of human sleep, *Sleep*. (1983) **6**, no. 3, 179–185, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/6.3.179, 2-s2.0-0020629497, 6684786.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

42 Kelly J. M. and Bianchi M. T., Mammalian sleep genetics, *Neurogenetics*. (2012) **13**, no. 4, 287–326, https://doi.org/10.1007/s10048-012-0341-x, 2-s2.0-84868303972, 22976546.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

43 Brower K. J., Wojnar M., Sliwerska E., Armitage R., and Burmeister M., PER3 polymorphism and insomnia severity in alcohol dependence, *Sleep*. (2012) **35**, no. 4, 571–577, https://doi.org/10.5665/sleep.1748, 2-s2.0-84859837219, 22467995.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

44 Serretti A., Benedetti F., Mandelli L., Lorenzi C., Pirovano A., Colombo C., and Smeraldi E., Genetic dissection of psychopathological symptoms: insomnia in mood disorders andCLOCK gene polymorphism, *American Journal of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics*. (2003) **121B**, no. 1, 35–38, https://doi.org/10.1002/ajmg.b.20053, 12898572.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

45 Wang C. C. and Lung F. W., The role of PGC-1 and Apoε4 in insomnia, *Psychiatric Genetics*. (2012) **22**, no. 2, 82–87, https://doi.org/10.1097/YPG.0b013e32834dc438, 2-s2.0-84863271644, 22392034.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

46 Deuschle M., Schredl M., Schilling C., Wüst S., Frank J., Witt S. H., Rietschel M., Buckert M., Meyer-Lindenberg A., and Schulze T. G., Association between a serotonin transporter length polymorphism and primary insomnia, *Sleep*. (2010) **33**, no. 3, 343–347,

https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/33.3.343, 2-s2.0-77649256458.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

47 Zeitzer J. M., Fisicaro R. A., Grove M. E., Mignot E., Yesavage J. A., and Friedman L., Faster REM sleep EEG and worse restedness in older insomniacs with HLA DQB1∗0602, *Psychiatry Research*. (2011) **187**, no. 3, 397–400, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psychres.2011.01.007, 2-s2.0-79954588004, 21292329.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

48 Ban H. J., Kim S. C., Seo J., Kang H. B., and Choi J. K., Genetic and metabolic characterization of insomnia, *PLoS One*. (2011) **6**, no. 4, article e18455, https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0018455, 2-s2.0-79953743010.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

49 Clinton J. M., Davis C. J., Zielinski M. R., Jewett K. A., and Krueger J. M., Biochemical regulation of sleep and sleep biomarkers, *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*. (2011) **7**, no. 5 Suppl, S38–S42, https://doi.org/10.5664/JCSM.1360, 2-s2.0-80054726991, 22003330.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

50 Griffith L. C., Neuromodulatory control of sleep in _Drosophila melanogaster:_ integration of competing and complementary behaviors, *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*. (2013) **23**, no. 5, 819–823, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.conb.2013.05.003, 2-s2.0-84884355460, 23743247.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

51 Morgan P. T., Pace-Schott E. F., Mason G. F., Forselius E., Fasula M., Valentine G. W., and Sanacora G., Cortical GABA levels in primary insomnia, *Sleep*. (2012) **35**, no. 6, 807–814, https://doi.org/10.5665/sleep.1880, 2-s2.0-84861842261, 22654200.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

52 Plante D. T., Jensen J. E., Schoerning L., and Winkelman J. W., Reduced *γ*-aminobutyric acid in occipital and anterior cingulate cortices in primary insomnia: a link to major depressive disorder?, *Neuropsychopharmacology*. (2012) **37**, no. 6, 1548–1557, https://doi.org/10.1038/npp.2012.4, 2-s2.0-84859783895, 22318195.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

53 Dzierzewski J. M. and O'Brien E. M., Tackling sleeplessness: psychological treatment options for insomnia in older adults, *Nature and Science of Sleep*. (2010) **2**, 47–61, https://doi.org/10.2147/NSS.S7064, 22323897.

PubMed | Google Scholar

54 Public Library of Science, The role of dopamine in sleep regulation, 2012, http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2012/06/120619225725.htm.

Google Scholar

55 Roffwarg H. P., Association of sleep disorders centers: diagnostic classification of sleep and arousal disorders, *Sleep*. (1979) **2**, 1–137.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

56 Thorpy M. J., *International Classification of Sleep Disorders: Diagnostic and Coding Manual*, 1990, American Sleep Disorders Association.

Google Scholar

57 Sateia M. J., International Classification of Sleep Disorders-Third Edition, *Chest*. (2014) **146**, no. 5, 1387–1394, https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.14-0970, 2-s2.0-84910020175, 25367475.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

58 National Institutes of Health, NIH state of the science conference statement on manifestations and management of chronic insomnia in adults statement, *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*. (2005) **1**, no. 4, 412–421, https://doi.org/10.5664/jcsm.26373.

PubMed | Google Scholar

59 Drake C. L. and Roth T., Predisposition in the evolution of insomnia: evidence, potential mechanisms, and future directions, *Sleep Medicine Clinics*. (2006) **1**, no. 3, 333–349, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsmc.2006.06.005, 2-s2.0-40749128309.

Google Scholar

60 Nofzinger E. A., Buysse D. J., Germain A., Price J. C., Miewald J. M., and Kupfer D. J., Functional neuroimaging evidence for hyperarousal in insomnia, *The American Journal of Psychiatry*. (2004) **161**, no. 11, 2126–2128, https://doi.org/10.1176/appi.ajp.161.11.2126, 2-s2.0-7444227411.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

61 Schwab R., Insomnia and excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), Merck Manual Consumer Version, https://www.merckmanuals.com/home/brain,-spinal-cord,-and-nerve-disorders/sleep-disorders/insomnia-and-excessive-daytime-sleepiness-eds
.

Google Scholar

62 Chigome K., Nhira S., and Meyer J. C., An overview of insomnia and its management, *SA Pharmaceutical Journal*. (2018) **85**, no. 2, 32–38.

Google Scholar

63 Lian Y., Xiao J., Liu Y., Ning L., Guan S., Ge H., Li F., and Liu J., Associations between insomnia, sleep duration and poor work ability, *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*. (2015) **78**, no. 1, 45–51, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpsychores.2014.09.009, 2-s2.0-84916933385,

25288095.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

64 Riemann D., European guideline for the diagnosis and treatment of insomnia, *Journal of Sleep Research*. (2017) **26**, no. 6, 675–700, https://doi.org/10.1111/jsr.12594, 2-s2.0-85035020111.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

65 Michael L. P. and Carla J. Q., The cognitive behavioural treatment of insomnia: a session-by-session guide, *Springer Science & Business Media*. (2005) **33**, no. 50.

Google Scholar

66 Ibanez V., Silva J., and Cauli O., A survey on sleep questionnaires and diaries, *Sleep Medicine*. (2018) **42**, 90–96, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2017.08.026, 2-s2.0-85041415529.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

67 Morin M., Charles M., and Colin A., Insomnia: a clinician's guide to assessment and treatment, *Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers*. (2003) **30**.

Google Scholar

68 Johns M. W., A new method for measuring daytime sleepiness: the Epworth sleepiness scale, *Sleep*. (1991) **14**, no. 6, 540–545, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/14.6.540, 2-s2.0-0026333617, 1798888.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

69 Soldatos C. R., Dikeos D. G., and Paparrigopoulos T. J., Athens Insomnia Scale: validation of an instrument based on ICD-10 criteria, *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*. (2000) **48**, no. 6, 555–560, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-3999(00)00095-7, 2-s2.0-0033819351, 11033374.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

70 Soldatos C. R., Dikeos D. G., and Paparrigopoulos T. J., The diagnostic validity of the Athens Insomnia Scale, *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*. (2003) **55**, no. 3, 263–267, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-3999(02)00604-9, 2-s2.0-0347710032, 12932801.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

71 Orr W. C., Utilization of polysomnography in the assessment of sleep disorders, *The Medical Clinics of North America*. (1985) **69**, no. 6, 1153–1167, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0025-7125(16)30980-4, 2-s2.0-0022397590.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

72 Ruoff C. and Rye D., The ICSD-3 and DSM-5 guidelines for diagnosing narcolepsy: clinical relevance and practicality, *Current Medical Research and Opinion*. (2016) **32**, no. 10, 1611–1622, https://doi.org/10.1080/03007995.2016.1208643, 2-s2.0-84978682935.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

73 Richardson G. S., Carskadon M. A., Flagg W., van den Hoed J., Dement W. C., and Mitler M. M., Excessive daytime sleepiness in man: multiple sleep latency measurement in narcoleptic and control subjects, *Electroencephalography and Clinical Neurophysiology*. (1978) **45**, no. 5, 621–627, https://doi.org/10.1016/0013-4694(78)90162-1, 2-s2.0-84886612197, 81764.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

74 Kushida C. A., Evaluation of Sleep Complaints, *e-Book*. (2014) **9**, no. 4, xi–xii, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsmc.2014.08.010, 2-s2.0-84910657036.

Google Scholar

75 Stores G., Clinical diagnosis and misdiagnosis of sleep disorders, *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry*. (2007) **78**, no. 12, 1293–1297, https://doi.org/10.1136/jnnp.2006.111179, 2-s2.0-36849070333, 18024690.

CAS PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

76 Walker H. K., Hall W. D., and Hurst J. W., Clinical Methods: The History, Physical, and Laboratory Examinations, 1990, 3rd edition, Boston: Butterworths.

Google Scholar

77 Bloom H. G., Ahmed I., Alessi C. A., Ancoli-Israel S., Buysse D. J., Kryger M. H., Phillips B. A., Thorpy M. J., Vitiello M. V., and Zee P. C., Evidence-based recommendations for the assessment and management of sleep disorders in older persons, *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. (2009) **57**, no. 5, 761–789, https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1532-5415.2009.02220.x, 2-s2.0-65449156410.

PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

78 Garg H., Sleep history taking and examination, *International Journal of Head and Neck Surgery*. (2019) **10**, no. 1, 9–17, https://doi.org/10.5005/jp-journals-10001-1363.

Google Scholar

79 Koffel E. A., Koffel J. B., and Gehrman P. R., A meta-analysis of group cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2015) **19**, 6–16, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2014.05.001, 2-s2.0-84920448747, 24931811.

PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

80 van Straten A., van der Zweerde T., Kleiboer A., Cuijpers P., Morin C. M., and Lancee J., Cognitive and behavioral therapies in the treatment of insomnia: a meta- analysis, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2018) **38**, 3–16, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2017.02.001, 2-s2.0-85017155616, 28392168.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

81 Wu J. Q., Appleman E. R., Salazar R. D., and Ong J. C., Cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia comorbid with psychiatric and medical conditions, *JAMA Internal Medicine*. (2015) **175**, no. 9, 1461–1472, https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2015.3006, 2-s2.0-84941254643, 26147487.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

82 Seyffert M., Lagisetty P., Landgraf J., Chopra V., Pfeiffer P. N., Conte M. L., and Rogers M. A. M., Internet-delivered cognitive behavioral therapy to treat insomnia: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *PLoS One*. (2016) **11**, no. 2, article e0149139, https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0149139, 2-s2.0-84959336215, 26867139.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

83 Qaseem A., Kansagara D., Forciea M. A., Cooke M., Denberg T. D., and for the Clinical Guidelines Committee of the American College of Physicians, Management of chronic insomnia disorder in adults: a clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians, *Annals of Internal Medicine*. (2016) **165**, no. 2, 125–133, https://doi.org/10.7326/M15-2175, 2-s2.0-84979641049, 27136449.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

84 Manber R. and Carney C., *Treatment Plans and Interventions for Insomnia: A Case Formulation Approach*, 2015, Guilford, New York, NY, USA.

Google Scholar

85 Edinger J. and Carney C., *Overcoming Insomnia: A Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy Approach*, 2015, Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Google Scholar

86 Morin C. M., *Psychological and Behavioral Treatments for Primary Insomnia*, 2005, Principles and Practice of Sleep Medicine, https://doi.org/10.1016/B0-72-160797-7/50068-9, 2-s2.0-84882866864.

Google Scholar

87 Driver H. S. and Taylor S. R., Exercise and sleep, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2000) **4**, no. 4, 387–402, https://doi.org/10.1053/smrv.2000.0110, 2-s2.0-0033854050, 12531177.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

88 Roehrs T. and Roth T., Caffeine: sleep and daytime sleepiness, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2008) **12**, no. 2, 153–162, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2007.07.004, 2-s2.0-40649095451.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

89 Thakkar M. M., Sharma R., and Sahota P., Alcohol disrupts sleep homeostasis, *Alcohol*. (2015) **49**, no. 4, 299–310, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.alcohol.2014.07.019, 2-s2.0-84930022993, 25499829.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

90 Ebrahim I. Q., Shapiro C. M., Williams A. J., and Fenwick P. B., Alcohol and sleep I; effects on normal sleep, *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*. (2013) **37**, no. 4, 539`–5549, https://doi.org/10.1111/acer.12006, 2-s2.0-84875638180.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

91 Morin C. M., Mimeault V., and Gagné A., Nonpharmacological treatment of late-life insomnia, *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*. (1999) **46**, no. 2, 103–116, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-3999(98)00077-4, 2-s2.0-0032955132, 10098820.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

92 Ohayon M. M., Prevalence and correlates of nonrestorative sleep complaints, *Archives of Internal Medicine*. (2005) **165**, no. 1, 35–41, https://doi.org/10.1001/archinte.165.1.35, 2-s2.0-11844302143, 15642872.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

93 National Sleep Foundation, 2008, https://www.sleep.org/articles/tempera-ture-for-sleep/.

Google Scholar

94 Muzet A., Environmental noise, sleep and health, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2007) **11**, no. 2, 135–142, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2006.09.001, 2-s2.0-33847269609, 17317241.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

95 World Health Organization, 2018, http://www.euro.who.int/en/health-topics/environment-and-health/noise/policy/who-night-noise-guidelines-for-europe.

Google Scholar

96 Ellis J. G. and Allen S. F., Sleep hygiene and prevention of chronic insomnia, *Sleep and Health*, 2019, Elseveir Inc., 137–145.

Google Scholar

97 Finley J. and Perlis V., Cognitive behavioral therapy of chronic insomnia, *Primary Care Sleep Medicine*, 2014, 2nd edition, Springer, 67–82, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4939-1185-1_7.

Google Scholar

98 Riemann D. and Perlis M. L., The treatments of chronic insomnia: A review of benzodiazepine receptor agonists and psychological and behavioral therapies, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2009) **13**, no. 3, 205–214, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2008.06.001, 2-s2.0-67349163307.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

99 Lichstein K. L., Nau S. D., McCrae C. S., and Stone K. C., Psychological and behavioral treatments for secondary insomnias, *Principles and Practice of Sleep Medicine*, 2005, Elsevier, 738–748, https://doi.org/10.1016/B0-72-160797-7/50069-0, 2-s2.0-84882820922.

Google Scholar

100 Trauer M., Qian M. Y., Doyle J. S., Rajaratnam S. M. W., and Cunnington D., Cognitive behavioral therapy for chronic insomnia, *Annals of Internal Medicine*. (2015) **163**, no. 3, 191–204, https://doi.org/10.7326/M14-2841, 2-s2.0-84936796317, 26054060.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

101 Haack M., Scott-Sutherland J., Santangelo G., Simpson N. S., Sethna N., and Mullington J. M., Pain sensitivity and modulation in primary insomnia, *European Journal of Pain*. (2012) **16**, no. 4, 522–533, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpain.2011.07.007, 22396081.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

102 Colombo C., Benedetti F., Barbini B., Campori E., and Smeraldi E., Rate of switch from depression into mania after therapeutic sleep deprivation in bipolar depression, *Psychiatry Research*. (1999) **86**, no. 3, 267–270, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0165-1781(99)00036-0, 2-s2.0-0032806849, 10482346.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

103 Geiger-Brown J. M., Rogers V. E., Liu W., Ludeman E. M., Downton K. D., and Diaz-Abad M., Cognitive behavioral therapy in persons with comorbid insomnia: a meta- analysis, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2015) **23**, 54–67, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2014.11.007, 2-s2.0-84940909013, 25645130.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

104 Ho F. Y., Chan C. S., and Tang K. N., Cognitive-behavioral therapy for sleep disturbances in treating posttraumatic stress disorder symptoms: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials, *Clinical Psychology Review*. (2016) **43**, 90–102, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2015.09.005, 2-s2.0-84954394887, 26439674.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

105 Roth T., Roehrs T., and Pies R., Insomnia: pathophysiology and implications for treatment, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2007) **11**, no. 1, 71–79, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2006.06.002, 2-s2.0-33846212321, 17175184.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

106 Arroll B., Fernando A., Falloon K., Goodyear-Smith F., Samaranayake C., and Warman G., Prevalence of causes of insomnia in primary care: a cross-sectional study, *The British Journal of General Practice*. (2012) **62**, no. 595, e99–e103, https://doi.org/10.3399/bjgp12X625157, 2-s2.0-84856872313, 22520782.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

107 Espie C. A., Understanding insomnia through cognitive modelling, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2007) **8**, no. 4, S3–S8, https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-9457(08)70002-9, 2-s2.0-40749137694, 18346675.

PubMed | Google Scholar

108 Richardson G. S., Human physiological models of insomnia, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2007) **8**, no. 4, S9–S14, https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-9457(08)70003-0, 2-s2.0-40749083474, 18346677.

PubMed | Google Scholar

109 Buysse D. J., Angst J., Gamma A., Ajdacic V., Eich D., and Rössler W., Prevalence, course, and comorbidity of insomnia and depression in young adults, *Sleep*. (2008) **31**, no. 4, 473–480, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/31.4.473, 2-s2.0-43749096376, 18457234.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

110 Gregory A. M., Caspi A., Eley T. C., Moffitt T. E., O'Connor T. G., and Poulton R., Prospective longitudinal associations between persistent sleep problems in childhood and anxiety and depression disorders in adulthood, *Journal of Abnormal Child Psychology*. (2005) **33**, no. 2, 157–163, https://doi.org/10.1007/s10802-005-1824-0, 2-s2.0-17644373445, 15839494.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

111 Ohayon M. M. and Roth T., Place of chronic insomnia in the course of depressive and anxiety disorders, *Journal of Psychiatric Research*. (2003) **37**, no. 1, 9–15, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-3956(02)00052-3, 2-s2.0-0037212076, 12482465.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

112 Riemann D. and Voderholzer U., Primary insomnia: a risk factor to develop depression?, *Journal of Affective Disorders*. (2003) **76**, no. 1-3, 255–259, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0165-0327(02)00072-1, 2-s2.0-0038683699, 12943956.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

113 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Key sleep disorders, 2013, http://www.cdc.gov/sleep/about_sleep/key_disorders.htm.

Google Scholar

114 Schutte-Rodin S., Broch L., Buysse D., Dorsey C., and Sateia M., Clinical guideline for the evaluation and management of chronic insomnia in adults, *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*. (2008) **4**, no. 5, 487–504, https://doi.org/10.5664/jcsm.27286.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

115 Mihic S. and Harris R., Hypnotics and sedatives, *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 2011, 12th edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, USA, 457–480.

Google Scholar

116 Vinkers C. H. and Olivier B., Mechanisms Underlying Tolerance after Long-Term Benzodiazepine Use: A Future for Subtype-Selective G A B A A Receptor Modulators?, *Advances in Pharmacological Sciences*. (2012) **2012**, 19, 416864, https://doi.org/10.1155/2012/416864, 2-s2.0-84859747943.

PubMed | Google Scholar

117 Holbrook A. M., Crowther R., Lotter A., Cheng C., and King D., Meta-analysis of benzodiazepine use in the treatment of insomnia, *CMAJ*. (2000) **162**, no. 2, 225–233, 10674059.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

118 The American Geriatrics Society 2012 Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel, American Geriatrics Society Updated Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults, *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. (2012) **60**, no. 4, 616–631, https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1532-5415.2012.03923.x, 2-s2.0-84859857179.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

119 Huedo-Medina T. B., Kirsch I., Middlemass J., Klonizakis M., and Siriwardena A. N., Effectiveness of non-benzodiazepine hypnotics in treatment of adult insomnia: meta-analysis of data submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, *BMJ*. (2012) **345**, no. dec17 6, article

e8343, https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.e8343, 2-s2.0-84872308335, 23248080.

PubMed | Google Scholar

120 Neubauer D., ZolpiMistTM: a new formulation of zolpidem tartrate for the short-term treatment of insomnia in the US, *Nature and Science of Sleep*. (2010) **2**, 79–84, https://doi.org/10.2147/nss.s6431, 23616700.

PubMed | Google Scholar

121 Hajak G. and Bandelow B., Safety and tolerance of zolpidem in the treatment of disturbed sleep, *International Clinical Psychopharmacology*. (1998) **13**, no. 4, 157–168, https://doi.org/10.1097/00004850-199807000-00002, 9727726.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

122 Roth T., Soubrane C., Titeux L., and Walsh J. K., Efficacy and safety of zolpidem-MR: a double-blind, placebo-controlled study in adults with primary insomnia, *Sleep Medicine*. (2006) **7**, no. 5, 397–406, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2006.04.008, 2-s2.0-33746289069, 16815744.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

123 Lerchl A. and Luboshitzky R., Melatonin administration alters semen quality in normal men, *Journal of Andrology*. (2004) **25**, no. 2, 185–187, https://doi.org/10.1002/j.1939-4640.2004.tb02778.x, 14760004.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

124 Partonen T., Short Note: Melatonin-dependent infertility, *Medical Hypotheses*. (1999) **52**, no. 3, 269–270, https://doi.org/10.1054/mehy.1997.0629, 2-s2.0-0033103605, 10362288.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

125 Krystal A. D., Richelson E., and Roth T., Review of the histamine system and the clinical effects of H_1 antagonists: basis for a new model for understanding the effects of insomnia medications, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2013) **17**, no. 4, 263–272, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2012.08.001, 2-s2.0-84878379048, 23357028.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

126 Herring W. J., Connor K. M., Ivgy-May N., Snyder E., Liu K., Snavely D. B., Krystal A. D., Walsh J. K., Benca R. M., Rosenberg R., Sangal R. B., Budd K., Hutzelmann J., Leibensperger H., Froman S., Lines C., Roth T., and Michelson D., Suvorexant in patients with insomnia: results from two 3-month randomized controlled clinical trials, *Biological Psychiatry*. (2016) **79**, no. 2, 136–148, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsych.2014.10.003, 2-s2.0-84951568583, 25526970.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

127 Herring W. J., Snyder E., Budd K., Hutzelmann J., Snavely D., Liu K., Lines C., Roth T., and Michelson D., Orexin receptor antagonism for treatment of insomnia: a randomized clinical trial of suvorexant, *Neurology*. (2012) **79**, no. 23, 2265–2274, https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.0b013e31827688ee, 2-s2.0-84871323368, 23197752.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

128 Michelson D., Snyder E., Paradis E., Chengan-Liu M., Snavely D. B., Hutzelmann J., Walsh J. K., Krystal A. D., Benca R. M., Cohn M., Lines C., Roth T., and Herring W. J., Safety and efficacy of suvorexant during 1-year treatment of insomnia with subsequent abrupt treatment discontinuation: a phase 3 randomised, double- blind, placebo-controlled trial, *Lancet Neurology*. (2014) **13**, no. 5, 461–471, https://doi.org/10.1016/S1474-4422(14)70053-5, 2-s2.0-84898546938, 24680372.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

129 *GSK and Actelion Discontinue Clinical Development of Almorexant*, 2011, Wayback Machine-GSK Press.

Google Scholar

130 Christopher J. A., Small-molecule antagonists of the orexin receptors, *Pharmaceutical Patent Analyst*. (2014) **3**, no. 6, 625–638, https://doi.org/10.4155/ppa.14.46, 2-s2.0-84929298762.

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

131 Winrow C. J., Gotter A. L., Cox C. D., Tannenbaum P. L., Garson S. L., Doran S. M., Breslin M. J., Schreier J. D., Fox S. V., Harrell C. M., Stevens J., Reiss D. R., Cui D., Coleman P. J., and Renger J. J., Pharmacological characterization of MK-6096 - a dual orexin receptor antagonist for insomnia, *Neuropharmacology*. (2012) **62**, no. 2, 978–987, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuropharm.2011.10.003, 2-s2.0-84855982509, 22019562.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

132 Equihua-Benítez A. C., Guzmán-Vásquez K., and Drucker-Colín R., Understanding sleep-wake mechanisms and drug discovery, *Expert Opinion on Drug Discovery*. (2017) **12**, no. 7, 643–657, https://doi.org/10.1080/17460441.2017.1329818, 2-s2.0-85020753980, 28511597.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

133 Smart D., Sabido-David C., Brough S. J., Jewitt F., Johns A., Porter R. A., and Jerman J. C., SB-334867-A: the first selective orexin-1 receptor antagonist, *British Journal of Pharmacology*. (2001) **132**, no. 6, 1179–1182, https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjp.0703953, 2-s2.0-0035084442, 11250867.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

134 Langmead C. J., Jerman J. C., Brough S. J., Scott C., Porter R. A., and Herdon H. J., Characterisation of the binding of [3H]-SB-674042, a novel non-peptide antagonist, to the human orexin-1 receptor, *British Journal of Pharmacology*. (2004) **141**, no. 2, 340–346, https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjp.0705610, 2-s2.0-1342322672.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

135 Renzulli C., Nash M., Wright M., Thomas S., Zamuner S., Pellegatti M., Bettica P., and Boyle G., Disposition and metabolism of [14C]SB-649868, an orexin 1 and 2 receptor antagonist, in humans, *Drug Metabolism and Disposition*. (2011) **39**, no. 2, 215–227, https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.110.035386, 2-s2.0-79251480429, 21045199.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

136 Hirose M., Egashira S., Goto Y., Hashihayata T., Ohtake N., Iwaasa H., Hata M., Fukami T., Kanatani A., and Yamada K., *N*-Acyl 6,7-dimethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline: The first orexin-2 receptor selective non-peptidic antagonist, *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*. (2003) **13**, no. 24, 4497–4499, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmcl.2003.08.038, 2-s2.0-0344927037.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

137 Perrey D. A., German N. A., Gilmour B. P., Li J. X., Harris D. L., Thomas B. F., and Zhang Y., Substituted tetrahydroisoquinolines as selective antagonists for the orexin 1 receptor, *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*. (2013) **56**, no. 17, 6901–6916, https://doi.org/10.1021/jm400720h, 2-s2.0-84884214425, 23941044.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

138 Suppes T., Kelly D. I., and Perla J. M., Challenges in the management of bipolar depression, *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*. (2005) **66**, no. 5, 11–16.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

139 Koppel C., Tenczer J., and Ibe K., Poisoning with over-the-counter doxylamine preparations: an evaluation of 109 cases, *Human Toxicology*. (1987) **6**, no. 5, 355–359, https://doi.org/10.1177/096032718700600503, 2-s2.0-84965889108, 3679242.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

140 Rose M. and Kam C. A., Gabapentin: pharmacology and its use in pain management, *Anaesthesia*. (2002) **57**, no. 5, 451–462, https://doi.org/10.1046/j.0003-2409.2001.02399.x, 2-s2.0-0036252330, 11966555.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

141 Gajraj N. M., Pregabalin: its pharmacology and use in pain management, *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. (2007) **105**, no. 6, 1805–1815, https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ane.0000287643.13410.5e, 2-s2.0-36549018640, 18042886.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

142 Dooley D. J., Taylor C. P., Donevan S., and Feltner D., Erratum: Ca^{2+} channel $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands: novel modulators of neurotransmission:, *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences*. (2007) **28**, no. 4, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tips.2007.02.001, 2-s2.0-33947663056.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

143 Gilron I., Gabapentin and pregabalin for chronic neuropathic and early postsurgical pain: current evidence and future directions, *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*. (2007) **20**, no. 5, 456–472, https://doi.org/10.1097/ACO.0b013e3282effaa7, 2-s2.0-34548699669, 17873599.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

144 de Haas S., Otte A., de Weerd A., van Erp G., Cohen A., and van Gerven J., Exploratory polysomnographic evaluation of pregabalin on sleep disturbance in patients with epilepsy, *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*. (2007) **3**, no. 5, 473–478, https://doi.org/10.5664/jcsm.26911.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

145 Holsboer-Trachsler E. and Prieto R., Effects of pregabalin on sleep in generalized anxiety disorder, *The International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology*. (2013) **16**, no. 4, 925–936, https://doi.org/10.1017/S1461145712000922, 2-s2.0-84875703006.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

146 Guay D. R. P., Pregabalin in neuropathic pain: a more "pharmaceutically elegant" gabapentin?, *The American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapy*. (2005) **3**, no. 4, 274–287, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjopharm.2005.12.008, 2-s2.0-33144490331, 16503325.

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

147 Brower K., Myra Kim H., Strobbe S., Karam-Hage M. A., Consens F., and Zucker R. A., A randomized double-blind pilot trial of gabapentin versus placebo to treat alcohol dependence and comorbid insomnia, *Alcoholism, Clinical and Experimental Research*. (2008) **32**, no. 8, 1429–1438, https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1530-0277.2008.00706.x, 2-s2.0-48749116784, 18540923.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

148 Voris J., Smith N. L., Rao S. M., Thome D. L., and Flowers Q. J., Gabapentin for the treatment of ethanol withdrawal, *Substance Abuse*. (2003) **24**, no. 2, 129–132, https://doi.org/10.1080/08897070309511541, 2-s2.0-0042737615, 12766380.

PubMed | Google Scholar

149 Pandi-Perumal S. R., Trakht I., Spence D. W., Srinivasan V., Dagan Y., and Cardinali D. P., The roles of melatonin and light in the pathophysiology and treatment of circadian rhythm sleep disorders, *Nature Clinical Practice. Neurology*. (2008) **4**, no. 8, 436–447, https://doi.org/10.1038/ncpneuro0847, 2-s2.0-49249101157, 18628753.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

150 Brown G. M., Pandi-Perumal S. R., Trakht I., and Cardinali D. P., Melatonin and its relevance to jet lag, *Travel Medicine and Infectious Disease*. (2009) **7**, no. 2, 69–81, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tmaid.2008.09.004, 2-s2.0-60449102425, 19237140.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

151 Srinivasan V., Singh J., Pandi-Perumal S. R., Brown G. M., Spence D. W., and Cardinali D. P., Jet lag, circadian rhythm sleep disturbances, and depression: the role of melatonin and its analogs, *Advances in Therapy*. (2010) **27**, no. 11, 796–813, https://doi.org/10.1007/s12325-010-0065-y, 2-s2.0-78649321488, 20827520.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

152 Verma N. and Kushida C., Restless legs and PLMD, *Primary Care Sleep Medicine*, 2014, 2nd edition, Springer, 339–344,, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4939-1185-1_30.

Google Scholar

153 Allen R. and Earley C., Restless Legs Syndrome, *Journal of Clinical Neurophysiology*. (2001) **18**, no. 2, 128–147, https://doi.org/10.1097/00004691-200103000-00004, 2-s2.0-0034973123, 11435804.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

154 Phillips B., Hening W., Britz P., and Mannino D., Prevalence and correlates of restless leg syndrome: results from the 2005 National Sleep Foundation poll, *Chest*. (2006) **129**, no. 1, 76–80, https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.129.1.76, 2-s2.0-33144467434, 16424415.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

155 Micallef J., Rey M., Eusebio A., Audebert C., Rouby F., Jouve E., Tardieu S., and Blin O., Antiparkinsonian drug-induced sleepiness: a double-blind placebo-controlled study of L-dopa, bromocriptine and pramipexole in healthy subjects, *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*. (2009) **67**, no. 3, 333–340, https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2125.2008.03310.x, 2-s2.0-62949239254.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

156 Pagel J. F., Drug-Induced Hypersomnolence, *Sleep Medicine Clinics*. (2017) **12**, no. 3, 383–393, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsmc.2017.03.011, 2-s2.0-85020399480, 28778236.

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

157 Nigam G., Camacho M., and Riaz M., Rapid eye movement (REM) rebound on initial exposure to CPAP therapy: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *Sleep Science and Practice*. (2017) **1**, no. 1, https://doi.org/10.1186/s41606-017-0014-7.

Google Scholar

158 Nigam G., Pathak C., and Riaz M., A systematic review on prevalence and risk factors associated with treatment- emergent central sleep apnea, *Annals of Thoracic Medicine*. (2016) **11**, no. 3, 202–210, https://doi.org/10.4103/1817-1737.185761, 2-s2.0-84978976215, 27512510.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

159 Grandner M. A. and Perlis M. L., Treating insomnia disorder in the context of medical and psychiatric comorbidities, *JAMA Internal Medicine*. (2015) **175**, no. 9, 1472–1473, https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2015.3015, 2-s2.0-84941243414, 26147221.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

160 Sateia M. J. and Nowell P. D., Insomnia, *The Lancet*. (2004) **364**, no. 9449, 1959–1973, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(04)17480-1, 2-s2.0-9644268319.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

161 Breslau N., Roth T., Rosenthal L., and Andreski P., Sleep disturbance and psychiatric disorders: a longitudinal epidemiological study of young adults, *Biological Psychiatry*. (1996) **39**, no. 6, 411–418, https://doi.org/10.1016/0006-3223(95)00188-3, 2-s2.0-0029866450, 8679786.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

162 McCrae C. S. and Lichstein K. L., Secondary insomnia: diagnostic challenges and intervention opportunities, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2001) **5**, no. 1, 47–61, https://doi.org/10.1053/smrv.2000.0146, 2-s2.0-0034916395.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

163 Fava M., McCall W. V., Krystal A., Wessel T., Rubens R., Caron J., Amato D., and Roth T., Eszopiclone co-administered with fluoxetine in patients with insomnia coexisting with major depressive disorder, *Biological Psychiatry*. (2006) **59**, no. 11, 1052–1060, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsych.2006.01.016, 2-s2.0-33744905209, 16581036.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

164 Manber R., Edinger J. D., Gress J. L., Pedro-Salcedo M. G. S., Kuo T. F., and Kalista T., Cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia enhances depression outcome in patients with comorbid major depressive disorder and insomnia, *Sleep*. (2008) **31**, no. 4, 489–495, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/31.4.489, 2-s2.0-43749119852, 18457236.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

165 Cheatle M. D., Foster S., Pinkett A., Lesneski M., Qu D., and Dhingra L., Assessing and managing sleep disturbance in patients with chronic pain, *Sleep Medicine Clinics*. (2016) **11**, no. 4, 531–541, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsmc.2016.08.004, 2-s2.0-84994718528, 28118876.

PubMed | Google Scholar

166 Abad V. C., Sarinas P. S. A., and Guilleminault C., Sleep and rheumatologic disorders, *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. (2008) **12**, no. 3, 211–228, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2007.09.001, 2-s2.0-43249086221.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

167 Crinion S. J. and McNicholas W. T., Sleep-related disorders in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, *Expert Review of Respiratory Medicine*. (2014) **8**, no. 1, 79–88, https://doi.org/10.1586/17476348.2014.860357, 2-s2.0-84893152767, 24378218.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

168 Talih F. R., Ajaltouni J. J., Tamim H. M., and Kobeissy F., Risk of obstructive sleep apnea and excessive daytime sleepiness in hospitalized psychiatric patients, *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment*. (2017) **13**, 1193–1200, https://doi.org/10.2147/NDT.S131311, 2-s2.0-85018870513, 28490881.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

169 Parish J. M., Sleep-related problems in common medical conditions, *Chest*. (2009) **135**, no. 2, 563–572, https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.08-0934, 2-s2.0-60249091187.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

170 Soares C. N., Joffe H., Rubens R., Caron J., Roth T., and Cohen L., Eszopiclone in patients with insomnia during perimenopause and early Postmenopause, *Obstetrics & Gynecology*. (2006) **108**, no. 6, 1402–1410, https://doi.org/10.1097/01.AOG.0000245449.97365.97, 2-s2.0-33845406163.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

171 National Institutes of Health, Valerian: fact sheet for health professionals, 2013. https://ods.od.nih.gov/factsheets/Valerian-HealthProfessional/.

Google Scholar

172 Santos M. S., Ferreira F., Cunha A. P., Carvalho A., and Macedo T., An aqueous extract of valerian influences the transport of GABA in synaptosomes, *Planta Medica*. (1994) **60**, no. 3, 278–279, https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2006-959476, 2-s2.0-0028365501.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

173 Morin C. M., Koetter U., Bastien C., Ware J. C., and Wooten V., Valerian-hops combination and diphenhydramine for treating insomnia: a randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial, *Sleep*. (2005) **28**, no. 11, 1465–1471, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/28.11.1465, 2-s2.0-27644462007, 16335333.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

174 Salter S. and Brownie S., Treating primary insomnia - the efficacy of valerian and hops, *Australian Family Physician*. (2010) **39**, no. 6, 433–437, 20628685.

PubMed | Google Scholar

175 Bent S., Padula A., Moore D., Patterson M., and Mehling W., Valerian for sleep: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *The American Journal of Medicine*. (2006) **119**, no. 12, 1005–1012, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjmed.2006.02.026, 2-s2.0-34248568013, 17145239.

PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

176 Attele A. S., Xie J. T., and Yuan C. S., Treatment of insomnia: an alternative approach, *Alternative Medicine Review*. (2000) **5**, no. 3, 249–259, 10869104.

CAS | PubMed | Google Scholar

177 Food and Drug Administration, Consumer advisory: kava-containing dietary supplements may be associated with severe liver injury, 2014, http://www.fda.gov/Food/ResourcesForYou/Consumers/ucm085482.htm.

Google Scholar

178 FDA approves Dayvigo, 2019, http://drugs.com/newdrugs/fda-approves-dayvigo-lemborexant-insomnia-adult-patients-5132.html .

Google Scholar

179 *Dayvigo*, 2019, Eisai Inc, Woodcliff Lake, NJ, USA, http://accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2019/212028s000lbl.pdf.

Google Scholar

180 Janto K., Prichard J. R., and Pusalavidyasagar S., An update on dual orexin receptor antagonists and their potential role in insomnia therapeutics, *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*. (2018) **14**, no. 8, 1399–1408, https://doi.org/10.5664/jcsm.7282, 2-s2.0-85051455235, 30092886.

PubMed Web of Science® Google Scholar

181 Lemborexant, 2019, http://drugs.com/nda/lemborexant_190312.html.

Google Scholar

182 Kärppä M., Moline M., Yardley J., Pinner K., Perdomo C., Filippov G., and Zammit G., 0367 Lemborexant treatment for insomnia: 6-month safety, *Sleep*. (2019) **42**, no. Supplement 1, A149–A150, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/zsz067.366.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

183 Roth T., Rosenberg R., Murphy P., Yardley J., Kumar D., Pinner K., Perdomo C., and Moline M., 0371 Lemborexant treatment for insomnia in phase 3: impact on disease severity, *Sleep*. (2019) **42, article A151**, no. Supplement 1, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/zsz067.370.

Web of Science® Google Scholar

184 Cheng J., Moline M., Filippov G., Murphy P., Bsharat M., and Hall N., 0429 Respiratory safety of lemborexant in adult and elderly subjects with mild obstructive sleep apnea, *Sleep*. (2019) **42**, no. Supplement 1, A173–A174, https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/zsz067.428.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

185 Phase 3 investigation of nemorexant for patients with insomnia, 2018, http://idorsia.com/documents/com/fact-sheets-presentations/act-541468-webcast-presentation.pdf.

Google Scholar

186 Dauvilliers Y., Zammit G., Fietze I., Mayleben D., Seboek Kinter D., Pain S., and Hedner J., Daridorexant, a new dual orexin receptor antagonist to treat insomnia disorder, *Annals of Neurology*. (2020) **87**, no. 3, 347–356, https://doi.org/10.1002/ana.25680, 31953863.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

187 Recourt K., de Boer P., Zuiker R., Luthringer R., Kent J., van der Ark P., van Hove I., van Gerven J., Jacobs G., van Nueten L., and Drevets W., Correction to: The selective orexin-2 antagonist seltorexant (JNJ-42847922/MIN-202) shows antidepressant and sleep-promoting effects in patients with major depressive disorder, *Translational Psychiatry*. (2019) **9**, no. 1, https://doi.org/10.1038/s41398-019-0585-4, 2-s2.0-85072929442.

Web of Science® | Google Scholar

188 Brooks S., Jacobs G. E., de Boer P., Kent J. M., van Nueten L., van Amerongen G., Zuiker R., Kezic I., Luthringer R., van der Ark P., van Gerven J. M. A., and Drevets W., The selective orexin-2 receptor antagonist seltorexant improves sleep: an exploratory double-blind, placebo controlled, crossover study in antidepressant-treated major depressive disorder patients with persistent insomnia, *Journal of Psychopharmacology*. (2019) **33**, no. 2, 202–209, https://doi.org/10.1177/0269881118822258, 2-s2.0-85060716678, 30644312.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

189 de Boer P., Drevets W. C., Rofael H., van der Ark P., Kent J. M., Kezic I., Parapatics S., Dorffner G., van Gerven J., Beneš H., Keicher C., Jahn H., Seiden D. J., and Luthringer R., A randomized phase 2 study to evaluate the orexin-2 receptor antagonist seltorexant in individuals with insomnia without psychiatric comorbidity, *Journal of Psychopharmacology*. (2018) **32**, no. 6, 668–677, https://doi.org/10.1177/0269881118773745, 2-s2.0-85047902644, 29848147.

CAS | PubMed | Web of Science® | Google Scholar

190 *Minerva Neurosciences Announces Achievement of Primary and Key Secondary Objectives in Phase 2B Clinical Trial of Seltorexant (Min-202) in Insomnia*, 2019, Minerva Neurosciences, Waltham, MA, USA, http://ir.minervaneurosciences.com/news-releases/news-release-details/minerva-neurosciences-announces-achievement-primary-and-key.

Google Scholar

191 Borodic G. E., Botulinum toxin and the treatment of primary disorders of mood and affect, 2015, US Patent 8926991B2.

Google Scholar

192 Singh N. N., Compositions for treating insomnia, 2012, US Patent 8252809B2.

Google Scholar

193 Singh N. and Pather S. I., Methods of treating middle-of-the-night insomnia, 2012, US Patent 8242131B2.

Google Scholar

194 Dalen F. V., Jansen K. A., and Dorkoosh F. A., Zolpidem tablets, 2012, US Patent 8148393B2.

Google Scholar

195 Castile J. D., Cheng Y. H., and Jenkins P. G., Intranasal compositions, 2011, US Patent 8034371B2.

Google Scholar

196 Heuer M. A., Chaudhuri S., and Clement K., Method for promoting sleep, 2011, US Patent 7914826.

Google Scholar

197 Heuer M. A., Chaudhuri S., and Clement K., Compositions and methods for the induction and maintenance of quality sleep, 2011, US Patent 7906154.

Google Scholar

198 Grote L., Stenlof K., and Hedner J., Method of treating and diagnosing sleep disordered breathing and means for carrying out the method, 2010, US Patent 7655681B2.

Google Scholar

199 Dugger H. A. and El-Shafy M. A., Buccal, polar and non-polar spray containing zolpidem, 2009, US Patent 7632517B2.

Google Scholar

200 Zuckerman A., Sleep inducing toothpaste made with natural herbs and a natural hormone, 2006, US Patent 6998112B2.

Google Scholar

201 Rosenthal H. A., Method of treating sleeplessness with melatonin on an acute basis, 2004, US Patent 6703412B1.

Google Scholar

Citing Literature

Download PDF

ABOUT WILEY ONLINE LIBRARY

Privacy Policy
Terms of Use
About Cookies
Manage Cookies
Accessibility
Wiley Research DE&I Statement and Publishing Policies
Developing World Access

HELP & SUPPORT

Contact Us
Training and Support
DMCA & Reporting Piracy

OPPORTUNITIES

Subscription Agents
Advertisers & Corporate Partners

CONNECT WITH WILEY

The Wiley Network
Wiley Press Room

Copyright © 1999-2024 John Wiley & Sons, Inc or related companies. All rights reserved, including rights for text and data mining and training of artificial technologies or similar technologies.

Iranian Journal of Pharmaceutical Research (2021), 20 (3): 78-93
DOI: 10.22037/ijpr.2021.113734.14457
Received: May 2020
Accepted: January 2021

Original Article

Exploration of Inbuilt Novel Properties as Bioretardant Cum Stabilizer of Isolated Biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* in Delivery of Nanosized Phenytoin

Sushant Kumar[a*] and N.V. Satheesh Madhav[b]

[a]*Faculty of Pharmacy, Pharmacy College Saifai, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, Saifai, Etawah, U.P., 26130, India.* [b]*Faculty of Pharmacy, DIT Univesity, Dehradun, U.K., India.*

Abstract

The research aims to develop bionanosuspension using a biopolymer isolated from *Fragaria ananassa* fruit that constitutes potential and natural polymeric properties. At first, the biomaterial was isolated from the natural fruit pulp of *Fragaria ananassa* by an economical method of isolation. The model drug was nanosized by a novel sonication method. The isolated biopolymer was characterized for its polymeric properties, and its potential capabilities were evaluated in the delivery of nanosized phenytoin. The isolated biopolymer was characterized for DSC, FTIR, NMR, mass, and scanning electron microscopy. The isolated biomaterial was used for the preparation of phenytoin-loaded bionanosuspension with other excipients. The bionanoparticles were also characterized by different analytical testing such as FTIR, DSC, and SEM to confirm any interaction between model drug and biopolymer.

The prepared bionanoparticles showed the release of phenytoin in a sustained manner over 36 hours. The release kinetic study was done using the BIT-SOFT 1.12 software and other parameters such as t50%, t80%, and r^2 were calculated. The formulation PFr6 was considered best having t50% in 18.22 hours and t80% in 29.62 h with an r^2 value of 0.9793. This formulation showed up to 87.89% drug release within 36 hours. The prepared bio-nanosuspension was found to be stable and in a well-dispersed state. The dried bionanosuspension evaluation revealed no interaction between model drug and biopolymer without any loss of characteristic peaks. Therefore, the isolated biopolymer can be safely used to prepare stable bionanosuspension loaded with nanosized phenytoin.

Keywords: Biopolymer; Bionanoparticles; Bionanosuspension; Epilepsy; *Fragaria ananassa*, nanosizing; Phenytoin

Introduction

Polymers are the first choice for designing novel drug-delivery systems for sustained release, controlled release, extended release, and targeted drug-delivery systems (1).

Nowadays, researchers have proved that biopolymers are one of the most novel and intelligent biomaterials isolated from various natural sources such as bark, seeds, flowers, fruits pulps, leaves, and other natural sources (2). These biopolymers have good film-forming, mucoadhesivity, sustainability, retardability, release rate, and controlling ability. These can be used to design novel drug-delivery and targeted drug-delivery

* Corresponding author:
E-mail: k.sushant25@gmail.com

systems (3–5).

In this research work, bionanosuspension with bionanoparticles loaded with nanosized phenytoin has been prepared using the novel biomaterial (7) from fruit pulp of *Fragaria ananassa*. For developing bionanoparticles and their suitability for the release of phenytoin, the potentiality of biopolymers was evaluated.

Epilepsy is a very common neurological disorder of the brain. In epilepsy, the brain does not normally act that results in seizures or episodes of abnormal behavior, sensations and may sometimes lead to loss of awareness (6). Phenytoin is an antiepileptic drug available in the form of tablets, capsules, and an oral suspension. By designing the antiepileptic drug-loaded bionanosuspension for targeting to brain via ear, the challenges in treatment of epilepsy on oral or other rote administration can be conquered easily, that too in an efficient way (7).

Zhou et al. researched liposomes coated with phenytoin prepared by thin-film dispersion method (8). These prepared liposomes were partially inhibitors of I/R injury and reduced the infarct size and left ventricular fibrosis after I.V. administration. Fuller *et al.* described the comparison of tolerability, safety measures, and different side effects of levetiracetam and phenytoin after intravenous administration (9). So in a regimen of epilepsy, no significant difference was observed between levetiracetam and phenytoin after intravenous plus oral regimen. Wang *et al.* developed electroresponsive hydrogen nanoparticles for the delivery of phenytoin in the brain (10). Phenytoin was distributed significantly to brain tissues and during tonic-clonic seizures. It was released in significant concentration for the treatment of seizures. Baumgartner *et al.* designed phenytoin-loaded nanosuspension (11), while Motawea et al. developed phenytoin-loaded nanostructured lipid carriers for topical delivery (12). In another study, Senthilvel *et al.* developed capsules filled with phenytoin- and berberine-loaded nanoparticles to improve anticonvulsant activity (13). In this research, biopolymer was isolated from the natural fruit pulp of *Fragaria ananassa* because of its excellent nutritional properties such as consistency in the rich amount of proteins, vitamins, and minerals (14), several industrial applications for the preparation of jam, jelly, and squash. It is also used in the cosmetic industry for preparing different products (15). Biopolymer has excellent film-forming ability and biostability properties (16, 17).

Using the biopolymer, a drug may be delivered in a retardant manner by utilizing its inbuilt bioretardant cum stabilizer properties (17). In this research work, the naturally isolated and characterized biopolymer can be used as an alternative to standard available polymers for targeting CNS for treat disorders associated with brain (18, 19). The drug solubility problems of the drugs can be minimized by converting the drug into its nanosized form (20). Nanosuspension provides an enhanced bioavailability, enhanced uptake by the cells, prolonged duration of action, and avoiding unwanted toxicity systemically (21). By designing the drug-loaded bio-nanosuspension with biopolymer, the solubility problems of the drugs can be solved (22). Mohammadi *et al.* developed whey protein isolated–based biodegradable films incorporated with chitosan nanofiber and cinnamon essential oil. It was concluded that a bio-nanocomposite in packaging technologies at the industrial level is necessary for improving the shelf life of food materials (23).

In this way, this research concludes the isolation of biopolymer from natural source *Fragaria ananassa* and use of isolated biopolymer in developing bionanosuspension for delivery of phenytoin significant as it is the prime need in the treatment of epilepsy for long term. Thus the novel inbuilt properties of isolated biopolymers are not explored yet as a novel drug delivery in pharmaceutical sciences. The biopolymer with novel properties such as bioretardant cum biostabilizer and its isolation at a very economical level can prove a magical key role in designing targeted drug-delivery systems. It can be used as an alternative to existing standard polymers (24).

Experimental

Materials

Phenytoin was obtained as a gift sample from Affy Pharma Private Limited, Baddi.

The *Fragaria ananassa* (strawberry) was purchased from the local market of Lucknow. All other chemicals used were of analytical grades, such as sodium benzoate (Thermo Fischer India Pvt. Ltd), dextrose (Thermo Fischer India Pvt. Ltd), and polyvinyl alcohol (Thermo Fischer India Pvt. Ltd.).

Methods

Isolation of Biopolymer

The *Fragaria ananassa* fruit was purchased from the local market of Lucknow. A volume of 500 g fruit pulp was washed with distilled water. Then it was ground in a grinder till it converted into a paste. A small quantity of distilled water can be added during the grinding, if necessary. This paste was filtered through the muslin cloth. The collected filtrate was centrifuged at 5000 rpm for 10 min (17). After centrifugation, the supernatant was taken. Centrifugation was performed to remove any residue. Then half of the supernatant was treated with methanol in a 1:1 ratio. These were placed in a refrigerator overnight. Then after treatment, these were centrifuged again at 5000 rpm for 30 min. The supernatant was discarded and the biomaterial as sediment was collected and air-dried. If there is any moisture content, it can be dried in desiccators for 48 hours. If the biomaterial (3) consists of any oil, it can be removed by washing with acetone or chloroform. This procedure was repeated and optimized six times, and the yield was calculated. The obtained biomaterial was passed through sieve number 200 and stored for further use (20).

Characterization of Isolated Biopolymer

The physicochemical properties of isolated biopolymer were as follows: color, odor, taste, and solubility. Chemical tests were also performed for the presence of carbohydrates, starch, and proteins. The isolated biopolymer was also characterized based on SEM analysis, DSC testing, IR spectroscopy, mass spectroscopy, and NMR spectroscopy.

Chemical test of isolated biomaterial

Chemical test for carbohydrate

An amount of 1 mL biopolymer solution (5% biopolymer solution in distilled water) was taken in a test tube. Then two drops of Molisch reagent were added, followed by 1–2 mL of addition. Sulfuric acid was poured into the test tube and observed until the purple color appeared at the interface of the two layers formed. The test was performed and reported (25

Test for the presence of protein

For testing the presence of protein, the isolated biomaterial was treated with 0.1% solution of Ninhydrin reagent and 10% tannic acid solution. The presence of blue and yellow color precipitate indicates the presence of protein. The test was performed and reported.

A Biuret test was performed for the confirmation of proteins. A volume of 2 mL biopolymer was taken in a test tube (5% biopolymer solution in distilled water), and 1 ml of sodium hydroxide solution was added along with copper sulfate solution drops. The mixture was kept aside for 5 min, and the color changes were observed. The emergence of violet color confirms the presence of proteins. The test was performed and reported (25).

Spectral analysis of the biomaterials

Spectral analysis such as IR, NMR, mass spectroscopy, and SEM studies of the isolated biopolymer was conducted. The biomaterials were subjected to IR, NMR, mass spectroscopy studies, and the obtained spectra were interpreted and reported. Apart from that, SEM studies of different biomaterials were also performed, and the obtained results were interpreted and reported. IR, NMR, and mass spectroscopy were studied at Central Drug Research Institute Lucknow, and SEM studies were studied at Birbal Sahani Institute of Paleobotany Lucknow (26).

SEM (scanning electron microscopy) analysis

The isolated biopolymer's surface morphologies were characterized by a scanning electron microscope. In SEM analysis, the external surface and internal structure were characterized. The small quantity of biopolymer was taken and fixed on aluminum studs and then coated with gold using the sputter under vacuum atmosphere by a gold sputter module in a high vacuum evaporator. The scanning electron micrograph was taken

for the biopolymer under observation. SEM testing was performed at BSIP, Lucknow using Make, JEOL India Pvt Ltd. Model, JEOL JSM 7610F. The SEM images were interpreted and reported (26).

FTIR spectroscopy of isolated biopolymer

The FTIR spectroscopy was done by preparing the KBr discs. An amount of 1 mg isolated biopolymer was taken and mixed with 100 mg of dried and desiccated solid KBr. The mixture was mixed in mortar and pestle and placed in an IR lamp to remove any moisture. The mixture was converted into a disk under the pressure of 10 tons. The prepared disk was placed in a disk holder in the path of IR radiation. The spectrum was recorded within a range of 4000–200 cm^{-1}. FTIR of hydroxypropyl methylcellulose was also carried out for characterization. The FTIR was done at CDRI, SAIF, Lucknow using Model-Agilent Cary 630 FTIR Spectrometer (range: 4000–450 cm^{-1}). The FTIR spectra were interpreted and reported (26).

Mass spectroscopy

It is a useful and powerful technique for quantifying known materials and identifying unknown materials and elucidating the structure and chemical properties of the molecule. It is an accurate method for determining the molecular mass of the compound. This is performed in a laboratory in which the sample of biopolymers was introduced through the inlet system. The gas-phase ions of the compound were produced. Then with the help of molecular ion fragmentation, the ions were separated in mass spectrometer according to their mass-to-charge ratio. A mass spectrum of ion abundance versus mass-to-charge ratio was recorded, which was done at CDRI-SAIF Department, Lucknow by using Waters PLC-TQD mass spectrometer (ESI-MS, APCI-MS, and LC-MS/MS) and Agilent 6520 Q-TOF (ESI-HRMS and APCI-HRMS). Mass spectra were interpreted and reported (26).

NMR spectral analysis

The NMR spectroscopy was done for spectral analysis of isolated biopolymer. The sample was dissolved in a specific solvent such as $CDCl_3$. The mixture was pumped into the instrument at a high rate of flow. The switch for the valve was used to stop the flow. Then the measurement was performed. After the finishing of measurement, the spectrum was processed and analyzed in an automation computer. This was done at CDRI, SAIF, Lucknow using Advance-400 MHz Bruker, Switzerland. NMR spectra were interpreted and reported (26).

Differential scanning calorimetry testing

DSC testing is the thermal analysis technique in which the heat flow inside or outside of the sample for testing is determined as the function of temperature. Here, the biopolymer sample was taken and exposed to a controlled temperature program. The glass transition temperature was determined. The heat flow range was 30–300 °C. The DSC thermogram was recorded, interpreted, and reported (26).

Nanosizing of phenytoin by sonication method

A volume of 500 mg phenytoin was taken and dissolved in 25 mL methanol. The clear solution was sonicated for 15 cycles continuously. During sonication, 25 mL of purified water was added drop by drop till precipitation was observed. The obtained precipitate was allowed for centrifugation. After each sonication cycle, the sample was allowed for absorbance and %transmittance (%T) and %blockage (100–%transmittance) measurement. The residue was recovered and then dried to collect the nanosized phenytoin in the nanoparticles range. This nanosized phenytoin obtained by this standard solvent evaporation method was evaluated for different parameters. The dried nanosized phenytoin was packed and stored for further use. The phenytoin was also nanosized by a novel sonication method. Here 500 mg of phenytoin was taken and mixed with dextrose and 25 mL double distilled water. This dispersed solution was sonicated for 15 cycles continuously. During sonication, 25 mL of purified water was added drop by drop till precipitation was observed (17). The obtained precipitate was allowed for centrifugation. After each sonication cycle, the sample was allowed for absorbance and transmittance%

(T%) and blockage% (100–transmittance%) measurement. The residue was recovered and then dried to collect the nanosized free-flowing phenytoin powder. The procedure was repeated in triplicate.

Drug–Excipient Interaction Study

The drug–biopolymer interaction study was performed by the UV spectroscopy method. The phenytoin–biopolymer mixture was prepared in a ratio of 1:1, 1:3, and 3:1 by wet and dry mixing. After mixing, the drug and polymer mixture was preserved at a temperature of 50 °C for 3 days in the wet method and then diluted with solvent and scanned for the absorption maxima (λ_{max}). In the dry method, three different ratios of drug–biopolymer were prepared in their physical form. Then after storing at room temperature, this was diluted with 2 mL of methanol and then scanned by UV spectrophotometer for any change in λ_{max}.

Formulation of Phenytoin-Loaded Bionanosuspension

The formulations of bionanosuspension were prepared using the different drug–biopolymer ratios, as shown in Table 1. The bionanosuspension was prepared by sonication of the mixture of drug and biopolymer and other excipients such as polyvinyl alcohol as a suspending agent, sodium benzoate as the preservative, purified water, and dextrose as nanosizent. The phenytoin, Fragaria × ananassa biopolymer, and other excipients were accurately weighed and triturated with double-distilled water. This mixture was sonicated for 3 cycles. Then 0.5 mL of polyvinyl alcohol (0.5%) was added during sonication. The volume was made up to 10 mL with double-distilled water having sodium benzoate content of 0.1–0.5%. Dextrose can be added if necessary as a nanosizing agent and allowed for sonication for 15 cycles. After sonication, the bionanosuspension was refrigerated for 2 days. If there is no settlement, then it can be considered that the formulation is optimized, but if having a settlement, then the abovementioned amount of polyvinyl alcohol was again added and allowed for sonication for 10 cycles and refrigerated for 48 h. Different formulations were prepared, and after optimization according to stability, the formulations PFr1–PFr6 were prepared. After formulation, their stability was tested and then evaluated for different parameters, including release study (20).

Characterization of phenytoin-loaded bionanosuspension

Dispersibility study of bionanosuspension

A volume of 10 mL formulated bionanosuspension was taken and dispersed in 20 mL of the distilled water in a test tube. The time for settling of the dispersed nanoparticles in the bottom was noted, and then again, the nanoparticles were redispersed and noticed for the redispersion. After shaking, any lump or aggregates or any precipitation formation was observed (20). The procedure was repeated in triplicate.

pH study of bionanosuspension

The pH of formulated bionanosuspension was evaluated with a digital pH meter. The study was done in triplicate, and the mean was taken and checked which helps determine if the pH of the nanosuspension is within the required range. The procedure was repeated in triplicate (20).

Entrapment% efficacy of loaded bionanosuspension

The freshly formulated bionanosuspension was taken and centrifuged at 5000 rpm in

Table 1. Formulation table of phenytoin-loaded bionanosuspension using *Fragaria ananassa* biopolymer.

Formulations	PFr1	PFr2	PFr3	PFr4	PFr5	PFr6
Drug:biopolymer ratio	1:4	1:5	1:8	1:10	1:12	1:15
Phenytoin (mg)	10	10	10	10	10	10
Fragaria ananassa Biopolymer (mg)	40	50	80	100	120	150
Polyvinyl alcohol (mL)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Sodium benzoate (%)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Double-distilled water (mL)	10	10	10	10	10	10

an ultracentrifuge. After centrifugation, the supernatant was taken and diluted up to 10 µg/mL, and the amount of drug unincorporated was measured by determining the absorbance under UV spectroscopy at 216 nm. The amount of the drug loaded in the nanoparticles was calculated by subtracting the amount of free drug in supernatant from the initial amount of drug taken in the formulation. The procedure was repeated in triplicate (22). This determination was done in triplicate, and the average was calculated by using the following formula:

$$\text{Entrapment efficacy\%} = \frac{\text{Amount of drug loaded in nanoparticles}}{\text{Initial amount of drug taken in formulation}} \times 100$$

Particle size screening of the nanoparticles in bionanosuspension by UV method

The bionanosuspension was evaluated by measuring the percent transmittance of the bionanosuspension. The percent transmittance was measured as a function of the particle size in nanorange done by the sonication method. The % transmittance depends on the particle size range within a particular range that defines the size of the particles below or beyond the size range required. The transmittance% was determined before and after the sonication cycle. The transmittance% at different wavelengths indicates that when the light passes through the particles, it indicates that the particle size is below that wavelength which shows that the percentage of the particles is less than 400 nm in the mixture and the blockade% shows that the percentage of particles is more than that. The transmittance% was measured by using the UV spectrophotometer. After each sonication cycle, it was increased due to the reduction of the particles to nanorange. The effect of sonication on %transmittance was observed after sonication and measuring after each sonication cycle (22). The procedure was repeated in triplicate.

Particle Size Analysis

The particle size of the bionanosuspension was studied by characterizing with the Malvern Zetasizer. The particle size distribution by intensity was confirmed by using the zetasizer (22).

In-vitro release study of bionanosuspension

The in-vitro release study was performed for all formulations. *In-vitro* release study was performed by a novel static method by using modified M.S. Diffusion apparatus. It consists of two compartments: one for the donor and the other for the receiver. The formulation for the release study was taken in the donor compartment (1 mL) and the end of the donor is tied with the egg biomembrane. This donor compartment was immersed in the receiver compartment having 13 mL of pH 7.4 phosphate buffer solution. Sampling was done at different regular time intervals for 36 h. The samples were withdrawn completely and replaced with the fresh phosphate buffer solutions after every sampling. The samples were analyzed by UV spectrophotometer for determining the released amount of the drug. The graph was plotted between the CDR% and time. Other parameters such as r^2, t50, and t80% were calculated to evaluate release study from different formulations and the selection of the best formulation (22).

Stability Study

The stability study was performed as per ICH guidelines. The formulated bionanosuspension was stored for 6 months at different ambient temperatures. The bionanosuspension was kept at two different conditions at 25 °C ± 2 °C, 60% RH and 40 °C ± 2 °C, 75% RH stability chamber. The samples were observed every 2 weeks for their different parameters during the testing period. The samples under evaluation were observed for the drug content, pH changes, any changes in color, appearance, entrapment efficacy (22).

Results and Discussion

Isolation of Biopolymer

The *Fragaria ananassa* biopolymer was found to be white with a yield% of 13 ± 2. The color-changing point was found to be 229 °C ± 5 °C.

Characterization of Isolated Biopolymer of Fragaria ananassa

The isolated biopolymer was white color in appearance. The biopolymer was found to be odorless with a characteristic taste. It

was found to be sparingly soluble in water. It showed a positive test for carbohydrate and protein (20). The characterization of isolated biopolymer of *Fragaria ananassa* is shown in Table 2.

SEM analysis of biopolymer

The isolated biopolymer was analyzed by scanning electron microscopy for surface characterization. The SEM analysis shows the rough and flaky structure of the biopolymer. The granular structure was also observed in the SEM image. This confirms the polymeric nature of the biopolymer having a flaky and granular structure (22). The SEM image of isolated biopolymer is shown in Figure 1.

Different Spectral Analysis and Their Findings

IR spectral analysis of isolated biopolymer

FTIR spectra of the isolated biopolymer show the presence of different functional groups responsible for the polymeric nature of the isolated biopolymer. The IR spectra show the presence of different functional groups such as hydroxyl (3396.15 cm^{-1}), alkynes (669.43 cm^{-1}), and carboxylic acid (1410.35 cm^{-1}), which confirms its polymeric characteristics. Other groups such as amide at 1639.02 cm^{-1}, alkane at 2925.45 cm^{-1}, tertiary alcohol at 1215.89 cm^{-1} were present in the IR spectra. The presence of these functional groups is responsible for the retardibility in drug release like other standard polymers (22). FTIR spectra are shown in Figure 2.

Table 2. Characterization of isolated biopolymer of *Fragaria ananassa.*

Parameters evaluated	Observation
Color	White
Odor	Characteristic
Taste	Characteristic
Melting Point	229 °C ± 5 °C
Solubility	Soluble in water, soluble in methanol
Carbohydrate	Present
Protein	Present

Differential scanning calorimetry (DSC) study of isolated biopolymer

The DSC thermogram of *Fragaria ananassa* shows peaks at 83.794 Celsius, 161.035 Celsius, and 208.709 Celcius. The area was found to be 229 mJ/mg, 30.5 mJ/mg, and 10.3 mJ/mg, respectively. The thermogram showed the sharp endothermic broad peak that deals with the amorphous nature of biopolymer (Figure 3).

Mass spectroscopy of isolated biopolymer

Mass spectra reveal that the isolated biopolymer is polymeric due to the presence

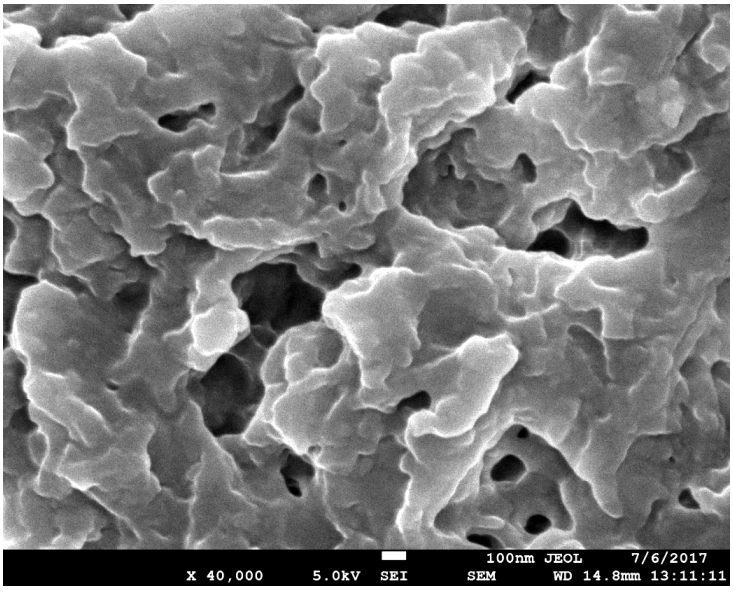


Figure 1. SEM of isolated biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* at 40,000×.

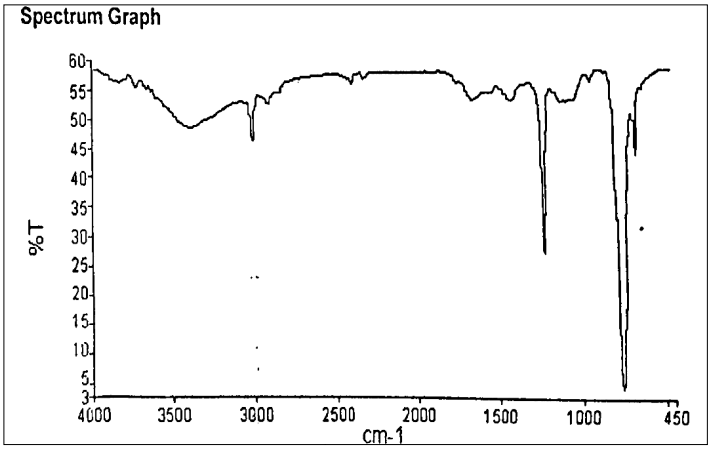


Figure 2. FTIR spectra of biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa*.

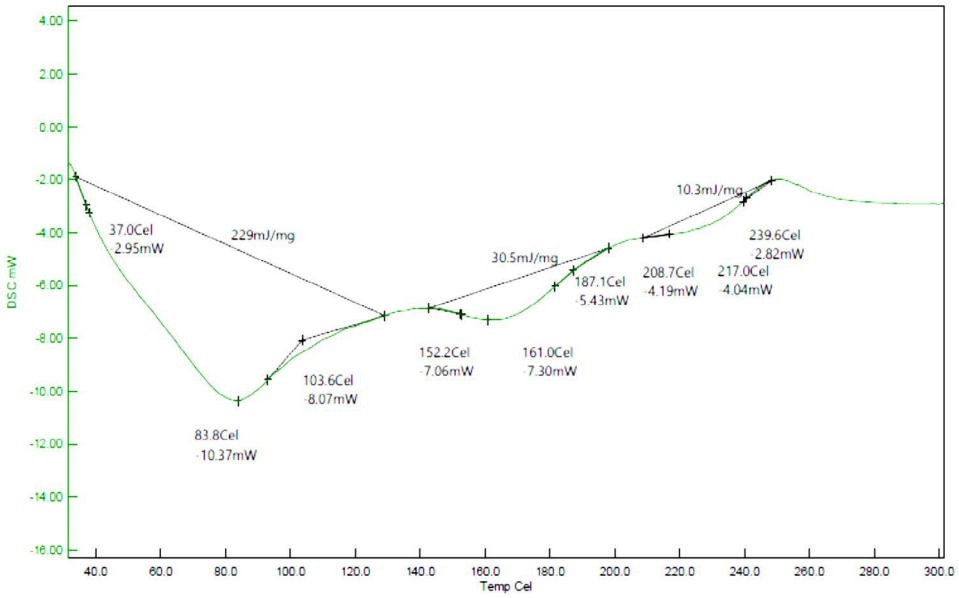


Figure 3. DSC of biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa*.

of large molecular weight structures. It indicates the presence of protein. HRMS spectra of isolated biopolymer showed the parent peak at m/z 456.33, confirming its large molecular weight structure such as a polymer (27) (Figure 4).

NMR spectroscopy of isolated biopolymer

The NMR spectra show the presence of different peaks such as multiplet at 0.829–0.902 ppm which reveals the presence of primary alkyl group; peaks at 1.232 ppm confirm the presence of methylene group and at 1.255 ppm the presence of hydroxyl group. This presence confirms its polymeric nature (27) (Figure 5).

Nanosizing of phenytoin

During the nanosizing of phenytoin after each sonication cycle, the sample was observed for measurement of percent transmittance which confirmed that when the number of sonication cycle was increased, the percent transmittance was also found to be increased. This was due to a decrease in particle size and particles are now are in

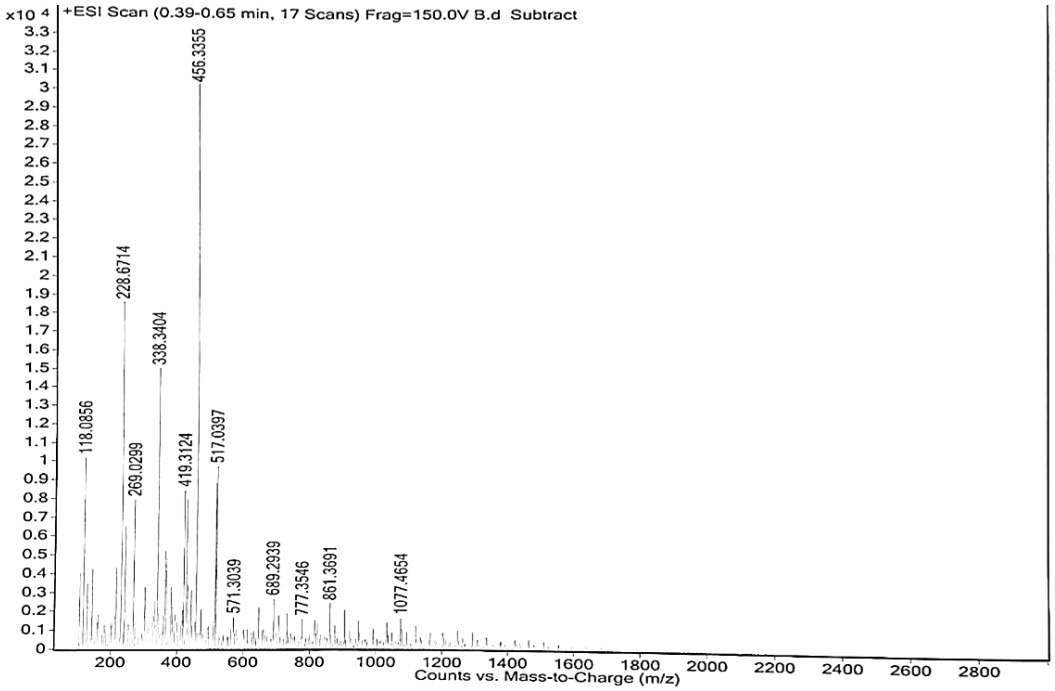


Figure 4. High-resolution mass spectrum of isolated biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa*.

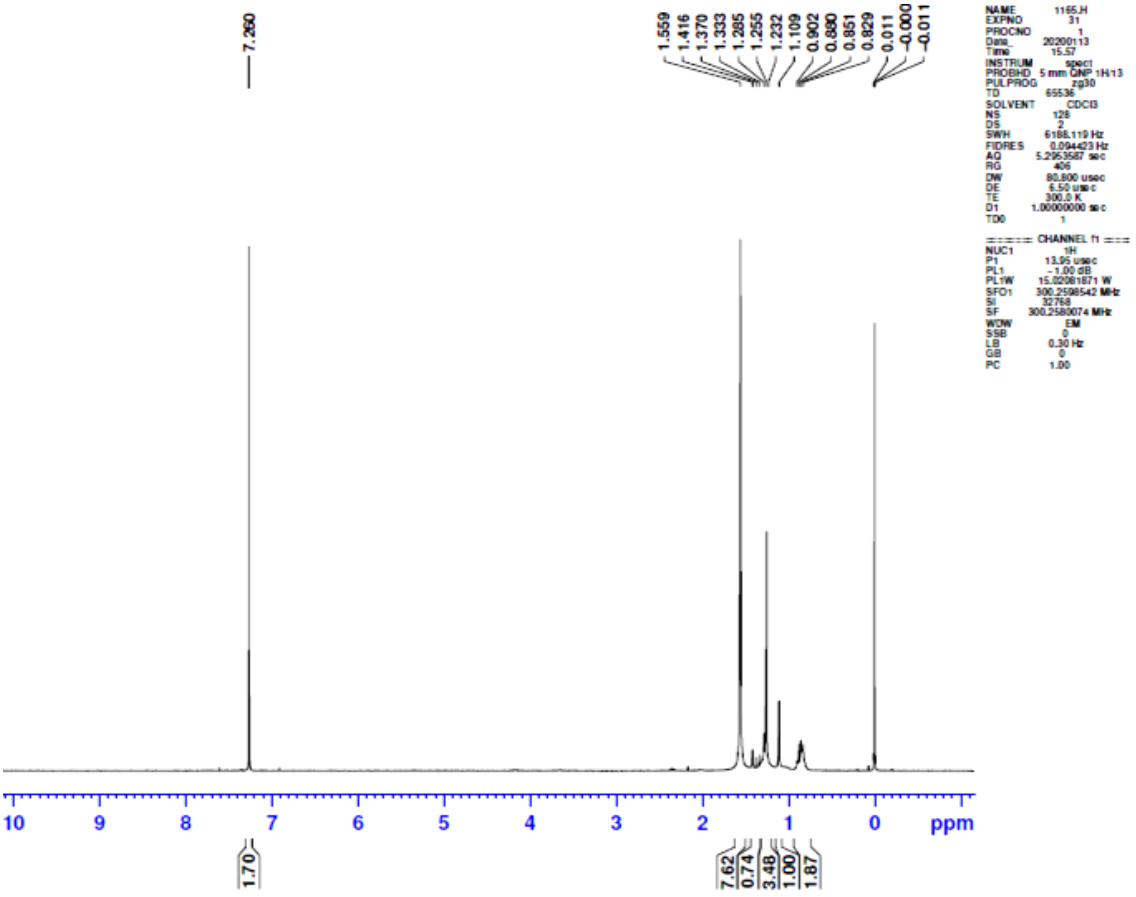


Figure 5. NMR spectra of biopolymer from Fragaria × ananassa.

nanorange. Thus, transmittance percent shows that the percentage of particles less than 400 nm in bionanosuspension and blockadepercent gives an idea about the percentage of particles which is above 400 nm. Thus the UV method has given an idea about particles in nanorange (22).

Drug-Excipient Interaction Study

No change was noticed in λ_{max} before (216 nm) and after the test (216 nm) in the drug-excipient study. The absorption maxima of phenytoin *Fragaria ananassa* mixture was closed to the λ_{max} of pure drug. There was no significant change in λ_{max} of drug–polymer mixture as compared to pure drug. It means that it confirms no interaction between drug and biopolymer and other excipients too. It was observed that excipients are not interacting and not producing any changes in drug properties so that the isolated biopolymer can be used to prepare bionanosuspension (27).

Formulation of Phenytoin-Loaded Bionanosuspension

Different formulations of bionanoparticles by using different ratios of biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* and phenytoin were prepared. Then post formulation of bionanosuspension was evaluated for different parameters and their finding are described below.

Dispersibility Study of Bionanosuspension

The dispersibility of the formulated bionanoparticles was found to be excellent, and the redispersion was also found to be good. All nanoparticles were in a dispersed state during dispersion (20). No aggregation or lump formation was observed (Table 3).

pH study of Bionanosuspension

The pH of the bionanosuspension was found to be in the range of 7.3 ± 0.22 to 7.7 ± 0.19. It means that the formulations were in desired pH range that is suitable for the stability of the bionanosuspension (20). The pH of the different bionanosuspension formulations observed is given in Table 3.

%Entrapment efficacy of loaded bionanoparticles

The entrapment efficacy of the formulated bionanosuspension was found in the range of 84.56 ± 2 to 88.02 ± 1.8%. Thus the formulated bionanosuspension PFr6 showed the maximum entrapment efficacy up to 88.02 ± 1.8% (Table 3).

Transmittance% of Bionanosuspension

Transmittance% was found to be in the range of 91 ± 1.2% to 98 ± 0.75% after 15 cycles of sonication. Here, the UV method was used for screening the size of bionanoparticles in bionanosuspension. It was observed that as the sonication cycle was increased, the %transmittance was found to be increased because the particle size after sonication has come in nanorange. The transmittance% indicated the percentage of particles below 400 nm, and the blockade% showed the percentage of particles above 400 nm when screened by the UV spectrophotometry method. Thus, the UV method can be used as a screening method to determine nanoparticles' size in bionanosuspension (20).

Particle size analysis

The nanoparticles size in bionanosuspension (PFr6) was 238.5 nm after evaluating with Malvern Zetasizer. Thus, the obtained size with the zeta potential of –20.1 mV confirms that the nanoparticles are in nanorange, which is responsible for the stability of nanosuspension. It also confirms that the stable bionanosuspension loaded with phenytoin was prepared using smart isolated *Fragaria*

Table 3. Different formulations with observed pH, dispersibility, entrapment% efficacy values.

Formulations	Observed pH	Dispersibility	Entrapment efficacy (%)
PFr1	7.4 ± 0.32	+	84.56 ± 2.0
PFr2	7.3 ± 0.22	+	86.16 ± 2.8
PFr3	7.5 ± 0.11	+	85.16 ± 1.6
PFr4	7.7 ± 0.19	+	86.20 ± .88
PFr5	7.4 ± 0.12	+	87.02 ± 1.8
PFr6	7.5 ± 0.05	+	88.02 ± 1.8

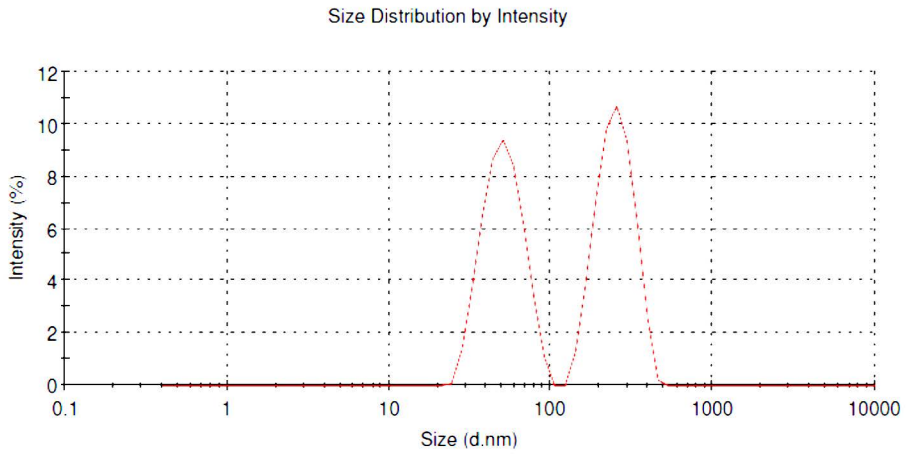
ananassa biopolymers. The result reveals that it can be safely used for delivering the phenytoin from the prepared bionanoparticles in the treatment of epilepsy (20). The particle size distribution in bionanosuspension is shown in Figures 6a and 6b.

FTIR of bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles

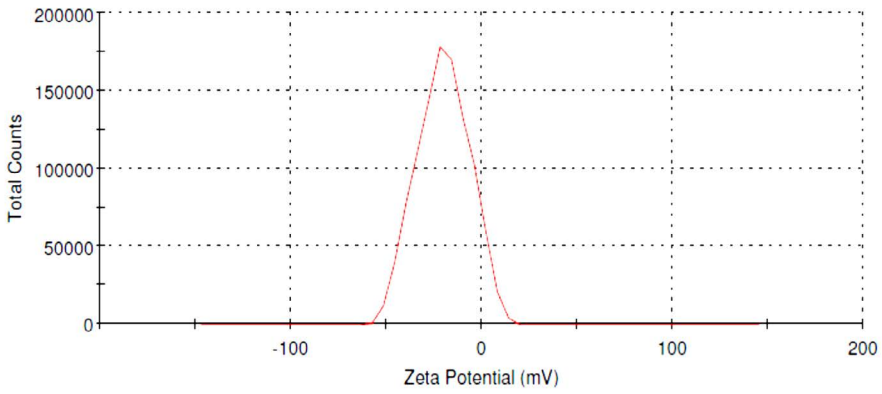
The FTIR spectroscopy of the dried phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles revealed no interaction between the model drug and the biopolymer used. The appearance of a new peak or disappearance of the existing peaks was not observed in this spectroscopy. The results indicated that there was no loss of the functional peaks of drug having C–H stretching, C–H bending, C–O stretching, and O–H stretching with isolated biopolymers with much-closed peak values as that of the pure drug, whereas FTIR of bionanoparticles suggested the biopolymeric nature of bionanoparticles with the presence of characteristic peaks very similar to the peaks as observed in FTIR of biopolymer at 669 (C–H bending), 1215.93 (C–O stretching), 3021.27 (C–H stretching) and 3264.99 cm^{-1} (O–H stretching). The obtained spectra of bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles are shown in Figures 7A and 7B.

Differential scanning calorimetry of bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles

The DSC of bionanoparticles showed the biopolymeric nature with a broad endothermic peak at 72.4 °C. The DSC thermogram of



(a)



(b)

Figure 6. (a) Particle size distribution in bionanosuspension and (b) zeta potential.

phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles revealed its crystallinity. These also showed a sharp endothermic peak at 135.2 °C which indicated the presence of a small and wide endothermic peak, further showing that the crystalline drug was converted in partially amorphous form during the nanosuspension formulation and nanosizing. There was also a shift of melting peak to the lower temperature in formulated bionanoparticles which was due to the conversion of phenytoin crystal form in nanorange during sonication. The obtained DSC thermogram of bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles is shown in Figures 7C and 7D.

Zeta particles size of bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles

The zeta particle size of bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles analysis revealed that the bionanoparticles were found to be 136.1 nm and its size was found to be 147.7 nm (refer to Figures 7E and 7F). The bionanoparticles and phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles zeta particle sizes were suitable for an easy target to the desired site.

SEM of phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles

The scanning electron microscopy of phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles showed a

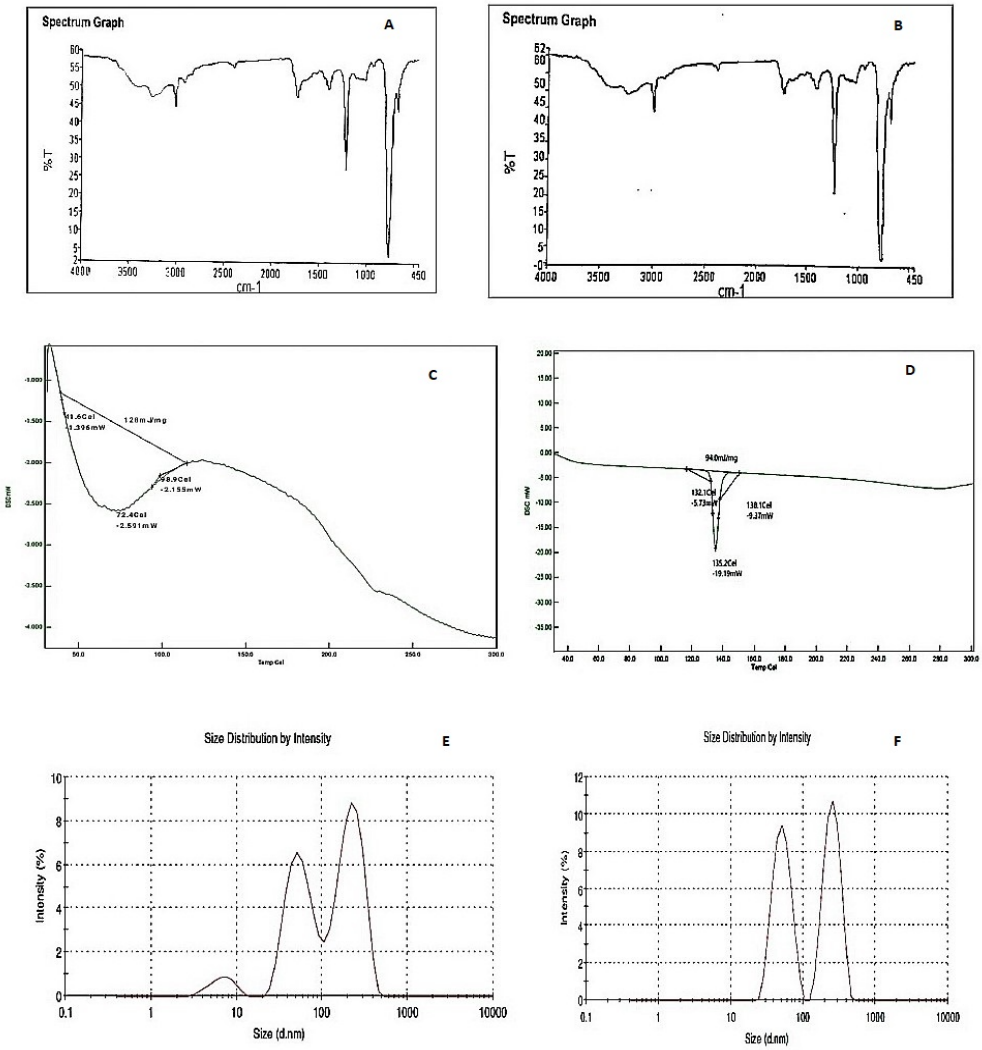


Figure 7. A. FTIR of bionanoparticles B. FTIR OF Phenytoin loaded bionanoparticles C. DSC of bionanoparticles D. DSC of Phenytoin loaded bionanoparticles E. 136.1 nm size of bionanoparticles F. 147.7 nm size of Phenytoin loaded bionanoparticles.

more regular uniform shape with more or less rough surfaces. The aggregates were observed, which may result from the aggregation of some individual bionanoparticles because of the reveal of water or any moisture during the drying of bionanosuspension in the form of dried bionanoparticles. This more or less rough surface may be attributed to the adsorption and biopolymer coating of the model drug. SEM of phenytoin and bionanoparticles is shown in Figure 8.

In-vitro release study of bionanosuspension

The in-vitro release study was done using the M.S. Diffusion apparatus. The release kinetic study was done using the BIT-SOFT 1.12 software and other parameters such as t50%, t80%, and r^2 were calculated. All the formulations showed more than 87.89% drug release (Figure 9). The *in-vitro* release study of different formulations showed the drug% release from 87.89 to 93.26. The different formulations were evaluated for the *in-vitro* release study and release kinetic was studied. The formulation PFr6 was the best formulation with t50% of 18.22 hours and t80% of 29.62 h with a r^2 value of 0.9793. The best formulation -PFr6- showed up to 87.89% drug release in 36 hours. According to the release kinetic study, the best fit model was found to be Korsmeyer–Peppas and the mechanism of drug release was found to be

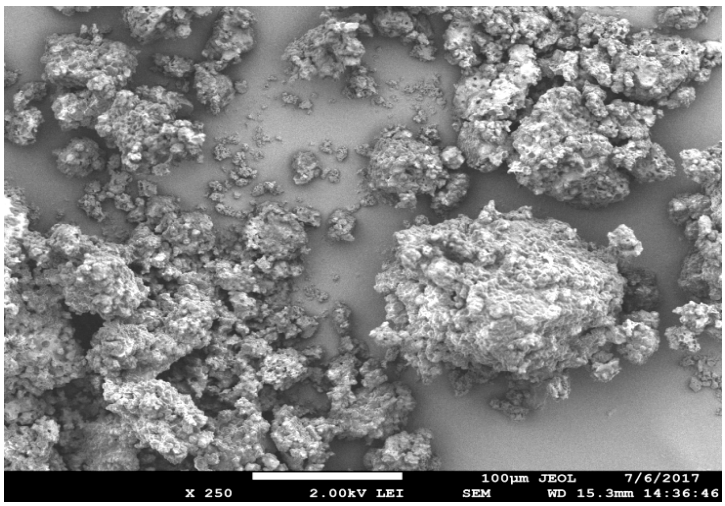


Figure 8. SEM of phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles.

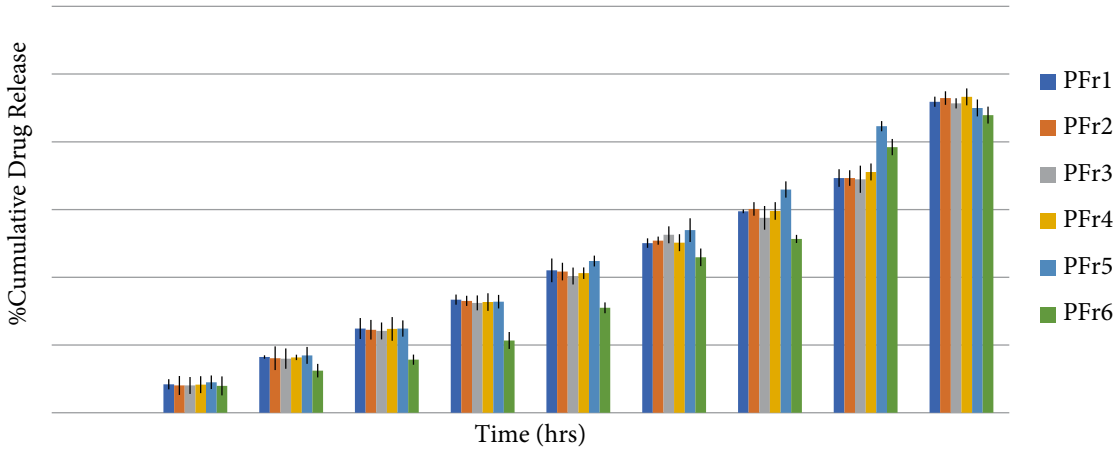


Figure 9. *In-vitro* release drug profile of different bionanosuspension formulations (PFr1–PFr6). The results are expressed as mean ± SD (n = 3).

anomalous transport. The result obtained from the *in-vitro* release study and analysis of the release kinetic of all formulations indicates the sustained release of the phenytoin from the bionanosuspension (22).

Stability Study

The optimized formulations showed no change in λ_{max}, entrapment efficacy and drug release. So there was no drug loss during the study period. The other evaluation parameters also showed satisfactory result. The best-optimized formulation was found to be stable over 6 months. There was no change in color, odor, pH, and physical appearance. During the stability study period, the results obtained were satisfactory from different parameters and the formulation PFr6 was found to be the best optimized stable formulation. The obtained results from the study confirmed that the formulation was physically and chemically stable (22).

The biopolymer is a novel biomaterial with many in-built properties that may be used for delivering drugs to the target. The isolated biopolymer may be used to prepare a novel and intelligent carrier system for loading phenytoin for the treatment of epilepsy. The bionanoparticles are the nanorange particulate systems that may efficiently deliver antiepileptic drugs such as phenytoin.

In this research work, phenytoin was nanosized by a novel and standard method. The biopolymer was isolated from the fruit of *Fragaria ananassa* with good polymeric properties. It can be suitably used for the preparation of bionanoparticles in the form of bionanosuspension. The isolated biopolymers showed good entrapment efficacy. This biopolymer has novel in-built properties such as filmability, retardability, and release rate controlling capability. It may be used for preparing suitable bionanosuspension for delivering nanosized phenytoin. In-vitro release and release kinetic study reveal that the isolated *Fragaria ananassa* biopolymer consists of the desired bioretardant and biostabilizer novel properties. The nanosized phenytoin particle size was screened by the UV method that gave an idea about the particle size range. This method may be used to screen of the nanosize range of phenytoin as well as prepared bionanosuspension (22).

The obtained results reveal that the isolated biopolymer consists of promising polymeric properties that can be used as a bioretardant cum stabilizer to prepare stabilized bionanosuspension. The spectral characterization reveals its polymeric nature (27).

The pH, dispersibility, and entrapment efficiency were found to be significant. The nanosizing of the drug showed satisfactory results for entrapment as well as in overcoming the solubility problem of phenytoin (20).

The particle size of the formulated bionanosuspension was evaluated by measuring the %transmittance as well as with the help of measuring zeta particle size and zeta potential (22).

The transmittance% measurement revealed that the prepared bionanosuspension has a satisfactory particle size in nanorange that is responsible for its stability. The particle size for the zetasizer was 238.5 nm, confirming its nanoparticle size range for the best formulation PFr6. The stability of bionanosuspension was also showed significant with –20.1 mV zeta potential. This means that the particles are in a well-dispersed state without any agglomeration with good repulsive force (22).

Thus, bionanosuspension (PFr6) prepared using the biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* showed a significant entrapment efficacy and sustained release of phenytoin for more than 36 hours. So biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* can be safely used for the formulation of stable bionanosuspension (29, 30). The isolated *Fragaria ananassa* biopolymer was novel, nontoxic, nonreactive, biocompatible, inert, and biodegradable. So the biopolymer can be safely used as the novel biomaterial in delivering nanosized phenytoin (31). It can be safely used as an alternative to synthetic and semisynthetic available polymers for delivering phenytoin in the treatment of epilepsy.

The phenytoin-loaded bionanosuspension was converted into dried bionanosuspension. The dried bionanoparticles evaluated by different instrumental techniques revealed no loss of functional groups during the preparation of bionanosuspension. The biopolymer was found to be compatible with the drug. The

evaluation findings revealed that *Fragaria ananassa* could be safely used to isolate of biopolymer and its utilization in preparation phenytoin-loaded stable bionanosuspension. The stability of bionanosuspension as well as bionanoparticles, is attributed to its inbuilt biostabilizing property. The release of drug from bionanoparticles revealed that biopolymer could also be safely used to develop bionanoparticles for the release of model drug in a sustained manner for a prolonged time, which is the prime need for long-term treatment of epilepsy. Thus, biopolymer isolated from *Fragaria ananassa* can be safely used in developing novel bionanosuspension.

Conclusion

This research work concludes that the isolated biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* fruit serves as a potential, natural polymeric nature biomaterial that can be used for preparing nanosized phenytoin-loaded bionanoparticles in the form of bionanosuspension. The best formulation PFr6 prepared using this natural and biodegradable isolated biopolymer from the edible natural fruit pulp was stable. It releases a significant amount of nanosized phenytoin for the treatment of epilepsy (32). So it was concluded that the isolated biopolymer from *Fragaria ananassa* fruit might be safely used as the novel biomaterial in delivering nanosized phenytoin from the formulated bionanoparticles significantly for an extended time (33).

Acknowledgements

I would like to acknowledge Prof. Devender Pathak (Dean, Faculty of Pharmacy, UPUMS, Saifai) for encouraging me to complete this research work. I want also to thank SAIF, CDRI, Lucknow for providing me analytical testing facilities.

References

(1) Baichwal M. Polymer films as drug delivery systems. Advances in Drug Delivery Systems. *Bombay MSR Foundation*. (1985) 1: 136–47.

(2) Madhav N and Shankar M. A novel smart mucoadhesive biomaterial from *Lallimantia royalena* seed coat. *J. Sci. Asia* (2011) 37: 69–71.

(3) Madhav N and Singh K. Smart ungual biopenetrant from the roots of Beta vulgaris. *J. Appl. Pharm. Sci.* (2017) 29: 21–6.

(4) Madhav N and Tangri P. Formulation and evaluation of zidovudine bio-microdwarfs using a novel bio muco-resident from *Artocarpus heterophyllus*. *Int. J. Pharm. Tech. Res*. (2011) 3: 169–74.

(5) Madhav N and Yadav A. Development and evaluation of novel repaglinide biostrips for translabial delivery. *Int. Res. J. Pharm*. (2013) 4: 198–202.

(6) Manford M. Recent advances in epilepsy. *J. Neurol*. (2017) 264: 1811–24.

(7) Wu M and Lim W. Phenytoin: A Guide to Therapeutic Drug Monitoring. *Proc. Singapore Healthc*. (2013) 3: 22.

(8) Zhou X., Luo Y, Ji W, Zhang L, Dong Y, Ge L, Lu R, Sun H, Guo Z, Yang G, Jiang T and Li Y. Modulation of mononuclear phagocyte inflammatory response by liposome-encapsulated voltage gated sodium channel inhibitor ameliorates myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury in rats. *Plos One* (2013) 2013: 3-11.

(9) Fuller K, Wang Y, Cook M, Murphy M and D'Souza W. Tolerability, safety, and side effects of levetiracetam versus phenytoin in intravenous and total prophylactic regimen among craniotomy patients: a prospective randomized study. *Epilepsia* (2013) 54: 45–57.

(10) Wang Y, Ying X, Chen L, Liu Y, Wang Y, Liang J, Xu C, Guo y, Wang S, Hu W, Du Y and Chen Z. Electroresponsive Nanoparticles improve antiseizure effect of phenytoin in generalized tonic-clonic seizures. *Neurotherapeutics* (2016) 13: 603–13.

(11) Baumgartner R, Teubl B, Tetyczka C and Roblegg E. Rational design and characterization of a nanosuspension for intraoral administration considering physiological conditions. *J. Pharm. Sci*. (2016) 105: 257–67.

(12) Motawea A, Thanaa B and El-Gawad H. Topical phenytoin nanostructured lipid carriers: design and development. *Drug Dev. Ind. Pharm.* (2018) 44: 144–157.

(13) Senthilvel C, Karuppaiyan K and Moideen M. Development of capsules filled with phenytoin and berberine loaded nanoparticles—a new approach to improve anticonvulsant efficacy. *Indian J. Pharm. Educ. Res.* (2019) 3: 468–79.

(14) Plocharski W. Strawberries quality of fruits, their storage life and suitability for processing. Part V. Variability and classification of strawberry cultivars in respect to some chemical components. *Fruit Sci. Rpt.* (1989) 3: 109–24.

(15) Bergamaschi M, Faedi W, Iavarone E, Lelli A, Longoni F, Lovati F, Pianezzola,A and Testoni A. Quality and nutritional aspects of different varieties of strawberry. *Informatore Agrario* (1995) 44: 29–36.

(16) Jorda J, Marechal P, Rigal L and Pontalier P. Biopolymer purification by ultrafiltration. *Desalination* (2002) 148: 187–91.

(17) Tyagi Y and Madhav N. Design selegiline loaded bio-nanosuspension for the management of depression using novel bio-retardant from *Manilkara zapota*. *Drug Dev. Ind. Pharm*. (2019) 45: 1351–60.

(18) Yoncheva K, Lizarraga E and Irache J. Pegylated nanoparticles based on poly (methyl vinyl ether-*co*-maleic anhydride): preparation and evaluation of their bioadhesive properties. *Eur. J. Pharm. Sci.* (2005) 24: 411–9.

(19) Elzoghby A, Abd-Elwakil M, Abd-Elsalam K, Elsayed M, Hashem Y and Mohamed O. Natural polymeric nanoparticles for brain-targeting: implications on drug and gene delivery. *Curr. Pharm. Des*. (2016) 22: 3305–23.

(20) Madhav N and Raina D. Formulation and evaluation of duloxetine loaded bio-nanosuspension for brain specificity via acoustic meatus. *SOJ Pharm. Pharm. Sci.* (2017) 4: 1–5.

(21) Zhang J, Xie Z, Zhang N and Zhong J. Nanosuspension drug delivery system: preparation, characterization, postproduction processing, dosage form, and application. *Nanostructures for Drug Delivery.1st edition.* (2017) 413–443.

(22) Tyagi Y and Madhav N. Inbuilt novel bioretardant feature of biopolymer isolated from *Cucumis sativa* for designing drug loaded bionanosuspension. *J. Drug Assess.* (2020) 9: 72–81.

(23) Mohammadi M, Mirabzadeh S, Shahvalizadeh R and Hamishehkar H. Development of novel active packaging films based on whey protein isolate incorporated with chitosan nanofiber and nano-formulated cinnamon oil. *Int. J. Biol. Macromol*. (2020) 149: 11–20.

(24) Madhav N and Shankar M. A novel biopolymeric smart stabilizer from *Cocos nucifera* meat kernel and its pharmaceutical applications. *Indian Patent* -2018/DEL/2007:307884.

(25) Kokate C. Practical Pharmacognosy. 3rd ed. New Delhi. (1991) 107-11.

(26) Silverstein R, Francis X, David J and David L. *Spectroscopic Identification of Organic Compounds.* Wiley India Pvt. Ltd. New Delhi (2010) 6.

(27) Madhav N and Yadav A. A novel translabial platform utilizing bioexcipients from *Litchi chinensis* for the delivery of rosiglitazone maleate. *Acta Pharm. Sin. B* (2013) 3: 408–15.

(28) Samar A, Maha A, Hassan A, and Kadria A. Nanosuspension: an emerging trend for bioavailability enhancement of etodolac. *Int. J. Polym. Sci*. (2015) 16.

(29) Ojha A and Madhav N. A novel potent muco-bioadhesant polymer from seeds of Ricinus communis. *World J. Pharm. Pharmaceut. Sci*. (2014) 3: 2154–65.

(30) Muller R. Nanosuspensions as particulate drug formulation in therapy rationale for development and what we can expect for the future. *Adv. Drug Deliv*. (2001) 47: 3–19.

(31) Phillips M, Gran M and Peppas N. Targeted Nano delivery of drugs and diagnostics. *Nano Today* (2010) 5: 143–59.

(32) Patsalos P, Froscher W and Pisani F. The importance of drug interactions in epilepsy therapy. *Epilepsia* (2002) 43: 365–85.

(33) Nilani P. Formulation and evaluation of polysaccharide based biopolymer–an ecofriendly alternative for synthetic Polymer. *J. Pharm. Sci. Res*. (2010) 3: 178–84.

This article is available online at http://www.ijpr.ir

Check for updates

Hindawi
BioMed Research International
Volume 2021, Article ID 4593759, 13 pages
https://doi.org/10.1155/2021/4593759

Research Article

Topical Delivery of Geranium/Calendula Essential Oil-Entrapped Ethanolic Lipid Vesicular Cream to Combat Skin Aging

Alka Lohani,[1] **Anurag Verma**,[1,2] **G. Hema**,[3] **and Kamla Pathak**[4]

[1]*School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, IFTM University, 244102, Moradabad, India*
[2]*Teerthanker Mahaveer College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, 244102, Moradabad, India*
[3]*Department of Biotechnology, Maharani's Science College for Women, 560001, Bangalore, India*
[4]*Pharmacy College Saifai, Uttar Pradesh University of Medical Sciences, 206130, Uttar Pradesh, India*

Correspondence should be addressed to Anurag Verma; anuragverma_iftm@yahoo.co.in

Received 8 May 2021; Revised 9 August 2021; Accepted 16 August 2021; Published 13 September 2021

Academic Editor: Dr. Abdul Ahad

Copyright © 2021 Alka Lohani et al. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

The present study deals with the evaluation of the age-defying potential of topical cream formulations bearing Geranium essential oil/Calendula essential oil-entrapped ethanolic lipid vesicles (ELVs). Two types of cream formulations were prepared, viz., conventional and ELVs spiked o/w creams. Essential oil- (EO-) loaded ELVs were characterized by vesicle size, polydispersity index, encapsulation efficiency, and scanning electron microscopy. The cream formulations were evaluated for homogeneity, spreadability, viscosity, pH, *in vitro* antioxidant capacity, sun protection factor, and *in vitro* collagenase and elastase inhibition capacity. Confocal laser scanning microscopy (CLSM) was performed to ascertain skin permeation of conventional and vesicular cream. The results of *in vitro* antioxidant studies showed that GEO-/CEO-loaded vesicular creams have notable antioxidant capacity when compared to nonvesicular creams. GEO- or CEO-loaded vesicular creams exhibited the highest SPF value 10.26 and 18.54, respectively. Both the EO-based vesicular creams showed *in vitro* collagenase and elastase enzyme inhibition capacity. CLSM images clearly depicted that vesicular cream deep into the skin layers. From the research findings, the age-defying potential and photoprotective effects of GEO and CEO were confirmed. It can be concluded that ELVs are able to preserve the efficiency of EOs and have the potential to combat skin aging.

1. Introduction

Finding solutions against various signs of skin aging has been a natural human desire for centuries. Skin aging is a complex biological process, influenced by a combination of intrinsic (genetics, cellular metabolism, hormone, and metabolic processes) and extrinsic factors (chronic light exposure, pollution, ionizing radiation, chemicals, and toxins) [1]. These triggers cause the skin to deteriorate over a timeframe, affecting the wellbeing, wellness, and physical appearance of a person. Because of the fact that skin health and beauty are considered among the principal factors representing overall well-being in humans, age-defying cosmetic product market is observed to be one of the rising markets in today's world. Age-defying cosmetics can act efficaciously when they reach their target sites present in the deeper layers of the skin, but the stratum corneum is the biggest obstacle in delivering the actives deep into the skin layers. Several antiaging strategies have been developed during the past years to overcome this barrier. One of the possibilities for increasing the penetration of active ingredients is the use of vesicular delivery systems such as liposomes, niosomes, and ethosomes [2]. These vesicles can act either as a carrier system or as penetration enhancers. Lipid vesicles indicate their potential as carriers of cosmetics for plant extracts, phytochemicals, and other active ingredients which are poorly soluble, poorly absorbed, and unstable constituents. Lipid vesicles have shown tremendous potential to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the delivery of cosmeceuticals and bioactive compounds [3]. Conventional liposomes,

on the other hand, appear to be limited to the upper layers of the skin and act as a local reservoir for active ingredients with very low permeation into deeper skin layers [4]. Therefore, many strategies have been proposed to overcome the disadvantages of liposome vesicles. One of the interesting approaches is the use of ethanolic lipid vesicle. ELVs consist of phospholipid, ethanol, and water. The presence of ethanol in these vesicles makes the vesicular membrane highly flexible and malleable, and due to the solvent effect of ethanol, fluidity of stratum corneum lipids increases that leads to enhanced permeability of active ingredient.

One of the widely used plant extracts in cosmetics is essentials oils (EOs). EO is the complex mixtures containing dozens of substances of varying chemical compositions at different concentrations. They are a very important part of the perfume and cosmetic industry, but in the present scenario, their use is not limited to being used as fragrances only. EOs confer several benefits including antifungal [5], antibacterial [6], and antiviral properties [7], and most of these oils also boast powerful antioxidant benefits, which means they have the power to scavenge free radicals to protect the skin from damage [8]. However, their components are labile and volatile, and the sensory perception can be changed as a consequence of oxidation, heating, volatilization, or chemical interactions. These chemical and physical effects, which can alter the quality of products, can be effectively minimized by encapsulating the essentials oils.

In the present work, an attempt has been made to encapsulate Geranium/Calendula essential oil(s) in ethanolic lipid vesicles to prevent their evaporation and to increase their availability and efficacy in cosmetic products to combat skin aging.

2. Material

LipoidS-75 was obtained as a gift sample from Lipoid GmbH (Ludwigshafen, Germany). 2,2-Diphenyl-1-picryl-hydrazyl (DPPH) was obtained as a gift sample from HiMedia Laboratories, Mumbai. Coconut oil, olive oil, naphthylethylene diamine dihydrochloride, sodium nitroprusside, and sulphanilamide were procured from Sigma-Aldrich Chemical Pvt. Limited, Bangalore. Surfactants (tween 60 and span 60), ascorbic acid, geraniol, α-pinene, HPLC grade acetonitrile, water, and methanol were obtained from Central Drug House (P) Ltd., New Delhi. All the chemicals used were of analytical grade. The reagents were prepared using double distilled water.

3. Methods

3.1. Extraction of Essential Oils. In our previous work, we have reported extraction of Geranium essential oil (GEO) from *Pelargonium graveolens* leaves and Calendula essential oil (CEO) from *Calendula officinalis* flowers using a Clevenger apparatus. The extracted EOs were subjected to GC-MS (Gas Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry) analysis to get information about their chemical composition. Citronellol and geraniol were found to be the highly abundant chemical constituents of the GEO. The eminently ample chemical constituents present in CEO were *trans*-β-ocimene, dihydrotagetone, *cis*-tagetone, neo-allo-ocimene, 1,8 cineole, and α-pinene. Our findings showed that GEO and CEO have the potential to reduce or prevent oxidative stress and can be used in skincare regimens to slow down skin aging via its antioxidant properties [9].

3.2. Ethics Declaration. The present investigation was conducted according to the ethical principles and was approved by the Institutional Animal Ethical Committee, School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, IFTM University Moradabad, India (Registration No. 837/ac/04/CPCSEA).

3.3. Formulation of Ethanolic Lipid Vesicles (ELVs)

3.3.1. Preliminary Optimization Studies. Preliminary studies were done to optimize the methodology. Cold method (described later) was used to prepare blank ELVs by varying the concentration of Lipoid S-75 (LS75) in the range of 0.5%*w*/*v*to 5.0%*w*/*v*and ethanol in the range of 10-40% *v*/*v* and analyzed by photomicrographs taken through optical photomicrograph (HICON, Delhi, India) at 100x.

3.3.2. Preparation of Ethanolic Lipid Vesicles. ELVs were prepared by the cold method [5], composed of LS75 (2-3% *w*/*v*), ethanol (20-30% *v*/*v*), and propylene glycol (PG) (10% *v*/*v*). LS75 was dissolved along with the EO in ethanol. This mixture was heated to 30°C ± 1°C, and a fine stream of distilled water was added slowly, with constant mixing at 1000 rpm with a mechanical stirrer in a closed container. The preparation was left to cool at room temperature for 30 min, and then, it was sonicated at 4°C for two cycles of 2 min each with a minute rest between cycles using a sonicator. Various ELV formulations were prepared by varying the concentration of LS75, ethanol, and oil (Table 1).

3.4. Characterization of Essential Oil-Loaded ELVs

3.4.1. Vesicle Size Measurement. The vesicle size and polydispersity index (PDI) of vesicular colloidal suspension were analyzed by a dynamic light scattering technique with Malvern Zetasizer Nano-ZS, Malvern, U.K. with DTS (Nano) software set at an angle of 173°. For vesicle size measurement, the vesicular suspension was diluted with distilled water (1 : 10) and put into the cuvettes of Malvern Zetasizer. Then, the measurements were conducted at 25°C.

3.4.2. Encapsulation Efficiency. Geraniol and α-pinene, one of the major components of GEO and CEO, respectively, were chosen as an index for the determination of encapsulation efficacy (EE). The encapsulation of geraniol and α-pinene was measured by HPLC analysis. The vesicular suspension was transferred into a centrifuge tube and centrifuged for one hour at 30,000 rpm at 4°C using a cooling centrifuge (R-4C, Remi centrifuge, Vasai, India). After centrifugation, the supernatant and sediment were recovered and their volume was measured. Then, the supernatant was lysed using ACN : water (85 : 15) and filtered through a

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

Table 1: Composition of ethanolic lipid vesicles.

Formulation code	LipoidS-75 (% *w*/*v*)	GEO (% *w*/*v*)	CEO (% *w*/*v*)	Ethanol (% *v*/*v*)	Propylene glycol (% *v*/*v*)
G1	2	4	—	20	10
G2	3	4	—	20	10
G3	4	4	—	20	10
G4	2	4	—	30	10
G5	3	4	—	30	10
G6	4	4		30	10
C1	2	—	4	20	10
C2	3	—	4	20	10
C3	4	—	4	20	10
C4	2	—	4	30	10
C5	3	—	4	30	10
C6	4	—	4	30	10

nylon filter disc (0.22 μm). The index constituent was assayed both in the sediment and in the supernatant using HPLC to determine the EE [10].

$$\%\text{Encapsulation efficiency} = \frac{\text{Ct} - \text{Cs}}{\text{Cs}} \times 100. \quad (1)$$

Ct is the total amount of oil detected both in supernatant and sediment; Cs is the amount of oil detected in supernatant. The EE was determined in triplicate.

3.4.3. Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM). Optimized ELVs were visualized using a scanning electron microscope (Hitachi-H7500). A drop of 1% aqueous solution of phosphotungstic acid was added and left in contact with the sample for 5 min. The surplus solution was removed, and the sample was dried at room temperature, and then, the ELVs were viewed under SEM operating at an acceleration voltage of 80 kV.

3.5. Preparation of Cream Formulations

3.5.1. Base Cream. The cream formulation was prepared by the phase inversion technique [11]. The cream composition is given in Table 2. The composition and amount of emulsifying agents were calculated by the HLB method. First of all, the oil constituents like cetyl alcohol, stearic acid, coconut oil, olive oil, and span-60 were mixed in a magnetic stirrer at 100 rpm at 60°C. The aqueous phase contained aloe vera gel and tween 60 as an emulsifying agent. The aqueous phase was added to the oil phase at 60°C with continuous mixing. When the mixture temperature reduced to 50°C, phase inversion took place and the viscosity of the emulsion was increased.

3.5.2. Essential Oil-Loaded Vesicular/Nonvesicular Cream. The constituents and procedure for vesicular cream preparation were the same as those for the base cream, but while preparing vesicular cream, care was taken and the oil-loaded vesicles were added at a temperature below 30°C. In the preparation of nonvesicular cream, EO was added as such without encapsulation into the ELVs.

3.6. Characterization of Cream Formulations

3.6.1. Physical Characterization. All the prepared cream formulations were characterized for color, odor, phase separation, and grittiness by visual observation. A small quantity of cream formulation was pressed between the thumb and index finger. The consistency of the cream was noticed (whether homogeneous or not), if there were any coarse particles that appeared on the fingers. Also, the homogeneity was also detected by rubbing a small quantity of cream on the skin back of the hand. The grittiness was also observed in the same manner.

3.6.2. Spreadability, pH, and Viscosity. The spreadability of cream formulations was calculated by an apparatus suggested by Multimer [12] which is modified accordingly and used for the spreadability study. For the measurement of pH, cream formulations were diluted with distilled water in the ratio of 1 : 10 (cream : water) and mixed properly and their pH was measured by using a digital pH meter [13]. The viscosity of prepared cream formulations was measured by a Brookfield viscometer using T-spindle S-93 at 20 rpm. The temperature was maintained at 25°C ± 1°C. All the procedure was repeated three times, and observations are recorded as mean.

3.6.3. Determination of Percent Essential Oil Content. The percentage content of oil present in the cream was determined by taking 10 mg of the cream and diluting it to 10 ml with the suitable solvent (ACN : water; 85 : 15). The sample was mixed by using a vortex shaker for 40 min and examined by HPLC to determine the percentage of oil present in the cream by measuring the index constituent(s).

3.6.4. Stability Studies of Cream Formulations. The stability of the cream formulation(s) was assessed by storing the formulation at different storage conditions, namely, 8 ± 2°C, room temperature (25-28°C) and at 40 ± 2°C. The physical attributes (color, look, and feel), organoleptic parameters (phase separation, and liquefaction), pH, viscosity, spreadability, and oil content were also observed at various intervals for 30 days [14, 15].

3.7. Determination of Antioxidant Capacity. The antioxidant capacity of GEO- and CEO-based vesicular and nonvesicular cream formulations was determined by the following methods:

DPPH radical scavenging capacity: different dilutions of standard antioxidant (ascorbic acid) and cream formulation were prepared (10-250 μg/ml) in methanol. DPPH solution in methanol (0.1 mM) was added to the equal volume of different dilutions of the sample and standard antioxidant. All the tubes were incubated (30°C) for 30 min in the dark. The absorbance of each solution was measured at 517 nm using a UV-visible spectrophotometer [9].

Nitric oxide scavenging capacity: sodium nitroprusside solution (10 mM) in phosphate buffer (pH 7.4) was added

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

Table 2: Composition of various cream formulations, i.e., base cream; vesicular cream (GEO loaded: GC1, GC2, and GC3 and CEO loaded: CC1, CC2, and CC3); nonvesicular cream GEO6 and CEO6 for GEO and CEO, respectively.

Ingredients (% *w*/*w*)	Base cream	GC1	GC2	GC3	GEO6	CC1	CC2	CC3	CEO6
Beeswax	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Stearic acid	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
Cetyl alcohol	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
Olive oil	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
Coconut oil	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
Span60	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4
Tween60	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
Aloe vera gel	qs	qs	qs	qs	qs	qs	qs	qs	qs
GEO loaded in vesicles	—	2	4	6	—	—	—	—	—
CEO loaded in vesicles	—	—	—	—	—	2	4	6	—
Free GEO	—	—	—	—	6	—	—	—	—
Free CEO	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6

to the different dilutions (10-250 μg/ml) of sample and standard (ascorbic acid) in methanol. The tubes were incubated (25°C) for 2 hrs. After that, 0.5 ml Griess reagent was added to the incubated tubes and absorbance was measured at 546 nm using a UV-visible spectrophotometer [9].

DPPH and nitric oxide radical scavenging capability was calculated by using following equation:

$$\%\text{Inhibition} = \frac{\text{Ac} - \text{As}}{\text{Ac}} \times 100, \quad (2)$$

where Ac is the absorbance of control and As is absorbance of cream sample/standard.

A linear regression equation was obtained by plotting percent inhibition on the*y*-axis and concentration (μg/ml) on the *x*-axis in a graph, and from this equation, the IC_{50} value was calculated.

Percent inhibition of each sample dilution was plotted by taking on the *y*-axis and concentration (μg/ml) on the *x*-axis in a graph to obtain a linear regression equation, and from this equation, the IC_{50} value (concentration of the sample required to scavenge 50% free radical.) was calculated. The experiment was done in triplicate.

3.8. Determination of Sun Protection Factor (SPF) of Cream Formulations. For practical, economical, and ethical reasons, the *in vitro* SPF measurement techniques represent an acceptable and speedy tool for shortening *in vivo* risks and experiments related to UV exposure of human subjects. *In vitro* SPF of cream formulations was determined as per the COLIPA standards [16] which include the measurement of the percent transmittance of a sunscreen product across the UV spectrum weighted by the erythemal weighting factors at different wavelengths [17].

$$\text{SPF}_{\text{spectrophotometric}} = \text{CF} \times \sum_{290}^{320} \text{EE}(\lambda) \times I(\lambda) \times \text{Abs}(\lambda), \quad (3)$$

where CF is correction factor (10), EE(λ) is erythmogenic effect of radiation with wavelength λ, and Abs (λ) is spectrophotometric absorbance values at wavelength λ. The values of EE (λ) $\times I$ are constants.

3.9. In Vitro Enzyme Inhibition Assay. After getting the results from *in vitro* antioxidant assays and SPF determination, optimized cream formulations (GC3 and CC3) were selected for the *in vitro* enzyme inhibition assay.

3.9.1. In Vitro Collagenase Inhibition Assay. For this assay, 1, 10, 50, 100, 500, and 1000 μg/ml concentration of selected cream samples in ethanol was prepared. 5 μl of each concentration of test sample was taken in a reaction mixture along with enzyme in total volume of 80 μl, and the reaction mixture was incubated for 15 minutes. After incubation, 20 μl of the substrate (FALGPA) was added to each reaction mixture and readings were recorded at 345 nm/660 nm for 10 min at 1 min interval. Epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) was taken as positive control.

3.9.2. In Vitro Elastase Inhibition Assay. In this assay, 1, 10, 50, 100, 500, and 1000 μg/ml concentration of selected cream samples in ethanol was prepared. 5 μl of each concentration was taken in reaction mixture along with elastase enzyme in total volume of 90 μl, and the reaction mixture was incubated for 15 minutes. After incubation, 10 μl of the substrate (N-succinyl-Ala-Ala-Ala-p-nitroanilide) was added to each reaction mixture and the readings were recorded at 405 nm/660 nm for 10 min at 1 min interval. Epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) was taken as positive control.

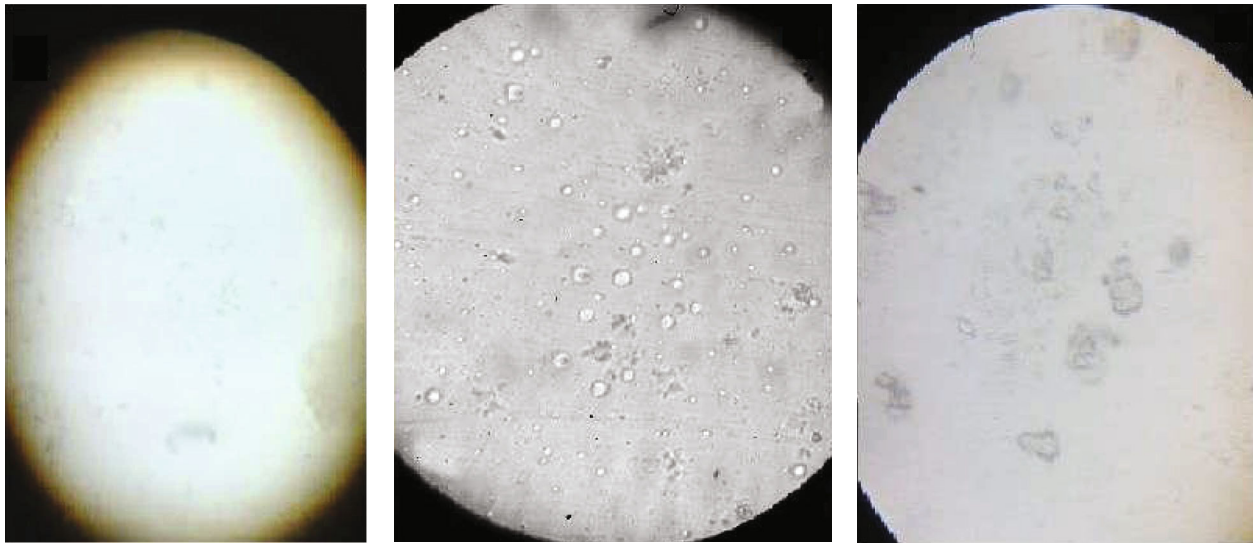
In both the enzyme inhibition assays, the percent inhibition was calculated by using the following equation:

$$\%\text{Inhibition} = \frac{\text{AbC} - \text{AbS}}{\text{AbC}} \times 100, \quad (4)$$

where AbC is absorbance of control and AbS is absorbance of sample/standard.

3.10. Skin Irritation Study. Albino rats of either sex, weighing 150-180 g, were used for skin irritation study ($n = 3$ in each group). The animals were divided into two groups,

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License



(a) (b) (c)

FIGURE 1: Optical microscopic image of prepared vesicles at different concentrations of LS75: (a) below 2% *w*/*v* (vesicles could not form); (b) 2-4% *w*/v (spherical vesicles with well-defined boundaries); (c) above 4% *w*/*v* (larger vesicles with irregular shape).

namely, the controlled and test groups. Before three days of starting the study, hair was shaved from the back of rats and a 5 cm^2 area was marked. The cream formulations were applied to the marked site, and the site was observed for any reaction or sensitivity and slight/moderate or severe erythema till 3 days after application. To score the skin reactions for erythema, scar, and edema, the Draize skin irritation scoring system was selected [18]. The reactions, defined as erythema and edema, were evaluated according to the scoring system for skin reactions. The score of primary irritation (SPI) was calculated for each rat. Scores for erythema and edema at 24, 48, and 72, hours were summed and divided by the number of the observations for the treated sites. The SPI for the control sites were calculated in the same fashion as the test.

3.11. Confocal Laser Scanning Microscopy (CLSM) Study. Skin permeation depth and mechanism of rhodamine red-loaded vesicles were examined by CLSM. Rhodamine-loaded vesicular cream was formulated by adding the dye to the mixture of LS75 in ethanol and PG, and the prepared dye-loaded vesicles were incorporated into the cream base. Dye-loaded vesicular and the nonvesicular cream formulation was applied to the dorsal rat skin for 8 h. The rats were sacrificed, and the skin was excised and washed. The skin sections were prepared and examined with CLSM (Fluoview FV 1000, Olympus, Japan) [19].

4. Results and Discussion

4.1. Formulation of ELVs. Phospholipid and ethanol are the basic materials composing ELVs and play an important role in vesicle characteristics such as size, entrapment efficacy, and stability. The phospholipid is responsible for the formulation of a lipid bilayer that affects the stability of the vesicle and also enhances the rigidity and prevents leakage of the enclosed material. The optimum concentration of ethanol enhances the membrane elasticity and fluidity of vesicles that may contribute to high skin permeability.

Preliminary screening studies were carried out to identify the effect of variables that influence the physicochemical properties of vesicles and to optimize the methodology. Placebo (blank) ELVs were prepared by using varied concentration of LS75 (0.5%-4.0% *w*/*v*) and ethanol (10-40% *v*/*v*). The results showed that below 2% *w*/*v* concentration of LS75, the vesicles could not form (Figure 1(a)). It was observed that between 2-4% *w*/*v* of LS75, the vesicles were uniformly distributed with spherical shape and well-defined boundaries (Figure 1(b)) and above 4% *w*/*v* larger vesicles were formed with irregular shape (Figure 1(c)). ELVs were formulated by using LS75 in the concentration range of 2-4% *w*/v and ethanol in the range of 30-40% *v*/*v*.

4.2. Characterization of Essential Oil-Loaded ELVs

4.2.1. Vesicle Size Measurement. Vesicle size is one of the important parameters that affect the permeability across the skin. Developed EO-loaded ELVs were varied in the size range of 192.0 nm-543.1 nm (Table 3). The vesicle size distribution diagram of optimized formulations (G6 and C6) is shown in Figure 2. The results showed that vesicle size was directly proportional to the concentration of LS75 and indirectly proportional to the concentration of ethanol [20], i.e., as the concentration of LS75 was increased, vesicle size was also increased and upon increasing the concentration of ethanol, the size of vesicles got reduced. It has been reported in the previous studies that a high concentration of ethanol leads to the interpenetration of the ethanol hydrocarbon chain, which results in slimming down of vesicle membrane thickness and hence causes a reduction in vesicle size. Some researchers have suggested that this may be due to the fact that high concentration of ethanol modifies the vesicular

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

Table 3: Results of vesicle size, polydispersity index, and encapsulation efficiency of ethanolic lipid vesicles.

S. No.	Formulation code	Vesicle size (nm)	Polydispersity index (PDI)	Encapsulation efficiency (%)
1	G1	411.3	0.292	58.92 ± 0.33
2	G2	458.9	0.089	62.62 ± 0.64
3	G3	543.1	0.274	78.95 ± 0.69
4	G4	218.3	0.131	68.24 ± 0.87
5	G5	245.9	0.288	80.95 ± 0.49
6	G6	199.6	0.063	89.00 ± 0.85
7	C1	339.5	0.208	60.24 ± 0.78
8	C2	399.1	0.292	69.52 ± 1.64
9	C3	424.7	0.301	78.39 ± 0.61
10	C4	185.0	0.172	72.81 ± 0.46
11	C5	220.1	0.045	84.60 ± 0.82
12	C6	192.0	0.107	90.95 ± 0.29

surface characteristics and alters the net charge, which could lead to a decrease in mean vesicle size [21].

4.2.2. Polydispersity Index (PDI). PDI number is a description of the dispersion of size populations within a given sample. The stability of vesicular formulation depends upon the homogenous populations of vesicles of a certain size. PDI number ranges from 0.0 to 1.0. The best PDI value is 0.0 which indicates homogenous dispersion with respect to the vesicle size, and the PDI value 1.0 indicates an extremely polydisperse sample with multiple vesicular size populations [22]. In the case of lipid-based vesicular carriers, a PDI value of 0.3 and below is considered to be agreeable and shows a homogenous dispersion of lipid vesicles [23, 24]. The results showed that all the vesicular formulations have a PDI value less than 1.0 and ranged from 0.045 to 0.301, which indicates that vesicles are homogenously distributed (Table 3).

4.2.3. Encapsulation Efficiency. EE of vesicular formulations is the part of total oil entrapped in the prepared vesicles, which determines the oil holding capacity and ultimately the delivery potential to the particular site. The EE was found to be in the range from 58.92 ± 0.33% to 90.95 ± 0.29% (Table 3). Results showed that both the amount of LS75 and the concentration of ethanol influence the encapsulation of oil in vesicles positively. It was noticed that with the increase in the concentration of LS75 from 2% to 4% and ethanol from 20% to 30% ,the entrapment of oil inside the vesicles also increased. Based on the physicochemical characterization, the optimized vesicular formulations G6 (GEO encapsulated) and C6 (CEO encapsulated) were selected for visualization.

4.2.4. Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM). SEM results of optimized ethanolic lipid vesicles loaded with GEO and CEO, i.e., G6 and C6, respectively, disclosed the dominance of spherical vesicular carriers as shown in Figure 3.

4.3. Selection of Optimized ELVs. Based on the results obtained from the characterization of ELVs, G6 (GEO encapsulated) and C6 (CEO encapsulated) were selected for incorporation into the cream base.

4.4. Characterization of Cream Formulations

4.4.1. Physical Characterization. All the cream formulations were white in color with a mild characteristic odor of the EO used. The prepared cream formulations were homogeneous with a complete absence of lumps and grittiness.

4.4.2. Spreadability, Viscosity, and pH. A cream should not generate friction while applied on the skin and should spread easily. Spreading quality of cream helps in the uniform application to the skin. The spreadability result of prepared creams was found in the range of 17.68 ± 0.34 gm·cm/sec to 25.50 ± 0.45 gm·cm/sec. The results express the ability of the creams to spread on the application of a small amount of shear. The spreadability characteristics are also influenced by viscosity. The viscosity of the cream formulations ranged between 2713.5 ± 1.02 and 6011.2 ± 1.20 cp which indicate substantial consistency. Furthermore, the pH values of all developed formulations were in the range 6.8 ± 0.052 gm·cm/sec to 7.1 ± 0.050 gm·cm/sec (Table 4). The pH values lie in the normal pH range of the skin and would not produce irritation upon application to the skin.

4.4.3. Determination of Percent Essential Oil Content. The EO content determination results indicated that the EO was uniformly distributed throughout the vesicular cream formulation. It was interesting to observe that in the case of free EO-loaded creams, the EO content results were significantly reduced; this might be due to the loss of free EO during the cream formulation process (Table 4).

4.5. Stability Studies of Cream Formulations. The motive behind stability testing of a cosmetic product is to confirm that the tested product meets the intended chemical and physical quality standards, functionality, and aesthetics when stored under suitable storage conditions. The freshly prepared creams were white in color, but a slight change in color was observed for GC1 formulation after 30 days and for CC1 after 21 days when stored at 40°C; this may be due to the separation of the oil phase at high temperature. No sign of liquefaction was observed in the tested creams at different storage conditions for 30 days of observation. There was no phase separation in any tested creams after centrifugation and freeze and thaw test. It was observed that the freezing lowered the viscosity of tested creams [25]. The absence of any sign of liquefaction and phase separation provided strong evidence for the stability of the creams under investigation.

There was no significant change in the pH value of tested creams at various storage conditions. The oil content in creams decreased at higher temperature suggesting storage at room temperature or cool place. None of the stability parameters changed significantly at room temperature.

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

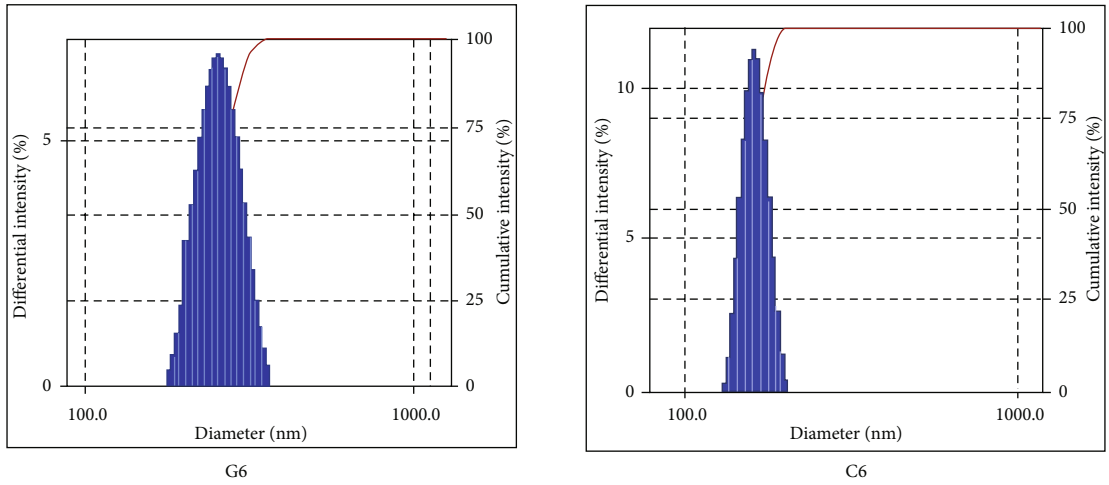


Figure 2: Vesicle size distribution diagram of optimized ethanolic lipid vesicles (G6 and C6).

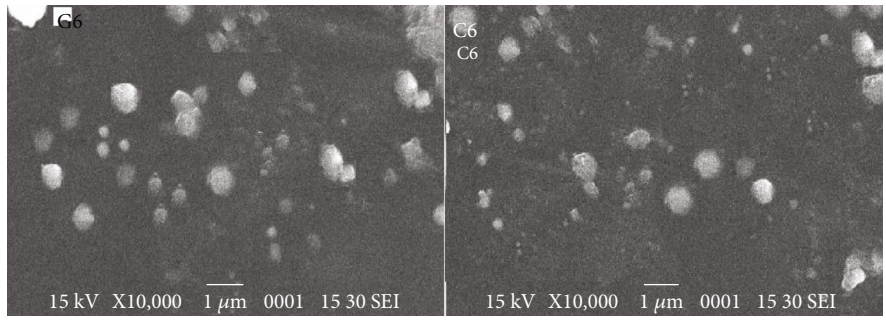


Figure 3: SEM image of optimized ethanolic lipid vesicles: G6 (GEO encapsulated) and C6 (CEO encapsulated).

Table 4: Characterization of GEO-/CEO-based vesicular and nonvesicular cream formulations.

Formulation code	Spreadability (gm·cm/sec)	pH	Viscosity (cp)	EO content (%)
Base cream	17.68 ± 0.34	6.8 ± 0.052	2713.5 ± 1.02	—
GC1	20.68 ± 0.56	7.0 ± 0.091	5413.5 ± 1.60	90.46 ± 1.98
GC2	22.82 ± 0.82	6.9 ± 0.056	5402.0 ± 1.58	93.78 ± 1.05
GC3	25.50 ± 0.45	6.9 ± 0.048	6011.2 ± 1.20	98.23 ± 1.60
CC1	18.06 ± 0.92	6.8 ± 0.060	5424.5 ± 2.60	95.62 ± 1.90
CC2	20.42 ± 0.42	7.1 ± 0.050	4302.5 ± 2.01	97.48 ± 2.01
CC3	22.49 ± 0.60	7.0 ± 0.078	4413.5 ± 1.98	98.66 ± 1.50
GEO6	20.60 ± 0.74	7.0 ± 0.028	2878.5 ± 1.02	74.78 ± 2.20
CEO6	18.68 ± 0.90	6.9 ± 0.040	4028.6 ± 1.00	71.89 ± 1.82

4.6. Determination of Antioxidant Capacity. Antioxidants are capable to guard against skin damage and slow down the skin aging process. The antioxidant capacities of extracted GEO and CEO have been previously reported by us [9], and their assessment of the antioxidant capacity after formulation as ELV-based cream was carried out.

4.6.1. Nitric Oxide Scavenging Capacity. Sodium nitroprusside decomposes in an aqueous physiological solution (at pH 7.4) results in the generation of nitric oxide. Nitric oxide is a free radical that reacts with oxygen under aerobic conditions and generates nitrite ions. The principle of this scavenging technique relies on the measurement of the capacity of the antioxidant to trap nitric oxide, leading to a decreased production of nitrite ions. The results of nitric oxide scavenging capacity are shown in Figure 4. The nitric oxide scavenging capacity of the standard (ascorbic acid) was 89.19 ± 0.05% at 250 μg/ml. The nitric oxide scavenging capacity of extracted EOs was previously reported by us as 85.15 ± 0.09% and 72.48 ± 0.12% for GEO and CEO,

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

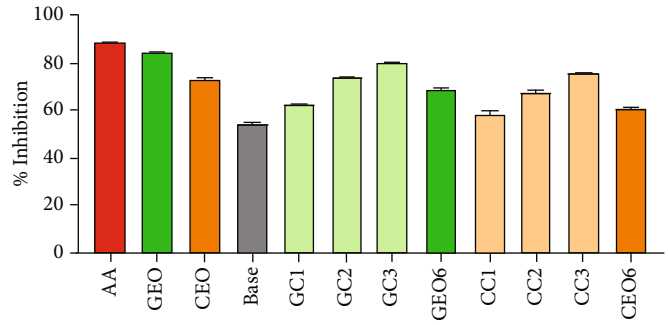


Figure 4: Comparison of nitric oxide scavenging capacity of standard (AA); essential oils (GEO and CEO); base cream; GEO-loaded vesicular creams (GC1, GC2, and GC3); CEO-loaded vesicular creams (CC1, CC2, and CC3); and nonvesicular cream GEO6 and CEO6 for GEO and CEO, respectively.

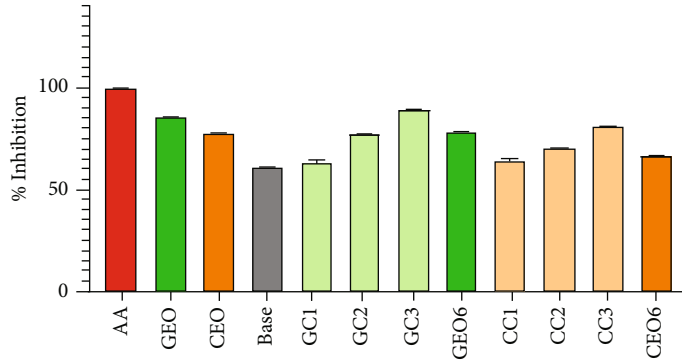


Figure 5: Comparison of DPPH radical scavenging capacity of standard (AA); essential oils (GEO and CEO); base cream; GEO-loaded vesicular creams (GC1, GC2, and GC3); CEO-loaded vesicular creams (CC1, CC2, and CC3); and nonvesicular cream GEO6 and CEO6 for GEO and CEO, respectively.

respectively [9]. In the case of GEO-/CEO-loaded vesicular and nonvesicular cream formulations (Figure 3), the maximum inhibition was shown by GC3 ($80.96 \pm 0.20\%$) and CC3 ($75.21 \pm 0.31\%$) formulation for GEO and CEO, respectively.

4.6.2. DPPH Scavenging Capacity. In this method, the degree of DPPH radical discoloration is often used as an index of the antioxidant capacity of the tested samples. In our previous work [9], we observed that GEO has a higher power to diminish the dark violet color of DPPH radical to yellow diphenylpicrylhydrazine radical in comparison to CEO and that GEO was found to be rich in monoterpenoid and citronellol and geraniol were the major component of the oil and they also have been previously identified as a potential antioxidant [26, 27]. The DPPH radical scavenging capacity of extracted EOs was previously reported by us as $85.51 \pm 0.020\%$ (for GEO) and $78.06 \pm 0.04\%$ (for CEO) at $250\,\mu g/ml$ [9].

The highest DPPH radical scavenging capacity ($99.08 \pm 0.08\%$) was obtained by standard ascorbic acid in the concentration of $250\,\mu g/ml$. At the same concentration, the maximum percent inhibition was shown by GC3 ($89.82 \pm 0.11\%$) and CC3 ($80.89 \pm 1.03\%$) formulation, respectively (Figure 5). The DPPH radical scavenging capacities of EO-loaded vesicular cream formulations were found to be remarkable in comparison to standard antioxidant and EO alone.

The results of both the antioxidant assay showed that GEO- or CEO-loaded vesicular cream formulations have notable antioxidant capacity when compared to EO alone. The results were eye-catching when the antioxidant capacity of vesicular cream formulations was compared with the cream formulation containing the same concentration of unentrapped or free EO. It was interesting to observe that with both the EOs, the scavenging capacity was reduced for nonvesicular cream formulation in comparison to the same concentration of vesicular cream. This may be due to the instability or loss of EO during the formulation of nonvesicular cream formulation.

4.7. Determination of In Vitro Sun Protection Factor. In vitro SPF determination is a useful test for screening ingredients during the development stage of a cosmetic product. The higher the SPF, the more the protection offered by sunscreen against UV light. An EO should absorb major UV radiations (290-400 nm) to be adequately used in cosmetic formulations to prevent photoaging, sunburn, skin wrinkles, and other skin damages. In our previous work, the SPF value of GEO and CEO was found to be 6.45 and 8.36, respectively [9]. EO-based vesicular cream formulations showed remarkably high SPF in comparison to EO alone. The SPF value of

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

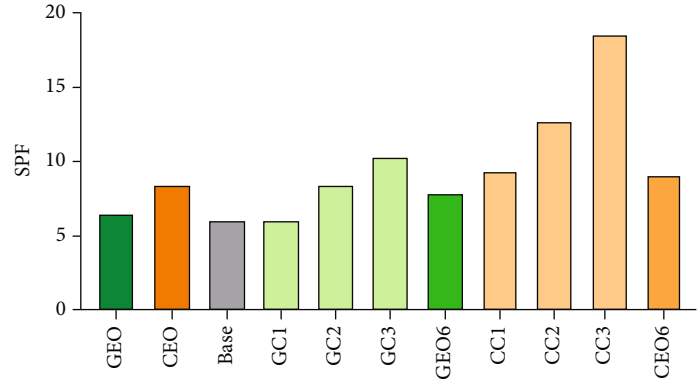


Figure 6: Comparison of *in vitro* SPF values of essential oils (GEO and CEO), base cream, GEO-loaded vesicular creams (GC1, GC2, and GC3), CEO-loaded vesicular creams (CC1, CC2, and CC3), and free oil-loaded nonvesicular cream GEO6 and CEO6 for GEO and CEO, respectively.

GEO-loaded vesicular cream was found to be 6.02, 8.35, and 10.26 for GC1, GC2, and GC3, respectively (Figure 6). The SPF of CEO-loaded vesicular cream was found to be 9.28, 12.68, and 18.54 for CC1, CC2, and CC3, respectively. The SPF of free EO-loaded nonvesicular cream formulation was 7.82 (for GEO) and 9.02 (for CEO) which is very low in comparison to the vesicular cream at the same concentration of EO. The overall results showed that CEO-based cream formulation had higher SPF in comparison to GEO-based cream formulation.

4.8. In Vitro Enzyme Inhibition Assay. One of the main reasons behind various signs of skin aging is the damage and loss of two key proteins: collagen and elastin [28]. These proteins are essential for maintaining youthful skin, which are found in the deeper layers of the skin. Collagen plays a major role in skin strengthening, and elastin allows the body tissues to return to their original shape either by contracting or stretching. These proteins are essential for skin and work together to create skin firmness and help to hold the skin shape and strength [29, 30]. The main cause of degradation of these proteins is matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs). MMP enzymes such as collagenase and elastase are responsible for the breakdown of collagen and elastin protein, respectively. Degradation of the two essential skin proteins by these enzymes accelerates skin wrinkling and sagging skin appearance and leads to skin aging. Thus, it is important to determine the enzyme inhibiting activity of the developed formulations in order to assess the antiaging potential. This is the first-time research to investigate the antielastase, anticollagenase potential of GEO-/CEO-based formulation. The optimized cream formulations (GC3 and CC3) from each EO were used for further investigation of enzyme inhibition assay.

4.8.1. In Vitro Collagenase Inhibition Assay. The assay is based on an enzyme-substrate interaction, i.e., between collagenase enzyme and the synthetic collagen substrate N-[3-(2-furyl) acryloyl]-Leu-Gly-Pro-Ala (FALGPA). Proteolytic degradation of this collagen substrate due to the collagenase enzyme results in a decrease in absorbance. Collagenase inhibitors prevent the degradation of FALGPA [31]. The EOs incorporated in the creams have potential for collagenase inhibition that was assessed by the assay. From the results of the collagenase inhibition assay, it was observed that both the formulations showed anticollagenase activity in a concentration-dependent manner (Figure 7). It was observed that the anticollagenase activity increases as the concentration increases from 1 to 100 μg/ml. In the case of GC3, formulation maximum inhibition (28.4%) was observed at 1000 μg/ml, whereas at the same concentration, CC3 showed the maximum inhibition of 22.9%.

4.8.2. In Vitro Elastase Inhibition Assay. The elastase inhibition assay is based on the fact that the enzyme (elastase) causes the breakdown of the elastin substrate (N-succinyl-Ala-Ala-Ala-p-nitroanilide) and yields fluorescent fragments that are measured using a fluorescence microplate reader. This enzymatic hydrolysis is interrupted by the elastase inhibitors [32]. The elastase inhibition activity of the developed creams was assessed to determine their antiaging potential. The antielastase activities of both the optimized cream formulations (GC3 and CC3) are shown in Figure 8. The antielastase activity was found to be in a concentration-dependent manner. In the case of GEO-loaded vesicular cream formulation (GC3), it was surprising to see that the antielastase inhibition was higher (144.0%) than ECGC (122.4%) at the concentration of 1000 μg/ml. CEO-loaded vesicular cream formulation (CC3) also showed significant elastase inhibition activity. The highest antielastase inhibition was observed at 108.2% at the same concentration i.e., 1000 μg/ml.

The findings have verified that the GEO-/CEO-loaded vesicular creams may contribute to the fight against skin aging by preventing collagen and elastin degradation underneath the skin and can help to restore skin strength and elasticity and thereby slow down the skin wrinkling process.

4.9. Skin Irritation Study. In this study, rats were divided into 5 groups ($n = 3$ in each group). In group 1, base cream was applied, in groups 2 and 3 optimized vesicular cream of each EO (GC3 and CC3), and in groups 4 and 5

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

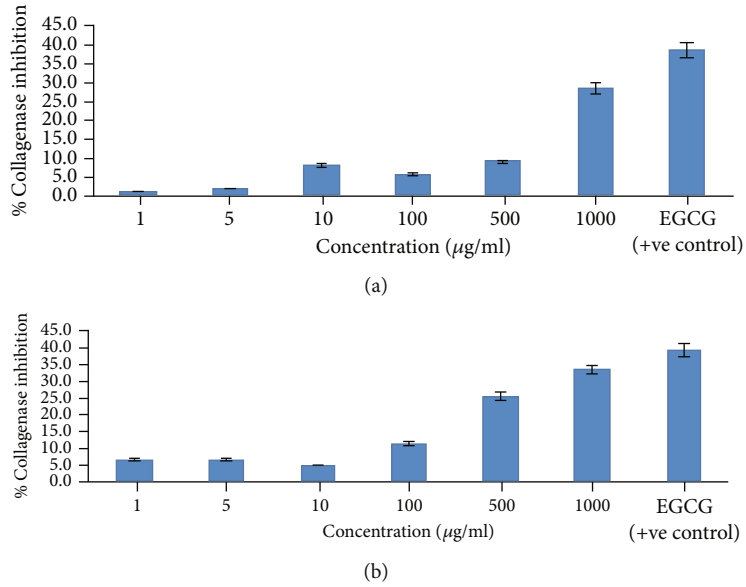


Figure 7: *In vitro* collagenase inhibition assay: (a) % collagenase inhibition shown by GEO-loaded optimized cream formulation GC3; (b) % collagenase inhibition shown by CEO-loaded optimized cream formulation CC3.

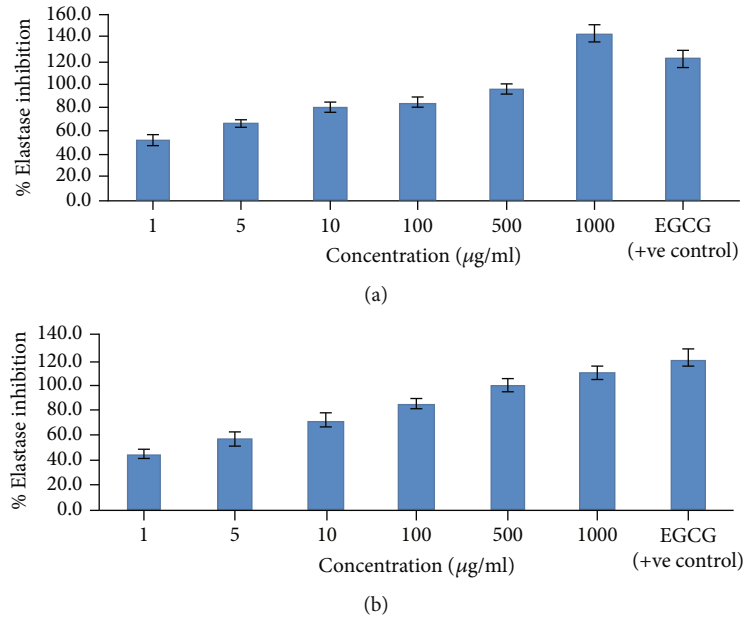


Figure 8: *In vitro* elastase inhibition assay: (a) % elastase inhibition shown by GEO-loaded optimized cream formulation GC3; (b) % elastase inhibition shown by CEO-loaded optimized cream formulation CC3.

nonvesicular cream formulation of each EO (GEO6 and CEO6). The results obtained from the primary skin irritation studies (Table 5) interpreted according to Draize test [17] which says that test samples that produce PII scores of 2 or less are considered negative, i.e., no skin irritation. Since, the score between 0 and 2 suggests no to mild irritation, thus, low PII of vesicular cream formulation (0.27 for GC3 and 0.16 for CC3 cream formulations) in comparison to base cream (0.16) observed in the study depicted nonirritancy of the cream formulation and could be considered safe for use, while the primary skin irritation studies of free EO-loaded nonvesicular cream showed high PII values (0.55 for GEO6 and 0.49 for CEO6 cream formulation) which indicates slight skin irritation in comparison to vesicle-based cream formulations of the same EO.

4.10. Confocal Laser Scanning Microscopy (CLSM) Study. Cream formulations loaded with and without lipid vesicles were prepared, and penetration across the skin was measured by CLSM study. Skin permeation of rhodamine (marker) from rhodamine-loaded nonvesicular cream and rhodamine-loaded vesicular cream formulation was visualized through a confocal laser scanning microscope. It was observed that permeation from rhodamine-loaded nonvesicular cream

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

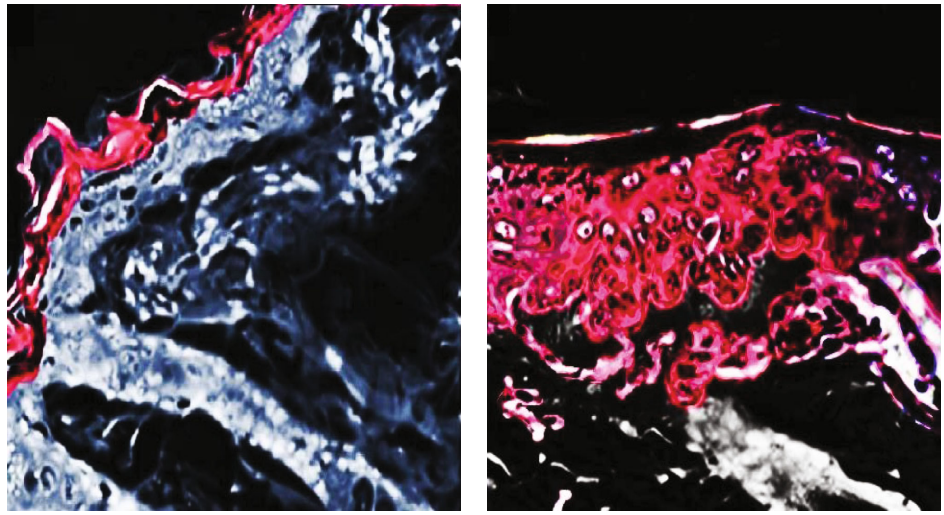
Table 5: Skin irritation study scores for primary irritation and primary irritation index measured at 24, 48, and 72 hrs after applying the cream formulations on the rat skin.

(a)

Skin reaction	Time (hrs)	Group 1 (cream base)			Group 2 (formulation GC3)			Group 3 (formulation CC3)		
		Rat-1	Rat-2	Rat-3	Rat-1	Rat-2	Rat-3	Rat-1	Rat-2	Rat-3
Erythema	24	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0
	48	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	72	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Edema	24	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
	48	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	72	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Score of primary irritation		0.16	0.16	0.16	0.33	0.16	0.33	0.33	0.16	0.0
Primary irritation index			0.16			0.27			0.16	

(b)

Skin reaction	Time (hrs)	Group 4 (GEO6)			Group 5 (CEO6)		
		Rat-1	Rat-2	Rat-3	Rat-1	Rat-2	Rat-3
Erythema	24	1	1	1	1	1	1
	48	1	0	1	1	1	1
	72	0	0	0	0	0	0
Edema	24	1	1	1	1	1	0
	48	1	0	1	0	1	0
	72	0	0	0	0	0	0
Score of primary irritation		0.66	0.33	0.66	0.50	0.66	0.33
Primary irritation index			0.55			0.49	



(a) (b)

Figure 9: CLSM of (a) Rhodamine-loaded nonvesicular cream confined to the upper layer of the skin epidermis; (b) enhanced skin permeation observed by rhodamine-loaded vesicular cream.

(Figure 9(a)) was confined only to the upper layer of the skin epidermis, while in the case of rhodamine-loaded vesicular cream (Figure 9(b)), enhanced permeation of rhodamine was observed deep into the skin layers. This shows that prepared ELVs have the ability to carry antiaging EO deep into the skin where the root cause of skin aging exists.

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

5. Conclusion

Finding solutions against the signs of skin aging has been a natural human desire for centuries. Because of this, the market is flooded with beauty care products claiming magical results within a short period of application. It is to be noted that natural aging is genetically determined, but extrinsic aging can be slowed down with the use of scientifically designed and evaluated cosmetic formulations. The need of the hour is to put serious efforts into the development of such products, which actually translate the stated claims in the case of extrinsic aging. From the research findings, the antioxidant potential, ability to inhibit collagenase and elastase enzyme, and photoprotective effects of GEO/CEO vesicular cream were confirmed. Results clearly showed that ELVs were able to preserve the efficiency of essential oils and have the potential to deliver the actives deeper into the skin. Essential oil-encapsulated vesicular creams were able to provide antioxidant defence mechanism with high SPF and are able to protect the skin in comparison to free essential oil-loaded nonvesicular creams. The cumulative effect of ELVs and cream composition and essential oil will collectively produce a protective effect to combat skin aging.

Data Availability

Data are available in Supplementary files. Supplementary data supporting the findings of this study includes the image of optimized cream formulations, detailed results of antioxidant capacity, and SPF values of prepared cream formulations.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare that they have no conflicts of interest.

Acknowledgments

This work is a Ph.D. research work from IFTM University Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India. The authors are grateful to IFTM University, Moradabad, for providing necessary facilities for this research work.

Supplementary Materials

Supplementary data supporting the findings of this study includes the image of optimized cream formulations, detailed results of antioxidant capacity, and SPF values of prepared cream formulations. *(Supplementary Materials)*

References

[1] B. A. Gilchrest, "Skin aging and photoaging: an overview," *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, vol. 21, no. 3, pp. 610–613, 1989.

[2] P. N. Gupta, P. Singh, V. Mishra, S. Jain, P. K. Dubey, and S. P. Vyas, "Topical immunization: mechanistic insight and novel delivery systems," *Indian Journal of Biotechnology*, vol. 3, pp. 9–21, 2004.

[3] T. H. Chou, "Current application of lipid- and surfactant-based vesicles for cosmeceuticals: a review," *Current pharmaceutical biotechnology*, vol. 16, no. 12, pp. 1035–1044, 2015.

[4] E. Touitou, N. Dayan, L. Bergelson, B. Godin, and M. Eliaz, "Ethosomes – novel vesicular carriers for enhanced delivery: characterization and skin penetration properties," *Journal of Controlled Release*, vol. 65, no. 3, pp. 403–418, 2000.

[5] K. Knobloch, A. Pauli, B. Iberl, H. Weigand, and N. Weis, "Antibacterial and antifungal properties of essential oil components," *Journal of Essential Oil Research*, vol. 1, no. 3, pp. 119–128, 1989.

[6] A. M. Janssen, J. J. Scheffer, and A. B. Svendsen, "Antimicrobial activities of essential oils," *Pharmaceutisch Weekblad*, vol. 9, no. 4, pp. 193–197, 1987.

[7] Y. M. Brand, V. C. Roa-Linares, L. A. Betancur-Galvis, D. C. Durán-García, and E. Stashenko, "Antiviral activity of Colombian Labiatae and Verbenaceae family essential oils and monoterpenes on human herpes viruses," *Journal of Essential Oil Research*, vol. 28, no. 2, pp. 130–137, 2016.

[8] M. T. Baratta, H. D. Dorman, S. G. Deans, A. C. Figueiredo, J. G. Barroso, and G. Ruberto, "Antimicrobial and antioxidant properties of some commercial essential oils," *Flavour and fragrance journal*, vol. 13, no. 4, pp. 235–244, 1998.

[9] A. Lohani, A. K. Mishra, and A. Verma, "Cosmeceutical potential of geranium and calendula essential oil: determination of antioxidant activity and in vitro sun protection factor," *Journal of Cosmetic Dermatology*, vol. 18, no. 2, pp. 550–557, 2019.

[10] C. Sebaaly, A. Jraij, H. Fessi, C. Charcosset, and H. Greige-Gerges, "Preparation and characterization of clove essential oil-loaded liposomes," *Food Chemistry*, vol. 178, pp. 52–62, 2015.

[11] C. D. Kaur and S. Saraf, "Topical vesicular formulations of Curcuma longa extract on recuperating the ultraviolet radiation–damaged skin," *Journal of Cosmetic Dermatology*, vol. 10, no. 4, pp. 260–265, 2011.

[12] M. Multimer, "Spreadability determination by an apparatus," *Journal of the American Pharmaceutical Association*, vol. 45, pp. 212–214, 1956.

[13] S. A. Mortazavi and S. Pishrochi, "Formulation and in-vitro evaluation of tretinoin microemulsion as a potential carrier for dermal drug delivery," *Iranian journal of pharmaceutical research: IJPR*, vol. 12, pp. 599–602, 2013.

[14] S. Smaoui, H. B. Hlima, I. B. Chobba, and A. Kadri, "Development and stability studies of sunscreen cream formulations containing three photo-protective filters," *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*, vol. 10, pp. S1216–S1222, 2017.

[15] N. Akhtar, B. A. Khan, T. Mahmood, R. Parveen, M. Qayum, and M. Anwar, "Formulation and evaluation of antisebum secretion effects of sea buckthorn w/o emulsion," *Journal of Pharmacy & Bioallied Sciences*, vol. 2, no. 1, pp. 13–17, 2010.

[16] COLIPA, CTFA-SA, and CTFA JCIA, *COLIPA guidelines: International sun protection factor (SPF) test method*, vol. 46, COLIPA, 2006.

[17] P. J. Matts, V. Alard, M. W. Brown et al., "The COLIPA in vitro UVA method: a standard and reproducible measure of sunscreen UVA protection," *International Journal of Cosmetic Science*, vol. 32, no. 1, pp. 35–46, 2010.

[18] J. H. Draize, G. Woodward, and H. O. Calvery, "Method for the study of irritation and toxicity of substances applied topically to the skin and mucous membranes," *The Journal of*

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License

Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics, vol. 82, pp. 377–390, 1944.

[19] R. Alvarez-Román, A. Naik, Y. N. Kalia, H. Fessi, and R. H. Guy, "Visualization of skin penetration using confocal laser scanning microscopy," *European Journal of Pharmaceutics and Biopharmaceutics*, vol. 58, no. 2, pp. 301–316, 2004.

[20] S. Jain, N. Patel, P. Madan, and S. Lin, "Quality by design approach for formulation, evaluation and statistical optimization of diclofenac-loaded ethosomes via transdermal route," *Pharmaceutical Development and Technology*, vol. 20, no. 4, pp. 473–489, 2015.

[21] I. M. Abdulbaqi, Y. Darwis, N. A. Khan, R. A. Assi, and A. A. Khan, "Ethosomal nanocarriers: the impact of constituents and formulation techniques on ethosomal properties, in vivo studies, and clinical trials," *International Journal of Nanomedicine*, vol. 11, pp. 2279–2304, 2016.

[22] S. Singh, A. Lohani, A. K. Mishra, and A. Verma, "Formulation and evaluation of carrot seed oil-based cosmetic emulsions," *Journal of Cosmetic and Laser Therapy*, vol. 21, no. 2, pp. 99–107, 2019.

[23] M. Chen, X. Liu, and A. Fahr, "Skin penetration and deposition of carboxyfluorescein and temoporfin from different lipid vesicular systems: in vitro study with finite and infinite dosage application," *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, vol. 408, no. 1-2, pp. 223–234, 2011.

[24] T. C. Khom, H. K. Yadav, A. Raizaday, N. Manne, H. S. Kumar, and S. N. Kumar, "Development of mucoadhesive nanoparticulate system of ebastine for nasal drug delivery," *Tropical Journal of Pharmaceutical Research*, vol. 13, no. 7, pp. 1013–1019, 2014.

[25] C. Li, Q. Huang, S. Ma, and C. Ji, "An experimental study on the viscosity of water-in-oil emulsions," *Journal of Dispersion Science and Technology*, vol. 37, no. 3, pp. 305–316, 2016.

[26] D. Giustarini, R. Rossi, A. Milzani, and I. Dalle-Donne, "Nitrite and nitrate measurement by Griess reagent in human plasma: evaluation of interferences and standardization," *Methods in enzymology*, vol. 440, pp. 361–380, 2008.

[27] Z. Al Mahmud, S. C. Bachar, C. M. Hasan, T. B. Emran, N. Qais, and M. M. Uddin, "Phytochemical investigations and antioxidant potential of roots of Leea macrophylla (Roxb.)," *BMC research notes*, vol. 10, no. 1, pp. 245–250, 2017.

[28] G. Jenkins, "Molecular mechanisms of skin ageing," *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development*, vol. 123, no. 7, pp. 801–810, 2002.

[29] D. Harman, "The free radical theory of aging," *Antioxidants & Redox Signaling*, vol. 2, pp. 557–561, 2003.

[30] B. Poljsak and R. Dahmane, "Free radicals and extrinsic skin aging," *Dermatology Research and Practice*, vol. 1, 10 pages, 2012.

[31] S. A. T. Tamsyn, H. Pauline, and P. N. Pauline, "Anti-collagenase, anti-elastase and anti-oxidant activities of extracts from 21 plants," *BMC complementary and alternative medicine*, vol. 9, pp. 27–35, 2009.

[32] M. Chatatikun and A. Chiabchalard, "Thai plants with high antioxidant levels, free radical scavenging activity, anti-tyrosinase and anti-collagenase activity," *BMC complementary and alternative medicine*, vol. 17, no. 1, pp. 487–492, 2017.

2738, 2021, 1, Downloaded from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1155/2021/4593759, Wiley Online Library on [12/06/2024]. See the Terms and Conditions (https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/terms-and-conditions) on Wiley Online Library for rules of use; OA articles are governed by the applicable Creative Commons License